



INDIAN AGRICULTURAL  
RESEARCH INSTITUTE, NEW DELHI.

55238 + 5523



I. A. R. I. 6.

MGIPC—S1—6 AR/54—7-7-54—10,000.







# THE INDIAN ARCHIVES

January – December

1949-50

Volume III

Nos. 1-4

INDIAN HISTORICAL RECORDS COMMISSION  
SILVER JUBILEE NUMBER

Published by the National Archives of India,  
New Delhi

Price : Rs. 4/-  
Foreign : 6 sh.



# THE INDIAN ARCHIVES

Volume III  
1949

INDEX

55238

Published by the National Archives of India,  
New Delhi



## GENERAL INDEX

- Administration Report of the Madras Record Office for 1948-49*: reviewed by Purnendu Basu, 157-58.
- Afghanistan, archives in, 142-43.
- Algemeen Rijksarchief, The Hague, manuscript repair in, 101-04.
- Alienation Office, Poona, 138.
- Application of Microfilming to State Archives, by Robert Marichal, 73-80.
- Archives*: reviewed by Purnendu Basu, 163-64.
- Archives, learned societies, libraries and research institutions, in Afghanistan, 142-43; in Canada, 154-56; in Central Africa, 147-48; in India, 129-39; in Italy, 147; in Pakistan, 142; in United Kingdom, 12-35, 143-47; in United States of America, 36-47, 148-54.
- Archives, development in England, 12-35.
- Archives, exchange between France and Italy, 141-42.
- Archives, in Woodstock (Oxfordshire), 52-56.
- Archives, UNESCO's concern with, 48-51.
- Archives, European, manuscript repair in, 96-122.
- Archives Générales Du Royaume, Brussels, manuscript repair in, 98-101.
- Archives Nationales, Paris, application of microfilming to archives in, 73-80; manuscript repair in, 96-98.
- Archives in the United States of America, by Solon J. Buck, 36-47.
- Archivio Di Stato, Venice, manuscript repair in, 115-16.
- Archivists, training of, 22-24.
- Austria, manuscript repair in, 104-15.
- Bengal and Assam, Regional Survey Committee, 133.
- Berlin-Dahlem, Preussisches Geheimes staatsarchiv, manuscript repair in, 104-08.
- Bibliography of Early Maps, Commission for, 141.
- Biblioteca Apostolica Vaticana, Rome, manuscript repair in, 116-21.
- Bibliothèque National, Paris, manuscript repair in, 98.
- Bihar, Regional Survey Committee, 134.
- Bombay Record Office, review of work, 137.
- British Museum, London, acquisitions, 146.
- British Records Association, London, functions, 15-18; Publications, 18; Sixteenth Annual Conference, 143-45.
- Browne, Major James, correspondence with Warren Hastings, acquisition of its copies by National Archives of India, 129-30.
- Brussels, Archives Générales Du Royaume, manuscript repair in, 98-101.
- Calcutta, National Library, 138.
- Canada, National Library of, 154-55.
- Catalogue of manuscripts and other objects in the Museum of the Public Record Office*: reviewed by V. C. Joshi, 163.
- Central Africa, archives in, 147-48.
- Central African Archives—A Report of the Chief Archivist for the period 1 September, 1947 to 31 December 1948*: reviewed by V. C. Joshi, 158-59.
- Chinese Scholar—Pilgrims, in India, 81-87.
- Chinese Sources for Indian History, by Chia-Luen Lo, 81-87.
- Commonwealth Relations Office, London, acquisitions of microfilm copies by National Archives of India from, 129.
- Correspondence of Major James Browne with Warren Hastings, acquisition of its copies by National Archives of India, 129-30.
- C.P. and Berar, Regional Survey Committee, 133.
- Delhi Chief Commissioner's Office Records, report on, 57-64.
- Delhi, Regional Survey Committee, 134.
- Dutch and Danish Records, question of control and management by Government of India, 125.
- East Punjab, Regional Survey Committee, 134-35.
- Exeter City Library, *Palk Manuscripts* in, 129.
- Exhibition, historical, held during Silver Jubilee Session of Indian Historical Records Commission, 126-28.
- Fourteenth Annual Report of the Archivist of the United States—for the year ending June 30, 1948*: reviewed by Dayal Das, 159-61.
- France, exchange of archives with Italy, 141-42.
- Fumigation Chamber, at National Archives of India, 130.
- Germany, manuscript repair in, 104-15.
- Grottaferrata, manuscript repair in, 121-22.
- Guide to the Records in the National Archives, Washington*: reviewed by Purnendu Basu, 161-62.
- Guildhall Library, London, 146.

- Hauptstaatsarchiv, Munich, manuscript repair in, 110-11.
- Haus, Hof, und Staatsarchiv, Vienna, manuscript repair in, 111-13.
- Historical Manuscript Commission, Scotland, 147.
- Humayun in Persia* (Sukumar Roy): reviewed by Sri Ram Sharma, 169-70.
- Indian Historical Records Commission, A Retrospect, 3-11; Five years publication programme, 9-10; proceedings of the Silver Jubilee Session, 123-28.
- Indian History, Chinese Sources, 81-87.
- Indian National Commission, for co-operation with UNESCO, setting up of, 131.
- Institut International de co-opération Intellectuelle, work on archives, 18-19.
- Italy, manuscript repair in, 115-22; exchange of archives with France, 141-42; formation of National Association of Italian Archivists, 147.
- Jodhpur, Regional Survey Committee, 134.
- Lamination, for reinforcing fragile documents, 69-70.
- Library of Congress, Washington, acquisitions, 152-53; recent publications, 154; exhibitions, 154.
- Mackenzie Manuscripts, question of control and management, 125.
- Madras Record Office, review of work, 136-37.
- Madras, Regional Survey Committee, 132-33.
- Manuscript Repair in European Archives, by L. Herman Smith, 96-122.
- Maps, bibliography for, 141.
- Microfilming, application to state archives in France, 73-80; in India, 138-39.
- Munich, Hauptstaatsarchiv, manuscript repair in, 110-11.
- National Archives, Washington, review of work, 148-50.
- National Archives of India, acquisition of microfilm copies of foreign records on Indian history, 129-30; installation of Fumigation Chamber at, 130; publications, 130.
- National Association of Archives, Italy, 147.
- National Library, Calcutta, 138.
- National Library of Canada, establishment of, 154-55.
- National Records Management Council, New York, its functions, 152.
- National Register of Archives, London, 19-21.
- Nationalbibliothek, Handschriften Sammlung, Vienna, manuscript repair in, 113-15.
- Ottawa, public archives, acquisitions, 155-56.
- Pakistan, Historical Records and Archives Commission, 142.
- Palk Manuscripts*, acquisition by National Archives of India of copies of, 129.
- Paris, Archives Nationales, manuscript repair in, 96-98.
- Paris, Bibliothèque National, manuscript repair in, 98.
- Poona Alienation Office, 138.
- Potsdam, Reichsarchiv, manuscript repair in, 108-10.
- Preussisches Geheimes Staatsarchiv, Berlin-Dahlem, manuscript repair in, 104-08.
- Proceedings of the Survey Department, 1865-74: their general character, by Dashratha Sharma, 65-68.
- Public Record Office, London, in war time, 24-25; building, 25-28; *Limbo*, 28-30; publications, 31-34; review of work in, 143.
- Pudukkottai, Regional Survey Committee, 134.
- Punjab Historical Record Office, review of work, 135-36.
- Recent Developments in Record Preservation, by Arthur E. Kimberly, 69-72.
- Records, their value and use, 88-95.
- Records Management and Filing Operations* (Margaret K. Odell and Earl P. Strong): reviewed by Dhanwanti G. Keswani, 164-66.
- Records of the Chief Commissioner's Office, Delhi, report on, 57-64.
- Record Preservation, recent developments in, 69-72.
- Regional Survey Committees, Madras, 132-33; C.P. and Berar 133; Bengal and Assam, 133; United Provinces, 133-34; Bihar, 134; Delhi, 134; Jodhpur, 134; Pudukkottai, 134; East Punjab, 134-35.
- Reichsarchiv, Potsdam, manuscript repair in, 108-10.
- Report on the Records of the Chief Commissioner's Office, Delhi, by T.G.P. Spear, 57-64.
- Research and Publication Committee, Indian Historical Records Commission, thirteenth meeting, 125-26; twelfth meeting, 131-32.
- School of Librarianship and Archives Administration, University of London, 22-24.

- Silver Jubilee Session, of Indian Historical Records Commission, 123-28.
- Society of American Archivists, Washington, twelfth annual meeting, 150-51.
- Survey Department, proceedings of, 65-68.
- Tanjore Raj Records, question of control and management by Government of India, 125.
- The Hague, Algemeen Rijksarchief, manuscript repair in, 101-04.
- Twenty-five Years: Some Reminiscences of an English Archivist, 1923-48, by Hilary Jenkinson, 12-35.
- UNESCO's concern with Archives, by Ernst Posner, 48-51.
- UNESCO-IFLA International Summer School for Librarians, 140-41.
- United Nations Library, review of work, 139-40.
- United Provinces Record Office, review of work, 137.
- United Provinces, Regional Survey Committee 133-34.
- United States of America, archives in 36-47.
- Vatican Library Rules for the Catalog of Printed Books* (ed. Wyllis E. Wright): reviewed by B. Sen Gupta, 166-69.
- Venice (Italy) Archives Di Stato, manuscript repair in, 115-16.
- Vienna, Haus, Hof, Und Staatsarchiv, manuscript repair in, 111-13.
- Vienna, Nationalbibliothek, Handschriften—Sammlung, manuscript repair in, 113-15.
- Why Preserve Records? by Purnendu Basu, 88-95.
- Woodstock (Oxfordshire) Town Archives, by R. B. Ramsbotham, 52-56.

## INDEX TO AUTHORS

- Basu, Purnendu, Why Preserve Records?, 88-95; Reviews: *Administration Report of the Madras Record Office, 1948-49*, 157-58; *Guide to the Records in the National Archives, Washington*, 161-62; *Archives—Journal of the British Records Association*, Nos. 1-2, 163-64.
- Buck, Solon J., Archives in the United States of America, 36-47.
- Chia-Luen Lo, Chinese Sources for Indian History, 81-87.
- Dayal Das, Review: *Fourteenth Annual Report of the Archivist of the United States—For the year ending June 30, 1948*, 159-61.
- Jenkinson, Hilary, Twenty-five Years: Some Reminiscences of an English Archivist, 1923-48, 12-35.
- Joshi, V. C., Reviews: *Central African Archives—A Report by the Chief Archivist for the period 1 September, 1947 to 31 December, 1948*, 158-59; *Catalogue of manuscripts and other objects in the Museum of the Public Record Office*, 163.
- Keswani, Dhanwanti G., Review: *Records Management and Filing Operations* (Margaret K. Odell and Earl P. Strong), 164-66.
- Kimberly, Arthur F., Recent Developments in Record Preservation, 69-72.
- Marichal, Robert, Application of Micro-filming to State Archives, 73-80.
- Posner, Ernst, UNESCO's concern with Archives, 48-51.
- Ramsbotham, R. B., The Woodstock (Oxfordshire) Town Archives, 52-56.
- Sen Gupta, B., Review: *The Vatican Library Rules for the Catalog of Printed Books* (ed. Wyllis E. Wright), 166-69.
- Sharma, Dashratha, Proceedings of the Survey Department, 1865-74: their general character, 65-68.
- Sharma, Sri Ram, Review: *Humayun in Persia* (Sukumar Roy), 169-70.
- Smith, L. Herman, Manuscript Repair in European Archives, 96-122.
- Spear, T. G. P., Report on the Records of the Chief Commissioner's Office, Delhi, 57-64.





## CONTENTS

Editors' Note	...	...	...	...	1—2
Indian Historical Records Commission: A Retrospect	...				3—11
Twenty-five Years: Some Reminiscences of an English Archivist	by Hilary Jenkinson	...	...	...	12—35
Archives in United States of America	by Solon J. Buck	...			36—47
UNESCO's Concern with Archives	by Ernst Posner	...			48—51
The Woodstock (Oxfordshire) Town Archives	by R. B. Ramsbotham	...	...	...	52—56
Report on the Records of the Chief Commissioner's Office, Delhi	by T. G. P. Spear	...	...	...	57—64
Proceedings of the Survey Department, 1865-1874	by Dasharatha Sharma	...	...	...	65—68
Recent Developments in Record Preservation	by Arthur E. Kimberly	...	...	...	69—72
Application of Microfilming to State Archives	by Robert Marichal	...	...	...	73—80
Chinese Sources for Indian History	by Chia-Luen Lo	...			81—87
Why Preserve Records?	by Purnendu Basu	...			88—95
Manuscript Repair in European Archives	by Herman C. Smith	...	...	...	96—122
Proceedings of the Silver Jubilee Session of the Indian Historical Records Commission	...	...	...	...	123—128

### NEWS NOTES

*India* : National Archives of India—Indian Historical Records Commission, Twelfth Meeting of the Research and Publication Committee, Regional Survey Committees and the National Register Scheme—The Punjab Historical Record Office—Madras Record Office—U.P. Record Office—Bombay Record Office, Alienation Office (Poona)—National Library (Calcutta)—Microfilming in India—*International* : United Nations Library—UNESCO-IFL International Summer School for Librarians—Commission for Bibliography of Early Maps—Exchange of Archives between France and Italy—*Pakistan* : The Pakistan Records and Archives Commission—*Afghanistan*—*United Kingdom* : Public Record Office, London—British Records Association, Sixteenth Annual Meeting and Conference—British Museum—Guildhall Library—Historical Manuscripts Commission of Scotland—*Italy* : National Association

of Italian Archivists—Garibaldi Exhibition—*Central Africa*  
—*United States of America*: National Archives—Society of  
American Archivists—National Records Management Coun-  
cil, New York—The Library of Congress—*Canada*:  
National Library of Canada—Public Archives, Ottawa ... 129—156

#### BOOK REVIEWS

*Administrative Report of the Madras Record Office*  
for 1948-49 (Madras, 1949) reviewed by Purnendu Basu

*Central African Archives—A Report by the Chief*  
*Archivist for the period 1 September 1947 to 31 December*  
1948 (Salisbury, 1949) reviewed by V. C. Joshi

*Fourteenth Annual Report of the Archivist of the*  
*United States* (Washington, D.C. 1949) reviewed by Dayal  
Das

*Guide to the Records in the National Archives*  
(Washington, 1948) reviewed by Purnendu Basu

*Catalogue of Manuscripts and other objects in the*  
*Museum of the Public Record Office* (London, 1948)  
reviewed by V. C. Joshi

*Archives*—Journal of the British Records Association  
(Nos. 1 and 2, 1949) reviewed by Purnendu Basu

*Records Management and Filing Operations* by  
Margaret K. Odell and Earl P. Strong (New York, 1947)  
reviewed by Dhanwanti G. Keswani

*The Vatican Library Rules for the Catalog of Printed*  
*Books* translated from the Second Italian Edition by the  
Very Rev. Thomas J. Shanahan, Victor A. Schaefer and  
Constantin T. Vesselowsky, edited by Wyllis E. Wright  
(Chicago, 1948) reviewed by B. Sen Gupta

*Humayun in Persia* by Sukumar Roy (Calcutta, 1948)  
reviewed by Sri Ram Sharma ... .. 157—170

# THE INDIAN ARCHIVES

---

Volume III

January—December, 1949

Nos. 1—4

---

## EDITORS' NOTE

OUR grateful thanks are due to our subscribers and other supporters who have put up with our delay in bringing out *The Indian Archives*. Perhaps a multitude of reasons (to us very conclusive ones) could be offered for this time lag, but in effect explanations alone, however plausible, are not enough to make a journal survive without patience and generous indulgence on the part of the patrons. We can, however, assure them that the Editors are making every effort to liquidate the arrears and we have every hope that by the end of 1951 the journal will be up to date. In order to do this we have had to take recourse to the expedient of combining several issues, viz. the last three issues of 1948 in one volume and all the four issues of 1949 in the present volume. The prices of these volumes have been adjusted according to their size.

The present issue forms a Special Number to mark the Silver Jubilee of the Indian Historical Records Commission which was responsible for the institution of *The Indian Archives*, and except for the News Notes, Reviews, a reportage on the Silver Jubilee Session of the Commission held in December 1948 and two articles, the rest of the matter in this volume consists of papers selected from among those read before that session of the Commission. Among them will be found contributions from many eminent archivists.

We are happy to inform our readers that we are dedicating our issue dated July-December 1950 to Joseph Cuvelier who is held in veneration by every archivist in the world no matter what his country. We have had very gratifying response from our contributors for this commemoration volume which will include thoughtful articles by such eminent archivists and scholars as Dr. Eugenio Casanova, Sir Cyril Flower, Sir Hilary Jenkinson, M. Jean Filliozat, Sir Harold Bell, Dr. Wayne C. Grover, Mr. R. L. Atkinson, Prof. R. F. Treharne,

M. Charles Samaran, Dr. Ernst Posner, M. Georges Lorphèvre and Dr. S. N. Sen, to mention a few at random. This volume will also include Cuvelier's own exhaustive Report on European Archives. We are particularly grateful to Mrs. Cuvelier and her son (the latter was in India recently) for making available to us a considerable body of material relating to Joseph Cuvelier. We are sure this volume will be of particular value to those who are in any way interested in archives and archive work.

Finally, we have another announcement to make. The experience of the last three years has made it apparent that it is not possible to continue the journal as a quarterly. The requirements of the country demand economy at every possible step. Considering, however, the urgent need for disseminating knowledge and information about archives in India, the Government of India has decided to continue the journal, but instead of appearing four times a year, *The Indian Archives* will, with effect from 1950, appear only twice a year.

# INDIAN HISTORICAL RECORDS COMMISSION

## A RETROSPECT

THE INDIAN HISTORICAL RECORDS COMMISSION was set up in March 1919 by a Resolution of the Government of India. It celebrated its Silver Jubilee in December 1948. The chronological discrepancy is easy to explain. The economic slump of the thirties engulfed India also, and from 1931 to 1936 the Commission was in a state of suspended animation. A burden on the public exchequer, financially unproductive, the Commission was a natural victim of retrenchment. But the last war taught the belligerents to be more alert about their "musty old files", and the future of the Commission seems to be more assured to-day than it was twenty-nine years ago.

As early as 1860 Sandeman, the Civil Auditor, recommended to the Government of India the destruction of useless records and added, 'the benefit of the proposed destruction . . . . . would not be fully obtained without the substitution of one grand Central Archive for the existing record rooms attached to each office for the purpose of transferring to it for safe preservation of all records that might be of value—the offices concerned only keeping such records as would be required for current use.' This recommendation resulted in the appointment of a Record Committee in April 1861. Active interest was taken by the members of the Committee in the work of preserving records and they made various recommendations including the payment of Rs. 2,500 to the compiler of each volume of records for publication. This Committee became virtually extinct by the year 1869.

For technical guidance, however, the Government of India relied mainly, if not solely, on British experts. In 1914 the second *Report of the Royal Commission on Public Records* and a memorandum of Mr. (now Sir) William Foster of the India Office pointed out the chaotic condition of Indian records and stressed the need for reform in the system of record keeping at the centre as well as in the provinces.

The Government of India was without any Committee of experts which could advise them. Rai Bahadur J. M. Mitra, then an Assistant Secretary in the Department of Education, suggested in 1917 the appointment of a committee of archivists and historians for this purpose. Sir Edward Maclagan, Secretary to the Government of India in the

Department of Education, referred the problem to Prof. Ramsay Muir of Manchester University who happened to be in India at that time. Prof. Muir strongly recommended the appointment of a Historical Materials Commission with its headquarters at Delhi. In his letter of 7 December 1917 addressed to Sir Edward Maclagan he wrote: "This Commission should include the Officer-in-Charge of records in each of the British Provinces, and also representatives from the principal Native States. Its chief executive officer should be a trained historian and archivist brought out from Europe—a man stronger (I venture to suggest) on the historical than on the archival side."<sup>1</sup> The recommendation was accepted by the Government of India and was implemented by Resolution No. 77 (General) of 21 March 1919.

"The Government of India," the Resolution runs, "feel that in matters relating to records they should have at their disposal a permanent body of expert advisers whose opinion would carry weight with the Records Officers and the public. With such a body at hand for advice, they are convinced that the methods adopted would meet the real wants of genuine historical students. They have accordingly decided to constitute an 'Indian Historical Records Commission' consisting of:—

1. The Secretary to the Government of India, Department of Education, *ex-officio* President.
2. The Keeper of the Records of the Government of India, *ex-officio* Secretary.
3. The Curator, Madras Record Office, *ex-officio* member.
4. The Keeper of Records, Bengal, *ex-officio* member.
5. Professor Jadunath Sarkar, M.A., member.
6. The Ven'ble Archdeacon W. K. Firminger, M.A., B.D., B.Litt., member.
7. Professor L. F. Rushbrook Williams, M.A., member.
8. Mr. B. K. Thakore, B.A., member.

"The *ex-officio* members will be permanent, but the rest of the members will hold office for a period of three years or five years. The headquarters of the Commission will be at Delhi and it would ordinarily meet twice a year—the routine work between meetings being carried on by the Keeper of the Records of the Government of India, Calcutta, as permanent Secretary to the Commission. The

<sup>1</sup> Prof. Ramsay Muir's letter to Sir Edward Maclagan on this subject was reproduced in *The Indian Archives*, Vol. II, No. 2-4.

duties of the Commission would be of a purely consultative character; it would make enquiries and recommendations regarding

- (i) the treatment of archives for the purposes of historical study in all provinces of India and in such Indian States as might seek their advice ;
- (ii) the scale and plan on which the cataloguing, calendaring and reprinting of each class of documents should be undertaken ;
- (iii) the sums required for encouraging research and publication in respect of unpublished documents ;
- (iv) the extent to which and the manner in which documents should be open to inspection by the public ; and
- (v) the training of Indian students from the Universities in methods of historical research and the selection of competent editors and assistants for the publication of documents. The Government of India have also arranged to place at the disposal of their Department of Education when the financial conditions improve, a grant of money, the distribution of which would be effected annually after consultation with the Commission."

The Commission, thus constituted, was purely an official body unrepresentative of the provinces and Indian States. The members were of two categories, archivists and historical scholars. To the first group belonged men like A. F. Scholfield and R. H. Blaker, while in the second group were historians like W. K. Firminger, Prof. Rushbrook Williams and Prof. Jadunath Sarkar. Professor Henry Dodwell combined in his person the double functions of custodian and interpreter of historical records. The executive head of the Commission was not, however, a trained historian.

These were undoubtedly competent people, but certain circumstances prevented them from achieving the desired end. Their meetings were exclusive and only a selected few were invited to attend. The work of bringing to light the mass of unknown or less known privately owned records was quite beyond the power of a committee of eight, all of whom were fully engaged in other responsible work. The need to reinforce them was realised quite early and in 1921 was started the system of co-opting members: these were nominated *ad hoc* for all too short a term that expired with the particular session. In 1924 corresponding members from each province were appointed for the same purpose. This carried the work further,



but again not as far as was desired. Enthusiastic and partially successful as these young scholars were in unearthing important historical documents, they lacked knowledge of technical problems relating to archive administration. No scholar, however, eminent, could be enrolled as a corresponding member unless he could be recommended by the government of his province. The provincial governments, however, had no initiative in the matter which lay with the Secretary of the Commission. The corresponding members were really ornamental figures without any special right or privilege of their own. They could not even participate in the deliberations of the Commission unless and until they were co-opted for the session. Another drawback was that corresponding members had at the beginning been appointed for an indefinite period with the result that their membership in many cases survived their usefulness. This shortcoming was removed in 1929 when it was decided to limit the term of corresponding membership to a period of three years.

The greatest source of the Commission's weakness was its unrepresentative character. Not all the provinces cared to nominate a representative and when thus unrepresented they, with some justice, could refuse to treat seriously the Commission's recommendations as being one-sided and uninformed.

The *ex-officio* President of the Commission was an officer of high status and long experience. He was expected to serve as an able and effective exponent of the Commission's views: but being Secretary to the Government of India in the Department of Education, he was a busy official with heavy preoccupations and could not always attend the annual sessions. If the two initial years are excluded, only thrice did the *ex-officio* President—Sir Henry Sharp in 1922, Sir Frank Noyce in 1929 and Sir Girja Shankar Bajpai in 1938—found time to attend the annual meetings. In the absence of the *ex-officio* President, the deliberations of the Commission were generally conducted under the chairmanship of the seniormost ordinary member. From 1923 to 1925 Sir Evan Cotton was, for all practical purposes, the *de facto* President and from 1926 to 1940 Sir Jadunath Sarkar was called upon to play that important role. It was these two scholars who influenced the Commission's early policy and sketched its first programme. In the absence of the *ex-officio* President, the other official—the Secretary—became the real link between the Commission and the Government. It was he who apprised the Government of the sentiments of the Commission on questions of outstanding importance and acted as the

spokesman of the Government in the business meetings of the Commission.

The draft constitution of the Commission of 1941 sought to convert the close preserve of nominated persons into a widely representative association of historians and archivists and provided for three categories of members—ordinary, associate and corresponding. As before, the nominees of the Government of India formed the active nucleus, but their number was reduced to five. The Keeper of the Records (now Director of Archives) of the Government of India continued to serve *ex-officio* as its Secretary while the Education Member was to be the *ex-officio* President. The provinces and States were given the right to send, if they were so inclined, their accredited representatives to the Commission. They were to be classed as ordinary members if the nominating governments had organised central record offices of their own; otherwise they fell under the category of associate members. The universities and select learned associations were to be represented by associate members of their own choice. Members of all categories were to serve for a uniform period of five years. The number of corresponding members was to be limited to a maximum of forty at one time and scholars with published works to their credit were alone to be selected in recognition of their contribution to the historical literature of the country. There was no difference under the proposed constitution between the rights and privileges of the ordinary and associate members, but the corresponding members could attend the business meetings of the Commission by special invitation only. To relieve the Commission of some of its responsibilities a 'Research and Publication Committee' was proposed to be appointed. Its membership was limited to the ordinary and associate members of the Commission. The Educational Commissioner (now Educational Adviser) to the Government of India was to be its *ex-officio* Chairman and the Keeper of the Records its *ex-officio* Secretary. While the Commission met only once a year, the Committee was expected to meet twice annually, one of its sessions to be held in Delhi. The Local Records Sub-Committee, now proposed, was to consist of the Education Commissioner with the Government of India as *ex-officio* Chairman, the Keeper of the Records of the Government of India as *ex-officio* Secretary and two other local members and was to advise the Keeper of the Records of the Government of India on such matters connected with the work of the Government as might be referred to it.

The new constitution came into effect on 3 January 1942. Under the Constitution, the five experts nominated by Government of India were: —

1. Lt.-Col. H. Bullock, I.A., Deputy Judge-Advocate General.
2. Professor D. V. Potdar, B.A., Secretary, Bharata Itihasa Samshodhaka Mandala, Poona.
3. Professor Muhammad Habib, B.A. (Oxon.), Professor of History, Muslim University, Aligarh.
4. Rao Saheb C. S. Srinivasachari, M.A., Head of the Department of History, Annamalai University.
5. Dr. R. C. Majumdar, M.A., Ph.D., Vice-Chancellor, Dacca University.

Four out of the five nominees of the Government were non-officials of varied experience representing different regions and branches of historical learning. The partition of India in August 1947 rendered a slight amendment of the constitution necessary. In its general outline the constitution remained unaffected, but the jurisdiction of the Commission was limited to the political boundaries of the new Dominion of India.

The achievements of the Commission merit detailed description. These can be studied in the twenty-five volumes of the proceedings of the Commission, one published after each annual session.

The Commission has repeatedly urged upon the provincial governments the need for organising their own central record offices with a view to providing optimum conditions for preservation and use of their old records. It has been often emphasised by the Commission that records once damaged are lost for ever and prevention is always better than cure. The first resolution of the first session desired to draw the attention of the Government of Bombay to the need for the appointment of a wholetime expert officer to take charge of the central record office at Bombay. It was left to the Congress government which came in power in 1937 to implement this resolution. The Government of the North-West Frontier Province organised a central record office in 1946 with a trained archivist at its head. Undivided Punjab had been content with a part-time Keeper of Records. The Punjab (India) has now an organised record office at Simla under an experienced archivist. Uttar Pradesh too has fallen in line and has recently appointed a whole time Keeper of Records. Madhya Pradesh, Assam, Bihar, Orissa and several States and States Unions are still without organised record offices.

It is entirely due to the efforts of the Commission that the research students' right of access to the older records of the Government of India in official custody was first recognised and subsequently maintained and reinforced. At the 16th session at Calcutta the Keeper of the Records announced that *bona-fide* research students would be entitled to have access to all non-confidential records of the Government of India up to 1880; in 1949 the time-limit was extended to 1901. As to records of a subsequent date the special permission of the Department of origin has to be obtained and such leave is not always refused.

The Commission not only took in hand the task of making records accessible but also of facilitating the work of the research student by providing him with adequate reference media. The Commission at its first session recommended that handbooks should be prepared on the lines indicated by Messrs. Scholfield and Dodwell in a joint note. It was in pursuance of this recommendation that handbooks were published by the Imperial Record Department in 1925, by Bombay in 1921 and Madras in 1936. The Royal Commission on Public Records of England and Wales in 1914 had carefully examined the relative merits and demerits of calendars and press-lists and gave their verdict against both. In 1940 it was unanimously decided by the Commission that exhaustive indexes to each series of records with glossaries for archaic words would be more suited. An alphabetical index, properly compiled, tells a research scholar briefly all that he might wish to learn about the contents of a particular record series. The Government of India readily accepted these recommendations of the Commission and two volumes of Indexes to Revenue Records in the Imperial Record Department (now National Archives of India) have already been printed. The work of indexing the voluminous records of the late Foreign and Political Department is now in hand.

In 1942 the Commission proposed a publication programme which was accepted by the Government and is now in hand. The Government accepted the entire financial responsibility of publishing twenty-one volumes of the *Fort William—East India House Correspondence, 1748 to 1800*. While these twenty-one volumes are to be edited by scholars selected by the Commission and not necessarily otherwise associated with the Government, the editing and publication of another five volumes of miscellaneous records is the sole responsibility of the Director of Archives. It was further decided that records in Oriental languages other than Persian Correspondence be published by universities and learned institutions at their own expense. This publication

programme has so far been only partially implemented. Better progress might have been made but for the scarcity of printing paper and various other difficulties. While this first programme was being carried out, the Commission prepared another programme to follow the first on its completion. The second scheme has been accepted by the Government of India in principle and in this respect the efforts of the Commission have been enthusiastically seconded by the universities and learned societies of India.

The efforts of the Commission for the salvage of manuscripts in private custody have been partially successful. The Regional Survey Committees set up in provinces and States according to the recommendations of the Commission have been seriously handicapped by lack of funds. In August 1946 the Government of India sanctioned a small grant of Rs. 6,500 which was subsequently slightly enhanced. These Committees have carried on useful propaganda in support of their cause and have been responsible for a few discoveries of historical documents and some preventive work against destruction of records and manuscripts. Unofficial co-operation would have to be largely invoked before the Committees can successfully accomplish their allotted task.

If the Commission was interested in the preservation of records in private and official custody, it could not afford to ignore the lack of trained archivists in the country. The Government in its Resolution No. F.92-9/40-E of 16 September 1941 had admitted the need for training a small number of private students as well as record office employees from the provinces, Residencies and States at the Imperial Record Department each year. Since 1942 the National Archives of India has been imparting training to a limited number of suitable candidates in archival science in all its aspects. The reconstituted Commission, at its very first session at Mysore (January 1942), urged the necessity of publishing a quarterly or bi-annual archives journal, with a view to disseminating the extant knowledge of the science of preservation and administration of archives. It was intended to serve as a medium of instruction for laymen interested in the subject. The first issue of *The Indian Archives*, as the quarterly journal is known, appeared in January 1947.

The greatest achievement of the Commission, so far, has been the Post-War Reconstruction Scheme for Record Offices in India. The initiative in framing the scheme was taken by the Research and Publication Committee. At its fourth meeting on 3 March 1944, it indicated the improvements it would like the Government of India to

introduce in its own record office and the report prepared under its direction was later unanimously accepted by the Indian Historical Records Commission at its Udaipur Session in December 1944. The Government of India has accepted the scheme in principle, the question of priority being left for the future. The main recommendations of the scheme are to bring the preservation section of the National Archives in line with those of the record offices in the most progressive countries in the world and to convert it into the biggest centre of historical investigation in India.

With this ambitious reconstruction scheme, the Commission looks to the future with hope and confidence. It has been its privilege to define the ideal while the country was yet under alien rule; it expects greater sympathy and closer co-operation from a free India, for its sole aim is to foster the spirit of research in this country, to remove the existing obstacles to research and to preserve for posterity its rightful heritage—documentary records of the country's past.

# TWENTY-FIVE YEARS SOME REMINISCENCES OF AN ENGLISH ARCHIVIST 1923-1948

HILARY JENKINSON, C.B.E., F.S.A.

*Public Record Office, London*

## *Introductory*

IT HAS SEEMED TO ME, thinking it over, that I could not do better by way of greeting the Indian Historical Records Commission on its twenty-fifth anniversary than to recapitulate certain happenings which have occurred within my own experience during the last twenty-five years and which struck me as particularly significant for the development of our Profession during that time: because even if they are already well-known to you, or if I recount them badly, at least by bringing them together on this occasion, and before an audience not connected directly with our work over here (for I speak primarily as an English Archivist) I emphasize what I consider to be the most important point about the Archivist's work. That is the fact that the broad principles which govern or should govern our procedure are the same not only for all grades of Archives in any one Country—the Privately-Owned, the Ecclesiastical, the Local, the National—but for all purposes and no matter to what Country the Archives may belong: that our Science in short is fundamentally international. Our detailed processes must of course vary enormously: I should be very foolish if I copied in England repairing methods suitable to the climate, materials and other conditions common in India, or advised you to borrow wholesale the methods suitable to our conditions: and the same remark applies to technical processes of all kinds, from the editorial downwards. But though the methods may differ widely the principles which lie behind them, the reasons why we adopt this method and not that in repairing or sorting or listing or editing or any other of our technical processes—those are the same no matter what the Country, Climate or other conditions may be. We may each see and avoid (or see and copy) the mistakes or the successes of the other in parallel though different circumstances.

What—before I start my reminiscences—are those principles? or I might almost say is that principle? It is based on a simple conviction

which I will make bold to put shortly by saying that the Archivist is the dedicated servant of Research and his creed the Sanctity of Evidence. As I see it he is not there to collect interesting pieces but to receive such natural accessions of Archives as the terms of his employment may bring—whether he is serving the Nation or the Local Authority or a Professional Body or any other Institution which carries on work and puts away for reference the Documents that work produced. He is there not to select for priority treatment the Documents which he thinks will or ought to interest some body of contemporary Students; still less to give any such priority to those which interest himself; but to extend so far as possible the same care and treatment to all. Above all he is there to arrange or bind or list or pack his Documents not in the way which he thinks most ornamental, or most convenient for himself or the Students known to him, but in the way which will preserve for all Students and all purposes—Students yet unknown and purposes not necessarily predictable—everything of an evidential character which there may be about them: from the way in which they were written to the way in which they were folded, sewn, filed or otherwise made up; from the order, or disorder, in which he received them to the indications they may contain of previous consultation. For him the blank page, if it is original, must be as sacred as the written one: it is not his business to inquire what, if anything, is its significance; it is enough for him that it is a part, possibly evidential, of an Archive entrusted to his custody.

### *The word 'Archives'*

It may sound absurd to set down as a stage in development the mere use of a word, but the fact remains that by adopting officially this title and making it—as they are doing—an increasingly familiar word in their Languages the English and American enthusiasts who for more than twenty-five years have been trying to secure adequate public attention to the conservation of their Country's heritage of historical documents have not only marked but made a great step forward. It is not that 'Archives' is a new word in the English language—it was in correct use so far back as the 16th century—but it had fallen into desuetude, or perhaps I should say never risen to popularity. Its use, for example, in description of the Public Records in the early years of my own service would have meant in most companies that one would not be understood and in the rest that one would be set down as rather priggish or precious. Now it can be used



by a Journalist or a Member of Parliament without exciting comment. By bringing it into use officially, and comparatively freely elsewhere, we have ranged ourselves with all the other countries speaking a language of European origin, for it is common to all. At once, you see, the international angle of approach to Archives, of which I spoke, is in evidence: on this subject of Nomenclature we are all speaking one language.

But we have done more than that by what I may call the introduction of 'Archives' to Society: for the use of the word expresses much more than it is possible to convey by any other means. The word 'Records' is of course the principal alternative; and indeed that word can never be entirely superseded: I cannot conceive the Record Office ever being called anything but the Record Office; and when we founded the Institution of which I shall speak next we christened it the British Records Association. But for general purposes the word is at once too narrow and too broad. In the mind of the Legal specialists with whom it originated its senses are carefully restricted and to the mind of everyone else it may mean many things from artificial music to athletic championship, but seldom suggests Documents. 'Archives' is open to neither of these objections: it is at once precise in its meaning and wide in its possible implications; for its modern sense is still much the same as that of the Greek word from which it is derived and even in elaborating and defining its wider uses writers in different countries have not diverged upon essentials. The American and the English uses are in fact remarkably homogeneous and it is a noteworthy fact that the first Archivist of the United States should have been able to quote in a Report to Congress, in explanation of the function which his newly founded Office would discharge, two definitions propounded quite independently in America and England which, while completely different in language, yet contained, I think I may say, though I was one of the propounders,<sup>1</sup> precisely the same ideas.

The word thus adopted has produced naturally derivatives of all kinds both adjectival and nominal: so that we can speak readily of Archivists, Archive Science, School of Archives, Archive Economy and Organization, Archive Quality or Character, and the 'Archives' of every known variety of Business, Public or Private. Its introduction has in fact given form in language to the conception of a new field of

<sup>1</sup> The other was that excellent historical Scholar Charles M. Andrews: the two quotations will be found at pp. 4 and 5 of the *Third Annual Report of the Archivist of the United States*.

human work and knowledge, self contained though with relations in every other department of scientific labour. To coin ourselves a compound adjective, we have succeeded in making our Public to some extent archive-conscious: and though perhaps we come late to the field I think the British contribution and most certainly the American,<sup>2</sup> to Archive Scholarship and Technique will be judged ultimately not the least important which have marked its growth during the last quarter of a century.

### *The British Records Association*

After what I have just said the heading of this section may seem something of a contradiction. But the British Records Association, though for sentimental and other reasons it adheres to the older word in its title, has consistently used 'Archives'—indeed it could not well have done otherwise—in its Reports, in description of the various activities it has initiated or sponsored and in the titles of its publications. An account of the first fifteen years of the life of this Body, which was founded in 1932 by a small band of enthusiasts, and of the long series of events which preceded it, has recently been given in a Report<sup>3</sup> from the two Officers who during that period acted as its joint Honorary Secretaries. To summarise—Archive Custodians and Owners in England, Public, Semi-Public and Private, Local and Ecclesiastical, have always been and practically still are completely autonomous: whether they keep, and how they keep, their Archives is a matter which is left to their own decision. The British Records Association came into being in order to deal, so far as possible, with this situation upon a basis of consent and voluntary effort. Its objects, to quote its Constitution, are

"to promote the preservation and accessibility under the best possible conditions of Public, Semi-Public and Private Archives; "to take measures for the rescue and distribution to recognized "Custodians of Documents which would otherwise be dispersed or "destroyed; to arouse public interest in, and to create a sound "public opinion on, matters affecting Records; to ensure the

<sup>2</sup> I have confined myself in these Notes to occurrences or developments in which I have had some personal share. Otherwise I could not fail to put in the forefront of Archive History during the last twenty-five years the triumphant establishment, after many years of agitation and fruitless attempts, of a National Archive Authority in the United States; its magnificent installation: and the almost incredibly swift developments since, both in State and Nation, of a highly equipped and deeply interested Archive Service.

<sup>3</sup> '1932 to 1947: being a Report from the Joint Secretaries on their Retirement' (London, 1948).

“co-operation to those ends of all Institutions and Persons interested;  
“to enable such Institutions and Persons to exchange views upon  
“matters of technical interest relating to the custody, preservation,  
“accessibility and use of Documents; and to receive and discuss  
“Reports on all these matters from its Council, Committees and  
“Sections as provided below.”

The Association aims in fact to co-ordinate all work on Archives: not merely their exploitation but their conservation: that is, to do unofficially, or at most semi-officially, the things which in other Countries are done by an official inspectorate—and perhaps a few more.

As to the creation of public opinion—it is perhaps enough to say that the membership of the Association, which in 1933 included 85 Institutional and 170 Individual Members, had risen by 1947 to 346 Institutional and 612 Individual; and that it never dropped appreciably in the War, a convincing proof that the Association's aims had commended themselves to public opinion as serious and worthwhile. In pursuance of its intention to make a popular appeal its subscriptions have always been very low. I should add that the adequate representation of the public opinion thus created in the activities of the Association is secured by the constitution of its Officers and Council; who include, as President, the Master of the Rolls, titular head of the Public Record Office; as Vice-Presidents, besides a limited number elected on account of their distinction and past services, representatives of the Society of Antiquaries, the Public Record Office, the British Museum, and the Record Interests of Ireland, Scotland and Wales: with other nominated Members representing the Archbishop of Canterbury, the Royal Historical Society, the Institute of Historical Research, the County Councils Association, the Association of Municipal Corporations and the Library Association: while 18 other Members are elected from the Body of the Association. Since its foundation well over 100 persons have served the Association in this way. In 1941 we thought our state sufficiently established to warrant us in inviting Royal support and Queen Mary graciously consented to become our Patron: Her Majesty has shown throughout a very keen interest in all our proceedings.

Apart from the general work of correspondence, finance and the settlement of policy the Council conducts its active work very largely through Committees, of which there have been so far twelve some more or less permanent, such as the Propaganda, Conference, and Finance Committees, and some created in order to report on special

matters such as the Classification Committee. The last named accomplished early the task of planning the field of operations by means of a Report on the Classification of English Archives, which it divided into the five great categories of Public Central, Public Local, Semi-Public, Private and Ecclesiastical; an order now generally accepted and which has had, as we may see later, repercussions outside England. This Report was followed by others more detailed, including in particular one upon the Archives of that primary and most important unit of local administration in England, the Ecclesiastical and Civil Parish; a new and enlarged edition of this is in course of production and will, it is hoped, be widely distributed. But besides Committees the Council and Association have the services of a rather unusual type of organisation—the 'Section': a kind of glorified Committee, an autonomous unit conducting its own affairs and expending its own grant through its own elected officers but responsible ultimately to the Council to which it periodically reports. These 'Sections' number at present three: the Technical, catering for those Members who are specially interested in the practical problems of Storage, Repair and so forth; the Publications Section which endeavours to co-ordinate the work of the Private Societies (very numerous in our Country) which in the interests of Local, or of some special branch of National History, publish Archives: and finally the Records Preservation Section. The last named, in reality the first to come into existence and indeed representing a movement which preceded the Association itself, exists in order to locate, secure and if necessary take over and place in some suitable public Repository, where they will be available for Students, all those Local and (especially) Private Archives which amid the social and economic changes that our restless age is producing are in danger of dispersal or destruction. It has been the means up to date of transmitting Documents whose numbers run probably into six figures to something like 230 Repositories all over England and in a few cases outside it.

The whole Association meets in conference once a year in London in November and this was never discontinued even in the War; though on one occasion the meeting took place to the accompaniment of Air Raid Warnings. At first one day was sufficient but now, with three Sections, two full days are necessary. Before the War the occasion concluded with a Reception at one of the famous old City Company Halls of London now, alas, for the most part ruined: and this gave opportunity for Exhibitions on a large scale of Record Publications or of Loan Collections of interesting (and often previously

unknown) Manuscripts. This last feature we must hope it may be possible to resume: for it was most valuable and instructive. At the Conference papers are read and Resolutions then passed often do much to direct the work of the ensuing year. A final point which must be mentioned here is that of Publications other than the Reports from Committees already described. They include an *Annual Report* from the Council, *Proceedings* at the Annual Conference and the useful '*Year's Work in Archives*' which summarises not merely the periodical reports received from our own Members but those which come to us from other parts of the British Commonwealth of Nations and from foreign Countries. Though economic reasons restrict severely the size of this most important publication I must still hope that Indian Archives may bulk increasingly largely in it. The scattered publications of the Association will soon, it is hoped, be brought together in a regularly appearing *Journal*.

The foregoing suggests some reference to the international side of the work of the British Records Association: but that and three other major developments, products of the present period of Reconstruction—the National Register of Archives, the teaching of Archive Science and present plans for Legislation which will give, we hope, a more official character to some of the work for the preservation of Local and Private Archives—are worthy of a separate section each.

### *International Work on Archives*

Some years before the War the *Institut International de Coopération Intellectuelle*, a permanent section of the League of Nations sited in Paris, assembled on two or three occasions a Committee of Expert Archivists: I had the honour of presiding at its first session. This Committee decided on two projects. First it would secure the preparation of an International Guide to Archives (for the preliminary survey of the field was seen to be the essential first step); and secondly it would arrange for a periodical International Conference of Archivists. The second project never came to fruition—War or rumours of War prevented it—but the first volume of a *Guide International des Archives* (covering all nations of Europe) was duly compiled and published. Preparation of a second was stopped—again by War.

Very recently, at the instance this time of the head of the Archives of the United States of America, UNESCO, successor to the functions of the *Institut International*, summoned another small committee of

Archive Experts in Paris: I again had the honour of presiding at some of its meetings. This Committee, concentrating on the creation of an International Congress with continuing Committees, has gone so far as to draft a constitution for an International Council of Archives, constitute itself a provisional representative of that body, appoint Officers and start planning for a Congress in (probably) 1950. I should like to think that first Congress might take place in England: at least I hope it will take place and that Indian Archivists will be well represented at it. There is no doubt of the good it might do: without as well as within the Archivist's profession.

### *The National Register of Archives*

It is a curious fact, and something of a reflection on us and our predecessors, that when, in the course of War, it was found possible to persuade the Authorities more immediately concerned with Civil Defence or Military Action to spare a thought for the defence of Archives, and when the natural question was asked—'Where are these Archives?'—we found that in no Country was there any single comprehensive List of Archives of all categories, Public and Private, Central and Local, Civil and Ecclesiastical. When, in 1940, Civil Defence in England was entrusted to Regional Commissioners the British Records Association, approaching them in concert with the Historical Manuscripts Commission, had to begin by constructing such a List—very hastily made and imperfect of course (it contained less than 2,000 entries) but still comprehensive and the first of its kind. When I went out to Italy at the request of the War Office to organise Archive defence there a like task awaited me, and I had to do the same later for Western Germany, for the information of the Armies and of the authorities of Military Government and the Control Commissions.

In Italy we had the benefit of whole-hearted co-operation (once we had entered Rome) from the Italian Archive service: and I have hopes that our Lists, and the organised enquiries made on the basis of them in regard to the present state of Archives of all kinds, may have permanent results of real value. In England this war-time listing has had a very definite sequel. Before the end of hostilities (in 1943 in fact) the British Records Association was urging that, as a first step to further action for the protection of the Nation's heritage of Archives, the enlargement of the List to something like completeness (which means its increase to a size from 50 to 100 times greater) should be

officially undertaken and within a couple of years this had actually come about. The Central Organisation, a new branch added to the existing Historical Manuscripts Commission, is seated at the Record Office where the Index, made on Cards to whose form and printed headings much care has been devoted, will be permanently preserved. The Staff is an extremely modest one—a Registrar, Assistant Registrar and two or three others with a small Directorate of which the Deputy Keeper of the Records is Chairman: but it was realised from the first that the local information could only be obtained by local effort and the organisation of this has been, and will be for some time, the main work of the Registrar. The method is in general to hold first in every County a Public Meeting to which are invited all influential persons—the Lord Lieutenant, High Sheriff, Magistrates and Clerks of the County Council and of the Peace, the Bishop and higher Clergy, large Landowners and other important Residents in the district—together with a wide and comprehensive representation of persons or bodies who may be supposed to be interested in or control Archives of all kinds—Private or Public, Clerical, Professional, Commercial, Educational, Social or Legal. As many as 400 or 500 persons have in some cases attended one of these Meetings. An executive Committee is then formed to enlist voluntary helpers and, in consultation with the central organisation but on lines which their knowledge of local conditions dictates, to organise the examination of accumulations of Archives and the preparation of Reports: and in due time these last begin to flow in to the Central Registry. Effort is constantly made to impress on local Helpers the importance of completing the first stage,—the reporting of the mere existence of Archives in this or that place: but the later process of listing and reporting on them in detail has a natural attraction for many and it is clear that if the work can go on without interruption there will be no lack of fuller reports.

Two further points should be stressed. First, it is abundantly clear that even if, in favourable circumstances, the work of recording the more ancient series can be brought near to completion in a few years that will not be the end: there will always be the accruals of modern documents to be dealt with. Second, it is quite realised that the mere recording of the existence of accumulations will not make certain their preservation: but it is the first step towards it; and incidentally the Register will presently provide for Students a vast storehouse of information as to the existence of unknown material for research on every kind of subject.

*Proposals for Legislation*

The plan for a National Register of Archives was originally put forward by the British Records Association in 1943 in close association with a more ambitious one—a project for Legislation which should at once set up an Inspectorate of Local Archives, in particular those of County and Borough Authorities, and make provision for the safety of Private or Semi-Public Archives which were of value for National or Local History, if their natural Owners or Custodians were no longer able or willing to give them the necessary care and attention. Post-War conditions, it was pointed out, with the breaking up of large Estates, amalgamation of Businesses and social change of all kinds which they would entail, must inevitably hasten that destruction or dispersal of Private and Semi-Public Muniments which for many years had been a cause of concern to the few people who realised its seriousness. To the work of such an Inspectorate as was now proposed that of the Register was a natural and indispensable preliminary: the Archives once located and listed, the Inspectorate would be able to 'star' those which were judged to be of national importance and to these would be applied certain statutory regulations limiting the power of their Owners to dispose of them, while extending to them certain privileges such as exemption of the Archives in question from death duties and assistance in regard to their repair and preservation.

The project is not a new one. So long ago as 1891 a small band of enthusiasts had begun to draft proposals of the kind and in 1899 these actually took the form of a Bill: in 1902 a Departmental Committee appointed by the Treasury reported on the subject: and the Royal Commission (1910) on Public Records devoted its *Third Report* (1919) to the same matter. All these, and the Committee now appointed by the Master of the Rolls to consider the proposals submitted by the British Records Association, have taken much the same line, though naturally with variations. All propose a National Control working through the existing Local Authorities (County Councils, Boroughs etc.) on whom would be imposed a statutory duty not only to make suitable arrangements for the care, and availability for study in due course, of their own Archives but also to provide a centre where the Archives of Families and of Private or Semi-Public Bodies in the same area, often closely related and always parallel in interest, might find where necessary a safe and permanent home. At the moment, if external events do not interfere, there is a better hope than ever before of realising this.



*The Training of Archivists*

Almost from its earliest days the British Records Association was urged from time to time<sup>4</sup> to set up or procure the setting up of a School which should train men and women for the Archivist's work and send them out into the world with a diploma of fitness. Apart from the fact that the Association was not a professional one like the Library Association, the Members of which are for the most part practising Librarians, and moreover had not the resources to organise a system of Examinations, there was the very real danger that one might manufacture young Archivists and launch them on a world which contained no places for them. With the gradual conversion of Local Authorities to the view that they should, under modern conditions, have an organised Archives Department, with trained Archivist or Archivists, the last named difficulty has largely disappeared: and the British Records Association in 1945 felt itself justified in proposing to the University of London that a plan for an Archives Course which had been prepared for it should be given reality. Briefly, it was finally agreed that the School of Librarianship at University College should become the *School of Librarianship and Archive Administration*, offering courses for both subjects and awarding two diplomas: and in 1947 the first Course was duly given.

The regulations are intended to secure a high standard, only Students with a first or second class Honours Degree being normally admitted to it; and the Diploma is awarded only after a year's practical work as well as a year's lecturing and examinations. Details of the prescribed subjects have been given in a recent publication<sup>5</sup> and need not be repeated here: but it is perhaps worth emphasising that while the purely vocational part of the training (Listing, Indexing, Cataloguing etc., Repairing and Binding, and the Technique of Repository Work) is by no means neglected, the more academic parts (the lectures and classes in Palaeography and Diplomatic, in Languages and in Administrative History) do not attempt merely to teach the Student to read the classes of Documents he is likely to meet with in the particular work he is most likely to have entrusted to him. They are deliberately designed to be educational, not purely vocational; and to fit him for work on any Archives.

<sup>4</sup> It is interesting to note that the demand came more than once from a Crown Colony—Southern Rhodesia; which has now created a first-class Archives Department (for which a new building is to be erected) and called into partnership in this both Northern Rhodesia and Nyassaland; creating thus a new 'Central African Archives'.

<sup>5</sup> Hilary Jenkinson: *The English Archivist: a New Profession: being an Inaugural Lecture for a new course in Archive Administration delivered at University College London 14 October 1947* (H. K. Lewis & Co. Ltd.).

Closely connected with the scheme for a Course and Diploma in Archive Science was another for the setting up of a *Repair Centre*. At present, though at a few Local Repositories there are facilities for the repair of Documents there is practically no place where work of the highest class can be undertaken except the Public Record Office, whose Repairing Staff are allowed to undertake it extra-officially; and on the other hand with every fresh organisation of a Records branch by a Local Authority comes fresh recognition of the amount of such work which is urgently needed and increased demands either for its carrying out or for the supply of trained Repairers. The scheme which has been devised to meet this situation would provide a Centre at which a nucleus of Trained Repairers would instruct both those who wished to take up the work as a profession and those (Archivists, Librarians and others) who wished merely to know enough to be able to direct work in their own Repositories; while at the same time carrying out (for Repairing can only be learned by doing the work under supervision) repairs on Documents sent in, or brought in by Students, for the purpose.

This Scheme has not yet come to fruition, chiefly perhaps because of the difficulty of finding at present in London a suitable place for it; for though the space required is small the necessary conditions for safe custody and convenience are exacting. But I think there is little doubt that presently—soon, I must hope—demand in this case will create supply. Indeed, I look forward to the establishment in the future, once we have the necessary trained men to run them, of a number of such centres; and in due course the extension too of the work into the more difficult field of Repair-Binding. Nor is it only in the case of Repairs that we may hope that Training Centres will in due time arise in places other than London. For the Diploma in Archives Science itself there should, if all goes well, be sufficient demand to support more than one University Course: and indeed there are signs already that we may presently find our subject thus recognised in a number of Universities: Liverpool has, in fact, already started a Course. There will be need, in the interests of the future Archivists themselves, for some standardisation of the qualifications required from and supplied to their Students by such Schools: that, however, should not be too difficult a thing to achieve.

But it is time to pass from the general to the particular; from Local, Private and Ecclesiastical to National Archives; from Archives, large and small, scattered all over the Kingdom to the greatest

Repository of all in Chancery Lane: I must conclude by saying something of developments in my own Department.

*The Public Records in War Time*<sup>a</sup>

To have passed through the convulsions involved in evacuating a large proportion of the Public Records and in protecting the remainder during the bombings and conflagrations which destroyed so many of the buildings within a few hundred yards of ours, and to say nothing of it in this reminiscence of experiences during the last twenty-five years, would be obviously absurd: but it must be dismissed briefly.

The Evacuation problem had of course been discussed for some years before the event: there was in fact a good deal to puzzle us and little precedent to help; for in the War of 1914-1918 bombing had been comparatively rare and precautions against it not highly developed, though a certain quantity of Documents were removed to a safe position—a Prison in the West of England. The major parts of the problem were those of *Packing, Transport, Housing and Selection* of the Records for evacuation in some order of priority. The question of *Selection* (to take the last, but most technical, first) was solved by the construction of a series of categories of Records to be evacuated; beginning with a small one which included the principal items of spectacular and popular interest (the contents of the Museum, for example), we based the remainder rather on the consideration of scholarship value (which meant that Classes which had been dealt with fully in publications, though valuable in other ways, had a low priority in comparison with some of less intrinsic importance which were not available in print); and we concluded with a category of selections from Classes which had *not* been evacuated. The whole covered about half the contents of the buildings: and, to our surprise, the conditions of transport etc. (not forgetting the extreme awkwardness of our building as a loading centre) did not prevent us in the end from getting it all away.

*Packing* was conditioned by three facts: first, that we had to store in advance many thousand containers, which meant that they must be of card-board and collapsible; second, that they would have to be piled one on another, which meant that they must be most carefully filled and that, when filled, none must exceed in weight what a single man could lift to the level of his head; and third, that we should

<sup>a</sup> An article on this subject was published in '*The American Archivist*' during the War (January, 1944).

need to know exactly where every document was, which meant a simple but most carefully thought-out system of labelling and listing. That in these circumstances we got away 88,000 packages (about 2,000 tons) without accident, were able at any time (except during transit) to produce if necessary any single document and had all back in their places within a year of the end of the War, must therefore be regarded as something of a feat as well as a valuable experiment in large-scale movement.

The question of *Transport* in the end gave little difficulty. We used locked lorries almost exclusively (not trains), because no other method gave us sufficient control: a member of the Staff accompanied every lorry or convoy and could take action in case of accident or delay. *Housing* was more difficult because the space apparently available is fallacious (unless it is on the ground floor) when it comes to Records, owing to their weight. In the end we had seven temporary Repositories—a Duke's Castle, one of the most famous ancient Manor Houses in England, the wing of a Prison, a disused 'Casual Ward', two Private Mansions and a School: and it may be imagined that the provision of even a skeleton staff for these taxed our very modest resources.

Altogether the war in Chancery Lane was a night-mare of unfamiliar problems for an Archivist: but the rest of our experiences (apart, that is, from Evacuation) differed little (except for the necessity of preserving Custody in the Record Office) from those of other people. The Office, which had received a good deal of structural attention before War broke out, was guarded in a system of volunteer Shifts by the Staff; who were trained in fire-fighting, first-aid and so forth with the object of making us so far as possible self-sufficient. This was particularly necessary in the matter of fire-fighting for we were almost as much afraid of indiscreet watering as of fire. Actually, though a good many incendiary bombs fell on us, we never had any difficulty in dealing with them: but our near neighbours were more than once in a blaze close enough to make our walls uncomfortably hot and we took a hand in fighting their fires with our hose. Our building, in spite of its size, was only once hit by high explosive and no damage was done to Records.

#### *'Reconstruction' and the Public Record Office*

In 1938 the Office celebrated its centenary and it would have been natural then to look back on what we and our predecessors

had done, and forward to what remained for us and our successors: but the War was already very imminent and, our celebration over, we could think of little but Air Raid Precaution. In 1943, when one was beginning to see the possibility of an end to the War, one began also to think of the possibilities of Reconstruction and, with it, of reviewing the past and planning the future of our charge. This does not imply necessarily criticism of our predecessors. In a hundred years, and especially in the beginnings of a century of new work, mistakes must naturally be made which may not be detected for quite a long time: moreover in a hundred years new ideas come up, new and unforeseen interests arise, new methods are invented and new machinery made available. The close of such a period offers an obviously appropriate opportunity for surveying every section of the work and saying in effect 'how far have we got with this?' and 'what direction shall we take from here?'

In regard to certain sections or aspects one could say at once that comparatively recent review, and proposed reorganization, made it unnecessary to consider them for the moment. The *Search Room System*, for instance, had been thoroughly overhauled about the time of the Royal Commission (1910-1913) and in subsequent years; and though small detailed improvements might be continually invented (such as that to the lighting system in the Round Room in 1938) large-scale alterations must undoubtedly wait on the time when we should get the long desired and often postponed new building: not a thing to be thought of while the nation was still concerned with making good the ravages of War. Of the system of *Production of Documents from the Repository* for inspection—its Organization, Checking and Recording—the same might be said. In the Repository itself a thorough reorganization had taken place within the ten years previous to the War: the 'Summary' (the great typescript volume in which are recorded all Groups and Classes in the Office, with their numbers, covering dates and exact positions) had been remade and the system of keeping it up-to-date perfected; the adoption of the Numerical System of References had been completed throughout all Classes; and the actual system of packing in the 140 Strong Rooms of the Office had been overhauled and altered to a logical plan of arrangement by Groups and Classes. The *Museum*, continually worked upon in the period between the two Wars, was more or less tied to using, primarily at least, the room on the historic site of the Old Rolls Chapel; and within these limits, and short of drastic changes in lighting and casing, which could not for the moment be contemplated,

was not susceptible of much change. Finally between 1922 and 1939 the *Repair and Binding* section, its methods, materials and organization (including the organization of the Private Work which the Repairing Staff was encouraged to undertake out of office hours) had been the subject of much, one might almost say continual work and thought; and that also could be regarded for the moment as being in a state which could continue by its own momentum.

Remained the question of Staff (but that might best be taken at the end of any general survey because it was largely conditioned by one's conclusions in regard to other matters); a final examination of the question how far existing space could be further economised or expanded by temporary measures to make possible certain immediate improvements; the settlement of future policy in regard to the perpetually growing mass of Records transferred by Departments, which had shown signs in recent years of assuming very alarming proportions; the kindred problem of our whole relation with Record-making Departments; and last but not least the review of our policy in regard to the making of our Records available to Students. It will be best to treat these under separate heads.

### *Post-War Expansions*

The existing Building had frequently been declared in the past to be inconveniently full and by 1939 it really was so: fresh building (for which there is room on the site) was an imperative need before the War and has become one of the worst of our post-War problems. Alterations in the packing of the strong-rooms has now been carried to the limits of safety in the interests of providing extra space; for close packing may mean insufficient air-circulation and inadequate room for careful handling. Housing for the Records, for the Staff, for our guests of the Historical Manuscripts Commission and the National Register of Archives, and for our Library is as constricted as it can be made: we have no longer a Committee Room, nor any other luxury of free space—not even the empty strong-rooms necessary to make possible an adequate system of regular cleaning in the Repository—and the Library can only expand into corridors. The expedient of housing Departmental Records not open to the Public in a separate (provincial) building had been adopted ten years before the War and the relief afforded by it is now exhausted—indeed we are faced with the prospect of being obliged, as the 'open' date is advanced, to bring many of these Records back to the main Repository.

The sole new possibility in the present difficult times is the limited one (often canvassed before) of temporary hutments on ground adjacent to the building and this has in fact been, rather unwillingly, accepted. The use of buildings of this kind to house the Repairing and Photographic section has set free half a dozen rooms, one of which has been devoted to the much-needed provision of a Supplementary Exhibition Room in which from time to time some type of Records, or some subject, represented by only a few exhibits in the permanent Museum can be illustrated more comprehensively.<sup>7</sup> But these few extra rooms give, of course, only a very temporary relief and it is doubtful if the plan of non-permanent building can be carried much further. Real expansion must wait on large-scale new construction; and for this a scheme (not the first and perhaps, if delay is long, it may in its turn be superseded) has already been devised. Pending its realisation the only possible palliative would be the temporary removal of certain Classes of the Records which though open to public inspection are in fact seldom or never asked for to the separate Repository which houses the Departmental Records that have not yet been 'opened'. The policy of using a separate Repository for these last has been retained and probably would be even if large additions to the Chancery Lane Repository were immediately possible: but as has been said the bestowal of Departmental transfers in such a building only postpones till the time when they are 'opened' the question of providing for them in the building which houses Search Rooms and Students. The accommodation which has been found for them—for we lost our former out-station at Canterbury during the War—is conveniently near to Chancery Lane but is not permanently ours; so that the search for a new Repository in the suburbs or further out is also an immediate matter: more immediate even than expansion in Chancery Lane itself.

### *The Record Office and 'Limbo'*

It might be thought that with such problems as the preceding already perplexing us we should be content: but in fact, in attempting to estimate and plan for post-War requirements of the Public Records, we have found it impossible to evade consideration of a matter long over-due for settlement and one which involves a housing problem even larger than that which faced us before. The Public Record

<sup>7</sup> The first of such Special Exhibitions—a display of some fifty *Treaties*—is at present open to the Public.

Office Act of 1838 places under the 'charge and superintendence' of the Master of the Rolls not only the Documents transferred from time to time by Departments but those not yet transferred: and though naturally no Master of the Rolls would attempt to regulate further than is done already<sup>8</sup> the treatment by Departments of the files which they have in current use, there are few Departments which have not, in addition to these, large and increasing masses of Documents not yet ripe for transfer (not all of them, probably, destined to be, in the end, transferred at all) which must be stored, perhaps worked on, and occasionally produced for reference. Not infrequently in the past pressure of space has led to Departmental Archives in this intermediate stage between currency and final bestowal among the Public Records being housed outside the Office of the Department to which they belong, generally in places hastily requisitioned to meet a sudden need and likely for that reason to be more or less unsuitable. In Record Office slang this phase in Archive development is referred to conveniently as 'Limbo': and I have ventured to adopt that word as my heading.

The problem of establishing some measure of control by the Record Office over Documents in this phase had been in the minds of some of us for many years: and the War made it a much more urgent matter. Statistics were collected and in 1943 a small inter-departmental Committee met to discuss this as a part of the general post-War problem of Record Housing. Briefly the conclusion reached was that since the Ministry of Works must in any case accept the responsibility for finding house-room for Documents belonging to Ministries and other Public Departments it would be at once more economical and much more efficient to provide a single large amount of accommodation in a suitable building suitably sited, in which Departments might from time to time occupy such space as they temporarily required for this purpose (including, when necessary, space for members of their Staff working on the Documents): and to place the whole building under the general supervision of the Record Office. The opinion of Departments on this proposal was sought and their approval obtained before the end of the War; and soon after that the opportunity presented itself unexpectedly, and was eagerly seized, of obtaining the necessary space. It is true that this was in five different places (all of the same kind, however, and all in London)

<sup>8</sup> By Statutes supplementing that of 1838 machinery is provided in the shape of a committee of 'Inspecting Officers' of the Public Record Office for regulating the destruction by Public Departments of Documents not considered to be of sufficient value to justify their permanent preservation as Public Records.



and that these could be ours only for a limited period, but the opportunity of making what had been only a plan into at least a partial reality was too good to be missed; and, to tell the tale briefly, vast quantities of Documents from some of the most important large Departments, while actually still in the charge of their original Custodians, have now been brought in this way under our limited control. Search for a single home for them of a more permanent character, if possible in some not too far out-lying district of London, is actively proceeding: and meanwhile the scheme is launched and the liaison most usefully (as can already be seen) established.

This question of the relation of Archive Departments to the active Departments of Public Administration, of allowing the Archivist some say in regard to the conservation of Documents, a proportion of which will ultimately be transferred to him, before that stage is actually reached, is one which must arise in all Countries; and I am happy to think that we have now at least attacked it in England. Indeed the settlement of the 'Limbo' problem in principle, and the beginning of its settlement in practice, makes it possible to shape much more clearly in our minds the future policy of the Record Office in regard to housing. It takes the form definitely of three establishments; the present Record Office in Chancery Lane, with enlargements, for the Classes open to public inspection,<sup>9</sup> for Students' Rooms, Library, Photography, Repair and the rest; a second Repository, within a distance which will make production by motor transport, when necessary, reasonably easy, for Classes transferred permanently to our custody but not yet open to inspection; and finally, further still perhaps, under our general control, the necessary space for all Departmental Documents in the intermediate stage between currency and the Record Office. If external circumstances allow it, full development of such an organization might well be seen within the next ten years: combined with a staff liaison which would make possible a continuity of method (in regard to arrangement, listing, make-up and so forth) at all stages, after that of the current file, in the life of what are to be ultimately Public Records.

### *Staff*

I have touched on this subject more than once incidentally but it should have at least some passing mention under a separate heading.

<sup>9</sup> I have said nothing about the housing, and use, of new Record forms such as photographic and sound recordings but they must be, and are, included in any plans for extended accommodation in Chancery Lane and elsewhere.

Our Staff consists at present of the Deputy Keeper (appointed by the Master of the Rolls, *ex officio* Head of the Department); 22 'Assistant Keepers' of whom one is 'Principal Assistant Keeper' and 5 rank as 'Assistant Keepers Directing Sections': 15 'Executive Officers' (including 1 'Senior' and 3 'Higher'): 11 'Clerical Officers' or 'Clerical Assistants' and 4 'Typists': 1 'Office Keeper' ('Superintendent'): 64 'Attendants and Repairers'<sup>10</sup> (including 1 'Chief Binder', 1 'Chief Repairer', 9 'Foremen' and 'Sub-Foremen'): and 40 'Porter-Messengers'. Many of these are 'Departmental' Grades, i.e. though their Members are Civil Servants they are peculiar to the Department, serving under special conditions (not an unmixed blessing) and trained in the Office.

The above Establishment is the result of much post-War discussion. That continually increasing administrative duties make it a hard task to find the men for much that we would like to do goes without saying: it is common form in such institutions as ours and particularly in times like the present when many new developments are necessarily in progress. One recent change, however, deserves a special word—the introduction of the 'Executive' Class immediately below that of "Assistant Keepers". The latter must always have one qualification not easy to come by—a first class knowledge of Latin: because so late as the eighteenth century that was still an official language in England. But the great increase in the volume of our modern Records, and of administrative work in connexion with these and with the 'Limbo' scheme, makes it probable that the future may add considerably to the work and the status of 'Executive' Officers in the Department: some of the present Members of this grade did valuable and responsible work on the Archives of the Control Commissions, to whom their services were made temporarily available.

### *Record Office Publications*

Policy settled in regard to Storage and Conservation, and the question of Staff dismissed with the usual plaint that it might, with so much advantage, be so much larger, we come finally in our review to the great question of Publication. For many years, while there was still plenty of space in the Repository, while the problem of Modern Accruals had not yet assumed the importance it now has in the eyes both of Archivists and Historians, before the technical matters of

<sup>10</sup> Some of these are employed on Photographic duties: over twenty are Repairers or Binders; and the remainder supervise production or attend on the Public in the Search Rooms. A few extra Binders, not members of the Staff, are also supplied by the Stationery Office.

Repairs, Make-up, Photography and so forth had begun to be seen for the large and engrossing problems that they are and when the demands of Students in the Research Rooms were much less than now both in number and in variety, the Publication of printed volumes was considered by far the most important and valuable part of the functions of the Department: and since the Record Office produced in its first hundred years something very like a thousand volumes it cannot be said that this function has been neglected.<sup>11</sup> To survey and comment in any detail on so large a body of printed matter would obviously be impossible here; but the task has recently been undertaken by the Department in some detail. A new Consultative Committee, consisting of representatives appointed by every University in this country, assembled for the first time at the Record Office in 1947: and I shall endeavour to summarise the considerations and conclusions laid before it. I would emphasise again that this survey has not been made in a spirit of criticism but merely because, with the experience of a century behind us, and the new possibilities introduced by new conditions before our eyes, it was clearly our duty to see what changes or innovations might be feasible and desirable: especially in view of the very strictly limited amounts of Staff, Expenditure and Publication available.

In the first place then, 'straight' Publication—the printing of exact Transcripts, or at least full 'Calendars' (i.e. *précis*), which may be supposed to absolve most Students from the necessity of consulting the originals, has touched—can touch—only the fringe of the problem, even if we limit consideration to Documents no later in date than 1500 we have dealt in our volumes with only a fraction of one per cent. Moreover (a second serious consideration) what we have published is at present exceedingly one-sided because we have not yet touched the half-dozen great series of Exchequer Enrolments dating from the twelfth and thirteenth centuries. Thirdly, though a considerable beginning has been made with the more important of the series which commence in the sixteenth and seventeenth century (the *State Papers*, *Treasury Records*, *Privy Council Register* and so forth) there are vast fields here (Legal and Financial for example) which have hardly been approached. Moreover, publication even in the series I have named proceeds much too slowly: the extreme instance is that of the *State Papers Foreign*, where eleven volumes,

<sup>11</sup> The scope of Record Office Publications may best be studied in the List ('List Q', or 'Sectional List No. 24' as it is now called) which is issued from time to time by H. M. Stationery Office.

covering only eight years of the reign of Queen Elizabeth, have been published in forty years; which suggests that completion down to (say) the reign of Charles II will be a matter of centuries. Fourthly, publication of the Departmental Records which begin with the eighteenth century has not been attempted (except in the shape of very jejune Lists) and the problem is of course a growing one: and closely connected with this is the question of publications other than Lists, Calendars and Transcripts. Notable among these are the *'Deputy Keeper's Report'* (which in process of years has become a somewhat arid compilation and has in fact, for some considerable time past been submitted only in typescript) and the invaluable *'Guide'* to the Office; which (though the form of the present edition is an immense improvement on its predecessors) is still susceptible of some modifications and additions and, in particular, fails to deal with the problem of notifying in reasonable time to interested students the nature and quantity of accruing Records. Affecting all the above is a sixth consideration—the fact that the Record Office has in the past expended a considerable amount of energy and available publication on volumes very valuable in themselves but drawn from Documents not in its custody—the *'Chronicles and Memorials'*, printing Manuscripts which are not in any sense Archives, and the Calendars of Vatican Registers and other Archives in Foreign Countries.

A seventh point which may be considered of less importance but which also affects all the others is that Editorial Method (though the necessity for flexibility is of course understood) has become in process of time a good deal more irregular than is necessary or desirable and is at some points distinctly susceptible of improvement: though sound principles for indexing Persons and Places (for example) were laid down long ago the same has never been done for Subjects, the scope of Introductions and their relation to Text and Index needs definition, Rules for précis-making are lacking, and the effect at all points of sound typographical conventions has been neglected. Finally, it is suggested that external changes—notably the immensely altered conditions of transport, the introduction of the Typewriter, and the invention of new means of cheap and rapid photographic reproduction of Documents must have altered the nature of Students' requirements: that 'Publication' might well be held now to include other methods of conveying information in addition to Printing.

Some of these considerations have suggested changes or new work which have already been or may soon be put in hand. New

Office Rules or Arrangements, for example, governing Indexes, Introductions (which will be made more strictly factual and related closely to the Subject Index) and the methods of preparing Texts have all been made or are in process of making; Typographical matters have been carefully reviewed in conference with the Stationery Office; the policy of restricting Record Office Publications to Documents in the Record Office has been definitely, if regretfully, approved; and while it is agreed that for the earliest medieval series publication by transcript or very full calendar must continue, it is planned to adopt extensively for later series the use of comprehensive 'Descriptive Lists' in place of Calendars. This last scheme has in fact been applied already to the *State Papers Foreign*. The Deputy Keeper's Report is once more to be printed and in a rather more narrative form—the first is in course of production as the present notes are written. The *Guide* is to be re-edited in sections, which will make production, or re-production, of any desired part more easy and rapid; and the Introductory Section to this is also well forward: it is to be a *Guide to the Public Record Office*, not to the Public Records only.

Other plans are more of a 'long-term' character: it has been decided for instance to make arrangements for at least five new series of medieval Exchequer volumes and preparation of one has actually been begun: but it will be many years, under the most favourable circumstances, before the results of this begin to make themselves felt.<sup>12</sup> Again, in regard to modern Records it is planned to make extensive use of the 'Descriptive List' form, the assumption being that with constantly increasing facilities for cheap microphotography these should enable the distant Student to get what he wants from the Documents with a minimum of effort and expense; but the preparation of such Lists in large quantities must be, at the best, a matter of considerable time and there are preliminary problems to be solved. What of the Staff for such work? (we are trying to find a partial solution for this in a new scheme under which we shall take in temporarily young graduates from the Universities for training and a short period of editorial work); and what of the Distribution of these Lists when made? are they to be printed? (that is probably not feasible) or distributed in typescript form to certain of the great University and other Libraries? or made available themselves by microphotography upon order? These are matters yet to be settled.

<sup>12</sup> A plan has been approved for issuing a single advance volume—an Introduction to and Survey of Exchequer Records.

*Conclusion*

But I must not take up further space with what are anticipations, plans for work which may be executed by other hands, rather than reminiscences of that in which I have had a share. I can only hope that they and other good new things may come to undisturbed fruition: and that this account of Archive work in England during a period of years which has been torn asunder by two Wars may be consulted occasionally by Indian Archivists working on parallel lines during a long period of Peace.

# ARCHIVES IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

SOLON J. BUCK

*Library of Congress, Washington*

**L**IFE IN THE UNITED STATES would be simpler, for archivists, if we had followed the British example and called our National Archives the Public Record Office. Then the man in the street would have some conception of its function upon hearing its name. As you in India have done, however, we adopted the French rather than the English practice, and we call our institution for preserving the non-current official records of our Federal Government the National Archives. Most of us in the United States use the word "archives" to mean an organized body of official records of an agency, organization, or institution, public or private, that has been preserved in official custody. We do not usually apply the word to collections of miscellaneous historical manuscripts, no matter how valuable they may be. We also use the word "archives," in the plural form, to denote an institution that has as its function the preservation and servicing of bodies of records, or archives.

The differences between the status of archives and records in our country and in some others are due in part to differences in social and political organization, especially in the location of authority. Our central Government is more like that of India than that of England. That is, it is federal in character, and many of the responsibilities and activities of a central government such as that of England pertain in our country to the separate States or even to the counties and municipalities. As a consequence our National Government has no jurisdiction over archives or records except those that result from its own activities. Moreover, neither our National Government nor our State or local governments can exercise any authority over private, ecclesiastical, or business records, unless they have been voluntarily placed in the custody of a governmental institution.

The centralization of records or archives in institutions especially designed to care for them did not take place to any considerable extent in the United States until about the end of the nineteenth century. Even thereafter for many years most of the institutions that had charge of archives were also historical societies or libraries and did not have much knowledge of the principles of archives administration as they had developed in Europe over the centuries.

We had no central institution to care for the records of our Federal Government until the National Archives of the United States was established in 1934. Before that there were, in two or three of the major departments of the Government, bureaus or divisions that had special responsibility for non-current records, but most of the older non-current records of the Federal Government remained in the custody of the filing offices of the various bureaus that had accumulated them. These offices were primarily interested, of course, in the current records; and the older material was usually stored in attics and basements, where it was practically inaccessible and frequently suffered much damage from those enemies of documents identified by an English archivist of Queen Elizabeth's time as "Fier, Water, Ratts and Myce, Misplacenge, even plaine taking of them away." Since 1934, however, great progress has been made. Nearly all the extant valuable non-current records of departments and offices of the Federal Government are now in the National Archives, where their preservation is assured.

The problem of the mere physical bulk of these Federal records is a very difficult one for the National Archives. Though our country's history is short, the quantity of material that has been filed as records, especially in the last half century, is so great that it threatens to overwhelm not only the archivists but also the scholars and officials who have occasion to consult the records. On July 1, 1948, there were in the custody of our National Archives over 850,000 cubic feet of records. Since the invention of the typewriter, the making of records has become almost too easy. Much is recorded and filed that might well be left unrecorded or be disposed of as soon as it has served a temporary purpose. As a result of this problem of the size of its holdings, our National Archives has worked out certain ways of dealing with records that differ from those of institutions holding chiefly the relatively small bulk of manuscript material that has come down to us from the centuries before the industrial revolution. To deal with the records of the machine age man needs machines!

Shipments of records are usually brought into the National Archives building in covered motor trucks. As soon as possible after their receipt, they are examined by the Cleaning and Rehabilitation Branch and are given such treatment as may be necessary and feasible. To destroy fungi and vermin, all records entering the building are fumigated with a mixture of ethylene oxide and carbon dioxide in a vacuum chamber large enough to accommodate 300 cubic feet of material at one fumigation. When papers are dusty or dirty they are



cleaned by means of compressed air released through a specially designed air gun. Folded documents that are to be unfolded are placed in a special vault on stainless steel racks and there are exposed to air containing a high percentage of water vapour. After humidification the papers are opened and are ironed in an electrically heated mangle, or, if fragile, they are pressed between blotters. Torn or damaged documents are repaired by lamination with two sheets of very thin and perfectly transparent cellulose acetate foil, which fuses with the paper upon the application of heat and pressure in a large hydraulic press equipped with steam-heated platens. The National Archives has two such presses, each of which has a capacity of 400,000 letter-size sheets annually. Thus the rehabilitation of documents has been put on a mass-production basis. The initial cost of the equipment is high, but its use saves many hours of the manpower that would be required if manual processes of repair were used. Even with the equipment used, the fifteen workers of the Cleaning and Rehabilitation Branch have more work than they can do.

When large shipments are received it is usually necessary to send material on to the stacks as soon as it is fumigated and cleaned, but, as rapidly as facilities and staff permit, sections of it are returned to the Cleaning and Rehabilitation Branch for further treatment. The stack area of the Archives building is windowless. In addition to being shielded from daylight there, the papers are surrounded by air that is carefully conditioned. The temperature is kept between 65 and 75 degrees Fahrenheit, the relative humidity is held between 45 and 55 per cent, and the air is washed and treated to reduce its chemical and dust content. The records are further protected by elaborate devices for detecting and preventing fire and unauthorized entry into the stack sections.

The records in the National Archives have been arranged in some 250 "record groups". In general each of these groups contains all the non-current records believed to be worth permanent preservation of one of the major bureaus or independent offices of the Federal Government. Again because of the size of the holdings, the record groups, or the subgroups or series within them and not the individual documents have to be the units by which the records are described or inventoried. It would be utterly impracticable to attempt to make a calendar, catalogue, list, or index, document by document, of the material in a large record group. Each group is described in general terms in a new edition of the *Guide to the Material in the National Archives*, which is now in press and will run to about 700 pages. In

addition, the staff of the National Archives is compiling, as rapidly as possible, preliminary inventories of the records in each of the groups. These inventories are called preliminary because the arrangement of the records has not yet been perfected and the inventories will be revised from time to time. They list the records by what we call "series", meaning thereby papers that were originally filed together and must be kept together because of their inter-relationships. Unfortunately, most of our Government's unbound records are not in dossiers or case-files but are in bulky series of files arranged according to the wide variety of filing systems in use in different Government agencies at different times. In accordance with the recognized principle of provenance, the archivists do not usually rearrange the records except to correct mistakes, and that makes possible the use of the various original lists, catalogues, indexes, and other finding aids that were compiled when the records were in current use.

The problem of the physical bulk of extant Government records has also forced the National Archives to work out new systems for the disposal of records not worth preserving. Although there are, as I have said, some 850,000 cubic feet of records in the National Archives, the quantity of records remaining in the custody of the other agencies of the Federal Government is many times as great. Most of these records, however, are relatively recent and a very large proportion of them have only temporary value for any purpose and will be discarded in the course of time. The National Archives has much responsibility with reference to the disposal of worthless records, for no records of the Federal Government may legally be discarded unless the Archivist of the United States has decided that they are not worth preserving. In order to make easier the process of disposing of worthless papers, the National Archives has worked out a system of scheduling records by types, with indications of the number of years that the records of each type must be preserved. These schedules make it possible for the offices to discard the records described in them after they have reached the required age and without any further reference to the National Archives.

Many of the records still in the custody of other agencies of the Government have enduring values, however, and should be preserved permanently. Such records, when they are no longer needed in connection with the ordinary work of the agencies that have accumulated them, are expected to be transferred to the National Archives. Some valuable records become non-current when they are only a year or two old; others remain in current use for twenty or thirty years, or even

longer. Here again the National Archives is working out schedules with the offices, which are in the nature of agreements on their part to transfer records of certain types when they have reached a certain age, and on the part of the National Archives to accept such records. The Archives is not required, however, to take records if it does not consider them to be of enduring value or if it does not have the space available in which to care for them.

It soon became apparent to the staff of the National Archives that the appraising of records to determine whether they should be transferred to the Archives, retained somewhat longer by the offices, or disposed of as worthless papers was made difficult by the unsatisfactory methods of filing and of management of current records in most of the offices. A great deal of effort, therefore, has been devoted to persuading the agencies to file their records of enduring value separately from those that have only temporary values and to close their files and start new ones from time to time so that the non-current records will not be so intermingled with current records that it will be difficult if not impossible to segregate them either for discarding or for transfer to the National Archives. These efforts have had very valuable results, especially with reference to the temporary offices of the Federal Government that were set up during the last war. As such offices have been discontinued the care of their records has become a responsibility of the National Archives. Fortunately many of them employed competent persons as records officers, often persons who had been members of the staff of the National Archives, and under their direction the records were so organized and arranged that it has been possible to segregate for preservation the relatively small proportion of them that deals with policy and other matters of importance and continuing interest and to provide for the destruction of the remainder without serious danger of loss to future administration or research.

About the time of the beginning of the war, some of the major departments of the Government, such as the Army and Navy Departments, made provision for the administration of their records by competent officials who understand the archival point of view. Because of the vast quantities of records that they have to deal with, and also because many of the offices that accumulated the records are no longer in existence, these departments have found it necessary to establish what we call "intermediate depositories", where records of discontinued units and offices and other non-current records of the departments are centralized pending the time when they can be either destroyed or transferred to the National Archives. Most of these depositories are

outside of Washington and one of them, a depository for Army records in St. Louis, Missouri, has many more records in its charge than does the National Archives and has a much larger number of employees than the 352 persons on the Archives staff.

Once records have come into the custody of the Archives, they are as a rule accessible to the public. It is not the practice, as it is in some European archives, to refuse access to records until they have been arranged and inventoried. The archivists render the best service they can on them from the time they are received. Of course, some records in the National Archives of a confidential character are restricted or closed to the public. For example, part of the records of the Department of State dating from 1922 to 1944 may be consulted only with permission of officials of the Department. The records of this Department down to the year 1922, however, are open without restriction, a situation that compares very favourably with that of the foreign office records of other nations.

Partly because many records are only a few years old when they come to the National Archives, much of the service on them is rendered to the agencies from which the records are received. Much is also rendered to other agencies of the Government, and one of the greatest advantages resulting from the centralization of non-current records in the National Archives is the fact that they then become available for use by agencies other than those that originally accumulated them. Much service is also rendered to scholars, not only to historians, but also to economists, political scientists, sociologists, and occasionally even to natural scientists. Even more services are rendered to individual citizens—lawyers, business men, genealogists, and others—who seek specific evidence or information that may be useful to them in some way.

These services are rendered in four different ways. In the first place records are frequently loaned to agencies of the Government, though never to private individuals. Although that is a very troublesome service, sometimes involving difficulty in getting the documents back, without it many of the records would not come into the custody of the Archives until many more years had elapsed, and in the meantime some of them might not be properly cared for. In the second place, records are made available to those who want to use them—Government officials, scholars, and others—in the search-rooms of the National Archives. The general search-rooms, which are equipped to accommodate one hundred workers, are open every day except Sunday—from 8-45 a.m. to 10 p.m. on Mondays to Fridays inclusive and

from 8-45 a.m. to 5-15 p.m. on Saturdays. Many searchers also work in the divisional search-rooms, which are in the stack area and adjacent to the records in the custody of the various divisions. Here in the search-rooms the searcher may consult the inventories and other finding aids that are available, and here he is aided, when necessary, by members of the staff in determining the material needed. In the third place, a great deal of information taken from records in the custody of the Archives is supplied in response to requests received by mail or by telephone. And, finally, reproductions of records are made by photostat or by microphotography for those who desire them. No charge is made for this service to offices or officials of the Federal Government ; for others it is rendered at cost.

From what I have already said, it should be clear that one should not expect to find in the National Archives our colonial and Revolutionary records, with the possible exception of the records of the Continental Congress, which was our central Government from the Declaration of Independence until the adoption of the Constitution in 1787. As a matter of fact, the main body of the records of the Continental Congress, which includes our Declaration of Independence and our Constitution, is in the Library of Congress, with which these records were deposited many years before the National Archives was established. Most of the colonial and Revolutionary records, however, are kept by the thirteen original States that existed as colonies before the Declaration of Independence. Although some provision has been made for the care of such records in all of those States, only three or four of them, I regret to say, have adequate archival agencies, among which the Maryland Hall of Records is perhaps outstanding. In the western States such centralization of state archives or records as has taken place thus far has usually been accomplished by State historical societies or departments of archives and history, which have not as a rule had the facilities or personnel trained for archival work that they need to enable them to do an adequate job in this field. An outstanding exception is the Archives of Illinois, which although it is a department of the State Library, is largely autonomous and has a fine modern building devoted entirely to its work. Generally speaking, it may be said that most of the non-current records of our States are still in the custody of the various State offices that accumulated them and are not cared for in accordance with archival principles. There are, however, movements under way in a number of States, notably in the great States of New York and Pennsylvania, which, it is hoped, will lead to

the erection of archives buildings and the establishment of distinct archival agencies or public records offices in the near future.

Local public records in the United States are usually even worse cared for. Not one of our great cities has as yet established a municipal archives or made provision for the centralization of its valuable non-current records. Records of counties, towns, and villages, regardless of their age or historical value, are usually kept by local officials who have little knowledge of their value. In a few States, notably Connecticut and New York, State officials have been specially designated to see to it that local records are properly cared for, and in a number of the eastern States some of the older and more important local records have been deposited in the State archival agency. During the depression of the 1930's the Historical Records Survey, a Federal agency established to provide work for unemployed persons, made inventories of the records of most of the counties and some of the cities of the country, so that at least we have the possibility of knowing what local records were in existence at that time.

The situation with reference to business records—that is, the records of private firms and corporations—is much the same, but it shows signs of improvement. Libraries and historical societies, notably the Baker Library of Harvard University, the Library of the University of Virginia, and the Newberry Library in Chicago, have collected and are preserving vast quantities of records of former business establishments and also older records of existing corporations. A more promising development, however, is seen in the tendency of a number of large corporations to set up their own archives, sometimes managed by professional archivists, which care for their non-current records that are worth preservation. Notable among these corporations are the Firestone Rubber Company of Akron, Ohio ; the Denver and Rio Grande Railroad Company, with headquarters in Denver, Colorado ; and the Westinghouse Company of Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania. A group of historians and archivists in New York City has set up a special service agency to assist business firms in managing their records, appraising them, and segregating and caring for such of them as ought to be permanently preserved. It is hoped that arrangements may be made for a special depository in which such records may be preserved, at the expense of the owners, and may be available, with their permission, for use by scholars.

Church records also have until recently received little professional archival attention and are still widely scattered throughout the United States. Many of them fortunately were also inventoried by the

Historical Records Survey. During the last decade or so some of the major denominations, notably the Roman Catholic Church, have made considerable progress in centralizing important church records and in training the custodians of such records in archives administration.

The collection and preservation of personal and family papers—or “historical manuscripts,” as we frequently call them—has been carried on actively for many years by the Division of Manuscripts of the Library of Congress, by similar divisions of other large libraries, and by State and local historical societies throughout the country. Although the Historical Records Survey gathered considerable information concerning such collections, we do not yet have an adequate inventory of them. Many personal papers of great historical value still remain, of course, in the possession of persons who accumulated them or of their descendants, and there are also many private collectors who have acquired, by purchase or otherwise, quantities of individual documents of special interest and value. The sale of “autographs” to such collectors and to historical societies and libraries is an extensive business enterprise in the United States, and it frequently results in the breaking up of groups of papers that, from the standpoint of research value, ought to be kept together.

The repositories of personal papers and other historical manuscripts, as well as those of archives, are confronted with the problem of bulk, unless they confine their collections to an early period or a very limited field. This may be illustrated by a comparison of the sizes of two groups of papers in the Division of Manuscripts of the Library of Congress; the George Washington Papers are estimated to number about 37,000 documents, which is unusually large for eighteenth century collections, while those of William Howard Taft, mainly twentieth century papers, amount to about 260,000. It is obvious that principles of selection for preservation, with reference both to collections and the materials in them, will have to be developed, but it is also obvious that the quantity of twentieth century historical manuscripts that will have to be preserved, if the story of mankind in that century is to be adequately documented, will be vastly greater than the quantity that has been preserved for any previous century.

The most serious aspect of this problem of bulk is not the obvious one of space and equipment for preservation, but it is rather that of arrangement and control to make the material usable. The older procedures of meticulous re-arrangement in chronological order of all documents in a collection of personal papers, of mounting and binding

them in that order, and of making card indexes, catalogues, or calendars of them, piece by piece, are gradually being abandoned, so far as bulky recent collections are concerned at least. The tendency is in the direction of recognizing and preserving whatever arrangement may have been given to the papers by the original accumulator or his assistants, filing them in folders (using the original folders if possible), putting the folders in cartons similar to transfer boxes, and shelving the labelled boxes. Finding aids will have to be confined, as a rule, to overall descriptions of the collections and inventories by series or files, unless original indexes accompany the papers. The system will not make it easy to find a specific letter written by a given person on a given date, but it will enable the investigator to determine what collections, or series, or files are likely to contain pertinent material and it will preserve significant interrelationships among documents that have sometimes been lost under arbitrary systems of rearrangement.

The problem of distinguishing between the personal papers of important public officers and the official records of their offices has aroused a great deal of interest in the United States in recent months. Traditionally, our presidents have considered the papers that accumulated in the White House during their administrations as personal papers and have carried away such of them as they did not destroy. In many cases such papers of the presidents have later been acquired by the Library of Congress by gift or by purchase and are now preserved as part of our cultural heritage. The papers of President Hoover have been deposited in a special library set up by him at Stanford University, California, and those of President Hayes are preserved in a special library in Ohio under the supervision of the Ohio State Archaeological and Historical Society.

The quantity of papers that accumulated in the White House during the administrations of President Franklin D. Roosevelt was very much greater than accumulated by any of his predecessors. Realizing that these papers would ultimately be of great historical value and public interest, President Roosevelt persuaded Congress to establish a special institution to care for them. That institution, known as the Franklin D. Roosevelt Library, is situated at Hyde Park, New York, adjacent to the President's former home, which is now a "national monument" maintained by the Government. The building for the Franklin D. Roosevelt Library was constructed with funds raised by private subscription and was then turned over to the Federal Government, which agreed to maintain it and the materials housed in



it. Those materials include, in addition to the papers of President Roosevelt, other collections of related personal papers and a considerable museum of objects collected by or relating to the former President, which is visited by hundreds of thousands of people every year. The Franklin D. Roosevelt Library is under the general supervision of the Archivist of the United States, but it is not considered to be a part of the National Archives proper. Some of the papers of President Roosevelt in the Library are already available for use by scholars, and more of them are being made available as rapidly as they can be examined and arranged.

From what I have said, it is apparent that the archival profession is a very recent one in the United States. The first course designed for the training of archivists was given by me at Columbia University only ten years ago, and I regret to have to admit that the instructor did not know much more about his subject than did his students. Since 1939 such a course has been given annually in Washington, under the auspices of the American University and the National Archives, and several hundred students have taken that course or the short summer course that has also been given during the last four years. These training courses have benefitted very greatly from the participation of Dr. Ernst Posner, who was formerly a professional archivist in Germany and who removed to the United States in 1939 and has become a citizen of our country. Since 1941, when I became Archivist of the United States, he has carried the full responsibility for these training courses.

When I first attempted to teach archives administration in 1938, there was very little material available in English that was appropriate for use in such a course. Since then, however, a number of important books and articles have been translated into English from continental languages and a surprisingly large number of useful articles have been written in English. The establishment of the Society of American Archivists eleven years ago and the inauguration of its quarterly journal, *The American Archivist*, soon thereafter, have accomplished a great deal for the promotion of the archival profession in the United States. The progress that will be made in the future depends, however, in large part upon the extent to which archival institutions and repositories of manuscripts are able to establish themselves as agencies that are important and even necessary to society. In the long run the adequacy and success of archival work will depend upon the extent to which its social value is appreciated by the intelligent public.

In conclusion, I want to say that we in the United States recognize, as do archivists in India and elsewhere, that we must look beyond the boundaries of our own country. In this modern world, the archives of all countries are interrelated, and only when all of them are taken into consideration will it be possible to understand the development of modern civilization in all its aspects. Moreover, information about the activities, methods and accomplishments of archivists in other countries will help all of us to improve our own work. As a consequence, we in the United States have been much gratified by recent evidences of international cooperation in the archival field. In our own hemisphere, some years ago, there was organized a regional group, the Association of Librarians, Archivists, and Custodians of Museums of the Caribbean area. Recently there has been organized an Inter-American Committee on Archives of the Commission on History of the Pan-American Institute of Geography and History. We hope that in the course of time this committee, of which I have the honour to be a member, will arrange for the holding of an Inter-American Congress of Archivists.

After considerable preliminary work and discussion by archivists in the United States and elsewhere, the first formal step toward establishing a world-wide organization of archivists was taken in June, 1948. Under the auspices of the United Nations Educational, Scientific, and Cultural Organization—UNESCO—a committee of archivists, invited by UNESCO, met in Paris to consider and decide upon proposals for an international archives organization. The participating archivists represented Czechoslovakia, France, Italy, Mexico, the Netherlands, Norway, the United Kingdom (England), and the United States; and observers were present from Australia and from the American Military Government in Germany. An International Council on Archives was established, a constitution was adopted, officers were elected, and it was tentatively agreed to hold the first International Congress of Archivists in Paris in 1950, probably in the week preceding the contemplated first post-war International Congress of Historical Sciences. It is our hope that when this meeting takes place, archivists from India and other "Far Eastern" nations will be present and will help to integrate the archivist's "One World."

# UNESCO'S CONCERN WITH ARCHIVES

ERNST POSNER

*School of Social Sciences and Public Affairs,  
The American University, Washington, D.C.*

THE UNITED STATES NATIONAL COMMISSION FOR UNESCO has "concluded, and so reported to the Secretary of State, that all proposed activities of UNESCO should be judged by their relation to UNESCO's constitutional purpose 'to contribute to peace and security by promoting collaboration among the nations through education, science and culture'."<sup>1</sup> The word "peace" in this statement is to be "understood in a positive rather than a negative sense," according to the interpretation given it by the United States Delegation to the first session of the General Conference in Paris. It is to be understood as "a condition of mutual confidence, harmony of purpose, and co-ordination of activities in which free men and women can live a satisfactory life."<sup>2</sup> How, it may be asked, can archives "contribute to peace" as "a condition of mutual understanding" between the peoples?

International understanding as a goal for the future is predicated on an outlook on the past that is untinged by national prejudice and bias, and cannot be achieved as long as nations violently disagree on the interpretation of historical events. Rightly therefore "plans for a comprehensive revision of textbooks and teaching materials in the interest of international truthfulness, international understanding, and international peace"<sup>3</sup> have received much emphasis in the basic programme of UNESCO. Textbooks, however, represent a condensation for educational purposes of research work, and truly objective textbooks cannot be hoped for unless scholars succeed in analyzing past events with that spirit of international truthfulness that is the prerequisite of mutual understanding.

An objective analysis of the past does not only depend on the scholar's will to use his sources objectively and to represent results *sine ira et studio*. It is also contingent on the availability of all pertinent research materials. Realizing the importance of removing

<sup>1</sup> United States Delegation to the United Nations Educational, Scientific, and Cultural Organization, First General Conference, Paris, 1946. *Report . . .* Washington, Government Printing Office, 1947 (State Department, Conference Series 97), p. 9.

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.*

<sup>3</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 11.

barriers that "exist in connection with libraries and museums," the commentary of the Drafting Committee of the Paris Conference urges that studies be made "of discriminatory commercial rates, of bureaucratic customs formalities, of unnecessary high postal rates and of similar obstacles to the movement of books and other materials of communication."<sup>4</sup> Undoubtedly, the removal of all such difficulties will be beneficial to the scholar but it will solve only part of his problem.

Research in the field of history, and of the social sciences in general, depends not only on printed sources but also on the unprinted materials of archival and manuscript depositories, and, for research in the more recent phases of history especially, the use of such unprinted sources becomes increasingly important and indispensable. For centuries books, newspapers, and pamphlets have moved more or less unhampered across the national boundaries and have been the common intellectual property of the world. Archives, on the other hand, were not opened to scholarly research until during the French Revolution, and even after that governments for many decades remained loath to admit the scholar to the use of their official records. Nevertheless, the right of the citizen to examine records of his government, if they are not of a restricted nature, became firmly established, and it made possible to a large extent the flourishing of historical research during the period of nationalism that led to the two world wars.

It was, however, the native scholar chiefly who benefitted from the increasingly liberal attitude of governments. There remained throughout the 19th and 20th centuries a greater or lesser amount of discrimination against the foreign scholar desirous of using the archives of another country than his own. While this discrimination might be reduced to a minimum between allied and friendly countries it became manifest in cases in which relations between the foreign scholar's state and the state whose archives he wished to use were tense or unfriendly, and governments would resort to a variety of delays and subterfuges to bar a foreign scholar from access to records they did not wish him to see.

In the first place, procedure governing admission of all foreign scholars to archival research rooms was cumbersome and involved. While natives obtained admission by simply applying to the archival authorities, a foreigner had to use the good offices of his diplomatic representative who forwarded his application to the foreign office of

<sup>4</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 83.

the respective country. The foreign office, in turn, would send it on to the ministry in charge of archival matters, the ministry would ask for the reports of the archival depositories whose holdings the foreign scholar wished to consult and finally the decision would be communicated to the petitioner through the same complicated channels. That four to eight weeks were needed to complete this procedure is not surprising, and if the foreign scholar was naive enough to start it after arriving at his place of destination the time set aside for his work had mostly expired before he obtained his permit.

Frequently, use of records by a foreign scholar whose research topic was not looked upon favourably by the government of another country could thus be effectively prevented by means of delay and simple red tape. Excuses of a dubious character had to be resorted to if he was experienced enough to start his application well in advance. In such cases, he might be told that the records he wished to see were in the process of being arranged and inventoried, or that the government was planning to make them available in an official publication and could not allow private scholars to use them.

European scholars who wished to see records of foreign governments for research on controversial or delicate topics could tell many stories of fruitless efforts to obtain access to them. One typical case may be related in detail: in the 1930's a German scholar, working on the devastation of the Palatinate during the campaigns of Louis XIV, applied and obtained permission to use the pertinent materials of the Archives of the French Ministry of War. When he arrived in Paris, however, he learned that his permit had already expired (although he had not been told that it was limited) and that he could not see the records. When he re-applied he was notified that the French Government was examining into the question of their publication and that therefore they could not be made available to a private searcher.

Similar tactics were applied in other European countries. For a long time, Danish scholars had the greatest difficulties in obtaining access to the Prussian records on the Schleswig-Holstein question, and between Prussia-Germany and Poland something equivalent to a status of archival war existed from the end of the first to the beginning of the second world war. While Prussian scholars were not allowed to see certain records pertaining to Prussian administration of Polish territory that had been delivered to Poland in 1807, Polish scholars were more or less completely barred from access to the Berlin records that were indispensable for research in the 19th and 20th century

history of Poland's formerly Prussian provinces and in the Polish policy of the Prussian and German Governments. As a matter of fact, applications of all Polish scholars were received and handled with the greatest suspicion. Even if they seemed to be interested in subjects of a perfectly innocent kind, it was feared that they would abuse their searcher privileges to get access to materials they were not supposed to see.

Generally speaking, historians and other social scientists of the pre-war period were not assured of free and unhampered access to archives as one of the most important classes of research material. The moment they extended their studies to archival materials of other countries, they were likely to run into administrative obstacles and possibly into ill will on the part of governments that were averse to grant to the foreigner the privileges they accorded their nationals.

It seems imperative to remedy this situation if we intend to achieve an internationally-minded interpretation of the past. How can we hope to arrive at textbooks that do not "poison the minds of children and young people"<sup>5</sup> as long as access to the primary research material of history is contingent upon the nationality of the searcher and as long as records that may reflect unfavourably upon policies and activities of a state are reserved for the trusted, that is the nationality biased scholar? Free and equal access "by the citizens of all countries"<sup>6</sup> to archival materials must be guaranteed if their truthful and unbiased use, a prerequisite of truthful and unbiased treatment of past events, is to be guaranteed.

At present, accessibility of archival materials depends solely on the discretion of the government that owns them. What we must strive for is that they become available to all searchers of all nations under uniform terms, and it is UNESCO alone that can remove existing barriers by pronouncing a bill of rights for the user of archives. UNESCO should draft a "code of principles or ethics" that would govern all nations in giving access to their archives, and it should use its machinery to see to it that this code is constantly and faithfully adhered to by its member states. The French Revolution opened the doors of the archives of the French Kings to the citizens of France. It is our hope that UNESCO will open the archives of all countries to the citizens of the new world. By doing so, it will help to lay the foundations of "mutual confidence" among nations and thus "contribute to peace and security".

<sup>5</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 11.

<sup>6</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 101.

# THE WOODSTOCK (OXFORDSHIRE) TOWN ARCHIVES

R. B. RAMSBOTHAM

WOODSTOCK is one of the smallest towns in England, with a population of less than 2,000. It is 8 miles north of Oxford, on the main road to the north. But, though small, it has long been prominent in English history. King Alfred translated "the consolations" of Boöthius in Woodstock. In Plantagenet days it was the site of a favourite royal hunting box, and the Black Prince was born there. Naturally there grew up round the Court a small body of traders and Court employees who made use of their situation to obtain from King Henry VI, a charter of self-government, under a mayor, aldermen, and common councillors. This charter, dated 29 Henry VI (1451) has been lost, but it is among the Charters enumerated in the Charter-roll at the Public Record Office, London, and its existence is referred to in subsequent charters (several of which are "inspeximus" charters) granted to the town.

These charters and papers, like those in many an English country town and family, have received little care or attention ; the fact that so much has survived can only be ascribed to freedom from foreign invasion, and the almost immortal qualities of vellum and parchment, which resist heat and cold, damp and dryness, and even mice and insects in a way that no other material, that I know of, does.

After the close of the last war, when we had at last a little leisure for other things than self-protection, and such war service as the aged could render, I obtained permission from the Council to make a close examination of these records, and the process has taken me nearly three years. A preliminary examination revealed that the documents had been examined by some trained student of historical documents at some earlier date, and some of the more valuable had been set aside, but some had actually been pasted in a book too small to hold them: certain others had escaped observation including the original demand for the second writ of shipmoney, 1635, which was the leading factor in the causes that led to the Civil War. The documents were in no sort of order: title deeds, wills, final concordats, sales purchases all heaped together. In this confused mass was the actual list of payments made by the Woodstock inhabitants in 1635 to the demand for shipmoney: the Borough was extremely loyal ; the money was collected in a month, and the name of each contributor

is marked off as payment was received. Another important paper that I found was a letter from King James II with his own signature to the Lord Lieutenant of Oxfordshire, Lord Lichfield, authorising him to raise the horse and foot militia for the defence of the realm ; this was in 1688.

Much of the material is difficult to read for those who have no knowledge of 15th and 16th century English: the earlier documents, with few exceptions, are in Latin. Certain documents are written in the 17th century Chancery script which was so devised as to be unintelligible to the layman ; it required the services of a Chancery clerk to decipher it.

Papers belonging to one set of transactions had been opened and scattered about with the papers of others ; but enough material remains to give an interesting and detailed history of a small English Borough for the last 500 years, both political and economic.

The Woodstock Town Archives and documents may be classified in the following groups:

I. The Charters: nine in all from various Sovereigns.

*The Constitution*, oath of the Mayor, Aldermen, Common Councillors.

• Oath of the Freemen,<sup>1</sup> etc.

(These oaths were taken to preserve the liberties and privileges of the Council.)

II. Proceedings of the Council.

The Acts of the Council, 1671-1699.

The Proceedings of the Port moot Court: these are hardly distinguishable from the Acts of the Council. The Port moot was the Council sitting as a Commercial Court, 1588-1635.

Also a bound volume, recording purchases of land within the Borough from 1461.

The Chamberlain's accounts—an abstract 1570-1840. This abstract is contained in one large sheepskin-covered paper book and was in constant use for over 250 years.

III. Miscellaneous documents and papers.

(a) The most notable of these is the Assize of Victuals, 1604, which was reproduced in the Journal of the Historical Society for 1898: it is the most complete list of prices for all kinds of victuals of that day known in England.

<sup>1</sup> When the Rt. Hon'ble Winston Spencer Churchill received the Freedom of Woodstock (his native town) in 1946, he took the freeman's oath in the words drawn up in 1570, and recorded in the Town's Constitution.



It is written on paper and wrapped in a beautifully illuminated sheet torn from a Pontifical of about 1175-1225 A.D. A lamentable reminder of the senseless destruction wrought by the so-called Reformation.

- (b) The 2nd writ of shipmoney (already mentioned).
- (c) Certain Commissions of the Peace signed by Queen Elizabeth and King James I.
- (d) A large parchment Chancery document, dated in the year 1655 Oliver, Lord Protector of England, etc. This is of no particular value except for its massive and beautiful seal.
- (e) Dy. Lieutenants' (of the County) Commissions, some left blank, signed by Lord Lichfield, Lord Lieutenant in 1688.
- (f) The inventory of the personal effects and property left at his death by Sir Thomas Spencer, High Steward of Woodstock. This is an interesting record of the household and other possessions of a leading gentleman of the County in 1622.

IV. Lists of rentals—very incomplete—commencing in 1461 and going down to the 19th century.

V. A large number of Corporation Leases of houses and lands.

VI. Many unsorted indentures and agreements belonging to various bundles of title-deeds to property, which have been hopelessly confused and mixed.

Many concordats and wills and some marriage settlements, inventories of possessions, including a very complete list of the property, clothes, household goods, etc., of a prosperous yeoman about 1730, and the amount spent on mourning at his death.

VII. Indentures of apprentices.

Settlement of the Poor. (This ugly side of English rural and urban life is very prominent in 18th century Borough Records: by the Act of Charles II, each parish was responsible for its own poor, and destitute poor were remorselessly hounded back to the parish in which they were born, so as not to be chargeable to the parish in which they were living). Many bundles of papers dealing with these settlements are preserved in the Woodstock Archives.

VIII. Bundles of certificates of taking the Sacrament.

The Corporation and Test Acts of Charles II compelled every member of a Borough Corporation to take the sacrament according to Church of England. These Acts prostituted Religion to Politics—

"which made the symbols of Atoning Grace the key to Office, picklock to a Place ;" so wrote the poet Cowper, in his burning denunciation of the evil.

IX. Presentments of the Grand Jury—

Court Leet Summonses.

Views of Frankpledge.

Bundles of accounts, and many miscellaneous papers.

X. This last group is an interesting example of what may be found in the records of small towns. A mass of papers, some extremely valuable, were evidently deposited in the Town Hall for safe keeping by the Town Clerk, one Mr. George Ryves, about 1695 ; he was also a solicitor of some eminence locally, and was clerk to the Lieutenantry of Oxfordshire. The Lord Lieutenant of Oxfordshire at the time of Mr. Ryves' clerkship was the great Duke of Marlborough. Among the papers are several original letters to the Duke from the Privy Council, especially in 1708 or 1709, when a French invasion was expected to assert the claims of the old Pretender against Queen Anne: also a list of every Roman Catholic, male and female in the County of Oxfordshire at this time.

Mr. G. Ryves was succeeded in his practice by his son, Edward Ryves, and his grandson Edward Ryves, junr. They adopted his method of using the Town Hall archive room as the depository for their private papers. Edward Ryves junr. appears to have died about 1765 and left no heir or successor to the practice and the papers were left among the town's papers and were probably never examined until I went through them in the course of the last year: they are very numerous, dealing entirely with the period 1698-1760, and containing many family papers which yield considerable information about the life of the average countryman of that time in all grades of life.

I should have mentioned that Woodstock for nearly two centuries returned two members to Parliament and there are a certain amount of directions from the Sheriff of the County at the time of elections to Parliament, and a number of bills for parliamentary expenses sent in after the election to the successful candidate.

These records, it is hoped, will soon be catalogued, and some of the more important calendared. They are now housed in an excellent muniment room which was made from a disused lock-up, close to the Town Clerk's Office. This old cell affords absolute security: it has been made damp-proof and ventilated according to the modern methods in use for ventilating muniment rooms. Electric light has been installed ; the papers are all collected in strong card-board boxes

awaiting cataloguing and the contents of each box are recorded on a paper inside the box and an abstract of the contents of each box is entered in a book. The boxes measure approximately 15" x 10" and are stacked on a steel book-case ; there are about 80 of these boxes.

The Charters and documents which cannot be placed in a box are stored in a fine old 18th century wooden chest.

In addition to the above, the town preserves a beautiful silver-gilt mace with the Crown and C.R. on it dating from about 1665, and seals dating from 1634 but probably earlier.

The earliest document in the town's possession is a parchment, dated 1 Edward IV (1461) recording the purchase of a piece of land in Woodstock by one Thomas Pargiter of Chipping-Norton ; a family of that name still lives near by, and one of its members is a bank official in Barclay's Branch at Woodstock.

I hope that enough has been said to enlist the interest of members of the Commission in the documents and records to be found in any town with historical associations: families, especially those of land-owners, contain similar collections. These collections, or portions of them, too often come to the auction room and are sold to foreign buyers. 'This is a national loss, and also a loss to scholars in general, because collections of great value become dispersed irretrievably, resulting in a serious loss to knowledge. England has suffered terribly in this way. I respectfully submit to the members of the Indian Historical Records Commission that they should recommend to the Government of India some measure by which the Government can retain for itself the right of pre-emption of any national paper or collection of papers ; and in any case, whether it exercises this right or not, that no historical papers should be allowed to leave the country until a satisfactory photostatic reproduction of them has been deposited with the Director of National Archives.

# REPORT ON THE RECORDS OF THE CHIEF COMMISSIONER'S OFFICE, DELHI

T. G. P. SPEAR

*Selwyn College, Cambridge*

SOME YEARS AGO an attempt was made to emphasize the importance and value of local records for national as well as for local history.<sup>1</sup> The following paper is a report on some records preserved in the Chief Commissioner's Office at Delhi, which I was able to examine by the kind permission of the then Chief Commissioner.

These papers are all post-Mutiny ones, because the records before that time were destroyed during the Mutiny months. The surviving papers of the Delhi Residency Records are now to be found in the Record Office at Lahore while the Mutineers' papers were transferred to the then Imperial Record Department in 1899<sup>2</sup>. Some of these papers were kept in files, but most of them are in bundles, and require very careful handling. Some of the bundles examined (particularly bundle no. 185) were in urgent need of repair. Local records are possessions of both national and local importance, and it may be hoped that the local authorities will increasingly follow the notable example set by the National Archives under its present distinguished Director in the loving care and preservation of records of all kinds. Here also, is an opportunity for the rapidly expanding University of Delhi. With co-operation between the local authorities and University scholars a mine of unexploited historical material might be opened, to the mutual benefit of the city and the country, and of learning and administration.

Eight files of papers were examined in what may be called a trial sinking. But there is a far greater volume of material in the office from 1858 onwards. This material needs first, proper care for its storage and preservation; next it requires examination and sorting; it should thirdly be catalogued and finally a selection under various heads might be made. There is some, though not much, political material, and there is a good deal of material concerning the state of Delhi City and its development during the later part of the 19th

<sup>1</sup> *Local Records—A Delhi Experience and Suggestion* by T. G. P. Spear; paper read before the 16th session of the Indian Historical Records Commission, Calcutta, Dec. 1939.

<sup>2</sup> *A Press List of the Mutiny Papers 1857* was published by the Imperial Record Department in 1921.

century. There is likely, it may be suggested, to be found amongst these papers much information of interest to the economic and social historian, both with regard to the city and to the surrounding district. The phase of local history from 1858 to 1911, when Delhi was attached to the Punjab, is a distinct and well rounded one and could well be studied as a unit. During this period Delhi was neither the seat of the mediatized Moghul dynasty nor the imperial capital. But if shorn of some former glory it was in fact laying the foundations of its future greatness both as a modern communications centre and thus a suitable site for a capital city, and as a commercial centre. The Delhi of 1900 was a much bigger and more prosperous place than the Delhi of 1850 in spite of its Mutiny experience. What it had lost in glamour, it had more than made up in wealth and activity. Some of this development is to be attributed to the active government railway policy. But more perhaps was due to the rapid development of the Punjab, which converted Delhi in the economic sense from being an economic centre of mainly local importance and from the all-India point of view an economic frontier city into an important distributing link between the already prosperous United Provinces and the quickly growing Punjab. Administrative eclipse masked economic development. In 1847 the population of Delhi and its suburbs was thought to be about 163,000<sup>3</sup>; in 1868 it stood at 154,000<sup>4</sup> (thus still showing the effects of the Mutiny); but in 1881 the first full census returned 173,000 inhabitants and in 1901 the figure was 206,000. The material for studying the nature and steps of this development in the administrative, social and economic fields exists in the Chief Commissioner's Office and awaits a band of patient investigators to probe its secrets.

In the remainder of this paper the files actually examined are described and some examples of their contents are provided.

File no. 163 deals with the City Walls. It is mainly concerned with details of repairs and contains little of special interest.

File no. 167 concerns improvements and extensions to the western suburbs of Delhi in the years 1872—76 and is of great interest. In addition it contains interesting information about the Roshanara and Qudsia gardens. In 1872, we learn, the Roshanara garden was "in rack and ruin" and the Qudsia Bagh urgently needed maintenance staff. In September 1872 the establishment of these two was increased from Rs. 2,000 to Rs. 2,500 per annum and a correspondence follows

<sup>3</sup> Selections from Correspondence, North Western Province 18 I.13. Report of A. A. Roberts 17 July 1947.

<sup>4</sup> Delhi Settlement Report 1882.

showing the efforts of the local authorities to improve matters. Col. Cracroft, the Commissioner, championed the needs of Delhi to the Punjab Government, but a few months later (11 March 1873) the Deputy Commissioner was protesting against the dropping from the local budget of Rs. 6,000 for improvements and the reduction of the maintenance grant from Rs. 4,500 to Rs. 2,500. An attempt was then made to interest the Municipal Committee which by Resolution III of 1 July 1873 gave an additional grant of Rs. 2,500 for the improvement of the Roshanara. The improvements to both gardens were approved by the Conservator of Forests, Punjab (10 September 1873) and in 1874 the Roshanara Garden was handed over to the Municipal Committee. The corner had been turned, and though the management was said to be "haphazard" until Mr. Locke's appointment in 1905, the Roshanara was henceforth a garden and not a wilderness.

File no. 168 deals with the Delhi Institute. The early papers of the Delhi College have been preserved in the National Archives.

File no. 177 deals with historical monuments and consists chiefly of notes on their preservation.

File no. 182 concerns the demolition of houses between the Delhi Fort and the Jama Masjid and is of great interest. The two subjects which this file covers are the extent of the demolitions to be undertaken and the compensation to be given to property-owners. The extent of demolition was first fixed at a distance of 400 yds. from the Fort walls (January 1860), but in August of the same year was extended to 448 yards. The military (30 July 1860, Commissioner to Secretary, Punjab Govt.) wanted to include one side of the *Dariba* in the clearance and to demolish one side of Begam Samru's garden (her palace was occupied before the Mutiny by the Delhi Bank and later by Lloyd's Bank) and also the wall around the Roman Catholic Church (Executive Engineer to the Commissioner, 2 July 1860). The Panchayats of the city petitioned in favour of the *Dariba*. The Deputy Commissioner (Egerton) supported them, pointing out that many loyal Hindus lived there including the banker Salar Salig Ram, and emphasising its historical associations. These efforts were rewarded by the veto of the Lieut-Governor, and it is pleasant to think that Egerton thus earned the perpetuation of his name in the *Nai Sarak*. In this way Delhi obtained the great open space which adds such dignity to the old city.

The demolitions within the Fort enclosure can be traced in the same file. A letter from Major R. C. Lawrence to the Secretary, Punjab Government (13 January 1860) transmits the Governor-

General's orders which were based on proposals explained to him by Captain Hutchinson. They throw an interesting light on the vexed question of official vandalism. The northern portion of the enclosure was to be used for troops, the southern for officers' bungalows. "But instructions should be given to preserve isolated buildings of architectural or historical interest and in this matter it will obviously be best for the Departmental officers to err on the safe side, referring for the orders of his Honour the Lieut.-Governor whenever there is the slightest ground for hesitation". The *Diwan-i-Amm* was to be used as a hospital, but "to be injured as little as possible". The *Diwan-i-Khas* was to be restored with marble trellis work (as before the Mutiny).

The buildings overlooking the Jumna south of the *Diwan-i-Khas*, being "of little achitectural interest", were to be used for the troops but the *Khas Mahal* itself was to be isolated from these buildings. This is the explanation of the present lay-out of the preserved buildings. Opinions may well differ as to whether the *Musamman Burj*, the *Tasbih Khana*, *Khwābgāh* and *Baitak*, the *Rang Mahāl* and the *Mumtaz Mahāl* were "of little architectural interest" but at least the matter was considered carefully in the highest quarters.

The question of compensation for demolished property took years to settle, and much information is obtainable from this file. Briefly, it was proposed to compensate loyal property-owners from confiscated property elsewhere; for this purpose the condemned property was valued, and its owners were furnished with tickets representing its value which could be exchanged at par at auctions of confiscated property. The total value of the cleared property was calculated at Rs. 9,44,079 while the total value of confiscated property in all parts of the city was reckoned at Rs. 15,97,590 (17 March 1860 and 10 March 1860). A letter from the Punjab Government explains the procedure and the difficulties involved (no. 1650 from Punjab Government 23 September 1863):—

"It appears that early in 1860, orders were given to clear away the buildings for a distance of 400 yards round the outer wall of the palace which Government had resolved to fortify. Government also decided that the owners of all unconfiscated houses within that space should receive compensation, not in money, but in confiscated lands and houses, and that in giving them such lands and houses they should be credited with the value of the property destroyed.

"The mode in which the local officers proceeded to carry out these orders was the following: All the houses within the circle to be

cleared were valued by a Native Surveyor, an appeal lying from his valuation, to the Deputy Commissioner who settled such appeals on the spot. A Register was made of all the demolished houses and their value, and a ticket was given to each house-owner, whose house had not been declared confiscated. A sufficient number of confiscated houses in other parts of the city to cover the value of the demolished houses represented by tickets were to be put up to auction and ticket holders were to be allowed to pay in their tickets at par in payment wholly or in part for houses they might purchase at the auction. No sooner were the tickets issued than they began to change hands by endorsement without stamps; they were at first sold at 75 per cent discount. In July 1860, a meeting of some of the influential native gentlemen of Delhi who were ticket holders was convened. The persons present were 48 in number and represented only a small minority of the ticket holders. Particular attention is invited to that portion of the Offg. Deputy Commissioner's report which relates to this meeting, for it was out of what was done at this meeting that all the subsequent disputes have arisen.

"The estimated value of the houses demolished as represented by tickets was Rupees 6,10,399. At this meeting it was resolved, and agreed by the Deputy Commissioner, that out of the whole confiscated property in Delhi valued at about 13 lakhs the ticket holders should select property valued at Rupees 6,92,585 (being Rupees 82,186 in excess of the value of the houses destroyed), that Government should sell this property by auction receiving tickets in payment, *that the ticket holders should bear the loss or share the profit on the sale of this property*, those ticket holders who choose to purchase being guaranteed against loss under 50 per cent, but those who did not purchase were to run all risks.

"This arrangement was proclaimed through the city on 16th July 1860 and lists of the property selected for sale were distributed. Naturally enough, the great body of the ticket holders protested against the arrangement and demanded to know the *minimum* value at which their tickets would be received. Thereupon a second proclamation was issued explaining that tickets would be received at par, that if profit resulted it would be reasonably divided, if loss, the loss would be borne by those who did not purchase.

"In the following month, August 1860, orders were given to extend the demolitions to 448 yards beyond the outer wall of the fort. Tickets were issued to the owners of the houses included in the second demolitions on the same principle as before, but no lists were issued of the



property to be sold to cover these new demolitions. All ticket holders both 1st and 2nd were included in one general compensation list. The total estimate and value of the property represented by all the tickets has now risen to Rupees 8,77,000. The sale of confiscated property commenced in October 1860 and closed in October 1861. At first a very large profit was realised, but afterwards this fell off and some of the property sold at a loss .....

File no. 184 is in three parts and concerns the Mughul family. Part I deals with Bahadur Shah's journey down country from Delhi. He left Delhi on October 7, 1858, in the charge of Lieut. Ommanney. The party consisted of Bahadur Shah himself, Zinat Mahal Begam, Mirza Jiwan Bakht, Nawab Shah Zamani Begam, wife of Mirza Jiwan Bakht with her sister and mother, Taj Mahal Begam, another wife of the *ex-king*, Mirza Shah Abbas another son and his mother Mubarak Nissa, "a harem woman", four other harem women, five male and 11 female attendants. On October 9 Ommanney thus described his arrangements to Commissioner Saunders, enclosing a plan of his daily camp.

"My dear Saunders,

I was unable to make up the annexed list of prisoners yesterday, but have now done so having got my camp in working order.

Everything correct and the *ex-king* stands the travelling very well.

The camping ground cannot be marked out till daybreak consequently although in pursuance to orders issued by me, 30 coolies are stationed at each encamping ground to help my four chaprassies sent on ahead to pitch the prisoners' tents, it is impossible to have them ready pitched by the time of my arrival on the ground ; however I have not long to wait and the prisoners are kept perfectly separate from everybody till their tents are pitched and I never leave them till they are comfortably settled in their respective tents guarded by European Sentries. Eight chaprassies *cannot* pitch the tents in time, 20 chaprassies at least are required, but I can manage by having 30 coolies to assist and practice will make them perfect.

Yesterday morning at starting the Pole of the Bullock Palkee Gharee broke in two; it is repaired.

I allow the *ex-king* to travel in his palkee as he cannot sleep in the Gharee and this arrangement is as safe as the other and does not cause any *delay* on the march ; I also allow Jumma Bukt's wife to travel in other palkee as being in an interesting condition the jolting of the gharee and a restive bullock at starting or any other accident which might happen, causes and would cause her pain.

I always get up at 1½ A.M., begin to place the prisoners in their respective conveyances and then have them drawn up ready on the road, so that the column may not be delayed. I send you a sort of plan of the enactment, and also of the line of march.

My carriage is all complete, the two pairs of spare bullocks made their appearance and I have 20 camels. I send one set of tents at 5 P.M. every afternoon ; I think I have told you everything connected with the prisoners.

It is rather hard for me getting up at 1½ A.M. packing up the prisoners, the march and then settling them again. I never get into my tent till about 9 A.M. when I have breakfast, but I don't care a straw for any amount of work and am very jolly.

I am Honorary Member of the Lancer Mess, breakfast, dinner and tiffin, good stage at dinner twice a week, a pack of Hounds accompany the column on the march, and we have a run when we succeed in getting a jackal, there is a Book Club and in short it is as comfortably and perfectly managed as any.

E. S. Ommanney, Lieut."

Parts II and III of file 184 deal with the pensions of the *ex-Royal* family. There are a number of lists of prisoners, with many curious details. We learn that a direct descendant of Shah Alam, having been transported to Moulmein as a convicted rebel, had there received a pension of Rs. 50 per month, while his unconvicted father at Agra was only receiving Rs. 5 a month. He had married a Burman and had four children. The post-mutiny pensions were distributed largely on the advice of Mirza Ilahi Baksh and followed the rates of Bahadur Shah. One grandson of Bahadur Shah was a *mandari* or puppet showman. The pensioners were divided into classes and there is much detailed information for those who may wish to delve further.

File no. 185 deals mainly with *Salatin* convicted and transported. It also gives particulars about Mirza Ilahi Baksh, who had recommended Bahadur Shah to surrender and who was recognised as head of the family.

File no. 196 concerns the fate of mosques occupied after the taking of the city. The Jama Masjid was handed over to a Muslim Committee in 1862. The Fatehpuri Masjid had been occupied by troops in 1857, but the platform and the mosque itself were soon released. The court and shops were sold but in 1876 they were restored to the Muslim community, handsome compensation being paid to the son of the buyer. There is some interesting correspondence about the

sale of confiscated lands to provide the compensation. No ceremony was held, but a letter from the Deputy Commissioner Symth to the Commissioner dated 21 March 1877 (no. 105) deals with arrangements for the transfer. Finally, a letter from the Deputy Commissioner to Sir Lepel Griffin deals with the Zinat-ul-Masajid in Darya Ganj, which was not, however, completely restored until Lord Curzon declared it a Protected Monument.

Enough has been said, it is hoped, both to indicate the nature of these records, and to encourage further examination. The records examined are only a fraction of those in existence, and will, it is believed, repay further and detailed scrutiny.

# PROCEEDINGS OF THE SURVEY DEPARTMENT, 1865-1874: THEIR GENERAL CHARACTER

DASHRATHA SHARMA

*National Archives of India*

**T**HE RECORDS OF A BODY like the Survey of India have an interest of their own. They fully reflect, as nothing else can, the growth of this splendid organisation which, since its modest beginning in 1764 A.D., has in spite of the greatest difficulties added one square mile after another of India and the bordering countries to its maps. Nor does this achievement appear astonishing when we read about the care with which its officers were selected. They had, of course, to be good scientific workers and organisers. But they were expected at the same time to be good students of human nature, capable of not merely using their survey instruments but also their diplomatic skill in dealing with Indian chiefs and hostile border tribes.

My personal acquaintance with the Survey records is not great. It is limited to the proceedings of the years, 1865-73. One of the eight zinc boxes in which these were sent to the National Archives of India has been found to be a total loss. The corrosive action of metal had destroyed the papers before they reached their new home. The contents of two more tin boxes, *i.e.*, one-quarter of another zinc box, have been lost to posterity in the same way.

The majority of the papers included in these proceedings naturally consist of applications for maps and appointments, orders of transfer, dismissal, increment, promotion and so forth. But even these apparently dry-as-dust documents are not without historical value, for through them we can trace the careers of well-known figures like Godwin Austen, T. H. Holdich, and Montgomery. We have here also the papers dealing with the organisation of the Department, showing how great changes took place in the years 1866 and 1874.

Interspersed with such papers are others of a more general interest, some of them D.Os. to the Surveyor General of India. A letter of August, 1867, for instance, complains of the Jaipur Maharaja's indifference towards the Survey operations in his State. The cause, we find from another letter, was his non-receipt of the Survey maps of his State. The Surveyor General wrote back that the maps in question should be presented to the Maharaja as early as possible either by the officer himself or by the Political Agent who had been taking

keen interest in the matter. In the Punjab only two States, Mandi and Sirmoor, showed in the beginning any desire to have their lands surveyed. But the Survey's greatest difficulties were encountered on the north-eastern and north-western frontiers. Here the tribes were hostile. The Surveyors worked knowing fully that their lives were every moment in danger. Even in the best of times and with all precautions taken—which naturally could not always be the case—the task was not by any means easy. But it was a task extremely necessary. It had to be done if the frontiers were to be safeguarded and the Empire was to be put on a firm basis.

Various letters in the series show the keen interest the Government took in the completion of the Frontier survey. They provided guards as well as police. They also instructed their Agents to look to the safety and convenience of the surveyors. On the 2nd August, 1873, the Lieutenant Governor of Bengal warmly congratulated the Political Agent, Hill Tipperah, and Captain Badgley for their journey across from Surthey. He "awaited with interest the submission of a full report by Captain Badgley of the Survey operations in the country through which he had travelled" and hoped to have from the Political Agent "a very full description of all that had been done, of the country, the people, the position of villages, and *everything tending to elucidate the question of the policy and defence in this quarter.*"

The full account demanded by the Bengal Government must have been submitted in due course and may be somewhere in the papers of the Foreign Department of either the Bengal or the Indian Government. It would be certainly an interesting document relative to the north-eastern policy of the British Indian Empire. Undoubtedly much less in importance than this, yet not uninteresting, is the Political Agent's letter which brought forth the congratulations mentioned above, for it shows the amount of energy that even the most highly placed British officers could put into the work of serving their country. Where the Kookee and Bengali coolies had to be left behind, the former being too lame to move even without loads, these agents of the Government plodded on, as if unconscious of the danger to their lives and health. The journey across from Surthey "was terribly severe, now over huge boulders, now up to the waist in water with a hot sun overhead." From morning to evening the party sometimes did three miles only, as the crow flies, and that after the hardest marching. When the Political Agent reached Beparry Bazar, after passing through the hostile Lushai country, nearly every one of the party was suffering from some complaint or other.

For students of British Indian foreign policy and external affairs such letters are highly useful. But even better than these are the reports of great surveyors like Godwin Austen, scientific, accurate and full of interesting details, sometimes even unequivocally indicating the policy which the Government should follow. Of these reports some were published, others were not. Some had two editions, one for the Foreign and Political Departments and the other for general consumption. It would be an interesting task to compare these expurgated and unexpurgated editions.

Other interesting facts are also not lacking. The Government of India has recently revised the spelling of some of our important towns. Cawnpore has become Kanpur. Benares is now Banaras, as it should be. These orthographic absurdities might have disappeared long ago, if the Government had listened to the protest lodged by the Surveyor General against the retention of forms like "pore", and not decided finally that "the orthography of names of well-known places should be retained".

Captain Riddell's case (143-44 of Dec. 1872) shows how the British officers of the Survey sometimes took the law into their own hands. Dissatisfied with the conduct of certain policemen who had quarrelled with his peon, the Captain had them flogged, after fully satisfying himself that their hearts were sound enough to stand the punishment!! The matter must have created some stir in its time, because it had to be referred to the Governor General by the Government of Bengal. In some other cases too complaints reached the Surveyor General's office. An enquiry was always instituted, though its results might not always have been satisfying to the complainant.

Proceeding No. 312 of February, 1874, gives the list of treasuries and a map of the Financial Circle, 1874. The information supplied by it might be valuable enough for future generations. But the information that it gathered for its own generation too was extremely valuable. Captain Powlette, who was employed in preparing the Rajputana Gazetteer, desired that the Survey maps might give the character of houses in villages, whether they were *pucca* or *kuchcha*. The Surveyor General replied saying that though this sort of information could not possibly be embodied on the face of the maps, the executive officers in charge of Surveys collected such statistical information as was feasible and the alphabetical registers maintained by them contained information as to the number and description of houses, the latitudes and longitudes of villages, the district or State to which they

belonged, besides points of interest connected with their history and manufacturers. (See Nos. 313-14 of October, 1874).

Facts equally or even more important can be gleaned from our records by an investigator according to his own interest and line of research. This short note is merely intended to show the general character of the papers in the proceedings from 1865 to 1874.

# RECENT DEVELOPMENTS IN RECORD PRESERVATION

ARTHUR E. KIMBERLY

*National Archives, Washington*

THE NATIONAL ARCHIVES OF THE UNITED STATES has been one of the leading exponents of scientific record preservation since its formation in 1935. Among its contributions are the lamination process for reinforcing and preserving fragile documents by impregnation with cellulose acetate, the vacuum process for fumigating books and records, the air stream method of cleaning documents and other minor innovations. Research was curtailed sharply during the years of the finished product considerably. An investigation designed to find paper is to outline our progress in the field of scientific record preservation during the period 1946-1948.

Two significant developments were made in the field of lamination. One of these dealt with the processing of documents comprising twenty sheets or less, which were formerly laminated and then sowed into a paper cover so that the document could be handled as a single unit. A tab bearing identifying data was laminated to the first sheet in such a manner that it projected over the edge of the shelf when the material was flat filed. Each sheet was equipped with a cloth strip (2 inch surgical gauze) along the binding edge to take the sewing. When sewn into a kraft paper cover, the resulting pamphlets were somewhat thicker at the back than at the front and, therefore, could not be stacked as high as if this unevenness were not present. Additionally the time consumed in jacketing the sewing raised the cost of the finished product considerably. An investigation designed to find more satisfactory and cheaper method of treatment was undertaken and after considerable experimentation a process, whereby both lamination and binding are accomplished simultaneously in one pass through the hydraulic press was developed.

In the new process, the individual sheets making up the documents are placed between sheets of cellulose acetate foil in the usual manner and a strip of cloth is placed along the binding edge of the sheet. Both paper and cloth are fastened to the foil at several points by the application of a small amount of pure acetone. A kraft paper cover of the proper size is placed open upon a press plate and partially covered with metallic aluminium foil so placed that only an inch strip running vertically parallel with the hinge is uncovered. A prepared sheet is



then added to the stack in such a position that the cloth binding strip rests upon the uncovered portion of the cover while the foil covering the remainder of the sheet rests upon the aluminum and paper is repeated until the booklet is completely assembled and the cover is closed upon the top sheet of aluminum. Heat and pressure are then applied to the complete assembly in a hydraulic press. Upon removal from the press, the sheets of aluminum are removed. The final result of this process is a paper covered booklet of laminated pages, the binding edges of which are firmly fused together. Booklets of this type may be stored in sizeable stacks without danger of slippage, open flat for ease in reference and photography and are more economical in labour than the sewed variety.

Another problem which was solved by a modification of the lamination process was the mounting of maps. The conventional method of reinforcing maps is by mounting them on cloth (usually cotton sheeting) using starch paste as an adhesive. Mountings of this sort afford satisfactory reinforcement at first but as the paste ages a loosening of the bond between paper and cloth occurs which eventually results in separation of the two. Moreover, such mountings give no protection to the surface of the map and are susceptible to attack by moulds and insects. Research here has shown that maps can be mounted on cloth using a sheet of cellulose acetate foil in lieu of the usual layer of paste and causing the acetate to adhere to both map and cloth by the application of heat and pressure in a hydraulic press. The bond between the paper and the cloth in this event is permanent and is unaffected by age, moisture, moulds or insects. If desired, the face of the map may also be protected by another sheet of acetate which can be applied at the same time and in the same operation as the mounting. Maps mounted and covered in this fashion have undergone service tests under severe tropical condition with no noticeable deterioration. This sort of mounting is also more flexible and less bulky than the conventional type.

Containers for unbound records have been the subject of much attention on the part of archivists in an effort to devise a cheap, light weight container which would afford protection against fire, water and insects, and, at the same time permit the optimum use of storage space. The original equipment here was designed for horizontal storage and consisted of shallow, metal drawers or trays, equipped with covers, of which twelve or twenty four were contained in a metal frame, known as a tray-case. The storage areas were equipped with metal uprights so spaced that three twenty-four tray tray-cases, piled one on top of

the other, could be accommodated between each pair of uprights. Equipment of this type is wasteful of space and gives no protection against fire although flame will not spread from one tray to another.

In 1942 under the pressure of a space shortage vertical filing came under consideration and a cardboard container was devised to accommodate five linear inches of records stored vertically. Using shelves and these cardboard containers an increase of approximately thirty per cent in the volume of records which could be stored in a given unit of space was obtained. The lighter weight of these containers, their increased resistance to the wear and tear of use and the important fact that cardboard could be obtained during the war years made them particularly attractive. However, their low resistance to fire and the fact that flame may be propagated from one such container to another are distinct drawbacks to their extensive use.

As the direct outgrowth of the fire testing of cardboard containers and the metal containers, a new type of document container has been developed. This box is basically the standard cardboard document container with the addition of a thin sheet of aluminum foil on both the inner and outer surfaces of the box. This novel type of container will permit its contents to survive unharmed in fire which results in the total destruction of the contents of both metal containers and the old type of cardboard container. Work now underway points to the adoption of a box made of foil-coated corrugated board so constructed as to permit the storage of both letter and legal size documents without waste space.

The maintenance and rebinding of bound records has always been an expensive proposition. This is particularly true if the paper has deteriorated to such an extent that the stitches can no longer be held at the back of the signatures and guards must therefore be inserted prior to sewing. In such cases it has been our practice to dismantle the book entirely and to laminate each sheet incorporating a strip of gauze along the binding margin. Sheets so treated may be bound by oversewing and subsequent insertion into covers of the conventional type. Recent work here indicates, however, that more satisfactory results may be obtained by drilling holes through these binding strips and fastening the sheets into a binder by means of metal posts which pass through holes in the binder then through the holes in the sheet and are secured through the back cover by a suitable locking device. The metal posts and the backs of the pages which would otherwise be exposed are covered by a piece of buckram which is securely glued to the covers. Bindings of this type may be easily dismantled if it is

desired to microfilm the contents or to correct errors in arrangement, which may be discovered at a later date. Additionally the course of treatment in this fashion is approximately one third of the cost of the conventional binding. Titles and other identifying data may be printed on the backs and covers of these bindings by the usual methods.

It is hoped that the story of the developments in the field of record preservation will prove helpful to other workers in the same field and will stimulate research and development work in this neglected by-road of science.

# APPLICATION OF MICROFILMING TO STATE ARCHIVES

ROBERT MARICHAL

*Archives Nationales, Paris*

**I**N FRANCE the application of microfilming process for the reproduction of state archives dates practically from 1944. Well before this date, since around 1930, the D.A.F. had followed with interest the progress of the technique in this field, but then in the public Archives microfilming was limited to special jobs in which portable apparatus was used. It was only in 1944 that the D.A.F. itself processed on microfilm entire series of documents and some of its most valuable inventories. Today there is in the Archives Nationales a laboratory, owned by a private association but under a contract with the Archives, which works both for the Archives as well as for private parties. This laboratory is equipped with a Débrie set.

Since only 35 mm. films have been used for the Archives so far, we shall deal with those alone here ; we shall discuss later the uses to which 16 mm. films can be put.

Microfilming of archives raises a number of technical problems of great variety and very difficult of solution. To the ingenuity of designers they offer a unique field for experiments. It may be asserted that only the most perfect equipment could give the archivist entire satisfaction by answering all his needs. Thus the extension of microphotography to archives would act as a stimulus to progress of which the benefit would be enjoyed by all who make use of this technique. It is, however, regrettable that their paucity of funds does not enable the archives to stimulate the enthusiasm of manufacturers to design models answering all their requirements. Improvement in the quality of the apparatus would largely compensate for the money spent on this account.

On the face of it two types of difficulties present themselves in the application of the microfilming process to archives: first, the extreme variations in the dimensions of documents which range often from 10 or 5 cm. to 1, 5, 6 or even 30 metres long. The coefficient of reduction required thus often passes the ratio of 25. It is known that in practice the best image is obtained with the ratio of 12 ; in fact, with the emulsions and apparatus now available, one may go without difficulty even as far as the ratio of 20. It becomes necessary,

therefore, to divide the document into several sections. Before taking each section in turn, it is better to photograph the entire document in order to obtain a picture of the whole. Then a second picture can be taken, also of the entire document but on which are marked the proposed sections by means of strings and letters. This would constitute the "assembly chart" (*tableau d' assemblage*).

These operations are simple, but they are time-consuming and they increase the net cost. They are still more so when in the same series of records the dimensions of successive documents keep varying all the time, as happens so often. For each document the ratio has to be changed and the focus adjusted. In such cases to give the reader a correct idea of the extent of reduction or enlargement, it is essential to include the scale in the images.

The second type of difficulty, namely those caused by the condition of the documents are more serious. The writing materials themselves offer a great range of tints—parchment gets browned, paper yellowed with age, modern "peels" become greyish, papyrus assumes the colour of dead leaf. Then, ink gets discoloured, the reference letters (*letrines*) stained, the carbon which has been subjected to rubbing comes off in a variety of ways. Furthermore, documents are not always homogeneous—not only are they often stained, they also frequently carry a wax seal almost black, or a lead, silver or gold seal.

Each document therefore calls for special treatment. For example, in order to photograph 13th century wax tablets, it would be necessary to sprinkle them with flour, gently wipe it off so that the hollows which form the writing appear white on a black ground. With different materials it becomes necessary to use lights of various intensity, from different angles, different colour filters, ultra violet or infra red rays, and special emulsions. In practice panchromatic films are used almost universally, but they are not always satisfactory; it is necessary to prepare some other varieties. Automatic cameras with large output generally give good results, but they should have more resilience, for example, provision for varying the time of exposure, etc. with ease.

The requirements of departmental archives do not generally justify very expensive cameras. The lighter cameras perhaps offer greater possibilities, but they require more expert operators. Their capacity is restricted and they are less sure.

None of the problems set forth is, however, technically insoluble at the moment of actual operation, but the modifications that they

call forth in the apparatus increase considerably the net cost; it is there that the ingenuity of the inventor can play a significant part.

Actually then in 75 to 80 per cent cases serviceable microcopies of archival materials can be made, but we are still far from perfection and, in any case, the operation costs more than microfilming printed or well typed commercial documents.

As to reading apparatus, the principal difficulty arises from the fact that most of them have fixed screens, permitting the full size reproduction of commercial sized papers reduced 12 times. The larger measurements of a great number of old documents do not lend themselves to such rigid conditions. It is a general principle that a document should be reproducible on the screen at least in its actual size; for old documents in which the writing is often very small normally one should be able to have an enlarged projection. The quality of actual manufacture easily allows for an enlargement in the ratio of 25: so it is necessary that the screen should be at least one metre square. In actual fact we should have an adjustable screen.

On the other hand the reading apparatus should be able normally to project an image 24/36, because we have practically given up 18/24 images. It should also be able to project the image vertically or horizontally. It must be provided with a very strong light. It must have provision for winding the film, for archival microfilms will normally be kept in the form of rolls. As in cinematographic equipment, the pressure on the film from the carriage along which the film glides should ease itself when the film moves to and fro in order to avoid scratching.

Finally, one should be able to copy an old archival document while deciphering it. Projection on a vertical screen is inconvenient for this purpose. It is therefore necessary that the reader should be able to project the image horizontally on its table. As the ratio of reduction may be variable, it is necessary that the projector should be capable of being moved up and down the work table (reading matter on a ground glass is particularly indicated for plans and designs).<sup>1</sup>

Such are the exigencies the experience of which leads us to formulate our opinion with regard to readers—none of those which are available is entirely satisfactory in fact. As for viewers, modifications carried out there are technically practicable but difficult. As

<sup>1</sup> We leave out here the controversy between perforated and non-perforated film strips. We would be inclined to prefer the perforated film which we use, as does almost everyone else in France, but the question appears to us of greater interest to manufacturers than users. If a system of moving the film with intermittent pressure can be realized with non-perforated film, we shall have no more reason to prefer the perforated film. But an international standardization may step in before long.

with viewers, available readers give good results on an average and with a little ingenuity one can adapt them for all needs.

For public Archives microfilms can serve two purposes: first, making documents available to readers at distant places, and, secondly, making available to readers working in the Archives documents preserved elsewhere.

The facilities offered by microfilm towards these ends are too well known to be detailed over again. There are only a few subsidiary questions which call for any comments.

For despatch and classification of microfilms, many prefer strips of six images. Without denying their advantages, Archives consider as more practical for their particular purposes rolls of different lengths, as far as possible one roll to a bundle, register, or carton, without exceeding as a rule an overall length of 30 metres. Archivists and historians, used as they are to browsing through long series of little legible documents, are not always very much conscious of the inconveniences entailed in hunting for one particular frame from among 750 others in a roll, particularly when each folio or page of a document is numbered. All that they pray for is an apparatus which would permit a film to be rapidly unrolled; any researches towards automatic selection they would consider something of a luxury.

It appeared to us in fact indispensable—and I am happy to see that on this point, among others, our experience is confirmed by those of the Director of Debt, Mr. Bienenfeld—to adopt a principle which the cinema industry observes scrupulously: never to send out the original negative of a microfilm on account of the risks of wear and tear or loss involved. Only copies should be sent out to readers—hence the interest in the Débrie apparatus—either photostats or positive prints.

Moreover it appears to us, (and there again the Directorate of Debt, where for eight hours every day a number of employees are engaged in examining microfilms, agrees with us) that on projection a negative copy is more legible and less tiring than a positive copy. A copy therefore is preferable to a positive print, but there are other considerations which might point to exceptions to this rule.

But it is not so much the facility for distribution as certainty of preservation of their documents which Archives seek in microfilms. They provide, in the present state of the technique, a method which is at once the least expensive, the most faithful and the most practicable against risks of the destruction of the originals. It is superfluous

to recall that the existence of the originals are constantly menaced by insects, bacteria, noxious gases, even oxygen, humidity or dryness, light, fire and, in our days, the innumerable instruments of destruction employed by modern armies. Microfilm can easily provide against these risks.

Since there is not enough actual experience at hand to judge the ability of microfilm to resist the effects of time, artificial ageing tests made in the United States have enabled us to conclude that microfilms show resistance conditions equal to an effect of 50 years' life, and it is currently estimated that kept in temperature and humidity which are normal in our climate, microfilm has the same life as the best paper. It is considered, however, prudent to examine the master copy every ten years to verify its state of preservation. Practically it may be taken that a collection of microfilms can be preserved for an unlimited period, for nothing would be easier than to make prints or fresh copies from them as soon as they show signs of decay.

As to danger from war, the small bulk and light weight of a collection of microfilms make protective measures easy to take. At the Archives Nationales in 1939, 300 three-ton trucks were required to evacuate a part, only a part, of the documents; six such trucks would have been enough to move their microfilm copies.

Considered as security copies and being capable of making up for the destruction of the originals (if that should happen), the microfilms should be the object of particular care at the time of taking the shots: quality of the negative, completeness of the photographs of the documents, recto and verso, even if the verso is blank, inclusion of the scale of reduction at the side of each document, proper processing of the film, especially washing and the amount of hyposulphite, collation with the originals, all these should be carefully borne in mind. It is desirable that the documents should be filmed by the entire series. For classification, the Archives prefer, it has been said, rolls which take less space and are easier to manipulate than strips, each roll corresponding to a homogeneous group of documents and bearing the order of the documents reproduced. In this way is obviated the need for preparing cross-reference tables which are the plague of libraries and Archives. But in order to maintain a decimal control, it is better to have a register of entry.

If microfilming is a useful precaution against the total loss of old documents, it is a necessity for contemporary documents. The quality of the present day paper is so poor that chemists agree that they will not last beyond a few dozen years. Certain typewriter inks



corrode the paper; specially made thin papers on which carbon copies are made and the carbon impression which is not fast, are doomed to a rapid deterioration. We have ourselves seen that within a year they become almost illegible and practically lost because all hopes of photographing them is also gone. The only practical means of saving the major part of our contemporary documents, therefore, is to microfilm them at the earliest moment.

In these circumstances it may be asked if it is worthwhile trying to save the original also. Most archival repositories are pressed for space. It is well known what difficulties—sometime impossibility (the Directorate of Debts has the experience)—one faces in getting a new depository constructed, whereas it is true that by microfilming records and destroying the originals the problem of space is easily solved.

In the Archives Nationales, by using rolls of 10 metres each, it has been possible to place in a single carton microfilms of documents of which the originals occupy 315 cartons of the same size; using rolls of 120 metres, a single carton holds equivalent of 420 cartonfuls of documents. They consist of an old series (J) of parchment documents with heavy seals which are lightly piled up in the cartons. But microfilms of the fonds of Simancas on three metre rolls take 1/44th of the space occupied by the bound paper originals. Registers almost give as good results. It may be said that by using microfilms on rolls it is possible to effect an economy of space to the extent of nearly 98 per cent.

Maintenance of strips of six images is less advantageous; the Archives Nationales has not tried this method, but M. Bienenfeld has been kind enough to let us have the results he obtained at the Directorate of Debt. The saving there is to the order of from 120 sq. metres to 0.41 sq. metres in area and from 2.79 cu. metres to 0.21 cu. metres in volume.

If then it is decided to microfilm and destroy the originals of some of our modern documents already deposited in our archives and that henceforth most of the new accessions are treated in the same way, it will not be necessary to construct new depositories until a long time to come.

This solution deserves serious consideration. Some objections to it come to mind naturally. What will be the evidential value of a microfilm copy of a record before a court of law? Actually law courts call for the original documents; possibly before long would be obtained the admissibility of negatives, contact prints or photostats

in place of the original. Could the same privilege be extended to microfilm? Experts agree that it is practically impossible to fake a stereo 24 × 36 mm. The only difficulty that remains is the provision of guarantee at the time of the exposure and the signatures of proper validation attached to the film. Whatever be the solution adopted, it would not affect the public archives in the same way as it would private archives. This is because, in the first place, there is a presumption of authenticity of the documents preserved in a state Archives, a privilege not enjoyed by private Archives. Secondly, state Archives throw open to the public only such records as are 50 years or more old and only a few among them are called up in court cases. Finally, since the Archives and administrative departments acting under the authority of the Archives send every year for destruction a large number of papers without historical value after getting the advice of competent officers, and since the same procedure would apply to photographs, microfilms would acquire a special value so that courts would be obliged to recognise them as evidence. However, from the point of view of the historian it is obviously desirable that documents dated earlier than 1789, of which the destruction is prohibited without exception, and probably those of the 19th century should not be subjected to this measure, *i.e.*, destruction of the original and keeping a microfilm copy. Also to be excluded are all documents of the greatest importance such as international treaties or certain autographs which have evidently value as relics. In addition, we believe, one should also preserve such documents which would enable one to make a study of the peculiarities of paper or which carried erasures not visible to the naked eye but apparent with the aid of ultra-violet rays. These are mentioned only by way of examples; there would certainly be others which merit consideration and it is quite evident that no drastic measure should be adopted without the advice of a competent commission.

More serious perhaps will be the financial objections to microfilming all modern records straightway. It is true that the cost of building of a depository with 10 kilometres of shelves would come to about 100,000,000 francs. According to our calculation, very approximate of course, 10 km. of shelves would represent 20,000,000 folios, *i.e.*, 40,000,000 sides including recto and verso. Then at the rate of 4 fr. to the image (a very low price) the microfilming of this collection would come to 160,000,000 fr. in 24/36 and 80,000,000 fr. in 18/24. Microfilming is, in short, as expensive as a new building.

It is true that the financial side is not all. There are to be

considered shortage of space, shortage of materials, and so on. Again, the problem does not arise in this bold theoretical form, but often in the following manner. Let us take a depository the holdings of which increase at the rate of 1 km. of documents per year. Is it more advantageous to spend at once 100,000,000 fr. to construct a building which would be full in 10 years, or take every year 4,000,000 exposures which will require around 20 m. of shelves and will cost 16,000,000 fr.?

We only put the question; we do not have the answer.

Side by side with the 35 mm. microfilm is also used the 16 mm. film which is more practical in certain ways but with limited application. We have not yet attempted using them in the Archives, but in the light of what we know of it, it is quite probable that it will suit perfectly if not everything at least a large number of contemporary documents. Now the 16 mm. frame costs hardly a quarter of the 35 mm. frame. The microfilming of the holdings of a depository with 10 km. shelf-space would come, in that case, to 40,000,000 fr., half the price of an adequate building.

But, in fact, for contemporary documents we have no choice. In 50 years, *i.e.* by the time the contemporary documents would become accessible to historians, our beautiful depository with 10 km. of shelves will have nothing left in it except dust.

Archivists give much of their time, care and resources to classify the records of the "Occupation" and inventorying them. In 50 years, may be in 20, there will be nothing left of these documents; a good deal among them are perhaps already unphotographable. If these files are not immediately microfilmed, this excellent and unique source material for the four most tragic years of our history shall entirely disappear.

This is only an instance; one can generalize from this. All records in the Archives, all newspapers, majority of the books of these last years are all in the same condemned state. The archivist can only sound a note of warning and indicate the solution, the only one. It is for the government to decide whether or not it wishes that we may go down in History.

## CHINESE SOURCES FOR INDIAN HISTORY

CHIA-LUEN LO

LIKE THE KNIGHTS OF THE GRAIL historians know no national boundaries in their quest for sources for history; but unlike the knights they can often than not attain their objects if they follow the right direction. For instance, in recent decades, Chinese historians like Hung Chiung,<sup>1</sup> Ko Shao-Wen<sup>2</sup> and Tu Chi<sup>3</sup> completed their important works on the history of the Yuan Dynasty (*i.e.* the history of the Mongolian period) by collecting, comparing, analyzing and utilizing historical materials from Western sources bearing upon that period, thereby giving rise to a new type of scholarship on Yuan history. Scholars of Iranian history will always appreciate the contributions found in B. Laufer's famous book *Sino-Iranica* which, revealing as it does Chinese sources hitherto unknown, throws a great deal of light on the history of Iran. And I cannot help feeling a little proud when I say that books by Chinese scholar-pilgrims, such as Fa Hsien, Yuan Chwang, and I Tsing, written in the early centuries and preserved to this day, can still be valuable sources for Indian history. Indeed, their names and books may be regarded as an inseparable part of Indian history and historiography as well.

Curiously, the records and writings of those Chinese pilgrims had been little known in modern India until European scholars translated some of them into English and other European languages. Great credit goes to James Legge,<sup>4</sup> Thomas Watters,<sup>5</sup> Samuel Beal,<sup>6</sup> St. Julien,<sup>7</sup> and a few other European sinologues. Distinguished

<sup>1</sup> Chinese Minister in St. Petersburg at the end of the 19th century, whose scholarly work "Supplementary Evidences from Translations for the History of the Yuan Dynasty" is a comparative study of Chinese and Iranian sources for that period.

<sup>2</sup> A great authority on the Yuan period, whose monumental work "The New History of the Yuan Dynasty" is generally accepted by Chinese and Japanese historians as a masterly contribution to the study of that dynasty.

<sup>3</sup> Late professor of the National Peking University, whose work "The History of the Mongols" is a careful study with reference to Western sources.

<sup>4</sup> "Fa Hsien's Records of Buddhist Kingdoms" translated by James Legge.

<sup>5</sup> Thomas Watters' "On Yuan Chwang Travels in India, 629-645 A.D." an English translation of Yuan Chwang's "Ta-Tang-Hsi-Yu-Chi" (Records of the countries West of Tang) with commentaries.

<sup>6</sup> Samuel Beal's "Buddhist Records of the Western World," a collection of his translations of the works of Fa Hsien, Sung Yun and Yuan Chwang.

<sup>7</sup> St. Julien: "Historie de la vie de Hiouen-Tsang et de ses voyages dans l'Inde, depuis l'an 629 jusqu'à 645". It is to be noted also that the work of I Tsing, "Nan-hai-chi-kuei-nei-fa-Chuan" was translated by Prof. J. Takakusu of Japan, the title of the translation being "Record of the Buddhist Religion".

Western scholars of Chinese history and explorers in Central Asia, such as Edouard Chauvannes, Henri Cordier, Paul Pelliot, and Aurel Stein also regarded as authoritative references the records and writings of those Chinese scholar-pilgrims. It is a pity, if not an irony, that we Chinese and Indians have done practically nothing in this kind of interesting and important translation work.

In my earlier years I began to interest myself in the works of those Chinese scholar-pilgrims and felt drawn to a style of amazing accuracy found in Yuan Chwang's *Ta-Tang-Hsi-Yu-Chi* (Records of the Countries West of Tang) and his disciple Hui Li's biography of him of the title of *Ta-Tzu-En-Ssu-San-Tsang-Fa-Shih-Chuan* (Records of the Tripitaka Master of the Great Compassion Monastery). Both books contain a detailed and clear picture of the conditions of India in general and those of the reign of Harsha in particular in respect of culture, education, calendar, measures, politics, social relations, agricultural produce, industrial products, and, above all, religious traditions. Yuan Chwang was a most beloved and esteemed disciple of Silabhadra and proved such a brilliant and original scholar in Buddhist studies that his master and eminent fellow-scholars showered upon him overwhelming admiration and even made him the occupant of the first chair among the lecturers in the Nalanda Monastery, the great centre of learning of the time. His unique academic standing may be compared to the regius professorship plus deanship in a time-honoured English university, but Yuan Chwang was a scholar and personality of such an unparalleled stature of any age. His records and writings have also for centuries helped his fellow countrymen to know India and her cultural and philosophical wealth.

After and even before Fa Hsien, Yuan Chwang, and I-Tsing, there came to India many other Chinese scholar-pilgrims at different times between the third and eighth centuries. Their records and writings, though they may not reach the high plane of those of the best known three pioneers, are, nevertheless, highly valuable in their own right. Here, we cannot do better than to quote the late Prof. Liang Chi-Chao, an eminent scholar and reformer, who made a revealing study of Sino-Indian cultural relations in early times and a far-reaching search for the names and deeds of those scholar-pilgrims first to go to India to build up an intellectual bridge. His essay *Chinese Students going Abroad 1500 Years Ago and Afterwards* was generally accepted as a careful treatise on this subject. In his *The Study of Chinese History*, a well-known book on Chinese

historical methodology, the author told his own story of how he had done the research work:—

"It has long been my endeavour to trace out the ancient cultural relations between China and India and to discover a stream of those Chinese scholar-pilgrims who went to India to cultivate such relations. Fa Hsien and Yuan Chwang are, no doubt, well known names. But my final findings among historical records and individual biographies cover 105 scholar-pilgrims whose names can be established and 82 others whose names are in oblivion. Anyway, for all we know, as many as 187 of them visited or attempted to visit India at different times. At first, I confined my research to Hui Chiao's *Kao-Seng-Chuan* (Biographies of Eminent Buddhists) and I-Tsing's *Ta-Tang-Hsi-Yu-Chiu-Fa-Kao-Seng-Chuan* (Biographies of Westward Pilgrims) and I was overjoyed when I had collected therein the names of 67 scholar-pilgrims. My continued efforts in several months brought the total to 187, whom I classified according to their respective periods, places of birth, routes they took from China to India, scholastic achievements, and so on. These findings, I believe, will serve to throw some light upon Sino-Indian relations in the olden days and the interactions of the Indian and Chinese arts, literatures and philosophies."

Part of Prof. Liang's findings on this subject is as follows:—

<i>Number of Pilgrims</i>	<i>Period of going to India</i>
2	Later part of 3rd century
5	4th century
61	5th century
14	6th century
56	7th century
31	8th century
<i>Number of Pilgrims</i>	<i>Condition of Trip and Sojourn</i>
42	They learned in India and returned to China.
16	They are known to have gone as far as Western Sinkiang, but it is not certain whether they went on into India.
Unknown number	They did not reach India; they turned back after having covered a greater part of the journey.
2	They did reach India, but they returned to China shortly.
31	They never reached India: they died on the way.
6	They died in India.
5	They died on their way back to China after having completed their studies in India.
6	They made their second pilgrimage to India. One of them died midway of his return trip to India.
7	They stayed on in India indefinitely.
Unknown number	It cannot be established whether they stayed on in India or returned to China or where they died.

All in all, 109 pilgrim-scholars can be traced with a fair amount of certainty while 82 others or more must be left to further research. Among the former, 37 died on their journey to or back from India and six died in India, making a death rate of 39·4 per cent. This surprisingly high mortality must be accepted when we see what almost insurmountable difficulties attended their travel in those days across quicksand deserts and over snowcapped mountains. For instance, when Yuan Chwang passed through the Yu Men Gate and debouched upon the Mo-Ho-Yen Desert, he recorded, "Here I can hardly proceed. So thirsty I am, having had not a drop of water for five days and four nights. I might die any moment. . . ." In the limitless expanse of the desert, this and other lone wayfarers followed no guide but the bleached bones of men and animals lying on the non-descript trail. As for the sea voyage it was beset by all manner of dangers and voyagers had to beg for their lives from winds and waves. Fa Hsien, for instance, braved the sea on his return trip to China. Once his boat was caught in a storm and the skipper ordered all the passengers to jettison all their belongings except necessary clothes. But Fa Hsien threw overboard his very clothes and kept his Buddhist scriptures and images instead. In another instance, while a furious typhoon was threatening to devour and capsize his boat, his fellow-passengers ascribed the wrath of the sea to the presence in their midst of a monk, and so they came near to throwing him into the sea as an appeasement. His intended destination was Canton, but, after being blown here and there for months, he finally landed at Tsingtao. It was a miracle that Fa Hsien and Yuan Chwang survived all the dangers of deserts, mountains, and seas. Only their thirst for knowledge, their religious fervour, their love for India, their conviction, fortitude and courage sustained them throughout their pilgrimage and such a spirit will always be a source of inspiration for those of us who wish to study India and Indian history and to develop closer Sino-Indian cultural relations.

While many of the pilgrims are not known to have left behind records or reminiscences, quite a few of them did write books, many of which later perished. For instance, the following books written by learned pilgrims in the 5th century are now known by their mere titles. *The Autobiography of Tao Yeh*, *Yu-lieh-Wai-Kuo-Chuan* (A Traveller's Records of Foreign Countries) by Bao Yun, *Wai-Kuo-Chuan* (Records of Foreign Countries) by Tuan Chin, and *Li-Kuo-Chuan-Chi* (Through Different Countries) by Fa Yung. . . all seem to have been lost or in obscurity. This undoubtedly is lamentable,

but one must not give up hope and say that these and other lost books or manuscripts are entirely irretrievable. Hwei Chao's *Wan-Wu-Tien-Chu-Kuo-Chuan* (Travels in Five Parts of India), written in the early 8th century, had long been given up as a complete loss until, forty years ago, it was discovered in part, by accident, in the Thousand Buddha Caves of Tung Huang, Kansu Province. This salvage consists of more than six thousand scribed words, which are of course only a portion, not an essential one at that, of a long book. Yet a new hope wells up in the hearts of those who are always searching for missing links in historical data. The late Mr. Lo Tsen-Yu edited this revived portion of the lost book of Hwei Chao in his *Cloud Window Collection*.

There are books which are partially preserved in another manner. They no longer exist in whole by themselves, but references to and quotations from them appear in books and records by their contemporaries and later authors. For instance, Wang Hsiun-Cheh, Chinese envoy to the court of Harsha from Emperor Tai-Chung of the Tang Dynasty, wrote a book in ten volumes, entitled *Travels in Central India*. Unfortunately, this important work is nowhere to be found today, albeit some fragments of it appear in *Fa-Yuan-Chu-Ling* (The Pearled Forest in the Garden of Supreme Laws), a voluminous compilation of stories related to Buddhism and to the Land of Buddha, edited by Tao Shie, a learned monk of the Tang Dynasty. I am inclined to think that in different sets of *Chun-hsu*, usually in the form of a stupendous series of compiled and collected works, there lies a rich field for multifarious attempts at historical research.

Buddhism, no doubt, supplied the chief inspiration for the cultivation of cultural relations between China and India in old times. Consequently, books by Chinese scholar-pilgrims, which contain the fruits of their study of Buddhism as their main objective, not infrequently shed side-lights upon the various periods of Indian history. For instance, the consecutive series of the famous work *Kao-Seng-Chuan* (Biographies of Eminent Buddhists), the first series of which was written by Hui Chiao and the second by Tao Hsuen, contain various materials on conditions in India, in relation to or told by those Buddhist masters concerned, during various periods from the fifth to the eighth centuries. Chi Pang's *General Records of Buddhist Masters* and Nien Chang's *Chronicles of Buddhist Masters* and some other books of the line can also guide us through the long journey of this research.



Another source to be explored lies not in the works of pilgrims, but in those of historians. Ssu Ma Chien, the Herodotus of Chinese history, was the first to write not only on China proper but also on the north-western border regions and the neighbouring countries beyond, and his stupendous work *Shih-Chi* (Historical Records) was to serve as an illustrious example of history-writing for later historians, by virtue of both comprehension and comprehensiveness. Following this beaten path, Pan Ku wrote *Han-Shu* (History of the Han Dynasty) and Fan Yeh wrote *Hou-Han-Shu* (History of the Later Han Dynasty), both with chapters on "Countries of the Western region" including at least a part of India. Chapters of similar nature are found in *Wei-Shu* (History of the Wei Dynasty) by Wei Siu, *Chiu-Tang-Shu* (History of the Tang Dynasty) by Liu Hsu and others, *Sin-Tang-Shu* (A new History of Tang Dynasty) by Ou-Yang Siu and others, and *Sung-Shih* (History of the Sung Dynasty) by To-Keh-To and others. In *Sin-Tan-Shu* there is a section on Kashmir, and in *Sung-Shih* a section on India.

Apart from the above-mentioned standard historical works, references to India exist also in works of sub-historical nature though they treat in the main of institutions, customs, and personages of different Chinese dynasties. Tu Yu's *Tung-Tien* (General Institutional History of China), Wang Pu's *Tang-Hui-Yao* (Essential Records of the Tang Dynasty) and Wang Chin-Yo's *Tse Fu Yuan Kwei* (a huge collection of various works, completed about the end of the 10th century, consisting of 1,000 volumes, under the general editorship of Wang Chin-Yo by order of Emperor Chen Chung of the Sung Dynasty) contain materials of historical interest with reference to India, although they are very much scattered in various parts and would call forth painstaking work in research.

In later ages, with the improvement of the technique of navigation, Chinese travellers began to take to the sea routes to India and more of them were motivated by trade interests than by religious fervour. Indeed, the contact between the south-eastern parts of China and the south-eastern parts of India turned to a different aspect of Sino-Indian relations and it was characterized by a lamentable drop in the high intellectual level set by the earlier pilgrims. However, some of the travellers of this period did leave behind their own records; or else we gather their accounts and descriptions of the lands they had visited in the writings by others. Both kinds are still of historical value. In *Sung-Shih* there is a description of the country of Chu-lien, which, by inference of the context, is no other

than Chola. *Ming Shih* (The History of Ming Dynasty) records Men-ga-li as having diplomatic relations with China in the 6th year of Emperor Yun Lo (1408) and in the third year of Emperor Chen Tung (1438). Men-ga-li was evidently the Chinese version of Bengal. The customs and institutions of Bengal in those days are also delineated in Ma Huan's *Yin-Yieh-Shen-Lan* (Scenes beyond the Seas), Fei Sin's *Sin-Cho-Shen-Lan* (In a Boat Floating toward a Starry Land), and Chen Jen-Sieh's *Huan-Ming-Shi-Fa-Lu* (Political and Legal Ordinances of the Imperial Ming Dynasty). Therein is found Co-Chi State, which is the nearest Chinese translation of Cochin.

In *Ming Shih*, the Cape of Comorin is pronounced as Cum-ba-li. Marco Polo's Comari is a corruption from Kumari in Sanskrit. According to the records of the early Portuguese settlers in India, the King of Comari had under his aegis the states of Kaulam and Travancore. These coasts witnessed the earliest Chinese fleet paying courtesy visits to India. It was commanded by Cheng Ho, who came with a mission to establish contact with the countries in south-eastern Asia.

The above-mentioned sources are simply a few illustrations which may lead to further research and to more fruitful results in the study of Indian history by dint of Chinese materials. Handicapped as I am by a very limited number of books which I have with me in Delhi, I regret that I have not been able to write more than I have done on a subject which I am sure you will agree with me requires any number of references and is in the nature of things hardly exhaustible. I should, however, content myself with this much and hope that a straw thus picked up may suffice to show which way the wind blows. Historical research anyway exacts very much time, patience and labour. A true historian shall never overlook tributaries to the stream of history but work on in the ardent belief that such tributaries, insignificant and feeble as they may at first appear, will accumulate by degrees and finally form a strong current in the river bed, carrying the past over to the present. And historical research is a field which yields more the more it is tapped. Such is the spiritual reward for the historian, apart from his possible contributions to the monument and heritage of human achievements.

## WHY PRESERVE RECORDS?<sup>1</sup>

PURNENDU BASU

*National Archives of India*

**I**N THE FIRST ARTICLE OF THIS SERIES it has been seen that

Records are the products of transactions of which they form an integral part. As a transaction progresses, documents relating to it accumulate, usually not according to any preconceived plan, but as occasions arise. By the time the activity ends there is a quantity of documents which reflect the history and the process of that particular transaction. They alone remain as complete evidence of the thoughts and activities relating to that transaction. It is known that all responsible agencies, whether a governmental agency, a business agency or private institution, have a tendency to keep either all or some of these documents. For such a universal tendency there must be some reasons of universal application which, once found, would provide the key to the answer to the question put in the title of this article.

### I

Whenever we keep by something, we do so because we attach some value to it. This value can be assessed in terms of future use, some advantage to be derived at a future date. The thing preserved may be intrinsically worth a good deal of money later on ; it may afford protection to one's life, property or reputation ; it may facilitate the later execution of some plan ; the owner may derive just an emotional pleasure in the mere thought of possessing it. With these future uses in mind we spend time and money over the continued preservation of those objects, and the greater the value attached to the object, the greater should normally be the thought and care bestowed on the problem of its preservation.

These same considerations hold good for records which all through known history have shown a tendency to survive their creators. It is true that this phenomenon has not manifested itself with an equal degree of universality in all ages and in all countries, but speaking generally the statement made above will not perhaps be seriously

<sup>1</sup> This is the second article in a series intended to introduce the subject of Records and their Administration to laymen. The first article appeared in Vol. II No. 2-4 (April-Oct. 1948).

challenged. It may also be stated without fear of contradiction that, so far as governmental records are concerned, the tendency for records to accumulate has grown with the expanding sphere and growing complexity of governmental activities. To go back to the question of the creation of records, what is the pattern of the organization of agencies which are the creators of records? The basic facts about organization of agencies are these ; an agency consists of a group of people working together towards a common end. The process is broken down into parts which give us the major functions of the agency. These are in turn broken down into 'lines of activity'. The centre of the agency is its 'policy-making' part, and the responsibility shouldered by it is delegated to 'panels of operation' or 'lines of activity'. Another kind of activity is the 'staff and service activity'. This is composed of people who facilitate the 'line activities', e.g. investigators, researchers, etc.

All these functions—policy-making, operation and facilitating services—performed by different persons or groups of persons are directed towards a common end. If it is desired that the end is achieved with the least dissipation of energy, it is obviously necessary that all these different activities directed toward the common end should be co-ordinated and integrated. Left to themselves there is every likelihood of their working at cross-purposes with each other, duplication of effort and general waste of energy, time and money. The need for co-ordination becomes all the greater since most of the activities extend over a period of time. How can this co-ordination be effected? In an agency with its many parts and multifarious activities, it is not possible for any one individual or group of individuals to remember what specific job has been assigned to different sections and what parts of the job to different individuals in a section. It is like a gigantic jig-saw puzzle without a physical form of which the shape is determined only as the work progresses. Until its pieces are given some sort of tangible form, it is beyond human power to put them together to form a coherent whole. Records which document the policy planning and operational activities of individuals and sections are the only conceivable means of giving tangible shape to intangible thoughts and work processes. By means of records alone can be judged whether a particular policy laid down is being executed in the way it was intended, the progress of the work and the results.

Furthermore, for any responsible agency it is necessary constantly to look back and see what has gone on before. This is necessary, first,

in order to avoid going over again what has already been completely threshed out and thus wasting time and energy (as well as money), and secondly, to ensure that nothing is done in flat and unwarranted contradiction of some earlier decisions, laws and regulations ending in embarrassment. These are all the more important for a government. In a complex organization of today it is again not possible for anyone to remember all that has gone on before and records are again the only means of refreshing one's memory with any degree of certainty. Records constitute the tangible memory of an organization.

It is also well known that for the efficient planning as well as performance of any function it is essential that it should be possible to fix responsibility on individuals who should be answerable to a superior authority. The saying "What is everybody's business is nobody's business" is an acknowledged cliché, but it is true all the same and perhaps nowhere it is more apparent than in the realm of governmental activity. Responsibility for any action can be fixed definitely only if there is provision for correctly reconstructing past deliberations and decisions and the course of individual actions. Left to memory alone, there may be contradiction between the recollections of different persons, unconscious distortion or deliberate misrepresentation of facts. It is actually leaving too much to chance to expect that without records any transaction can be reconstructed correctly after the passage of even a few days. To quote Fritz Morstein Marx,<sup>2</sup> an authority on public administration, "a complete record is the most objective reporter, and hence the most effective means of exacting responsibility. This is also attested by the fact that the simplest manoeuvre to escape responsibility has always been the manipulation or even destruction of the record." Cases bearing out the truth of the last sentence would be familiar to most administrators in India as elsewhere. Says Dr. Marx, "One of the essentials of responsible administration is transparency of the administrative process in terms of both what is going on today and what has gone on before. In the realm of government, the requirement of transparency relates to political as well as managerial needs." I have already referred to the managerial needs and the part played by records in "charting the course of institutional policy, determining programme priorities, and infusing a unity of purpose into the whole organization." These needs are obvious to any administrator, but if further endorsement by

<sup>2</sup> Fritz Morstein Marx: *The Role of Records in Administration*, a paper read before the Society of American Archivists, Oct. 25, 1946. In the subsequent portion of this article I have freely borrowed from Dr. Marx.

experts is needed, here are at least two. The Taft Commission on Economy and Efficiency (of U.S. Federal Administration) reporting in 1912 in its Memorandum of Conclusions identified the three needs viz. (a) the need for "obtaining all the papers relating to a particular subject," i.e. completeness of the record, (b) the need for "rapidity" of access, and (c) the need for adequacy of cross referencing. The second authority is that of the British report published in 1918 of the Machinery of Government Committee under the Chairmanship of Viscount Haldane and including among its members such persons as the late Beatrice Webb. It said that the administrative body should make better provision for "the organised acquisition of facts and information, and for the systematic application of thought, as preliminary to the settlement of policy and its subsequent administration." Again, the Committee pointed out that a department head "must have at his disposal, and under his control, an organization sufficient to provide him with a general survey of existing knowledge on any subject within his sphere, with tables of statistics and comment upon such tables which will keep him in touch with the progress of any work that can be expressed in this form, and with reports upon questions affecting the department's work which require scientific knowledge in their preparation. What is needed in these cases is a competent, swift, and self-contained inquiry for the purpose of enabling a particular Minister to deal with a specific administrative problem." All this can only be attained through adequate documentation and maintenance of records.

So much for the need of proper documentation and maintenance of records to ensure efficient management. As an evidence of the truth of the obverse, that the absence of proper record management is not conducive to efficient administration, Dr. Marx quotes from the Letter-to-the-Editor section of the *Economist*, where the personnel chief of a commercial firm in England, exasperated with the central department in charge of the employment exchanges wrote that employers would not look with much confidence on the Exchanges "until the Ministry's Dickensian record systems and office organizations are changed to something more in keeping with the present age." Do we in India have to go far out of our way to echo this observation?

As to the political needs of the "transparency of the administrative process," I cannot do better than quote Dr. Marx himself. He says: "Perhaps the most characteristic feature of democracy is its insistence that public business be conducted along the lines of public preference and under the eyes of the public. The implications of this principle are manifest in every part of the machinery of representative government

—unimpeded public debate of political issues ; presentation to the voter of alternative proposals advanced by different parties ; free elections held periodically ; supremacy of lawmaking vested in popular assemblies ; and accountability of the executive branch. Each part, indispensable in forming the whole, serves as a guarantee that the people's common affairs remain its own in a real sense. As a corollary, all phases in the pursuit of public purposes must be illuminated by public knowledge of means and ends.

"This is particularly true of securing accountability of the executive branch. In the first place, in order to obtain accountability it is necessary to devise proper channels of legislative inquiry. . . . It is obvious that without at least a minimum of reasonably well-understood procedures for drawing specific information from governmental officials, the legislature would be unable to hold them accountable for the exercise of their authority.

"Equally important is a second factor—the basis of the information they are called upon to furnish. It would amount to a defeat of legislative inquiry should they be free to make up their stories as they saw fit. If they could not be pinned down to incontrovertible facts, their explanations would be of little value. Thus the state of administrative records is of vast significance to the efficacy of democratic control."

To this may be added, records also provide the government official with good defence when his actions in official capacity are subjected to unwarranted criticism and their good faith is called in question.

## II

So far I have dealt with the value of records when they are more or less in a state of currency. It may be argued, and it is argued, 'Very well, let records serve their purpose of refreshing one's memory about the course of a transaction while that transaction is in progress. But when that is over and a reasonable time has elapsed thereafter during which questions are likely to be asked about the transaction, the records related to it cease to be of any value and may safely be destroyed'. There is some force in this argument and it is certainly applicable to a certain part, perhaps the greater part, of the records created in government agencies. But there are some records which possess intrinsically or acquire later on other values besides administrative value. Mention was made in the first article of 'retention values' of records. What are these retention values? It would be

relevant to remind the reader here that in these articles I have confined myself mainly to governmental records.

First of these values is, of course, administrative value. It has already been seen the extent to which the efficient working of an agency depends on competent creation and maintenance of its records. Those remarks are mainly for records during their period of currency or immediately after. As records become non-current, that is, they are no longer required for reference in connection with the transaction of which they were the product, the time comes to judge who else may be interested in them. In the first place, agencies other than the creating ones. For instance, fiscal documents filed by one agency mainly for the purpose of auditing, may be useful to another agency which, in later years, has the charge of protecting the Government against claim cases. Then, there is the interest of outsiders, which is a very important matter. Most records, particularly of municipalities and such local bodies, are evidence of the rights of citizens or of their obligations to fellow citizens. Birth, marriage and death records have bearing on the question of citizenship and rights inherent in citizenship ; records relating to transfer of property are needed to clear up disputed inheritance cases ; election registers evidence the right of people to participate in the government of the country. Police and court records often bear evidence to the fact that a delinquent has atoned for his delinquency or that accusations against one were baseless ; tax returns prove that some citizens have met certain of their obligations to the state. Other records again establish the rights of certain citizens to follow certain avocations. Finally, the citizen can, from the records, check up on how his representative has shared in running the government and how his hard-earned money paid in the shape of taxes has been spent.

Another set of values are the "research values"—admittedly a very wide and amorphous term. It can have a hundred different facets and he would be a bold man indeed who would dare list them. The matters of interest for research change from time to time and are ever increasing. Fifty years ago in India practically the only subjects of research among records which one could imagine were genealogy and political history. Since then records have been used for such variety of purposes as tracing social and economic trends, evolution of political thought and practices, geographical and industrial development, planning of social services by studying population trends, military tactics, scientific progress and a multitude of others.

In deciding what is of value, some feel that only what is old is



valuable. This seems to be the dominating idea held by scholars in this country. The very simple fact that what is fresh today will eventually become old is surprisingly often lost sight of. In evaluating records one has to, so to say, project himself into the future.

As to the utilization of government records, what do we find in actual practice? It has already been stated that records are preserved by governments, institutions, etc., primarily for their own administrative reference purposes. The truth of this statement would be borne out by the following statistics: on an average every year the National Archives of India performs reference service of various kinds to the extent of handling roughly 25,000 inquiries involving consultation of records in its custody. Of these at least 20,000 inquiries come from the various Ministries and operating Departments of the Government of India; the remaining 5,000 or so include inquiries made by state or foreign governments for administrative purposes, private citizens for personal purposes (legal, genealogical or others) and historical research scholars. Yet popular belief would have it that the archives exist solely for the purpose of historical research. Some people, otherwise knowledgeable, even believe that the real name of the National Archives of India is "the Historical Record Office"—we often receive letters thus addressed to us. Such people also believe that the function of a government record office is not only to assist scholars but actually to do historical research. Then others, among them even administrators of long standing, seek to distinguish between "administrative records" and "historical records". It will be sufficient to point out here that the distinction between "administrative" and "historical" records is a highly artificial one. All records are created and preserved by their creators for administrative purposes, and never for the specific purpose of historical research, *i.e.* research by scholars for the purpose of writing history. At the same time, all records are potential sources of historical knowledge inasmuch as they record certain events and are the authentic evidence of the courses of certain events. Record offices have been in existence from the earliest times of organized administration, but the systematic use of records for historical research purposes dates back to barely a century.

What is obvious is that records are source materials of history. Government's records are as much sources of history as any other records, but they are not the only sources nor do they contain a complete account of the course of the nation's history. They are limited to the extent to which government's activities form part of

the totality of the nation's activities as a whole. Only if one could get together all records, of government, semi-governmental institutions, private bodies and individuals, of a particular country for a particular period, one would have practically the complete source materials for the history of that country for that period. Thus, although government's records are not created specifically to provide evidence for historical research, by their very nature they become one of the most valuable tools for that purpose, a fact which is usually borne in mind by an intelligent and progressive administration.

To sum up in the words of Philip C. Brooks, another contemporary administrator and specialist in records management: "Records are the means by which public officials in a democracy are accountable to the people. They are tools of administration, the memory of an organization, the embodiment of experience, protectors of legal rights, and sources of many kinds of information."<sup>3</sup> Dr. Brooks adds: "records are often taken for granted, but they merit real attention if good government is to be realized." It will be my object to show in the following article what constitutes that "real attention".

<sup>3</sup> Philip C. Brooks: *Public Records Management*, page 1.

# MANUSCRIPT REPAIR IN EUROPEAN ARCHIVES<sup>1</sup>

L. HERMAN SMITH

## II. THE CONTINENT

### FRANCE, BELGIUM, AND THE NETHERLANDS

#### Archives Nationales (Paris)

CREATED IN 1789-1790 by the Constituent Assembly, the national archives of France were in the beginning only the documents relative to the operations of this assembly; but the events of the French Revolution and the centralizing spirit of the National Convention transformed the archives of the assembly into a general repository of all papers from the administrations of the old régime. Everything fell into the hands of the new government and was centralized not only in Paris but in the chief cities of the departments: archives of the seigniorial justices; titles to ecclesiastical grants; records of the ancient provincial administrations, religious orders, judicial corps, lay corporations, and academies; papers of princes, emigrants, and condemned prisoners. First installed in the Louvre, the national archives were in 1808 transferred to the old residence of the princes of Soubise, acquired for the purpose by Napoleon I. To them were added, roughly, all the papers of the establishments of the old régime in Paris, forming the ancient section of the archives (the judicial papers, provisionally deposited in the Palace of Justice, were reunited in 1848 with the historical and administrative papers in the Soubise mansion). The modern section of the archives comprises the papers of the revolutionary assemblies and those transferred during the nineteenth century by various ministries (with the exception of some, such as the Ministry of War, which retained their own records). These transfers were continued in accordance with a decree of January 12, 1898, which provided for the periodical conveyance of *dossiers*, registers, and individual items no longer needed in the current business of the ministries. The

<sup>1</sup> This is the second and concluding instalment summarizing the results of Mr. Smith's investigations into methods of manuscript repair in some of the principal European archives. The first instalment appeared in *The Indian Archives*, Vol. II, Nos. 2-4. Reprinted by kind permission from *The American Archivist*, Vol. I, No. 2 (April, 1938).

national archives also receives records from certain private muniment rooms.<sup>2</sup>

The *atelier de réparation* in the Archives Nationales is a smallish, dark, cluttered room, up a flight of narrow stairs. The light is rather feeble, and presses and book-binding equipment crowd the room. Another room, below, is devoted to binding repair. Three or four repairers, headed by M. Dubos, comprise the staff. The principal characteristics of the repairing technique followed here may be briefly listed:

### 1. *Parchment repair*

For simple joins of two torn pieces, Japanese paper (very thin and yellowish) is pasted on both sides, pressed, and later almost entirely removed by means of sandpaper.

No moisture is applied during parchment repair. If the document requires previous flattening, it is pressed between moistened sheets of paper.

For supplying missing portions, pieces of old parchment (blank pages from manuscript volumes in the archives) are used, matching as closely as possible the colour and texture of the document.

A thick, wheat flour paste, with alum added, is the adhesive.

### 2. *Paper repair*

Japanese paper is again used. It is considered less expensive and more transparent than silk gauze. Moreover, missing bits of writing are sometimes supplied in new ink, and it would be much more difficult to write over the gauze than over the Japanese paper.

### 3. *Binding repair.*

The original style of binding is retained where possible, and old leather panels are replaced when they contain stamped patterns or anything of interest.

The stacks are of predominantly wooden construction. Long corridors have been converted into series of alcoves of tall wooden shelves. Outside windows are the only means of ventilation. Dust is one of the greatest problems encountered. There are many volumes, but most of the individual documents are kept in *dossiers* in uniform heavy strawboard boxes, with hinged tops and let-down flaps in front.

<sup>2</sup> *Guide international des archives* (Paris: Institut International de Cooperation Intellectuelle, 1934), pp. 112-113.

Bundles are usually secured by a strip of webbing fastened around them, with a metal clip attached.

#### BIBLIOTHÈQUE NATIONALE (PARIS)

A letter of introduction to M. Leroy, secretary-general of the Bibliothèque Nationale, paved the way for a very brief visit to that vast institution. A short time was spent in the bindery with Madame Friedrich, the manuscript repairer. Japanese paper and a kind of parchment paper are her chief materials. Missing portions are supplied with the parchment paper, and the joins are covered with Japanese paper, pasted down with thin flour paste. Gradually increasing pressure is an essential step in repair, as usual.

Remodelling and modernization, including particularly the installation of proper lighting and ventilation, are proceeding steadily in the Bibliothèque Nationale. There is still no electric light in the stacks, so that no book requests can be filled after a certain hour, which in winter is quite early in the afternoon. Additional space for books has been provided by the transfer of all the provincial newspapers to a repository (formerly the stables of Marie Antoinette) at Versailles. Working quarters have been rearranged and improved, notably the reserve reading room and the cataloguing department. A *salle de bibliographie* has been created by uniting in one room the library catalogues and principal works of reference. The manuscript reading room was fleetingly glimpsed, but the manuscript stacks were found to be closed to visitors by virtue of an inflexible rule.

#### ARCHIVES GÉNÉRALES DU ROYAUME (BRUSSELS)

The Archives Générales Du Royaume in Brussels is one of nine repositories established in the chief cities of the provinces, each of which preserves the records of its particular province since 1830. The Brussels repository keeps, however, in addition to the provincial records of Brabant, the archives derived from the old central government administrations, excepting the ministries of foreign affairs and national defence, which maintain their own archival service. There is a series of printed and typed indexes of the national archives, in volume form, available to readers. The chief archivist is M. D. D. Brouwers, formerly conservator of the archives of Namur.

The repair laboratory, in the charge of M. Bolsée, is situated in a little annex to the main archives building, which must be

approached from the outside. It contains two rather small rooms, one used by the printer and photographer, the other by the two repairers. The work-bench, topped with a black marble slab, faces the window.

The chief method of repair in the Brussels archives has for about the last nine years consisted of the application of a celluloid solution called *zapon*, composed as follows:

Celluloid, fine shavings . . . . .	3 gr.
Camphor . . . . .	1 gr.
Acetone (or acetic ester) . . . . .	20 gr.
Amyl acetate . . . . .	76 gr.

*or*

Nitro-cotton . . . . .	3 gr.
Camphor . . . . .	1.5 gr.
Amyl acetate . . . . .	75.5 gr.
Acetic ester (or acetone) . . . . .	20 gr.

The *zapon*, in liquid form, is brushed on one side of the manuscript, which is then hung up to dry. This takes about two hours, depending on the temperature of the room. When dry the *zapon* becomes a thin yet strongly hardened film, serving as a protective covering for the manuscript and even filling in small holes and tears. When a manuscript is thus "zaponized", no actual repairing (in the sense of filling in torn or missing portions) or resizing is deemed necessary, as it can be handled with perfect safety even if its edges are ragged. The occasional concession, however, of using a small piece of transparent silk gauze, may be made when there is a serious tear in the manuscript. Not only paper but also parchment documents have been treated with *zapon*.

Although nine years have produced no discolouration or apparently harmful results in paper documents treated with *zapon*, not enough time has elapsed to justify a final verdict as to its chemical stability. Inflammability is another question to be seriously considered. Although experiments seem to indicate that the "zaponized" documents burn no more easily than ordinary paper, there is a definite danger of the vapour from the *zapon* catching fire, especially in rooms with any type of open fires. It has been suggested that this inflammability could be reduced by replacing a considerable quantity of the solvent with chloroform or carbon tetrachloride; but this would not only be more expensive but would necessarily involve special

arrangements for ventilation in the workroom. While there is no doubt that fragile paper documents treated with *zapon* are thereby strengthened and protected against further damage, it is also true that much the same strengthening and protection can be obtained by an application of ordinary animal size (from pieces of vellum or parchment boiled down in water), as at the Public Record Office in London. All early western papers were animal-sized at the time of manufacture. This size is not only cheaper, simpler to make, and less hazardous to use than the *zapon*, but also has the added recommendation that it restores to the paper the quality which it has lost. Parchment documents treated with *zapon* in the Brussels archives appeared crinkly and brittle to the touch, and in some cases the ink had spread.

In the Brussels archives it is the usual practice to use chemical means for bringing up faded or stained writing. This has been done not only in cases of manuscripts previously stained with gall but also with those which were faded because of any one of a number of factors. There are two separate and successive chemical baths indicated—the first (one part ammonium hydrosulphate to twenty parts of water) to bring up the writing and the second (0.4 gr. of tannin and 5 c.c. of acetic acid to 100 c.c. of water) to make the reaction permanent and at the same time to prevent any harmful effects of the first reagent. M. Bolsée made it clear that the second bath could sometimes be used alone, particularly in cases where the manuscript had been previously stained with gall.

The manuscripts which had been given these treatments were not very reassuring in appearance, having great, discoloured blotches. The more recent method of bringing up faded writing by examination under ultra-violet light is not yet in favour with the authorities here, as they feel that anything made visible under the ultra-violet must necessarily be visible in the first place to the naked eye. They have not yet had the opportunity of testing the remarkable results which can be obtained with ultra-violet light, both for visual examination and for purposes of photography. Furthermore, they do not take into account that the use of ultra-violet light entails no risk whatever to the manuscript (something which certainly cannot be said of chemical reagents, no matter how carefully they may be applied).

The methods of repairing and moulding seals in Brussels originally served as a model for the Public Record Office, so that the two procedures are virtually identical. In general, however, there are more added refinements in the English method of moulding—

such as the use of waxed paper to protect the seal, and the making of an overhang in the plaster cast in order to facilitate its separation from the mould. Very little actual seal repair is undertaken in Brussels—only where absolutely necessary to prevent the seal from cracking up—and there is no filling out of missing portions with new beeswax. An impressive semi-circular room containing tiers of drawers has been built to house the collection of over 28,000 plaster moulds of seals, in addition to some of the more precious documents with seals. There is a carefully compiled index, with descriptive information, of all the moulds in the room. It was disturbing to note that some of the original wax seals were wrapped in cotton wool without any protective covering of waxed or greased paper to keep the inherent moisture of the wax from being withdrawn.

The outstanding features of the stacks observed were: (1) steel construction and very tall shelving, necessitating a stepladder to reach the upper shelves; (2) exceptionally wide aisles; (3) fire extinguishers at intervals; (4) ventilation only by opening windows occasionally; (5) long distance for attendants to walk to bring manuscripts to the reading room; and (6) unbound manuscripts left unbound (placed between pulp-boards and tied with tapes with flaps of cloth and paper at top and sides to keep out dust, or else in paper folders within large pasteboard boxes); but documents bound up at some time in the past undisturbed.

The photographic department in the Brussels archives is quite active on behalf of both readers and correspondents. In many cases photographs of fragile manuscripts are shown to readers instead of the manuscripts themselves.

#### ALGEMEEN RIJKSARCHIEF (THE HAGUE)

The Dutch system of provincial archives, with a central repository in the capital city, is very much on the order of that in Belgium. The Algemeen Rijksarchief, in The Hague, preserves in addition to the usual governmental records the archives of the Dutch West Indies up to and including the year 1846. There are a number of printed summary catalogues of the various classes of documents, which are being added to as finances and available time of staff permit. There is no card catalogue. A yearly resume of progress in cataloguing was formerly added to the archivist's *Annual Report*, but this has now been discontinued except as an occasional separate publication. The chief archivist is Professor R. Fruin.



Here, as in many other archives visited, the bindery and repair-shop are combined, and the chief repairer, in service at the archives for twenty-five years, is a man who has a wide background of binding experience. The room in use has windows on two sides, with the workbenches facing them. A large cutting machine occupies the centre of the room.

Japanese paper is the principal repairing material. The usual procedure for repairing a paper document which is in bad condition, with perhaps a portion missing, is to fill in the missing section with old paper (selected to match the document as closely as possible) and then to cover both sides of the document completely with a sheet of Japanese paper. A commercially prepared binder's paste, well diluted with water, is used as an adhesive. The document is finally subjected to pressure, light at first but increasingly heavy, until it is thoroughly dry. The same method is used for the repair of parchment documents, except that filling in (with old parchment if possible) is seldom done. Flattening is accomplished in the press, as with paper documents; but it is sometimes necessary when dealing with large charters to spread them on a large surface and tack them down at the edges to insure their drying straight. No resizing is done, as it is deemed unnecessary when the document has been covered on both sides with Japanese paper.

The cardinal objection to the use of Japanese paper as a covering for fragile manuscripts is that it is not completely transparent. Hand-writing which is in a heavy or even ordinarily intense ink is usually quite readable through the Japanese paper, but faded writing is apt to be almost completely obscured. Another question which arises, as with all materials employed in manuscript repair, is this: Will the Japanese paper change colour in the course of time? It is generally conceded to be absolutely stable, and its long and meritorious record of service in the Dutch archives (since 1858) would seem to indicate that it is unobjectionable on this score. In more than one case during this tour of archives in Europe, the writer was told in all seriousness that a slight yellowish tinge in the Japanese paper was all to the good, as it disguised the newness of the repair. Here there is a definite and rather deplorable departure from the accepted view that manuscript repairs should never be disguised or made so intentionally fine that they are not immediately apparent to the naked eye.

What about the practice of using blank sheets from old documents as repairing material? No doubt in many repositories the supply is practically inexhaustible, but the mere fact of availability

is not the only thing to be considered. More important—in fact, often extremely vital to the scholar—is the evidence furnished by blank leaves as to the original physical condition of the document. In other words, if a document is worth preserving for posterity, it should be preserved in its original state, unchanged (as far as possible) in physical appearance or content. Only thus can it be of the fullest, unquestioned value as historical or literary evidence. Any sign of tampering may lead to confusion or even doubt of its authenticity.

There is no seal repair or moulding attempted in the Algemeen Rijksarchief, except the occasional gluing together of broken seals.

The *magasijn* (stack) was built about 1900 and consists of six floors, of all-steel construction, with grill flooring and stairs. The shelving is of slate. The ironwork, painted white, is unusually clean, in the Dutch tradition. Handlifts operated by ropes are found at intervals for transferring documents from one floor to another.

The steel shutters on the windows, electrically operated, can be closed all over the entire building in two minutes. Ventilation is secured only by occasional opening of the windows. Heating pipes along the lower floor keep the winter temperature up to about 58°F. in the stacks; in summer no artificial adjustment is necessary.

The prevailing types of container for the storage of documents are portfolios (two boards tied together, as at Brussels) and boxes. The portfolios in general have no dust flaps. Loose documents are not bound. Documents bearing seals are placed in separate envelopes, then arranged upright in boxes with let-down flaps on one side. Maps are kept flat if possible and laid in heavy portfolios in drawers.

Records of documents taken from the stack for use by readers take the form of entries in a charge-book. No slips are placed on the shelves to show where documents have been removed, except in portfolios from which a single item is taken. Documents reserved for readers are not returned to the stacks nightly but are kept in the reading room while in use.

At one side of one floor of the stack is a row of "cells" with separate doors, where items of particular value are kept, such as:

1. The original Treaty of Westphalia, 1648, by which the Netherlands gained their independence from Spain—in French and Spanish; two separate volumes (original red velvet); signed by Philip of Spain, with his seal in gold; kept in a glass case within a steel safe, the top of which when lifted to a vertical position and pushed downward causes the glass case to come up into view.

2. Several large charters on parchment bearing the seals of all the principal cities of Holland, in order of date of founding (from left to right), with accompanying signatures of burgomasters. Greenish wax predominant in the seals.

3. Some very early maps of Holland, one or two of New Netherland. The very early charters on parchment, going back in some instances to the twelfth century, are stored in wooden cabinets on deep thin wooden shelves, which may be pulled out. The documents are kept flat and in position by tapes.

A photographic department supplies reproductions of documentary material upon request and occasionally undertakes ultra-violet photography. An ultra-violet apparatus of the Hanau quartz-lamp type is available to readers in a dark chamber provided in the photographic department. This particular lamp is a therapeutical model, nickelplated, and can be lowered or raised by a cable. Readers themselves may bring manuscripts up from the reading room to the ultra-violet chamber. A consultation period of longer than fifteen minutes is inadvisable, as there is no air in the chamber when the door is closed.<sup>3</sup>

## GERMANY AND AUSTRIA

### PREUSSISCHES GEHEIMES STAATSARCHIV (BERLIN-DAHLEM)

The Preussisches Geheimes Staatsarchiv in Berlin-Dahlem contains the central archives of Brandenburg and Prussia, dating from the end of the sixteenth century. These consist of the records of the central Prussian authorities (Privy Council, General Direction, ministries of the modern era, other central administrations, high-

<sup>3</sup> For additional material on the French archives see: Léon Dorez, "L'incendie de la Bibliothèque nationale de Turin", *Revue des Bibliothèques*, XIV (1904), 77-99. Franz Ehrle, "Sur la conservation et la restauration des anciens manuscrits", *Revue des Bibliothèques*, VIII (1898), 155-172, translated from the Italian by Léon Dorez. The same article appears in *Bibliothèque de l'Ecole des chartes*, LIX (1898), 479-495. F. C. Lonchamp, *Therapeutica graphica, ou l'art de collectionner, de conserver et de restaurer les dessins, les manuscrits, les estampes et les livres* (Paris and Lausanne: Librairie des Bibliophiles, 1930). Méray, "Moyens de restaurer les vieux livres", *Annuaire du Bibliophile* (Paris, 1862). "Procès verbal de la Conférence internationale pour la conservation et la restauration des anciens manuscrits tenue à Saint-Gull", *Revue des Bibliothèques*, VIII (1898), 415-425.

For Belgium, see Elise Samuelson, "De la restauration d'anciens manuscrits par le kitt", *Actes du Congrès international des Archivistes et Bibliothécaires de Bruxelles* (1910). (Brussels: Siège de la Commission permanente des Congrès, 1912), pp. 205-208; and for the Netherlands, Maarten Schoengen: "Over het Zapon", and "Verlag van Dr. Sello's lezing over Zapon op den Dritten deutschen Archivtag, te Dusseldorf", *Nederlandsch Archievenblad*, XI (1902-1903), 32-45, 145-156,

courts of justice, etc.), the archives of the Prussian army (up to 1866), the records of the Ministry of Foreign Affairs (to 1867), and of the "Kingdom of Westphalia" (1807-1813), in addition to a collection of maps, etc. There is a printed summary catalogue of the archives, in two volumes. Many early manuscript and printed lists of departmental records (called *Repertoria*) are available to readers, and a partial card index to the *Repertoria*, covering names and subjects, is helpful in a number of instances. Dr. Heinrich Otto Meisner is chief archivist.

Except in the case of documents of extreme fragility (which are reinforced where necessary by a double thickness of Japanese paper and covered on one side with transparent silk gauze), the prevailing method of repair in the Prussian archives involves the application of parchment paper (a transparent paper, German-made, similar to parchment). This material is applied with wheat flour paste to both sides of the document, thus covering it completely. The advantages urged for parchment paper by the staff of the Prussian archives, as compared with silk gauze or Japanese paper, are several:

1. It is cheaper.

2. It is easier to apply: More documents can be repaired in a shorter time (an important point in a large archival repository). But this simplicity of application is offset by a disagreeable crinkled condition apparent in the repaired document, which persists in spite of pressure and repeated smoothing subsequent to application.

3. It is flexible. In this respect it is supposedly much superior to *zapon*, which is brittle and may cause the paper to crack when bent sharply. But, in common with *zapon*, the parchment paper gives to the document an unnatural, slick appearance and feel.

4. It is not likely to change in colour. At least, after about ten years' use in the archives no change has been evident. But the colour of the parchment paper is yellowish to begin with, and consequently a distinctly yellowish tinge is imparted to documents covered with it.

5. It is free from acidity, which may be injurious to the paper. This was not true of the earlier parchment paper, but now a special quality is manufactured for the Staatsarchiv by the firm of Knoeckel, Schmidt, & Co., in Lambrecht (Rheinpfalz), guaranteed to be acid-free. Several thicknesses are available, but a medium weight—not the thinnest—is used by the Staatsarchiv. It costs about 680 Rm. per 1000 kilogrammes.

A similar procedure is followed in the repair of parchment documents; no new parchment is employed. Seal repair is done on a small scale.

The Prussian archives issued under the date of October 6, 1936, an official communication addressed to all German archives, entitled *Richtlinien für die Ausbesserung von Archivalien* (Guides for the Repair of Archives). This mimeo-graphed circular emphasizes the necessity of proper conservation and restoration of records, both official and unofficial, including such important sources of local history as parish registers. An offer is made to repair local archives in the technical repair-shop of the Geheimes Staatsarchiv, or, in case such work has been undertaken by the local staff or in a commercial workshop, it is suggested that the repaired manuscripts be sent to Berlin-Dahlem for examination. A brief outline of recommended repairing methods is set forth, and it is pointed out that adaptations of procedure can be made with regard to different types of archives. Silk gauze, Japanese paper, parchment paper, old paper, and new wood-free and weakly-sized paper are all listed as possible repairing materials, but the parchment paper is suggested to be most suitable in a large number of cases. It is explained that the parchment paper is manufactured only under special conditions and in large quantities, so that it is best to order through the Geheimes Staatsarchiv, which undertakes to deliver smaller quantities cost free to local archives or at cost price to private bookbinders connected with the archives.

The stacks, in a fireproof wing of the Prussian archives building entirely separate from the offices, are quite new but already full almost to capacity, and an addition is therefore contemplated. The construction is of steel throughout, but the shelves are wooden. The linoleum-covered floors are kept spotlessly clean.

In general, documents as transferred from the state departments are already bound in some form, or perhaps only sewed together. It is customary to place two or three of these volumes together and wrap them in a dustproof paper folder, which is tied and labelled. The records of each department are of course kept separate, generally in chronological order. Very early documents with seals are kept in paper envelopes in boxes. The earliest records in the office date from about A.D. 1200 and mostly relate to lands, etc., in the mark of Brandenburg. There is a collection of loose seals—removed, at some unknown time in the past, from the documents to which they were originally affixed—which are numbered, classified, and kept in drawers. Certain rooms in the stack are devoted solely to state

treaties, which are usually quite spectacular in appearance, with silver skippets and velvet covers with fancy tassels.

The reading room in the archives is modern and well lighted, with accommodation for about a hundred readers. Superintendents sit at raised desks at each end of the room, behind which are shelves where documents are retained overnight. A large proportion of the readers are bent on genealogical research.

#### DR. IBSCHER

At the recommendation of Dr. Rohr, of the Prussian archives, a visit was paid to Dr. Ibscher, widely known as a restorer of ancient manuscripts, whose headquarters at the time were in Egyptian Department of the Neues Museum in Berlin. One of Dr. Ibscher's most expert accomplishments is the repair of ancient manuscripts on papyrus. He has even succeeded in making papyrus according to the ancient method, from the papyrus plant. There were numerous papyri on hand which he had already treated, together with a very badly damaged and matted specimen which awaited attention. The latter had been water-soaked at one time and seemed a solid, inseparable mass, with the writing worse than illegible. By dint of great care and unending patience, however, it is possible to lift the papyrus sheets one by one with small steel pincers, fit together fragmentary pieces, and mount them individually between glass. No attempt is made to restore or reinforce the damaged papyrus; it is simply protected against further damage.

Dr. Ibscher's methods of paper and parchment repair (with Japanese paper and silk gauze) are almost identical with those in use at the Prussian archives. One minor deviation in technique, however, is worthy of note. To flatten and dry a repaired document on paper, Dr. Ibscher does not resort to pressing; he simply pastes down to the board or repairing surface the surplus edges of the Japanese paper and silk gauze, which he intentionally has allowed to extend a little beyond each edge of the document, and leaves it to dry out. A paste-board is lightly laid on the document to protect it from dust, but no pressure is exerted. Documents on parchment, on the other hand, are flattened and dried in a press. They are usually repaired in much the same manner, although new parchment may be used for reinforcement if the items are particularly valuable. The paste used in this operation is Hofmann's *reis-sterg* (commercially prepared), which has, obviously, a rice basis. Dr. Ibscher mixes it with water

(first cold, then boiling), stirs constantly till it is of a creamy consistency, and strains it through a cloth to get rid of lumps. He makes it freshly every two or three days to insure purity and cleanliness and freedom from bacteria. No resizing is done, as the paste itself is supposed to contribute sufficient strengthening qualities.

#### HERR RICHTER

Herr Richter, of the Department of Engraving of the Neues Museum, specializes in cleaning, repairing, and mounting etchings, drawings, engravings, etc., and also in the repair of old bindings. For the removal of the brown spots which often occur on engravings, Herr Richter recommends the following treatment:

Immerse the engravings consecutively, for the period of time indicated, in four baths as follows (large shallow porcelain trays will be found most suitable)—

- |  |     |     |     |                |
|--|-----|-----|-----|----------------|
| 1. Pure water  | ... | ... | ... | 2 hours        |
| 2. <i>Chlor</i> (A solution of 400 gr. of chloride of lime in 4 liters of pure water)  | ... | ... | ... | 2 or 3 minutes |
| 3. <i>Anti-chlor</i> (A solution of 200 gr. of hyposulphite of soda in 4 liters of water which neutralizes the effect of the chlor and serves as a fixing agent) | ... | ... | ... | 3 minutes      |
| 4. Running water   | ... | ... | ... | 6 hours        |

Dry between frequently changed blotters or other absorbent sheets.

(Note: The *chlor* and *anti-chlor* are kept in yellow glass bottles. The *chlor* is always strained through a cloth before use.)

#### REICHSARCHIV (POTSDAM)

The Reichsarchiv, or national archives of Germany, was founded in 1919. The archives building is a former military school, extensively remodelled and enlarged, on a hill in Potsdam called the *Brauhausberg*. The institution is divided into two principal departments: archives and historiography. The archives include the records which are periodically transferred from the departments of the Reich. They are subdivided into political, economic, juridical, and military documents, bequests and collections relating to contemporary history, maps, and photographs. The historiography section is at present

working on the subject of the World War, for which there are masses of historical material in the archives.

The documents in the Reichsarchiv are practically all less than a century old, dating back no earlier than 1870, and originating mostly during and after the period of the World War. This fact entails a somewhat different approach to the problem of repair and preservation. The primary object is not so much to restore and strengthen as to protect from fading and any other damage to which the manuscripts might eventually be exposed. Cases of water-soaking, insect ravages, etc., are comparatively infrequent among documents of recent date, although they do of course occur, particularly if methods of storage are lax. It has therefore been thought wise to cover these late documents completely with some transparent, impermeable substance, or to varnish those portions which are most apt to suffer from exposure to light or moisture.

The covering material formerly in use at the Reichsarchiv was parchment paper (the same quality as that used at the Prussian archives in Berlin-Dahlem), but this has been largely replaced by cellophane, which has the advantage of being more transparent and absolutely colourless. The cellophane is obtained from Kalle and Company, *Aktiengesellschaft*, Wiesbaden-Biebrich, Germany. A descriptive booklet issued by the manufacturers lists the superlative qualities of the cellophane, among which the following are of especial interest to the archive repairer:

*Cellophane* is a transparent membrane made from pure cellulose . . . . It does not decay, ferment, get mouldy, or permit the passage of bacteria. . . . It is harmless and perfectly free from any hygienic objections. . . . It is dust-proof and air-proof. . . . It is neither explosive nor inflammable (it burns no faster than a chip of wood) and it is stable in all climates and under all local conditions.

The cellophane is applied to the manuscripts with a special *leim*, or size (not paste). The documents when covered are flattened by rolling under a cylinder, but even after this treatment a disagreeable crinkled appearance may be noticed. Documents covered with cellophane can be submerged in water or exposed to the sun indefinitely without any damage.

A varnish preparation derived from copal, called *kopallack*, is the nearest approach to *zapon* in the Reichsarchiv. It is sprayed on the manuscripts, forming a protective (although yellowish) coating and preventing fading or running of the ink. It has been found



particularly useful in preserving documents written in pencil (liable to rubbing and dimming) and maps marked with coloured ink or paint (liable to run if wet). Certain tests have been carried out at the Reichsarchiv to prove the efficacy of *kopallack*; e.g. a pencil-written page, half treated with *kopallack* and the other half untreated, was exposed to the sun for several hours. At the end of this period of exposure the untreated portion had faded into practical illegibility while the *kopallack*-covered part was as fresh and unfaded as before. *Kopallack* is not suitable for use with wood pulp papers, such as newsprint, in which case the application of parchment paper or cellophane is indicated. The same objections which have been raised with regard to other varnish preparations, such as *zapon*, hold good also with regard to *kopallack*.

The modern steel stacks are light, airy, and clean, and in general style of construction are very similar to the Prussian archives in Berlin-Dahlem. Two sections of particular interest were those devoted to maps and photographs. The huge collection of thousands of maps—which mostly originated during the World War—are kept flat in drawers within steel cabinets. Many of them have been treated with *kopallack*. There are numerical labels on the drawers and a regular catalogue of the entire collection. The photographs, which are only lately coming into their own as an integral, valuable part of archival records, are arranged in wooden drawers, by subject. The photographic department utilized the Leica camera almost exclusively.

#### HAUPTSTAATSARCHIV (MUNICH)

The Hauptstaatsarchiv, or principal archives of Bavaria, was formed in 1921 by the amalgamation of certain special archives, established in 1799 to deal with the records of foreign and internal affairs and the dynasty of Wittelsbach. There is a good collection of ecclesiastical and monastic records, which was assembled when the monasteries of Bavaria were secularized in the nineteenth century. The chief archivist is Dr. O. Riedner.

Repair work is carried on here only to a very limited extent, and there seem to be no prescribed methods of procedure. Seals are occasionally repaired and often moulded in plaster and cast in metal.

The entire archives were at the time of this visit in a state of upheaval, as it was a period of cleaning and renovation. The reading room, for instance, was quite unrecognizable, with furniture and books piled helter-skelter and workmen whitewashing the arched ceilings.

The records themselves were in the process of being transferred from the old stacks (of wooden construction) to a new and modern steel section adjoining. The new stacks, completed only about a year, are to be shared with the Staatsbibliothek, which occupies the same building.

With regard to the type of storage containers used in the Hauptstaatsarchiv, there were noted not only the usual portfolios and volumes but also some old chests and even metal containers (no doubt intended originally as a measure of safety in case of fire). A geographical arrangement of the material seems most frequently followed, although in certain cases single items, in folders, are in alphabetical order.

#### HAUS-, HOF-, UND STAATSARCHIV (VIENNA)

The tripartite name of these archives may be separated into its component parts and explained thus: Haus—the family papers of the Hapsburgs, Maria Theresa having founded the archives in 1749; Hof—court and legal records; and Staat—archives of government departments.

The Austrian archives dwindled considerably after the World War, when the new nations carved out of Austrian territory, such as Czechoslovakia, wished to build up their own record repositories. To do this, they requested that documentary material originally sent from their districts to be deposited at the central archives in Vienna, and also material relating to their districts, should be transferred to them. Vienna, on the other hand, wished to keep its archives intact. This difficult situation was at last solved by a compromise: Material sent in for deposit was to be returned, but documents of the central administrations relative to the various sections of the country were retained, although in some cases lists were furnished. Sometimes documents were turned over but lists and indexes were kept, which means that searchers must often come to Vienna in order to consult the essential key to material actually deposited elsewhere. Professor Ludwig Bittner is in charge of the Haus-, Hof-, und Staatsarchiv.

There has been no secularization of monasteries in Austria such as that which occurred in Bavaria, so that many monasteries still possess large and important collections of manuscripts. Only financial stringency has in some instances compelled these institutions to part with their treasures.

A compound of cellulose acetate called *cellon* is chiefly used in repair. It is applied in liquid form with a brush (as *zapon*), forming when hardened a protective varnish. This substance, together with a special solvent, is manufactured by *Cellon-Werke* (Dr. Arthur Eichengrün), Berlin, Charlottenburg. It is very similar to *cellit*, used (in solution in ether) in some other German archives, which is manufactured by I.G. *Farbenindustrie, Aktiengesellschaft, Abteilung L.*, Frankfurt-am-Main. Dr. Heinrich Frederking, prominent German archivist and author of an article on archive preservation and repair in *Archivalische Zeitschrift* (Series 3, vol. VII, pp. 201-218), recommends both *cellon* and *cellit*.

The cost of *cellon* is 3.50 Rm. per kilogram. Three liters of the liquid are sufficient to repair 3,000 manuscript leaves. It has been in use in the Haus-, Hof-, und Staatsarchiv for about five or six years and according to report has proved much superior to *zapon*, which was formerly employed in repair work. The two substances are very much alike in appearance, although *cellon* seems to form a thinner layer on the surface of the manuscript. It is quite customary to supplement the *cellon* coating with strips of rather thick Japanese paper where there are ragged edges and weak joints or folds to be strengthened. The procedure is simply to apply the *cellon* (which in this case acts not only as a varnish but also as an adhesive), lay the strips of paper in place, and brush more *cellon* over them. *Cellon* may also be used as a protective varnish for wax seals.

The principal objections to *cellon*, based on observation of a few manuscripts treated with it, may be briefly stated. Apart from the questions of chemical stability, inflammability, and the dubious advisability of varnishing manuscripts with a substance essentially foreign to their original and basic composition, which persistently recurred in spite of apparently logical reassurances, the chief concern in this instance was the factor of physical appearance:

1. The *cellon* dries in streaks.
2. The area where it has been applied is definitely more brownish than any untreated portions.
3. There is a noticeable discolouration on the verso of leaves treated. The method of treatment does not provide for prior flattening of the manuscripts, an operation which appears to make the manuscripts easier to deal with and also improves their appearance after repair. It is claimed that *cellon* brings up faded writing, but this may be regarded with definite suspicion, as any possible intensification of the writing is offset by the brownish stain caused,

One repair problem which has not yet been satisfactorily solved is how to deal with leaden *bullae* (affixed to papal documents) which seem to be corroding and flaking off. This condition has been particularly noticed on certain documents which came from Salzburg.

There is no ultra-violet or photographic apparatus in the Haus-, Hof-, und Staatsarchiv.

There are eleven stories of steel stacks, divided into sections of two or three stories each by solid floors, the remainder being of steel grill. If all the floors were of steel grill there would be a greater danger in case of fire, as the draft would draw the flames from floor to floor. There are only stairs for inter-floor communication. Natural light is admitted.

The predominant form of storage container is the portfolio, as usual. Wooden boxes are also in evidence, likewise metal cabinets with wooden trays containing medieval documents in paper envelopes.

One end of one floor of the stacks is sanctioned off as an exhibition room. Here the shelf space has been enclosed with glass, behind which the documents are displayed on inclined boards. The exhibit is open to the public from about 10 to 1 every day. Among the most interesting manuscripts on view were: the last letter of Maria Theresa ; letters of Kaiser Wilhelm, Queen Victoria, Bismark, Schubert, Haydn, and many personages famous in the history of Austria ; documents on vellum, some beautifully illuminated and with curious and unusual seals, mostly in perfect condition—several gold seals and some in wooden skippets.

#### NATIONALBIBLIOTHEK, HANDSCHRIFTEN—SAMMLUNG (VIENNA)

The Nationalbibliothek, until 1920 called the Hofbibliothek, is the largest library in Austria and one of the most important in Europe. Among its collections are 1,210,000 printed volumes, 9,000 incunabula, and 27,000 bound manuscripts (2,360 Oriental), with 100,000 papyri from the collection of Archduke Rainer. Since 1808, the library has enjoyed the privilege of receiving a copy of every book published in Austria. The chief of the Department of Manuscripts is Dr. Emil Wallner.

In its methods of repairing manuscripts the Nationalbibliothek resembles the Public Record Office more nearly than any other institution visited. To begin with, handmade paper, supplemented where necessary by transparent silk gauze of French manufacture, is used for the repair of manuscripts on paper. It is, however, artificially

toned by dipping in coffee, to approximate as nearly as possible the colour of the manuscript ; and this is a doubtful practice as it is in the nature of disguising the repair. The technique of application of the repairing paper is almost identical, except that at the Nationalbibliothek the edges of the repairing paper are cut with a knife instead of being torn to provide a less noticeable featheredge. Manuscripts are fully backed if there is no writing on the verso. No resizing is done. Pure silk gauze is used only when some portion of the writing is to be covered ; in other cases a mixture of silk and cotton, called *etamine*, is preferred, as it is less expensive and easier to obtain. The paste is a mixture of wheat and rice flour, cooked before use. New parchment is used to reinforce, strengthen, and fill out manuscripts on parchment. Flattening is accomplished by light pressing between blotting papers. Very fragile documents are placed between glass. One example was a leaf of a manuscript on black vellum, written in gold ; part of it had also been covered with silk gauze, as it was torn. The Nationalbibliothek has rejected *cellon* and other cellulose acetate compounds because of suspicion of qualities which might possibly be harmful for the manuscripts.

The policy advocated for the repair of bindings is exactly that recommended so strongly by Mr. Jenkinson at the Public Record Office: Restore damaged bindings as far as possible to their original condition, if there is sufficient evidence in the way of surviving pieces of leather, etc. Incorporate such surviving pieces in the new binding, or if this is not practicable, insert them inside the cover where they may be examined if desired. If there are old oak boards, use them if they are not too damaged ; wormholes may be plugged up and missing or broken portions may be replaced by new pieces of oak if necessary. If there are fragmentary clasps, repair them ; if only one survives, make another which will be closely similar but not an exact duplicate.<sup>4</sup> Retain the original sewing if intact ; renew only when necessary, and always in the same holes as the original sewing. Remove fragments of parchments, etc., found in old bindings and keep where readily available for examination. If the original binding has completely disappeared or has been so disguised by a later one (also damaged) that it cannot be reconstructed, rebind the volume in a style contemporary with the date of the manuscript, utilizing only the best, most durable materials. Make a note on the flyleaf or in

<sup>4</sup> At some time during the eighteenth century almost all the brass clasps on the medieval volumes in the Nationalbibliothek were removed, and many of the medieval bindings were replaced by the typical, uninteresting, gilt bindings of the period.

some other convenient position as to exactly what has been done in the present rebinding operation, so that in future there will be no question as to which portions of the binding are actually original.

There are about 100,000 loose documents in the library, and they are kept in heavy paper folders filed in wooden boxes. They are fully catalogued on cards.

There is an ultra-violet lamp in the library, but it is a very old model, and it is hoped that a new one may be purchased in the near future.<sup>5</sup>

## ITALY

### ARCHIVIO DI STATO (VENICE)

The Venetian archives, renowned for the inexhaustible wealth of material which they contain, are housed in the Franciscan monastery of the Frari in Venice. They consist of the records—diplomatic, judicial, commercial, notarial, etc.—of the Venetian Republic, whose interests were at one time world-wide. These records were gathered together into one place by the Austrian government, from the various buildings where they had been stored, and arranged in some sort of order. The present director of the archives is Signore Conte da Mosto.

<sup>5</sup> For further material on the subjects of this section see: Baur, "Bemerkungen zur Konservierung von Archivalien", *Archivalische Zeitschrift*, Neue Folge, XII (1903), 156-70. Hans Beschorner, "Noch Einiges zum Archivalienschutz", with an appendix, "Zur Technik der Archivalienkonservierung", by Walter Bauer, *Archivalische Zeitschrift*, 3rd series, VII (1931), 219-226. Franz Ehrle: "Die internationale Konferenz in St. Gallen am 30. September und 1. Oktober 1898 zur Beratung über die Erhaltung und Ausbesserung alter Handschriften", *Centralblatt für Bibliothekswesen*, XVI (1899), 27-51; "In sachen der internationalen Konferenz von St. Gallen (1898)", *Zentralblatt für Bibliothekswesen*, XXVI (1909), 245-263; "Über die Erhaltung und Ausbesserung alter Handschriften", *Centralblatt für Bibliothekswesen*, XV (1898), 17-33. Heinrich Frederking: "Archivalienkonservierung", *Archivalische Zeitschrift*, 3rd series, VII (1931), 201-218; "Zapon oder Cellit", *Protokolle der deutschen Archivtage seit 1902* (1910). Raphael Kögel, "Gelatine oder Cellit zur Konservierung von Handschriften", *Studien und Mitteilungen zur Geschichte des Benediktinerordens*, XXXV (1914), 353-358. E. L., "Ueber die Anwendung von Zapon bei Archivalien", *Centralblatt für Bibliothekswesen*, XX (1903), 67-68. Adolf Martens, "Festigung morscher Papiere oder Pergamente durch Behandlung mit cellitlösung", *Kgl. Materialprüfungsamt Mitteilungen* (Berlin, 1911), vol. XXIX. Friedrich Philipp, *Einführung in die Urkundenlehre des deutschen Mittelalters* (Bonn and Leipzig, 1920), p. 221 et seq. Otto Posse, *Handschriften-konservierung* . . . (Dresden, 1899). E. Schill, *Anleitung zur Erhaltung und Ausbesserung von Handschriften durch Zapon-imprägnierung* (Vienna, 1904). E. Schneider, "Neues Verfahren zur Ruckfärbung verblasster Schriften", *Korrespondenzblatt des Gesamtvereins der deutschen Geschichts- und Altertumsvereine*, LXI (1913), 163-165. Georg Sello: "Die bei der Zaponverwendung in der Archivpraxis gemachten Erfahrungen", *Korrespondenzblatt des Gesamtvereins der deutschen Geschichts- und Altertumsvereine*, LII (1904), 119-122; *Erhaltung und Wiederherstellung von Archivalien* (Oldenburg, 1905). Georg Sello and Rose, "Das Zapon in der Archivpraxis", *Korrespondenzblatt des Gesamtvereins der deutschen Geschichts- und Altertumsvereine*, I (1902), 195-202.

There is no regular repairing department in the Venetian archives. Numerous manuscripts were seen to be in bad condition, with water-stains, etc.

The high-ceilinged rooms of the former monastery are now lined with wooden cases, which are filled with row upon row of manuscripts. Almost all of the manuscripts are vellum-bound, although some are in rough portfolios ; no boxes of any sort were visible. They are arranged according to the departments of state from which they emanated. The windows were wide open at the time of this visit, letting in the damp, cold morning air. Some of the rooms were empty, or nearly so. Heavy layers of dust covered everything. There was no staff visible, except a few monks in the entrance hall. A reading room is set aside for accredited research workers.

The high, glass-topped, dust-covered cases in the dark and gloomy exhibition room were literally stuffed with manuscripts, folded and laid overlapping one another so that the greatest possible number could be crowded into the cases. Among the many manuscripts on view were several relating to American history, such as a letter signed by Benjamin Franklin, Thomas Jefferson, and John Adams, suggesting a treaty of commerce between Venice and the United States, 1784. Several huge Turkish documents were exhibited in cases on the wall. Papal documents with leaden *bullae* attached, and parchment deeds with wax seals (some cracked) were present in profusion. There were some illuminated missals and other service books, mostly of a rather poor quality. The earliest document shown was of the Carolingian period about 828. In the way of later correspondence, all the kings of Italy and many foreign rulers were represented.

#### BIBLIOTECA APOSTOLICA VATICANA (ROME)

The Vatican Library is largely the creation of the great humanist popes of the fifteenth century, of whom Nicholas V is usually regarded as the real founder. The present magnificent building was erected by Sixtus V in 1588. The library has greatly increased since its original foundation and has frequently been enriched by the acquisition of private and monastic libraries and papal collections. It was separated from the archives by Paul V (1605-1621). Father Anselmo M. Albareda is the present prefect of the library.

The archives comprise the written records of most of the numerous congregations (permanent committees of cardinals for

transacting various departments of the business of the Roman Catholic Church), offices, and tribunals in the Holy See. Certain congregations still retain their own records, although documents may in some cases be transmitted to the central repository if requested by a research worker. The archives are often called, even today, the "secret Vatican archives", despite the fact that they have been largely open to public use since January, 1881, in accordance with a decision of Leo XIII. The term "secret archives" is now applied only to that portion which includes the oldest and most important documents, consisting of registers, briefs, correspondence, and all sorts of miscellaneous records. These are stored in seventy-four cases and divided into several groups according to source (such as archives of Avignon or archives of the Secretariat of State) or subject (*Diversa Germaniae*, etc.). The prefect of the archives is Cardinal Mercati.

Extensive alterations in the repair laboratory, incorporating many improvements in working equipment, have recently been made. The two rooms in use have been entirely renovated and a new room adjoining has been equipped with special plumbing fixtures and an electrical stove for the making of paste, dissolving of gelatine, heating of the special gelatine bath, etc. At one end of the main room is a cabinet containing chemicals of various kinds for experiments and certain repair operations. A large standing press and two or three small bench presses comprise the equipment for flattening and pressing documents. Stretched tautly across the room at short intervals are lines of narrow cloth webbing on which to hang freshly repaired or gelatine-treated paper documents to dry before they are pressed. The type of sink newly installed is specially designed, with unusually large drain boards, and at the side a deep, lead-lined basin for acid baths, etc.

Working quarters are provided for about nine men, under the supervision of Signore Arbo Magliochetti. Wooden tables, accommodating two or sometimes three repairers, are adapted to the peculiar requirements of manuscript repair, each having two or three sheets of plate glass ( $24\frac{1}{2} \times 18\frac{1}{2}$  inches), let into the top as working surfaces. The glass surfaces can be illuminated if need be by electric light from below, for very delicate repair work; the remainder of the top surface of the tables is covered with brown linoleum. Each man is supplied with certain tools, such as white enamel ware containers for paste, water, sponges, etc.; aluminum pots and cups for dissolving gelatine; sponges (smaller and of looser quality than at the Public Record Office); several sizes and types of brushes for applying gelatine, paste,



etc.; and an assortment of knives for paring parchment and various cutting operations.

The Vatican technique of repairing manuscripts on parchment or vellum differs in certain essentials from that followed at the Public Record Office in London:

1. *The adhesive agent is not paste but gelatine.*

The gelatine, of the quality called *gélatine extra*, is obtained from the *Société des Produits Chimiques Coignet*, 3, Rue Rabelais, Lyon, France, at 35 francs per kilogramme. It comes in thin sheets, which are cut up and dissolved either in water or an aqueous solution of acetic acid, as the case may be, preparatory to use. The acetic acid is the solvent if the gelatine is to be used for sticking two pieces of parchment together (25 gr. of gelatine to 100 gr. of acetic acid). To make the gelatine insoluble, after application, it is lightly brushed with formalin (5 gr. in 100 gr. of water). If the gelatine is intended more as sizing, for strengthening delicate parchments, it is dissolved in boiling water (gelatine, 12 gr.; water, 100 gr.) and applied while still hot. More water may be added if the mixture becomes too thick. The use of gelatine as an adhesive permits the joining of new parchment to the manuscript without an overlap—an extremely important point when there is writing on both sides of the manuscript extending to the very edge which is being repaired.

There are numerous Byzantine manuscripts in the Vatican Library, written on purple parchment with gold and silver ink. In the repair of these manuscripts, court-plaster, of the requisite thinness, is used as an adhesive for joining new parchment (also coloured purple) to the old or for filling up a crack in the manuscript. Only alcohol is used for dampening prior to flattening.

2. *The new parchment used in repairing is not so bleached as usual, so that the hair side is quite noticeably yellower than the flesh side.*

Parchment of various qualities is supplied to the Vatican Library by Gentili Ferruccio, Via Agostino Bertani, No. 1, Rome.

3. *Dampening prior to flattening is done with alcohol sprayed on the document if the document is in an exceptionally fragile condition or if the ink is very bad.*

If the ink is good (not carbon or flaky) and the manuscript is in fairly good condition, water may be applied lightly with a sponge.

In general, however, the reverse is true, and it is best to avoid direct moistening of the manuscript. A safe method of flattening several manuscript leaves at one time is by light pressing between sheets of dampened absorbent paper, which, however, are separated from the manuscript leaves by dry sheets. When the manuscript leaves are sufficiently impregnated with the moisture to be pliable, they are subjected to heavy pressure between completely dry sheets of absorbent paper.

4. *Complete backing of the documents with the new parchment is almost never done ; filling in missing portions is the usual procedure.*

The meticulous refinement of the technique of parchment repair at the Vatican Library may be accounted for not only by superior equipment (primarily the glass working surface), but also by the precious character of many of the manuscripts which have to be treated. It is admittedly a matter of greater skill to repair a beautifully illuminated liturgical manuscript than an ordinary deed. Although not all of the parchment manuscripts needing repair at the Vatican Library are illuminated or even unusually precious, by any means, still the painstaking, careful procedure which has been worked out for the particularly valuable items is largely followed in every instance. The practice of supplying missing portions of manuscript, essentially much more complicated than simple backing, has therefore been perfected to a high degree. It is possible on the illuminated glass working surface to trace on a sheet of new parchment the irregular indentations and jagged outlines of damaged portions of the manuscript, and with a small pair of manicuring scissors to cut precisely along this traced line, so that the new piece will fit exactly into place. As a general rule the two edges to be joined are carefully pared with a sharp knife, thus allowing a slight overlap for additional strength, but if writing extends to the edge of the manuscript such an overlap is manifestly impossible, and the gelatine must serve as the sole bond between the two adjacent edges.

The practice of strengthening damaged manuscripts with a covering of transparent silk gauze was instituted at the Vatican Library by the late Cardinal Ehrle, prefect of the library from 1895 to 1914, who was also responsible for the use of new parchment and gelatine in the repair of manuscripts on parchment. This is not, however, the sole method of paper repair, as there are frequent

instances where the manuscript, while damaged, does not require reinforcement with silk gauze.

For the application of the silk gauze, gelatine once again serves as an adhesive, at the same time imparting new life to the paper. The solution, in water, is much thinner than required in parchment repair, only about 7 or 8 gr. of gelatine being added to 100 gr. of water. If the paper is thick or very decayed the gelatine content may be slightly increased. The silk gauze is simply laid on the surface of the manuscript and lightly stroked with a brush dipped in the hot gelatine solution. The manuscript is hung up to dry before pressing and flattening.

If a paper manuscript is in need of resizing but does not require strengthening with silk gauze, it is briefly immersed in a bath of the hot gelatine. The long, shallow tray of chromium-plated copper containing the gelatine fits into a large, electrically-heated basin filled with water, which serves to maintain the gelatine at the proper temperature. Standing in position over the tray are two uprights of the same metal with a horizontal crossbar over which to draw the manuscript after it has been passed through the liquid, in order to remove excess gelatine before hanging the manuscript up to dry.

It is sometimes desirable to fill in small holes in manuscripts after the silk gauze has been applied. This is accomplished in the Vatican Library by the use of "liquid paper". Unsized wove paper (Italian-made) is cut up into small pieces and placed in a small glass; water and a small amount of flour paste are added. The whole is stirred for about fifteen minutes in a mechanical mixer (of the malted milk type) until the mixture is quite smooth. It is then strained to get rid of surplus water, laid on a glass surface and mashed carefully with a supple, broad-bladed knife to remove lumps, and strained again if necessary. The final result is a thickish, white, pasty-looking mixture, which may be bottled till needed. This "liquid paper" is applied to holes in the manuscript on the point of a knife blade, on both verso and recto of the page. Very little is required—just enough to fill up the hole to the same thickness as the paper of the manuscript. The "liquid paper" adheres easily to the silk gauze with which the manuscript is already covered.

Filling in on a larger scale, when there are large portions of the manuscript completely missing, is done in the Vatican Library with unsized wove paper—either the ordinary Japanese paper or a special quality (heavier in weight) made in Italy. Wheat flour paste is used as an adhesive. The Japanese paper is neither cut nor torn to size,

but the surplus portion is removed bit by bit with fine pincers after it has been pasted down. One or two additional layers of wove paper may be applied if necessary to approximate the thickness of the manuscript itself.

Some manuscripts on paper have turned dark brown because of the corrosion of the ink, or exposure to damp, or other reasons. To bleach to some extent this brownish stain and to make the writing more readable, before repair, the following special treatment is prescribed at the Vatican Library: Prepare in two large, rectangular glass jars a 4 per cent solution of potassium permanganate and a 3 per cent solution of oxalic acid, both in water. Place the manuscript between pieces of coarse gauze in a wire screen frame. Immerse the frame successively as follows:

1. In the solution of potassium permanganate  
(until the reddish colour has penetrated the  
paper)      ...      ...      ...      3 minutes
2. In a basin of cold water (until the reddish  
colour is removed)      ...      ...      3 minutes
3. In the solution of oxalic acid      ...      3 minutes
4. In hot water for only a moment, then in running  
cold water until thoroughly washed.

The manuscript when removed from the frame is laid on a horizontal wire drying frame for at least an hour. Silk gauze can then be applied if necessary, or if not, a gelatine bath alone may be sufficient before flattening.

The reference department is in the Sistine Wing, where there occurred on December 22, 1931, a disastrous collapse of the roof, burying some 15,000 volumes under the debris. The damage was soon repaired, however, and provision made against the recurrence of such an accident. The library and archive stacks are in separate wings. Both are of the latest steel construction and are well ventilated and lighted.

#### GROTTAFERRATA.

In Grottaferrata, a village near Rome, is situated a former Greek Basilian monastery which has been converted into a national monument by the Italian government. A repair-shop has been established similar to that in the Vatican Library, under the supervision of Signore Aloisi, the chief repairer. Manuscripts and books

may be sent here for repair or rebinding by libraries and archives in any part of Italy. Father Nilo Borgia is the director of the institution.\*

\* The following may be consulted for additional material on the Italian archives: Guido Biagi: "La conferenza internazionale di S. Gallo per il restauro degli antichi codici", and "Della conservazione dei mss. antichi", *Rivista delle Biblioteche e degli Archivi*, IX (1898), 168-171, 154-160. Gino Borghezio, "Come si salvano le pergamene in rovina", *La Bibliofilia*, XXIV (1923), 349-350. Eugenio Casanova: *Archivistica* (Siena, 1928); "Il primo Congresso internazionale degli archivisti e dei bibliotecari in Bruxelles", *Rivista delle Biblioteche e degli Archivi*, vol. XXI (1910), 137-144; "Relazione sulla conferenza internazionale di San Gallo", *Bollettino Ufficiale del Ministero della Pubblica Istruzione*, vol. XXXVII (1909). Franz Ehrle: "Della conservazione e del restauro dei manoscritti antichi", *Rivista delle Biblioteche e degli Archivi*, IX (1898), 5 et seq.; "Per il restauro dei manoscritti", *Rivista delle Biblioteche e degli Archivi*, vol. XXII (1911), 71-74. Fabroni, "Lettera al Bibliotecario di Modena intorno al restauro dei libri", *Nuovo Giornale dei Letterati* (Pisa, 1806), vol. IV, and *Giornale Pisano dei Letterati* (Pisa, 1806), vol. V. Alfonso Gallo: "Malattie dei libri", *Accademie e Biblioteche d'Italia*, vol. III (1930); *Le malattie del libro, le cure ed i restauri* (Milan, 1935); "I manoscritti superstiti del l'incendio della Biblioteca nazionale di Torino", *Accademie e Biblioteche d'Italia*, vol. III (1929); "Il restauro dei manoscritti e dei documenti antichi", *Accademie e Biblioteche d'Italia* (Rome, 1928), vol. I. Piero Giacosa, "Relazione dei lavori intrapresi al Laboratorio di Materia Medica per il ricupero e restauro dei Codici appartenenti alla Biblioteca di Tornio", *Atti della R. Accademia delle Scienze di Torino*, XXXIX (1904), 1070-1078. Gortani, *L'incendio della Biblioteca nazionale di Torino* (Turin-Genoa, 1904). Icilio Guareschi: *Della pergamena, con osservazioni ed esperienze sul ricupero e sul restauro di codici danneggiati negli incendi e notizie storiche* (Turin: Unione tipografico-editrice, 1905); "Osservazioni ed esperienze sul ricupero e sul restauro dei codici danneggiati dal l'incendio della Biblioteca nazionale di Torino", *Memorie della R. Accad. delle Scienze di Torino*, 2nd series, LIV (1904), 423-458. Leti: "Studi sulla carta. Sfoldatura del foglio", and "Studi sulla carta e in particolare sulla carta bruciata", *Accademie e Biblioteche d'Italia*, vol. V (1923). Maurizio Mastroianni, *Considerazioni critiche sul restauro degli antichi manoscritti* (Naples: Fr. Giannini and figli, 1912). Mario Morgana, *Restauro dei libri antichi* (Milan, 1932). Augusto Piccini, "La Conferenza internazionale per la conservazione degli antichi codici", *Archivio storico italiano*, 5th series (Florence, 1899), XXIII, 324-329. Sibilia, "Le Malattie crittogamiche dei libri", *Accademie e Biblioteche d'Italia*, vol. IX (1935). Testi: "Malattie e restauri dei libri", *Accademie e Biblioteche d'Italia*, vol. VII (1933); "Storia e tecnica del restauro dei libri e dei manoscritti", *La Chimica* (Rome, 1935), vol. XI. Torri, "I restauri dei codici della Biblioteca di Torino", *Moyzeion*, vol. I (1923). Giovanni Vittani, "D'un metodo per far rivivere gl'inchiostri studiato a Milano nel 1792-1793", *Il libro e la Stampa*, VI (1912-1913), 161-176. Pier Ignazio Vottero, *Conservazione e restauro dei documenti* (Pisa, 1912).

# INDIAN HISTORICAL RECORDS COMMISSION

## PROCEEDINGS OF THE SILVER JUBILEE SESSION

DECEMBER 23-24, 1948

**T**HE 25TH ANNUAL SESSION of the Indian Historical Records Commission held on December 23-24, 1948 was celebrated as its Silver Jubilee session. The Hon'ble Pandit Jawahar Lal Nehru, Prime Minister of India, inaugurated the Public Meeting of the session in the newly built and spacious Assembly Hall of the University of Delhi on the morning of 23 December. The meeting was presided over by Maulana Abul Kalam Azad, Minister of Education and ex-officio President of the Commission. Among those who attended the inaugural meeting were corresponding members from Ceylon, Nepal and Burma, two visitors from Spain and members of the diplomatic corps stationed in the metropolis of the Dominion of India.

Sir Maurice Gwyer, Vice-Chancellor of the University of Delhi, welcomed the members of the Commission and others on behalf of the University. In the course of his address he said:

"The presence of many distinguished guests and strangers is an indication of the importance of the work of the Commission and a recognition of the value of its labours. It links the past of India with the present and with the future. It seeks to preserve before it is too late the priceless treasures which are to be found in the records of bygone centuries and it makes these available for historians and institutions and it is thus taking a very notable part in the renaissance of India."

Delivering his inaugural address, the Prime Minister commended the valuable work done by the Commission and expressed the hope that it would continue its labour with greater zeal in the service of Indian history. Pandit Nehru pleaded with the assembled scholars to make a popular approach to history and lay stress on the binding aspects of events rather than on the disruptive and fissiparous tendencies. This, he held, could be done without sacrificing preciseness, truth and scholarship.

The presidential speech of Maulana Azad began with a note of applause for the achievements of the Commission during the past years. Referring to the numerous gaps in our knowledge of Indian

history, Maulana Azad called upon the historians of India to prepare a plan for writing a full history of India through the ages—the story of co-operation and common endeavour, the development of civilization and culture and growth of the arts, philosophy, religion and humanity. He was also of opinion that there were certain fields where a wide variety of source materials made research on a co-operative basis more valuable than individual research. Referring to the epoch of the Indus Valley Civilisation, he said that authenticated evidence was possible only by the co-operation of the archæologist and the historian.

Speaking about the National Archives of India, Maulana Azad said it was a store-house of raw materials of history, but only a fraction of our records were available there. He appealed to the public to bring forward valuable historical documents which were still in private possession. Scattered throughout the land, he said, there were family documents, sanads, firmans and a variety of ancient manuscripts which would be lost unless prompt steps were taken for their proper preservation. Collection of records from various provinces and states at one common centre and their proper preservation were, said the Education Minister, proper functions of a National Archives. Explaining the policy of the Government, the Education Minister said that despite the financial stringency that faced the country, the Ministry of Education “will not spare any effort to achieve whatever is possible in the present conditions.”

After the speech of the President, the Secretary, Dr. S. N. Sen read messages of greetings and good wishes from His Excellency the Governor General; from Mr. Hilary Jenkinson, Deputy Keeper of Records, Public Records Office, London and from the Education Minister of Gwalior.

The Chinese Ambassador, Dr. Chia-Luen Lo read a scholarly paper on *Chinese Sources of Indian History* which appears elsewhere in this issue.

The post-luncheon session was devoted mainly to the reading of a series of papers by a number of scholars. In the absence of Maulana Azad, Prof. D. V. Potdar was in the Chair. Papers were read on subjects so diverse as *Archives in the United States of America*, *The Woodstock (Oxfordshire) Town Archives*, *Correspondence of Maharaja Ranjit Singh* and *A Century Old Marathi Newspapers*. In the absence of Mr. Hilary Jenkinson his extremely interesting paper entitled *Twenty five years: Some Reminiscences of an English Archivist 1923-1948*, was read by the Assistant Secretary of the Commission.

The Research and Publication Committee of the Commission met on the morning of 24 December with Dr. Tara Chand in the Chair. The Committee reviewed the action taken on the resolutions adopted at its earlier meetings. The Publication Programme entrusted to the National Archives of India was one of the items discussed in details. This was followed by the annual Members' Meeting of the Commission. In the unavoidable absence of Maulana Abul Kalam Azad, Dr. Tara Chand presided.

Among the recommendations made by the Commission as well as its adjunct the Research and Publication Committee, the most important ones relate to:

- (i) taking over by the Government of India the control and management of the Mackenzie Manuscripts, Dutch and Danish records, and Tanjore Raj records at present in the custody of different provincial governments and to preserve, index and catalogue them; their periodical inspection by the Government of India's Director of Archives who should report to the Commission, and to provide necessary funds for the project;
- (ii) preparation by the Government of India a Catalogue of portraits and paintings of historical interest to India in the possession of various institutions and private individuals;
- (iii) listing, cataloguing and indexing of the late Residency records transferred to the National Archives of India;
- (iv) obtaining microfilm copies of all records relating to India from foreign countries;
- (v) publication by the Commission of the text of important historical manuscripts, documents, etc., unearthed by the Regional Records Survey Committees; and
- (vi) publication in the Proceedings of the Indian Historical Records Commission lists of interesting and new subjects which the research scholars come across in the course of their researches in various records agencies, with a view to helping and co-ordinating the work of other scholars.

The Commission also discussed the question of India's participation in the International Council on Archives which had come into existence as a result of the deliberation of an informal meeting of Archivists called by the UNESCO at Paris in June, 1948. The Commission was of opinion that India should be adequately represented



at the first International Conference of Archivists which was expected to meet in 1950.

The members of the Commission attending the Jubilee session had a round of social engagements as well. They were taken out on excursions to the Red Fort, the Historical Exhibition organised by the National Archives of India at New Delhi Town Hall and the Art Exhibition at the Government House. The Minister of Education gave a party on 23 December and His Excellency the Governor General was at home to the members at the Government House on 25 December. Sir Maurice Gwyer, Vice-Chancellor of Delhi University gave a reception to the members on the 26th evening. Several of them also visited the National Archives.

### HISTORICAL EXHIBITION

A special feature of the Silver Jubilee Session was the exhibition of records, some rare historical manuscripts, on paper, palm leaf and birch bark, maps and plans, illustrating different phases of the history and culture of India, at the New Delhi Town Hall. The Exhibition was open from December 23 to 29 and proved to be a popular feature. Most of the record offices, libraries, museums, learned societies and many individuals had offered to lend selected items from their valuable collections for the occasion, but the number of exhibits had to be drastically cut down due to paucity of available space. In all 295 items were displayed and they were selected from the holdings of: The National Archives of India, New Delhi; The Secretariat of the Constituent Assembly, New Delhi; Record Office, Madras; Record Office, Bombay; State Record Department, Baroda; Combined Inter-Services Historical Section, Simla; National Library, Calcutta; His Highness's Library, Rampur State; Rabindra Bhawan, Vishva Bharati, Santiniketan; Muslim University Library, Aligarh; Government of Jammu and Kashmir; Assam Provincial Museum, Gauhati; Provincial Museum, Cuttack; Prince of Wales Museum, Bombay; Archaeological Museum, Red Fort, Delhi; Central Asian Antiquities Museum, New Delhi; Museum and Picture Gallery, Baroda; Mr. Ajit Ghose of Calcutta and Sardar Ganda Singh of Amritsar.

At the Exhibition were displayed many historical documents in the original, and photographic copies of others. The oldest item was one of the *Gilgit Manuscripts*, belonging to the 7th century, written on birch bark and one of the oldest manuscripts in India. It was lent by the Government of Jammu and Kashmir. The most recent

[illegible]

ਪ੍ਰਿਥਵੀ

Exhibit No. 3: A page from *Gita Govinda*, illustrated Assamese Manuscript on *sasi* bark

*By courtesy of Assam Provincial Museum, Gauhati*

[illegible]

مست  
جناب صاحب  
مجلس

درین باره سرجمت خلیفه نعمت الله

بدستور معمولی الله تعالی فرموده مقامات

تشریف فرموده باینکه هر کس می نمود

باعتبار این که در این ملک و این

مبارک سرزمین معاف از هر کار

که بدست امپدور است اعانت

عبدی نیست از سیر و سیر و سیر  
حد فیه گذر نه بعام و در این وقوع  
احسان و قدر و این اعظم شکر

Exhibit No. 51. A letter from Nana Farnavis to Sir John Shore reporting the death of Peshwa Madho Rao I in 1795 (N. I. I Foreign Persian O R, 23 November 1795, No. 353)

جناب صاحب مجلس سران خود باد سلام

درین باره سرجمت خلیفه نعمت الله



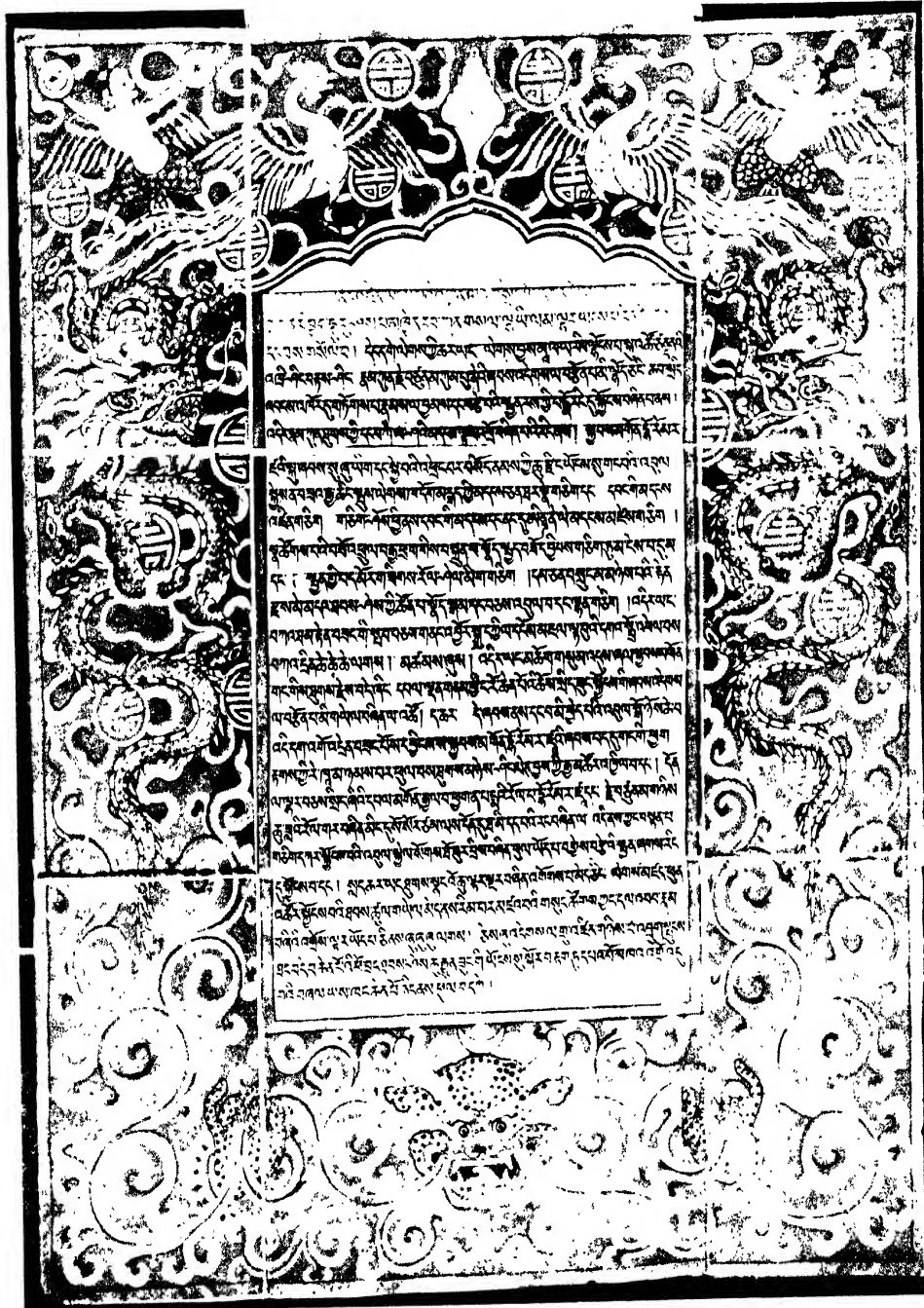
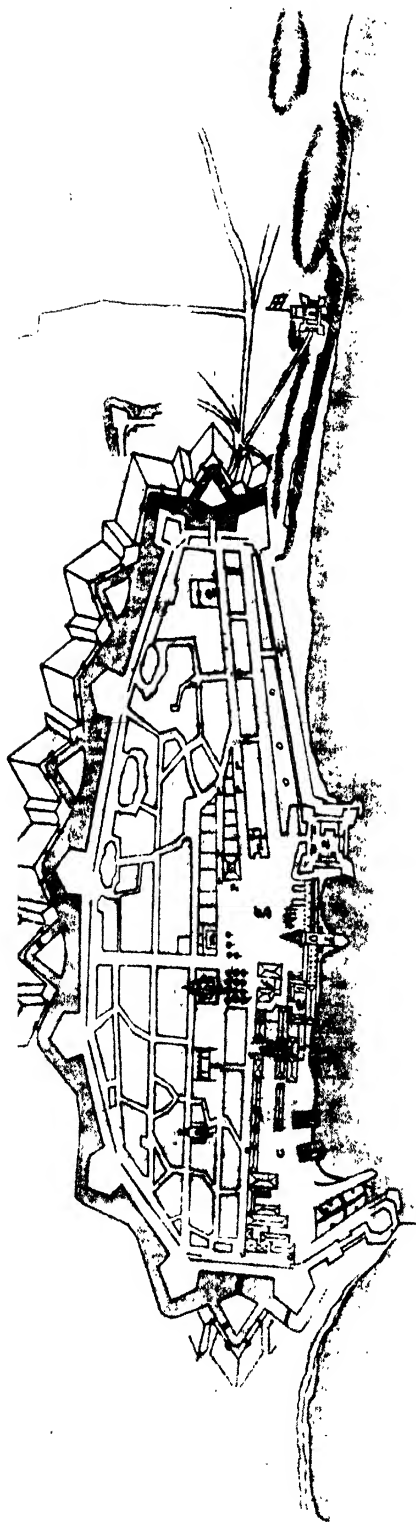


Exhibit No. 153: A letter from Bhutan addressed to Trevelyan,  
dated 27 November 1836

(N. A. I. Foreign Persian OR., 11 April 1837)

*Bombay 1758.*



- Fort de Bombay*
1. L'entrée
  2. L'égout de la ville
  3. L'égout de la ville
  4. L'égout de la ville
  5. L'égout de la ville
  6. L'égout de la ville
  7. L'égout de la ville
  8. L'égout de la ville
  9. L'égout de la ville
  10. L'égout de la ville
  11. L'égout de la ville
  12. L'égout de la ville
  13. L'égout de la ville
  14. L'égout de la ville
  15. L'égout de la ville
  16. L'égout de la ville
  17. L'égout de la ville
  18. L'égout de la ville
  19. L'égout de la ville
  20. L'égout de la ville
  21. L'égout de la ville
  22. L'égout de la ville
  23. L'égout de la ville
  24. L'égout de la ville
  25. L'égout de la ville
  26. L'égout de la ville
  27. L'égout de la ville
  28. L'égout de la ville
  29. L'égout de la ville
  30. L'égout de la ville
  31. L'égout de la ville
  32. L'égout de la ville
  33. L'égout de la ville
  34. L'égout de la ville
  35. L'égout de la ville
  36. L'égout de la ville
  37. L'égout de la ville
  38. L'égout de la ville
  39. L'égout de la ville
  40. L'égout de la ville
  41. L'égout de la ville
  42. L'égout de la ville
  43. L'égout de la ville
  44. L'égout de la ville
  45. L'égout de la ville
  46. L'égout de la ville
  47. L'égout de la ville
  48. L'égout de la ville
  49. L'égout de la ville
  50. L'égout de la ville
  51. L'égout de la ville
  52. L'égout de la ville
  53. L'égout de la ville
  54. L'égout de la ville
  55. L'égout de la ville
  56. L'égout de la ville
  57. L'égout de la ville
  58. L'égout de la ville
  59. L'égout de la ville
  60. L'égout de la ville
  61. L'égout de la ville
  62. L'égout de la ville
  63. L'égout de la ville
  64. L'égout de la ville
  65. L'égout de la ville
  66. L'égout de la ville
  67. L'égout de la ville
  68. L'égout de la ville
  69. L'égout de la ville
  70. L'égout de la ville
  71. L'égout de la ville
  72. L'égout de la ville
  73. L'égout de la ville
  74. L'égout de la ville
  75. L'égout de la ville
  76. L'égout de la ville
  77. L'égout de la ville
  78. L'égout de la ville
  79. L'égout de la ville
  80. L'égout de la ville
  81. L'égout de la ville
  82. L'égout de la ville
  83. L'égout de la ville
  84. L'égout de la ville
  85. L'égout de la ville
  86. L'égout de la ville
  87. L'égout de la ville
  88. L'égout de la ville
  89. L'égout de la ville
  90. L'égout de la ville
  91. L'égout de la ville
  92. L'égout de la ville
  93. L'égout de la ville
  94. L'égout de la ville
  95. L'égout de la ville
  96. L'égout de la ville
  97. L'égout de la ville
  98. L'égout de la ville
  99. L'égout de la ville
  100. L'égout de la ville

*Maison de Campagne du gouvernement de Bombay à 4 M. de la ville.*



Exhibit No. 925. Plan of Bombay, 1758.  
(N. A. I. Records.)

document displayed was a copy of the Indian Charter of Freedom (January 22, 1947).

Exhibits which attracted particular attention were from the Secretariat of the Constituent Assembly, being the basic documents of the New Free India. These included a photographic copy of the Charter of Freedom; a photographic copy of the Register of Signatures of the Constituent Assembly members; the National Flag, presented by the Prime Minister to the Constituent Assembly on 22 July, 1947 and the poem presented by the Chinese Ambassador in India on the occasion of Indian Independence.

The other exhibits included a collection of Persian manuscripts, some on world history and some on the general history of India, others giving the history of the Afghans, the Mughals, and local histories such as that of Kashmir and the Panjab. The exhibits from the National Archives of India were grouped under different subject headings, *viz.* Economic History, Judicial and Administrative Development, the early growth of the Indian Press, the growth of Western education in India, the Postal System and Miscellaneous. The groups represented some landmarks in the history of British India before the transfer of the dominions of the East India Company to the Crown. Of special interest were a number of treaties displayed in the original, illuminated letters in Persian written by notable Indian chiefs and documents illustrating the early growth of the Indian Press. Among the documents obtained on loan from other record offices, mention may be made of selected items from the muniments of Madras and Bombay records offices, which exemplify some of the oldest records of the East India Company available in India and dating back to early 17th century. Of particular interest from the Madras collection was the Charter granted in 1758 to the United Company of Merchants of England trading to the East Indies by George II, and the first volume of the original diary of Ananda Ranga Pillai, interpreter in the service of Dupleix. The Bombay collection included autograph letters of many renowned Marathas including King Sahu, Nana Farnavis, Peshwa Bajirao, Mahadji Sindhia and others and Surat Factory Outward Letters (1630).

One section of the Exhibition was devoted to paintings consisting of selected miniatures by Indian masters from the 16th to the 18th century. These were displayed not so much with the object of presenting to the visitor a documented account of the different styles of painting that developed under the Mughals as with that of acquainting him with a few contemporary portraits of the people

who made history—thus affording him a glimpse into the everyday life lived by the princes as well as people in those days. Of particular interest among them was an exquisitely drawn painting depicting the scene of historic reconciliation between Akbar and Salim, lent by Baroda Museum & Picture Gallery. Hardly less interesting was a miniature of the Deccanese school which incidentally is an offshoot of the Mughal school portraying Abdullah Qutb Shah of Golconda (1626-1672) with a lady.

# NEWS NOTES

## INDIA

### *National Archives of India*

The accessions of records during 1948 amounted to 86 boxes, 699 bundles and 1,057 volumes of records, totalling approximately 3,300 cubic feet. All the records of the defunct Residencies and Political Agencies could not be transferred to the National Archives due to lack of space for housing them and the lack of personnel to administer them.

The project for acquisition of microfilm copies of foreign records bearing on Indian history has shown continued progress. The Department has acquired copies of the *Palk Manuscripts* from the City Library of Exeter and of some portions of the Correspondence of Major James Browne with Warren Hastings from the Commonwealth Relations Office (late India Office) in London.

Robert Palk (1717-1798), after whom Palk Strait which separates Ceylon from India was named, came to Madras in 1751 as Chaplain in the service of East India Company, but he soon gave up his deacon's orders and entered the Civil Service in 1761. He became second member of Council in October 1762 and was appointed Governor of Madras a year later on Pigot's departure from the Presidency. He retained this high post till he left for England in January 1767. Palk entered Parliament for Ashburton (Devonshire) and became a strong supporter of Warren Hastings. During his stay in India he had developed a number of friendships both with Indians and Englishmen and after his retirement he continued to take interest in Indian affairs. His correspondence contains materials of commercial as well as political interest. The collection of documents in the Exeter City Library, known as *Palk Manuscripts*, were till recently in the possession of Mrs. Bannatyne of Haldon (Devonshire). A calendar of these papers prepared by Col. H. D. Love was published by the Historical Manuscripts Commission in 1922 but he had omitted some 72 documents of commercial character. The National Archives of India has acquired copies of all the *Palk Manuscripts* now available in the Exeter City Library except for the material of purely Devonian interest. A large collection of Palk's correspondence is also available in the British Museum and copies of these papers are also being acquired.

Major James Browne was temporarily in East India Company's Civil Service during Warren Hastings' period of Governor-Generalship. He was sent as an Envoy to the Court of Shah Alam and was Resident at Delhi in 1782-85. The microfilms of his correspondence



have been acquired to fill the lacunae in the correspondence in the custody of the National Archives of India.

The plans for the mechanization of repair and rehabilitation processes has gone a step further in the National Archives of India. The Department has recently received a vacuum fumigation chamber capable of effectively fumigating with lethal gas 300 cubic feet of records at a time and arrangements for its installation are being made. The hydraulic laminating press for which orders were placed with Baldwin Locomotive Works, Philadelphia (U.S.A.) in 1946 has also arrived. It is hoped that the two machines will start functioning in 1950. An air cleaning unit is also likely to be set up in the near future.

The volume, *Indian Travels of Thevenot and Careri*, edited by the Director of Archives and the fifth volume of *Fort William-India House Correspondence*, edited by Dr. N. K. Sinha of Calcutta University, were sent to press in July 1948. The former publication appeared in September 1949 while the volume of *Fort William-India House Correspondence* has been printed and is expected to be issued for sale next year. *Calendars of Persian Correspondence*, volumes VIII and IX, covering the years 1788-89 and 1790-91 respectively, have also been sent to press and volume X (1792-93) is ready for printing.

The National Archives compiled a small volume on the history and activities of the Indian Historical Records Commission during 1919-48. The publication work, however, received a serious set back by the departure of the three Editors from the Department for better paid jobs in the Ministry of Defence and the vacancies could not be filled because of the non-availability of adequately trained people.

Dr. Purnendu Basu, Assistant Director of Archives, returned from U.S.A. early in September 1948. He had got himself enrolled in September 1947 as an intern at the National Archives, Washington D.C. There he worked for nearly ten months mainly on records administration, preservation and photo-duplication of records. He also studied at the Graduate Division of School of Social Sciences & Public Affairs, American University (Washington) where he followed theoretical courses on the history and administration of archives in Europe and America, management and control of current government records, historiography and principles and evolution of public administration. His training was rounded off by a 12,000 mile tour of the country visiting leading state archives, manuscript libraries and historical research centres, institutional and business archives and allied organizations.

The Research Rules of the National Archives of India have been recently revised by the Government of India on the recommendation of the Indian Historical Records Commission. It has been decided to make their non-confidential records up to 1901 accessible to bonafide research students. Previously the chronological limit had been 1880. The Government has also agreed to abolish distinction

between the subjects of the 'Indian States' and research students from the former British Indian provinces. These changes have been effected in consequence of constitutional changes and the new political set-up of the country. The students from the States who have acceded to the Indian Union will no longer suffer from the disabilities which were in operation before the birth of the Dominion of India.

### *Indian Historical Records Commission*

This year the Government of India decided to set up an Indian National Commission for cooperation with UNESCO with the following objects:

(1) to serve as a liaison agency between UNESCO and the institutions concerned with and working for the progress of science, education and culture ;

(2) to act in an advisory capacity to the Government of India in matters relating to UNESCO.

The Indian Historical Records Commission was called upon to nominate a representative to the National Commission and Dr. S. N. Sen, Secretary of the Indian Historical Records Commission, attended the first meeting of the National Commission held in New Delhi on April 9 and 10.

### *Twelfth Meeting of the Research and Publication Committee*

The reconstitution of the Local Records Sub-Committee of the Indian Historical Records Commission and the adoption of a five year plan of work for Regional Record Survey Committees figured prominently in the deliberations of the Twelfth Meeting of the Research and Publication Committee held at New Delhi on 10 July 1948. Dr. Tara Chand, Educational Adviser to the Government of India and *ex-officio* Chairman of the Committee presided.

The change in the composition of the Local Records Sub-Committee which formerly included an official representative of the Political Department or its successor, the Ministry of States, was necessitated by the constitutional changes with the emergence of India as a self-governing Dominion and abolition of the Office of Crown Representative. The Committee recommended that the Sub-Committee be reconstituted to include: the Educational Adviser to the Government of India, *ex-officio* Chairman ; a nominee of the Ministry of Home Affairs, preferably a Deputy Secretary ; a member co-opted by the Chairman for one year ; and the Director of Archives to the Government of India, *ex-officio* Secretary. It was also provided that a member of the Commission if available at Delhi be co-opted for the entire period of three years for which the Sub-Committee is ordinarily appointed.

The Research and Publication Committee approved the report

of the Sub-Committee appointed by the Government of India for preparing a plan of work of the Regional Survey Committees in the Provinces. According to this scheme the main concern of the Survey Committees for the next five years would be the preparation of a National Register of Records by the employment of whole-time and part-time workers. It recommended that the Government of India should grant financial assistance to the Committees to the extent of Rs. 57,000 each year during a period of five years.

The Committee also endorsed the recommendations of the Sub-Committee on the conservation of historical records under a unified central control and recommended to the Government of India to give financial assistance to such provinces and states as might not be in a position to preserve their records without financial help from the Centre. Another resolution passed by the Committee related to centralization at the provincial headquarters of non-current records of Divisions, Districts and Sub-Divisions.

#### *Regional Survey Committees and the National Register Scheme*

As reported above the proposal regarding the compilation of a National Register of Records, sponsored by the Indian Historical Records Commission was recently examined by a Sub-Committee appointed by the Government of India. The Committee met in July 1948 and recommended an annual grant of Rs. 57,000 for a period of five years to be distributed to the Regional Survey Committees for collection of information for the National Register. The Government of India while agreeing in principle with the scheme were of opinion that this should be deferred for the present. Therefore, the Regional Committees were obliged to confine their activities to general survey of records and historical manuscripts. Some of the Committees have bought some historical manuscripts out of the grants given to them by the Government and have subsequently transferred these valuable documents to the National Archives of India. The reports received from some of the Survey Committees for the work done during 1947-48 are summarized below:

*The Madras Committee* conducted a vigorous survey work during the year, which revealed that the Hindu Religious Endowment Board was taking due care to preserve, classify and index all historical manuscripts, records, copper plates, stone inscriptions, etc., in the possession of 22 religious institutions under the Board. A successful attempt was also made by the Committee to preserve from destruction all historical records of the Tanjore Rajas in the *Sar-i-Khel* Office in Tanjore. The Board of Revenue records in different districts were also surveyed by the Committee and valuable information about the state of listing, preservation, classification and indexing of old historical records was obtained from the districts of Kistna, Tinnevely, Vizagapatam, Trichinopoly, Ramnad and Chingleput. It is expected that important information would be collected from various *Zamin*

Offices, which will throw new light on their history and on the relations between the Nawabs of the Carnatic and the East India Company. Among the important documents, etc., unearthed by the Committee, mention may be made of: (i) A Tamil biography of Shivaji; (ii) some family and official papers of the *Tahisal* (Mint Masters) of the Tanjore Maratha Raj and some of their *sanads*; (iii) family papers of the Christian courtiers of Pondicherry from the time of Lazare de Motta, the Dubash of François Martin, André Muthayappa, and of Pedro Konakaroya Mudaliyar, rival and contemporary of the well-known diarist Ananda Ranga Pillai.

*C. P. and Berar Committee* examined the *samadhis* of the Bhonsla Rajas in Nagpur and noted the names of all the historical personages to be found there. They also examined the records of the Bhonsla family in the Kothi Mahal which mostly relate to the post-annexation period but also contain valuable information about Raja Raghujī III, the last ruling prince of Nagpur. Dr. Y. K. Deshpande, Convener of the Committee, also inspected the records of several old families in Nagpur and visited Sindkhed and Deolagaon Raja, the headquarters of the famous Jadhav family. During his visit to Ellichpur in Berar, Dr. Deshpande came across a Persian Manuscript of 590 pages of *akhbarat* of the court of the subahdar of Berar under the Nizam. Another member of the Committee was deputed to examine the old family records in the possession of Muslim families at Burhanpur and his report revealed the existence of a number of important documents and manuscripts some of which date back to the reign of Emperor Humayun. Among the most outstanding finds were the works by Khwaja Mahmood Gawan and Dara Shikoh and one manuscript dealing with medicine and dedicated to Emperor Humayun in 946 A.H.

The *Committee for Bengal and Assam* examined the 18th century records in the High Court at Calcutta. It submitted a report on the *Nizamat* Pension Records in the Murshidabad District Record Office and also examined the family papers of the Maharaja of Burdwan. Arrangements for translations of some Persian papers on the trial of Mirza Jan "Tuppi" in 1800 for treasonable correspondence with Zaman Shah of Kabul are being made by the Committee. Photographic copies of the verdict of the Qazis and Muftis in the trial and of one of the oldest Bengali documents to be found in the proceedings of the Mayor's Court of Calcutta in 1757 were also obtained by the Committee from the High Court.

The *Committee for United Provinces* could not do any large scale survey work during the year. They, however, purchased some valuable historical documents and records through their various regional sub-committees out of the government grant that was made to the Committee. These have since been transferred to the National Archives of India for custody. To the Aligarh Branch goes the credit of acquiring 45 manuscripts, mostly in Persian. The papers pertain mostly to the reign of Muhammad Shah and a few belong to the reign

of Shah Alam. They give information about various events of that period not recorded by chroniclers.

The *Committee for Bihar* discovered many original documents and manuscripts of considerable historical importance. A research scholar of Patna University was deputed by the Convener of the Committee to inspect the government records in the Record Rooms of the Commissioner of Ranchi and Deputy Commissioners of Ranchi, Chaibassa, Purulia, Palamau and Hazaribagh to collect materials for his thesis on "The Mutiny in Bihar and Chotanagpur". The Committee also brought to light a number of Sanskrit and Maithili manuscripts, mostly of literary value, which will supply interesting and important materials for writing a cultural history of Mithila. The search for Persian manuscripts brought to light 28 *firman*s and *parwanah*s bearing seals of Mughal Emperors, their *diwans*, *subahdars* and other officials. The Committee also examined the collection of a school in Patna, in which was found a manuscript copy of the famous *Masnavi Yusuf Zulaikha* of Jami, the last 27 pages of which contained copy of a despatch of Raja Jugul Kishore about the invasion of Nadir Shah. Other works in the collection of the school include 37 volumes of Persian manuscripts of considerable historical and literary value, such as *Jehangir Namah*, *Makatabat Allami*, *Shah Alam Nama*, a Persian translation of *Mahabharata*, *Zafar Namah Taimuri*, *Zafar Nama*, etc. The Convener of the Committee has been able to bring the manuscripts from the school and has deposited them in the Patna University Library. The Committee also came across a number of Mughal *firman*s in the possession of private persons in Bhagalpur which includes *firman*s of Akbar dated 1575 A.D., Azam Shah, son of Alamgir dated 1681 A.D., Muhammed Shah, dated 1718-19 A.D.

The *Delhi Committee* purchased some valuable manuscripts from private persons including *Insahi Dilkhusa*, *Insahi Shang*, *Dastoor-ul-Amal* Akbar's Court, *Waqiat-i-Kashmir*, *Makatabat-i-Abul Fazal*. Besides these a few *firman*s have also been bought by the Committee.

The *Committee for Jodhpur* examined about 50 *kharitas* written by British officers to Maharaja Mansingh of Jodhpur, which are preserved in the Office of the Mir Munshi at Jodhpur. Out of this, 18 relate to letters written by the Governors-General of India.

The *Pudukkottai Committee* prepared English summaries of some of the important copper plate inscriptions pertaining to grants made by Tondaimans and other ruling houses of Southern India. Mr. K. R. Venkatarama Ayyar examined one old copper plate at Sattanur which relates to privileges conferred on Karala Vellalars during the years of anarchy in the 15th Century. He also examined some old records belonging to a prominent resident of Mithilaipatti and some Sanskrit and Marathi records belonging to His Holiness Sri Sankaracharya of Kamakatipitham, Kumbakonam.

The *East Panjab Regional Survey Committee* was constituted in July 1948. It consists of seven members including the Chairman and

Secretary. Dr. G. L. Chopra, Keeper of Records of the East Panjab Government is the Chairman and the office of Secretary is held by Mr. V. S. Suri, a senior member of the staff of the East Panjab Historical Record Office, Simla. The members are interested in particular in exploring unknown documents at present in private custody and other data which would be of help in writing the history of the province and adjacent areas. The scheme for the compilation of the *National Register of Records* is also receiving serious attention of the Regional Survey Committee. Dr. Chopra and some other members of the Committee recently visited several places in the province for this purpose.

### *The Panjab Historical Record Office*

The Panjab before partition had no central record office ; but since 1925 there was in existence a Secretariat Record Office which was housed in an old Mughal structure known as Anarkali's tomb. Within the first six months of the partition, the East Panjab Government established a Historical Record Office with Dr. G. L. Chopra as its whole-time chief. Dr. Chopra had served as part-time Keeper of Records of the Government of United Panjab since 1936. The new Record Office forms a part of the Panjab (I) Secretariat (as in the United Panjab) under the administrative control of the Chief Secretary and is located at Simla in an old church of St. Andrew (or Scots Kirk, built in 1914) known as "The Manse", situated above the General Post Office. The building was acquired by the Provincial Government after it had been fully tested for its adequacy and suitability for storing records. The nucleus of its holdings, as related in the last issue of this journal, is formed by the East Panjab Government's share of the Lahore Secretariat Record Office including the *Khalsa Darbar* Records (1809-49) and District Records of the 19th century. The rest of the materials have been acquired during the last two years from various sources, official as well as non-official. The office of the Commissioner of Ambala has transferred its holding of pre-1880 records, numbering more than 1,000 bundles relating to the Revenue, Judicial, Military, Political, P.W.D. and General Departments. Some old records have also come from the district record offices of Ludhiana and Karnal. The records of the East Panjab Government Liaison Agency which was wound up in March 1949 have also been deposited at the Simla Record Office. These relate to the work of evacuation, rescue of abducted women and forcibly converted people and problems concerning the property of displaced persons. They would at some later date prove to be of immense value for writing the history of the events following the partition.

The acquisitions from private sources include manuscript histories, *sanads*, *jagirnamas*, etc. Some of these documents have been received as gifts from their owners and others have been bought by the Government. The outstanding collections recently acquired are those

of Baba Prem Singh of Hoti Mardan and Thakur Chatar Singh of Kangra. Some valuable manuscripts which would have otherwise perished have also been salvaged from the property left behind by Muslim evacuees from the East Panjab.

The Record Office has also set up a small repair shop for rehabilitating old and fragile documents employing a small staff of menders, one of whom was recently trained at the National Archives of India.

Among the ancillary activities particular mention may be made of maintenance of a library of historical books which would be of help to supplement and elucidate information contained in unpublished records. The library contains 4,500 books in English, Persian, Urdu, Hindi and Panjabi. The Museum in the office is not exactly an archival museum because along with records are displayed paintings, coins and other antiquarian objects.

#### *Madras Record Office*

The *Administrative Report* for 1948-49 shows that large bodies of comparatively recent records were transferred to the custody of the Curator. Among them are: Secretariat Records for 1944, numbering 29,886 files (232 bundles); Board of Revenue Records for 1937 numbering 509 files and 8,247 Deeds, Agreements and Covenants which are known there as 'Strong Almirah Documents'. The passport records of the Mysore, Hyderabad and the Madras States Residencies prior to 1944 have been transferred to the Madras Record Office consequent on the transfer of the work connected with the issue of passports to the Madras Government. The Office has also received for safe custody 9 bundles of foreign missions records. The records of the East India Company's period which were transferred to Palmaner in 1942 for purposes of providing safe storage during the last war have been brought back to the Record Office building in Madras.

One of the major duties of the staff of the Madras Record Office is to make searches among records and write memoranda on behalf of the Government Departments and the report for 1948-49 contains a list of 123 subjects on which information was collected. The Government of Madras has approved the suggestion of the Curator to publish the materials thus prepared in a series of volumes known as *Studies in Madras Administration*, and two volumes of this series are already with the printers. Apart from the cases where prolonged research was required, the Record Office attended during 1948-49 to 11,787 requisitions from various Government departments to whom 32,748 documents were supplied.

There has also been appreciable extension recently in the facilities given to research students. The Government of Madras has decided to throw open for purposes of bonafide research records of Vellore Mutiny which had been withheld so far from students.

Similarly the confidential records in the custody of the Curator, access to which had not been allowed even to research workers, have been thrown open. However, the records of the last 50 years are not accessible to students except with special permission of the Government.

### *U. P. Record Office*

In 1948 the Government of U.P. decided to establish a central record office under a full-time Keeper who was appointed in April 1949. The first Keeper is Dr. G. N. Saleatore who was recently on the staff of the National Archives of India. Dr. Saleatore after taking his doctorate from the University of Bombay received his training in archives administration at the National Archives of India for two years. Dr. Saleatore's headquarters are at present at Allahabad where the bulk of the old records of the Board of Revenue are stored. The main task which the Keeper of Records has to carry out at present is to survey the records of public offices in the United Provinces and remove the records of enduring value, particularly pre-Mutiny records, to the Central Record Room.

### *Record Office, Bombay*

The Director of Archives to the Government of Bombay has been entrusted with additional responsibilities and his archival functions now cover the administration of records in the whole of the province of Bombay. His new duties also include the work of the survey of historical monuments, relics, records and historical manuscripts to be found in the province. The inquiries made recently by him regarding historical documents in the states merged in Bombay have brought to his notice a valuable collection in the 'Patwardhan Daftar' of the Raja of Miraj (Jr).

The Bombay Government has acquired at a price of Rs. 7,000 the famous collection of Persian manuscripts belonging to Sardar Parasnis of Poona. The collection contains: (1) Approximately 1,000 *Akhbarat* or newsletters and daily diary sheets by the agents of the Maratha government at Delhi, Lucknow, Kabul, Lahore, Jaipur and Hyderabad for 1766-1810; (2) Correspondence from various sources (about 6,000 letters) including communications addressed to the Peshwa, beginning from the reign of Madhavrao I, their ministers Sakham Babu, Nana Fadnis, Haripant Phadke and their envoys; (3) Manuscript copies of several important Persian chronicles and literary works.

Dr. V. G. Dighe, Historical Archivist of the Bombay Record Office, spent three months at the National Archives of India in the spring of 1948 studying the working of its various branches. The Superintendent of the Office also had a short course of training in preservation and repair of records at the National Archives.



*Alienation Office, Poona*

The Government of Bombay has accepted a proposal for the reorganization of the Alienation Office, Poona and have sanctioned staff for research as well as repair of records. The research staff will be employed for the compilation of a register of records in the Office, guiding research students and the preparation of materials for publication.

*National Library, Calcutta*

The National Library started its move from the old building in Esplanade to 'Belvedere' in Alipore, once residence of the Governors of Bengal and later that of the Viceroys of India when they visited Calcutta.

The new building is spacious and offers an ideal site for an expanding library. Air and light, two essential requisites for libraries are there in abundance. Some structural changes have naturally been made in the building to serve the requirements of the Library. A number of bathrooms and bedrooms and partitions throughout the building have been removed to provide more space. The old ballroom has been converted into a reading room. Behind the pillars which support the balcony running all round the room have been built small study alcoves. The former drawing room is proposed to be converted into a room for meetings, study circles and film shows. Beneath the old ballroom is the main body of the library. The books are being kept in rubber-wheeled rolling stacks as are in use in the Bodleian Library, Oxford, and the Toronto Library of Canada. The device of rolling stacks has been adopted to economise space, ensure movement of fresh air all round and make possible dusting with minimum effort. The shifting will be completed in 1950.

In 1948 the 'Imperial Library' was rechristened and was given the name of 'National Library of India'. Since April 1948 it has had as its Chief Librarian, B. S. Kesavan, formerly Curator of the Central Bureau of Education of the Government of India, New Delhi, where he also served as officer in charge of the Central Secretariat Library. Mr. Kesavan received his training in Library Science at the School of Librarianship, University of London from where he also took his Master's degree in English Literature.

*Microfilming in India*

A Microfilming Service Unit has been set up by the Indian Research Fund Association at the Central Research Institute, Kasauli with the object of supplying microfilm copies to research workers of articles appearing in medical and scientific journals. The unit will undertake the microcopying of articles from any journal available in Indian libraries. The membership of this service is open to every institute or library wishing to take advantage of this service.

by paying an annual subscription of Rs. 25/-. For this subscription the members are entitled to have articles microfilmed at a charge of one anna per page.

The Indian Research Fund Association has also plans to set up a similar microfilming service at the Tata Memorial Hospital, Bombay. Besides serving the medical colleges and research institutes in India, the present service available at Kasauli also intends to cater to the needs of the various ministries of the Government of India and research bodies working under their aegis.

## INTERNATIONAL

### *United Nations Library*

Carl H. Milam, Executive Secretary of the American Library Association for the past twenty years, recently took up charge of his duties as Director of Libraries for the United Nations. He has played an important role in the development of library work in the United States of America and has also been from the inception of UNESCO an active participant in its library activities.

The International Advisory Committee of Library Experts appointed to study and report on the policy, services, collections, staff, building, etc., of the United Nations Library held a very successful meeting at Lake Success on August 2-9, 1948. Dr. S. R. Ranganathan, President of the Indian Library Association, represented India on the Committee and other library experts who served on it came from England, Chile, China, Egypt and France. There were also many observers and consultants associated with this work. The Committee held six plenary sessions and on 9 August it finalized its report.

The Committee made more than fifty recommendations. The most important recommendation was that the United Nations should maintain a library service of the most advanced type with "emphasis on service, not on accumulation and preservation; on immediate, not ultimately potential usefulness." The Committee further recommended that only in one field the Library should attempt to be complete, namely, in the publications of the United Nations and its antecedent and related organizations. Some of the other recommendations are: that the United Nations make fullest possible use of the Library resources of New York; that the Library of the League of Nations, Geneva, be maintained on its present basis at Geneva; that document indexing and depository library systems of the United Nations and the specialized agencies be coordinated and that committees of experts be appointed from time to time to consult with the Secretariat on library policies and programmes.

A very encouraging feature of the Advisory Committee's proceedings was the complete agreement among librarians from

different countries on the objects, principles and administrative needs of library work of the United Nations.

*The Unesco-IFLA International Summer School for Librarians*

The first UNESCO International Summer School for Librarians planned in collaboration with the International Federation of Library Association was held at Manchester and London from 2 to 28 September, 1948. Fifty young librarians representing 19 countries of the world participated in the work of the School. Mr. Arne Kildal, Director of Public Libraries and School Libraries of Norway was Director of the School and Mr. Charles Nowell, Head of the Manchester Public Libraries, was the Associate Director. They were assisted by a distinguished international faculty speaking in French and English, including Dr. S. R. Ranganathan, Professor of Library Science, University of Delhi. In Manchester the School was housed in Ashburne Hall, an attractive part of the University of Manchester, and in London the lectures and discussions took place in the School of Librarianship of the University College and in Chaucer House, headquarters of the British Library Association.

The basic theme of the course was public libraries with particular emphasis on their services to popular education and the promotion of international understanding. The general purposes of the School were:

- (1) to examine ways in which public libraries can become effective centres of popular and fundamental education and contribute to the promotion of international understanding ;
- (2) to explore solutions of basic library development problems, particularly in reconstruction countries, which must be worked out before public library education programmes can be completely effective ;
- (3) to increase the awareness among the participants of the aims of *Unesco*, especially in relation to public libraries ; and to enable the *Unesco* to form a clearer picture of public library problems, in various countries; and
- (4) to provide the students with an experience in international living and learning.

The participants spent a very busy time and the work of the School included lectures by distinguished librarians, discussions in four small study groups, report writing, individual conferences with library leaders and visits to libraries in Manchester and London. The course was divided into eleven subjects bearing on the main problem: (1) the philosophy of public librarianship ; (2) book selection policies; (3) the development of extension services ; (4) adult education group programmes and reader's advisory services ; (5) relations with other educational institutions and special social groups ; (6) public libraries

work for children and adolescents ; (7) the organization and administration of public libraries ; (8) systematic technical processes ; (9) building planning and equipments ; (10) personnel training ; (11) public library finance.

Intensive studies were made of each of these subjects through lectures and discussions, the members of the faculty acting as group leaders for discussions. The staff and the students participating in the course were able to prepare 42 papers on public library development in various countries, 27 summaries of lectures and 25 discussion group reports.

The last week of the School was spent in London to take advantage of the meeting of the International Federation of Library Associations. Many prominent delegates to the IFLA gave lectures to the School during this week. The course was brought to a close on 27 September by Mr. Jean Thomas, Assistant Director General of Unesco.

#### *Commission for Bibliography of Early Maps*

The International Geographical Congress which met in Lisbon in April 1949 has appointed a Commission to prepare a general catalogue of early maps and similar materials including charts, atlases and globes. The first stage of this work will cover the period 1200-1500 and for this the inventory will include not merely important items but also small estate maps and seamen's sketch-charts. Since, for the later period, a large number of maps and charts are available lists of selected items only will be compiled. The Commission has Professor Roberts Almaga of Rome as its Chairman and the Secretary's position is held by Professor Y. M. Goblet of Paris. The work entrusted to the Commission would indeed be very difficult because of the wide dispersion of the materials, but it is expected the efforts of the corresponding members of the Commission in various countries and the cooperation of the repositories holding the cartographic records would result in the successful implementation of the project.

#### *Exchange of Archives between France and Italy*

In compliance with Article 7 of the Treaty of Peace a joint Franco-Italian Commission held its sitting at Turin during last May to study the manner in which the exchange of archives should take place between the two countries. From a report published in the French daily *Monde* dated 3 August it is now learn that the Commission has concluded its work and that the French Foreign Office has formally announced that the Governments of the two countries have agreed to the cession to France of the historical and administrative archives of Savoy and Comté de Nice. In addition the two governments have agreed to go beyond the terms of the treaty and

arrange for a mutual exchange of archival documents relating to the history of the two countries.

The documents embodying this agreement were signed in Paris on August 1 by M. Schuman, the French Minister of Foreign Affairs and M. Quaroni, the Italian Ambassador in Paris.

## PAKISTAN

### *The Pakistan Historical Records and Archives Commission*

The Pakistan Historical Records and Archives Commission constituted by a Government resolution of April 14, 1948, held its first meeting early in December 1948 at Karachi under the presidency of Mr. Fazlur Rahman, Education Minister of Pakistan Government. The Commission is composed of historians and archivists from the Central and Provincial Governments and Universities. It passed a resolution recommending to the Government of Pakistan that a Directorate of Archives be set up immediately at Karachi and that steps be taken for constituting regional survey committees for locating and salvaging original historical records throughout Pakistan territories. The Commission requested the Pakistan Government to take immediate steps for the microfilming of important records kept in the National Archives of India at Delhi and to set up an expert committee for the preparation of a list of such documents. It also recommended that arrangements should be made for obtaining photographic copies of records and historical manuscripts available in libraries of foreign countries which are of special interest for research scholars of Pakistan.

The Government of the Dominion of Pakistan does not yet have a central records repository, but it is proposed to set up a Directorate of Archives which would also obtain from private owners selected manuscripts and documents of historical and literary importance. The Directorate will consist of a records section, a preservation section (including a chemical laboratory and repairs unit), a microfilming section, a research and publication section and a museum. In view of the paucity of trained hands available for the technical work it is proposed to send some persons to U.K. for training.

## AFGHANISTAN

The interest which is being taken by Afghan historians in the reorganization of the Afghan archives is evinced in the series of articles recently contributed to several journals by the well-known Afghan scholar, Ahmad Ali Khan Kohzad. In these articles Mr. Kohzad has traced the genesis and development of the National Archives of India and has also described in some details the attention the Education Ministry of the Government of India is devoting to the reorganization

of their archives on scientific and modern lines. The writer in conclusion has urged the Government of Afghanistan to give the same importance to their national documents and suggested the establishment of an Afghan National Archives on the lines of the National Archives of India.

## UNITED KINGDOM

### *Public Record Office, London*

Lord Greene, Master of Rolls for the past twelve years, has been appointed to be Lord of Appeal and has been succeeded as head of the Public Record Office by Sir Raymond Evershed. Lord Greene will be long remembered for the enthusiasm he displayed for the better preservation and use of Public Records in spite of the heavy burden of his judicial duties. As President of the British Records Association he took personal interest in its affairs and was to a large extent responsible for popularizing its activities.

The Public Record Office had some time back taken a decision to publish a new *Guide* to the Public Records of England since M. S. Giuseppi's *Guide to the Manuscripts Preserved in the Public Record Office* (London, 1924) was written twenty-five years ago. The new *Guide* is to be published in sections each dealing with one or more Groups of Records in the custody of the Department; Part I (Introductory) appeared a few months ago. This booklet, besides giving a historical sketch of the Public Record Office, contains a short description of the nature and functions of the Department and provides an insight into its policy and plans for the future. It would be out place to give details of the contents of this excellent publication which would be welcomed by all interested in Archive Science and the use of Public Records. The next issue of *The Indian Archives* will carry a review of the *Guide*.

### *British Records Association*

The Sixteenth Annual Meeting and Conference of the British Record Association was held on 16 and 17 November 1948 in the Stock Room of the Stationers' Hall.

At the meeting of the Publications Section Mr. R. B. Pugh of the Public Record Office read an illuminating paper on the *Publication of Modern Records*. He pointed out that historians had begun to call the nineteenth century "the dark age" because much material is not available in printed form for the study of the working of legal, administrative and economic institutions of that period. He was of opinion that the publication of texts would go a long way in removing the "darkness"; though he realized that it would not be desirable to have the same type of texts for the 19th century as published for the Middle Ages. Mr. Pugh added that for the nineteenth century

the editor's aim must be to print not the maximum but the minimum. He advocated the adoption of a national policy for publication of such documents worked out in conjunction with eminent scholars of history so that only the most important and valuable papers be published. Several members took part in the animated discussion which followed the reading of the paper. Dr. W. O. Hassal, Mr. W. E. Tate and Mr. C. D. P. Nicholson thought that the publication of confidential and semi-confidential material of the 19th century would cause certain embarrassment to those concerned with the recent history. The difficulty regarding handling these records for publication because of their bulk was stressed by some of the speakers. Miss M. Gollancz raised the question whether the microfilm might not possibly take the place of printed publication of Modern Records. The Chairman of the Section, Professor T. F. T. Plucknett concluded the proceedings with his remarks regarding the importance of the distinction between pure history and a mere statistical survey.

The Records Preservation Section held discussion on two subjects: (i) *The Preservation, Nature, and Uses of Records compiled and preserved by Schools*, (ii) *The Preservation of old Diaries, Letters and Photographs*. Opening the discussion on the first subject Mr. E. J. Erith of the Essex Record Office dwelt on the present state of School Archives and pointed out the danger to which they were exposed. He stressed the need for their proper preservation both by official and non-official agencies. In the case of the records of independent (private) schools he felt that the National Register of Archives might be particularly helpful. After an interesting discussion on the whole problem in which Dr. D. H. Leadbetter took part as a representative of the Ministry of Education a resolution was unanimously adopted requesting the Ministry of Education to give its help in the preservation of School records, particularly minute books, log books, letter books and ledgers.

The keynote of the papers on the subject of the *Preservation of old Diaries, Letters and Photographs* was that such materials were invaluable especially for the study of local history and that steps should be taken for preserving them.

The subject for the discussion at the meeting of the Technical Section was *Local Repair Facilities, Problems and Possibilities*. Several members spoke on the problem on the basis of their personal experiences in local record offices. It was regarded as desirable to have repair centres in the repositories or to have regional repair centres where repair work would be done for several archival agencies by those who were experts in the line. Colonel William I.e Hardy was of the opinion that an Archivist must know something about repair-work, but that it would be waste of his time to carry out repairs himself in view of his other qualifications. Sir Hilary Jenkinson also felt that to have a repair centre was of utmost importance and that training for personnel for this work could be had at the Public Record Office.

*Legislation and Records* was the subject for the "Discussion Meeting" held under the chairmanship of Sir Hilary Jenkinson. The main object of the discussion was to study the "trends of modern legislation towards placing semi-public concerns under national or central control" and the future of their records. The Chairman pointed out that 'if the records of the nationalized concerns would be declared as Public Records they would be deposited at the Public Record Office. But it was felt that except for the archives of the National Coal Board they would not be declared as Public Records and under such circumstances it would be essential to secure a national system of control over records which are not Public Records'. He stressed the need for legislation for this purpose on the lines recommended in the Report of the Master of the Rolls' Archives Committee under which a National Inspectorate or a central archives authority could see that the records of defunct concerns were properly preserved. The participants in the discussion emphasized the need for quick action in this respect in order to save valuable archival collections from destruction and dispersal.

During the conference two interesting exhibitions were arranged. At one of them were displayed a number of early railway records and the other was a collection of early photographs.

The British Records Association has embarked upon a noteworthy publication with the appearance of the first issue of *Archives*. The journal is planned to be issued twice a year on Lady Day and Michaelmas and the rate of subscription is seven shillings and six pence yearly for members of the Association, and ten shillings yearly for non-members. The journal will take the place of the *Proceedings* of the Annual Conferences of the Association, the *Bulletins* which were issued at irregular intervals and *reports* of the Committees set up by the Association. Its publication will make it possible for other countries to know and appreciate what is being done for the development of Archives Science in Great Britain. The aim of the Editor and the Editorial Committee is to publish material of special as well as of general interest and to give "due weight to both the administration and the use of Archives." The journal is edited by Mr. Roger Ellis of the Public Record Office.

The next Annual Conference of the Association will meet in December 1949 instead of November to enable members holding teaching posts to attend it. As November was specified in the Association Rules a Special General Meeting was called on 12 July 1949 at which the rule was amended. At the same meeting the Association elected Sir Reginald H. Hoare as its new Treasurer in the vacancy caused by the death of Mr. Edward H. Hoare who was Honorary Treasurer since the foundation of the Association. The Association's Presidentship has also changed with the appointment of Lord Greene as Lord of Appeal. As reported above Sir Raymond Evershed, Master of Rolls, becomes the new President.



*The British Museum-Manuscript of 'Alice in Wonderland'*

The British Museum is the recipient of the manuscript of *Alice in Wonderland* as a gift from the American public. The manuscript is in the handwriting of the author Charles L. Dodgson better known as Lewis Carroll and it was last sold in U.S.A. for \$50,000. American money had outbid the British Museum when it first came for sale in the United States. Dr. Luther H. Evans, Librarian of Congress, had raised by private subscription the necessary amount to buy the manuscript and decided to present it to the British Museum as a token of friendship between America and Great Britain. The formal presentation was made by Dr. Evans on 13 November 1948 at a brief ceremony held at the British Museum at which were present U. S. Assistant Secretary of State George V. Allen and Sir John Forsdyke, Director of the British Museum. The gift was received by Dr. Geoffrey Fisher, Archbishop of Canterbury, on behalf of the Trustees of the Museum.

*Guildhall Library, London*

According to a report received from Mr. Raymond Smith, the Guildhall Library has recently acquired a collection of documents of considerable Indian interest. This consists of the papers of John Michie, Wine Merchant of 35 Craven Street, Strand and of the East India House. He was one of the directors of the East India Company from 1770 to 1788 with short breaks in 1776, 1781-82 and 1787. He died in November 1788. The bulk of these documents belong to 1760-c-1800 and they include John Michie's correspondence—political and personal—with his nephew Jonathan Duncan the elder (1756-1811), Resident Superintendent of Benares and Governor of Bombay. Other papers relate to ships and merchandise; intelligence reports on movements of foreign vessels; establishments, military and civil and to finance. They are in altogether four bundles.

Mr. Smith adds that the provenance of these papers appears to be the (now dispersed) Archives of Lord Antrobus of Amesbury Abbey, north west of Salisbury Wilts. John Michie was related to an ancient firm of solicitors in the parish of St. Martin's-in-the-fields, called Booth. Frederick Booth who acted as Vestry Clerk to St. Martin for at least the first quarter of the 19th century was closely related to Antrobus family whose affairs he managed. The conclusion would be that he merged at an unspecified date, within the first half of the last century, his business archives with the muniments of Amesbury Abbey.

The Guildhall Library was already in possession of certain documents of the 17th century relating to the East India Company. A list of these papers is to be found in *Sources for the History of British India in the 17th Century* by Shafaat Ahmad Khan (Oxford University Press, 1926).

*Historical Manuscripts Commission of Scotland*

The Historical Manuscripts Commission in Scotland is conducting a survey of important Scottish historical documents in the possession of private families. It is a matter of great delight to report that a collection of outstanding interest to students of Indian history has been found among the muniments belonging to Lt. Col. Duncan Campbell of Iverneil (Ardishaig, Argyllshire). The collection consists of official correspondence and other papers of Major General Sir Archibald Campbell K. B. (1739-1791) of Iverneil who served with distinction as Governor and Commander-in-Chief of Madras from 1786 to 1789 and attempted settlement of the vexed question of the revenues of the Carnatic. Among the important items are: Report on the General Defence of Bengal, 1770; Correspondence with the Board of the East India Company, 1766-75; Presidency of Madras, Minutes and Letters, 1786-89; Correspondence with Lord Cornwallis, 1786-88; General Orders of Government, 1786-89; Guntoor Correspondence, 1787-88; General Letters to England, 1786-88, Narrative of the 2nd War with Hyderally, 1779-82; Narrative of Eastern Transactions by Charles Lloyd, 1784; Military Geography of the Carnatic by Lt. Schlegel, 1788 and Personal Business Letters, 1771-73. The National Archives of India will be shortly acquiring microfilm copies of all these documents for use of Indian research students.

## ITALY

Representatives of all the State-Archives have been meeting in Florence to lay down the basis for the formation of a National Association of Italian Archivists. An interim Committee will draw up articles which will be submitted for approval to the 1st National Congress of Italian Archivists to be held in October. The recently formed Friends of Archives Association will also take part in the Congress. The importance of these associations becomes evident when we consider that since the XIth century every city of Italy has possessed rich materials including political, economic and religious archives recording the history of private persons, families and communities, a vast patrimony that must be conserved with all care.

In July 1849, Garibaldi while retreating from Rome after the fall of the Roman Republic took refuge in the Republic of San Marino where he disbanded his legion. The centenary of this event has been celebrated in the Republic of San Marino with a Garibaldi Exhibition of relics in possession of the San Marino government, including the Flag of the Legion. Special postage stamps and a commemorative medal have been issued for the occasion.

## CENTRAL AFRICA

*Central African Archives*

The Central African Archives reports that among other things a project for acquisition of microfilm copies of unpublished materials

on African history available in libraries and archives of Europe forms part of its development scheme. Among those documents are accounts written by missionaries and explorers and reports of officials about peoples and events in Central and Southern Africa from the beginning of the 16th century onwards. The repositories in Portugal, the Vatican Library and the Archives of Goa, from where South-Eastern Africa was at one time governed, contain some of the most valuable source materials for African history.

The work on this project, which is an inter-territorial one, has been started with handsome donations from well-wishers in England and a munificent grant from the Carnegie Corporation of New York. Dr Eric Axelson, the author of *South-East Africa, 1488-1530*, has been employed specially for the implementation of the scheme and he left for Europe in August accompanied by a staff photographer for selection of documents suitable for recording in microfilm. Dr. Axelson is expected to spend about eight months in European libraries and records repositories and on his return another mission headed by Lt. C. Montez, Archivist of the Arquivo Historico of Mocambique will visit Goa for this purpose. The microfilm copies will be preserved in the Central African Archives and the documents will be later edited and published.

## UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

### *National Archives, Washington*

A major change has recently taken place in the position of the National Archives in the Federal Government. It is no longer an independent agency directly responsible to the President, but a constituent bureau of the newly established General Services Administration. This change has been effected by the terms of Section 104 of Federal Property and Administration Services Act (Public Law 152, 81st Congress) which was approved on 30 June 1949 and came into force on 1 July. The Act was passed in accordance with the recommendation of the President's Commission on the Organization of the Executive Branch of the Government (1947-49)—better known as the Hoover Commission. The National Archives and the Archivist of the United States have been retained, but their functions have been made part of a larger programme of the management of all records of the Federal Government. It has been provided that "the Archivist of the United States shall hereafter be appointed by the Administration". Jess Larson, former War Assets Administrator and recently Federal Works Administrator is the Administrator of the new agency.

Many factors were responsible for this change, but the most vital one was the need for a more effective records management in the Federal Government as distinguished now in U.S.A. from archive administration. The current and semi-current records in the custody

of the agencies creating them have increased very rapidly in bulk and have caused present difficulties regarding their administration as well as selection for permanent preservation. It was estimated by the Commission in 1948 that Government records total 18,500,000 cubic feet, National Archives handling only about 5% of them. These difficulties brought to the forefront during the war years the necessity of effective records management and disposition programmes in the records creating agencies themselves. Though during the war period several agencies of the Federal Government developed their own records disposition programmes with the assistance of the National Archives there was absence of a unified system of control and management of records in all the agencies. According to the new law the Administrator of the General Services has been authorised in the field of records management: (1) to make surveys of Government records and records management and disposal practices and obtain reports thereon from Federal agencies; (2) to promote, in co-operation with the executive agencies, improved records management practices and controls in such agencies, including the central storage or disposition of records not needed by such agencies for their current use; and (3) to report to the Congress and the Director of the Bureau of the Budget from time to time the results of such activities.

Among the recent accessions to the muniments of the National Archives are the valuable records of the Hoover Commission 1947-49. These comprise correspondence, minutes of meetings, reports, and other records of the Executive Director, the Secretary's Office, and the Research and Library Section as well as "Task Force" papers on various projects developed by the Commission. Among the older records received in the National Archives are a small body of Post Office Records, including a copy of manuscript journal of Hugh Finlay, Colonial Surveyor of Postroads on the Continent of North America (1773-74) and a ledger containing the accounts of Benjamin Franklin as Postmaster General. On 30 June 1949 the Archivist had 891,857 cubic feet of records in his custody, the accessions during 1948-49 being 52,546 feet. The stack area of the National Archives building has now been virtually exhausted and limitations of space have compelled the Archivist to drastically curtail the accessioning programme. It is, however, to be noted that the National Archives has resolved by now the problems created by the liquidation of the emergency war agencies and it can now consider plans for the future operations of the agency.

On the completion of the tour of the Freedom Train on 2 January 1949 the documents displayed in it were placed in the custody of the National Archives. Tom Clark who initially sponsored the train advocated the idea that it should be run by the National Archives and the suggestion was accepted by the Congress on 3 March when it passed a joint resolution. Since no funds have been provided so far for the purpose the documents and other exhibits are lying in the safe keeping of the National Archives.

*Society of American Archivists*

The 12th Annual Meeting of the Society of American Archivists was held jointly with the American Association for State and Local History at Raleigh (North Carolina) on October 27-29, 1948 under the Presidentship of Dr. Christopher Crittenden of the North Carolina Department of Archives and History. The meeting was attended by about two hundred members of the two Societies.

Dr. Crittenden had selected 'The Archivist as a Public Servant' as the theme of his address, a subject which has been recently receiving great attention in the United States. He spoke about the development of records administration during the last twelve years and emphasized the role of the archivist as an administrator and emergence of the archival establishment as an agency of government whose primary function was to perform certain official duties and not an agency for the preservation of rare historical documents. Dr. Crittenden dwelt on the serious problem created by the growth of almost unmanageable bodies of records during World War II and consequent development of current records management programmes in government agencies with the active help of the archival agencies. He pointed out that "such a development was a far cry from the scholarly approach of a few years earlier". According to him the functions of the archivist are now on a "broader scale than originally conceived" and such a development is in many ways good for the profession. He, however, maintained that the change in emphasis from a historical scholar towards an administrator regarding the functions of an archivist did not go against a scholarly approach to records. Summarizing the functions of the archivist, Dr. Crittenden said: "First of all, the archivist should always look upon himself as a public servant. He should offer the most effective service possible to other agencies of the government, to unofficial organisations, to private researchers and to the general public. If he performs this function and does it well, he need not concern himself about questions of prestige or of professional standing, for such matters will take care of themselves."

The first session of the meeting on 27 October was devoted to the subject of "Reference Problems as Viewed by the Reader" and consisted of papers by a historian, (Charles S. Sydnor of the Department of History of Duke University) and a genealogist (Mr. Milton Rubincam) on what their respective colleagues expected of an archival agency or historical society. Dr. Sydnor explained that a historian would like to have detailed catalogues and indexes, but the preparation of overall guides and general inventories should be given priority over the preparation of detailed analyses of only a few outstanding record groups. Mr. Rubincam, however, pointed out that detailed indexes were highly desirable from the point of view of the genealogist. It was evident that every user expected a good deal from a record office. In the discussion that followed the reading of papers, Dr. Solon J. Buck of the Library of Congress explained the difficulties

in the way of active repositories for doing reference service because of their limited resources. He pointed out that excessive time given to reference service cut down the time available for processing the holdings and making them more useful and that detailed indexing and cataloguing of selected holdings was often done at the cost of the preparation of overall guides and inventories that might make all the items known to the scholars.

At the afternoon session the subject of discussion was "Reference Problems as Viewed by the Administrator" and papers were presented by Leon De Valinger, State Archivist of Delaware, W. Neil Franklin, Head of the Reference Division in the National Archives, and Miss Dorothy Barck of the New York Historical Society. The three speakers described the handling of reference problems by the three institutions represented by them respectively with special emphasis on peculiarities in the nature of problems and the procedure and rules in vogue for handling them.

The second day's meetings were held at Duke University and at the University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill. At the luncheon meeting at Duke University an outstanding paper was read by John Melville Jennings of the Virginia Historical Society on "Archival Activity in American Universities and Colleges". He briefly sketched the history of the growth of university archives in U.S.A. initially under the care of librarians and pointed out the recent adoption of records programmes in a number of universities based on sound archival practices. Mr. Jennings advocated the setting up of archival agencies solely devoted to archival functions and independent of libraries in the universities and the formation of a comprehensive archival statute or directive by trustees and governors of each university for preserving their non-current records.

"History and Programme of State Archival Agencies" was the subject for the morning meeting on the third day of the Conference presided by Dr. Wayne C. Grover, Archivist of the United States. Papers were read on the archival programmes of Mississippi, Wisconsin and Pennsylvania. At the luncheon meeting Dr. Herbert O. Brayer, Secretary-General, International Council on Archives, gave a talk on this new organization and described its establishment as an experiment in world co-operation. In concluding his address he appealed to the Society of American Archivists to help the Council in implementing its programme. The Society, at its business meeting held on 29 October, resolved that American contribution to the International Council on Archives should not be less than \$500 per year for the next two years, of which the Society, would pay \$250 from its funds and additional amount would be collected by voluntary contributions.

Miss Margaret C. Norton has relinquished the office of Editor of *The American Archivist* and Mr. Karl L. Trever has succeeded her.

*National Records Management Council, New York*

The National Records Management Council was established in 1947 to serve the requirements of modern records management. It is a professional, educational and service organization run on non-profit basis. The Council's object is to serve the interest of public and private management, archivist and scholar by functioning as a "clearing house for qualified personnel and for technical data on records management, archival science, and historical research in the operating agencies or managements." The directorate of the Council represents the three groups it aims to serve and can provide expert advice and help in establishment of records management centres and otherwise undertakes education programmes in the field of archival science.

The costs of the services rendered by the Council are borne by the management which profits from it. Emmett J. Leahy is the Director of the Council and its headquarters is at 100 Washington Square East, New York City 3.

The Council has already done much valuable work in the field of records management. Its most important undertaking has been to provide the "task-force" to the Hoover Commission for reviewing the records management programmes in the Federal Government and to suggest improvements and economies. The "task force" was directed by Emmet J. Leahy. The Atomic Energy Commission is having the assistance of a consultant provided by the Council regarding the application of microfilming in the Commission's work and the management and distribution of records of contractors of the Commission. A number of commercial companies and educational institutions also are actively interested in the work of the Council.

*The Library of Congress*

Among the recent acquisitions of the Library is the private diary of General Franz Halder, Chief of the General Staff of the Supreme Command of the German Army from 1938 to 1942. It has been received through General Telford Taylor, Chief of the Counsel for War Crimes. The diary comprises seven note-books in shorthand and covers the period from 14 August 1939 to 24 September 1942, the date of Halder's dismissal by Hitler. The Halder Diary is unique in its scope and continuity, and probably has few equals in importance among individual contributions to the records of the Second World War. It gives an insight into the drama of the war as seen at the highest military level, in the picture of the functions and activities of the Chief of Staff of a huge army, and it will afford a better comprehension of the position of the German General Staff in the recent past.

Other notable accessions to the Library are a book and a group of documents and letters that complement each other with regard to

information on Hitler's family. These have been received through the Library of Congress Mission to Germany. The book, bearing Hitler's personal bookplate, is *Die Ahnentafel des Fuehrers* compiled by Rudolf Koppensteiner. It traces Hitler's ancestry through twelve generations and contains accounts and comments on the family history. The miscellaneous papers and letters, mostly from the period 1862 to 1876, include certificates of birth, death and baptism and letters mainly written by Hitler's father, Alois Hitler.

The Library has also received the Papers of Orville and Wilbur Wright. These have been presented to the Library as a gift by Messrs Harold S. Miller and Harold W. Steeper, executors of the estate of the late Orville Wright. The collection forms a unique and comprehensive documentary record of the early careers of two gifted Americans whose names have no peer in aviation. It includes diaries and notebooks detailing experiments from 1900 to 1910, with a description by Orville Wright of the Kitty Hawk flights of 1903; correspondence on the sale of the first military aeroplane to the War Department; correspondence with foreign governments on the introduction of the Wright aeroplane service abroad; financial records of Wright enterprises from 1894 to 1906; letters, documents and reports relating to the prolonged controversy between Orville Wright and the Smithsonian Institution; and many other rare books, brochures and pamphlets from Orville Wright Library at Hawthorn Hill.

*Pershing Papers* or the private archives of the late General John J. Pershing of the U. S. Army too will be housed in the Library of Congress. According to his will these will be transferred to the Library after having been examined by General George C. Marshall, Colonel John Callan O'Laughlin, Colonel George E. Adamson and Pershing's son, Francis Warren Pershing.

Dr. S. Fakhruddin Hussain Khan of Baroda has sent his father's writings in Urdu as a gift to the Library.

The Rare Books Division has acquired a splendid copy of an album containing pictures of the Berlin Olympiade, dedicated to Hitler by Leni Riefenstahl, official photographer. The album was in Hitler's private collection and bears his book-plate.

The Prints and Photographs Division has received an outstanding collection of photographs of Pre-Columbian Mexican sculpture, presented to the Library by Mrs. Charles S. Whitman of New York. An interesting album of early Mexican portraits (1850-80?) has also been secured. The volume contains over 100 "carte-de-visite" photographs of the chief figures in Mexico's history during the reign of Maximilian and Carlotta. Among others are the group portraits of the Mexican Commission which offered the crown to Maximilian, and of the firing squad which executed him. Another item of significance acquired by purchase is an interesting album of "carte-de-visite" portrait photographs of 1864. The album has been purchased from the Brady National Photographic Portrait Galleries. It includes photographs of President Lincoln, Vice-President Johnson, five Cabinet



members, 34 (out of 51) Senators, the Clerk of the House, Speaker Colfax and 151 (out of 183) other Representatives, all holding office at this date. The great majority of the prints bear original autographs.

Other acquisitions of interest are 856 volumes, 17 maps and 74 issues of periodicals from Communist China. The works received range from Chinese translations of Russian literature to the pronouncements of Chinese Communist leaders Mao Tzetung, Liu Shao-Ch'i and others. These works have undoubted historical significance as showing by what steps communist thought gained a foothold in China.

Among the recent publications of the Library are: *Maps: Their Care, Repair and Preservation* by Clara Egli LeGear; *The United States and Post-War Europe* prepared by European Affairs Division of the Library; *A Review of Early Music Books in the Rare Books Division of the Library of Congress* by Fredrick R. Goff and *Alternate Policies for American Agriculture* by Walter W. Wilcox.

The most popular exhibition held recently at the Library was on "Presidential Election" which was on view in January 1949, on the occasion of President Truman's Inauguration for the second term. Among the items displayed were manuscripts, maps, political cartoons, documents, broadsides, photographs and rare books intended to illustrate and explain the history and methods of "Presidential Election". In this exhibition special emphasis was placed on such elections in which electioneering methods presented special difficulties such as the elections of 1800 and 1876. Towards the close of 1948 the Library organised an exhibition to mark the 125th anniversary of the Monroe Doctrine. Among the items placed on view particular mention may be made of the first edition of President Monroe's message as well as his correspondence with Jefferson, dated October 1823, in which the principles involved in the doctrine were discussed.

## CANADA

### *National Library of Canada*

The project for the establishment of a National Library in Canada has made good progress. On the retirement of Dr. Gustave Lanctot in 1948 the Canadian Government decided to have for the post of Dominion Archivist not only a trained archivist but one who also had wide library experience and could plan and direct the National Library project in its initial stages. Dr. William Kaye Lamb of Vancouver on his appointment as Dominion Archivist was thus given the assignment of doing the preparatory work for the establishment of a National Library for Canada in Ottawa. He took over charge of his new duties in January 1949. Dr. Lamb is one of the outstanding librarians of Canada and was for six years Provincial Librarian and Archivist of British Columbia, and since 1940 he was Librarian

of the University of British Columbia. He was also quite recently President of the Canadian Library Association.

The National Library Advisory Committee recently appointed by the Government with a representative from each Province met under the chairmanship of Dr. Lamb at Ottawa in March 1949 and recommended that immediate action be taken to establish a Bibliographic Centre. This recommendation was immediately carried out by the Government and a Bibliographic Centre has been set up at the Office of the Public Archives in Ottawa. The Canadian Parliament has also voted a suitable grant for the construction and staffing of the Centre as well as for the provision of bibliographical tools. The work has started on a modest scale, the first step being to obtain the co-operation of local libraries and universities. The ultimate object of the Centre would be the preparation of a national Canadian bibliography. The ultimate aim of the National Library would be to have a complete collection of Canadian materials. In order to achieve that end it would also procure photographic copies of Canadiana from abroad.

#### *Public Archives, Ottawa*

The Manuscript Division of the Public Archives of Canada has been enriched by the accession of the *Prescott Papers*. General Robert Prescott, Governor of Canada from 1796 to 1799 collected not only the records of his governorship, but also documents of earlier or later date that had a bearing upon his activities in Canada. The collection includes copies of the letters written by Prescott while he was serving in the West Indies in 1779-1780 and 1793-94.

Another notable acquisition is the *Thompson Papers*. Sir John S. D. Thompson was Minister of Justice (1885-92) and Prime Minister of Canada (1892-94). These papers have been presented to the Archives by Sir John's son, Lt. Col. John Thompson. They include a long series of letter books and thousands of letters addressed to Sir John. Some of the material relates to his early career in Nova Scotia.

The most significant accession to the Archives, however, is the papers of W. L. Mackenzie King which began to be transferred to the Archives in 1946. The material received up to 1949 and relating chiefly to the office of the Prime Minister, fills well over 200 filing drawers and contains a wealth of information of historical interest.

The Paris office of the Archives has recently made transcripts of several records and historical manuscripts of Canadian interest from the collections in the custody of Archives Charente-Maritime, Archives de la Marine, Archives des Colonies, Archives Nationales and the Bibliothèque Nationale, Paris.

The staff of the London office of the Archives is busy with the task of copying a selection from the papers of the fourth Earl of Minto, Governor General of Canada from 1898 to 1904. These papers contain

information regarding the reorganization of the Canadian army, the position of the General Officer Commanding Militia in Canada, the Canadian Contingent for the South African War, the Alaska boundary dispute and Imperial relations.

The Maps division has been enriched by the accession of approximately 2,000 maps, charts and plans. The vast majority of these have been deposited by other departments of the Government. Among the new acquisitions are about 140 maps of the world, of North America, or of the whole of Canada. The earliest of these are represented by photostat copies; a World map of 1498 from Pomponius Mela's *Cosmographia*, a globe and map of North America by Euphrosynus Ulpius, both dated 1542, and a map of America from Thevet's *Cosmographie* (1575). The first important collection of maps relating to Canadian military operation in the Great War of 1914-18 has also been acquired during this year. This consists of some 30 operational plans of sectors of the Western Front, and a set of large wall maps of various battle fronts. Among the many items added to the Division's collection of atlases mention may be made of Cook and Lane's *North American Pilot* (1777 edition), Samuel Dunn's *Atlas of the Mundane System* (1796) and three bound volumes containing about 200 Admiralty charts of the Great Lakes and the Canadian Atlantic coast. The Public Archives is shortly bringing out a new catalogue of maps in its custody.

The Research Division has completed an index of the calendars of the extensive *Selkirk Papers*. The Division's primary function is to help scholars and others by preparing memoranda for them whenever they send in requests for some information.

The Public Archives has also recently installed a microfilm camera, which is to be used in duplicating the texts of such documents as cannot be properly repaired and preserved in the original. Lack of muniment space in the Archives building is being keenly felt and it has prevented it from taking custody of a large body of old government records. Though the building was enlarged in 1925-26 it is inadequate to meet the requirements of the central records repository of the Dominion Government.

## BOOK REVIEWS

*Administration Report of the Madras Record Office for 1948-49*  
(Madras, Superintendent Government Press, 1949, pp. 16).

THIS annual publication of the Madras Record Office appears in a somewhat altered format following the suggestions made by the Indian Historical Records Commission and becomes thereby a more easily usable reference material. The information contained comes under the usual heads of administrative activities, accessions, preparation and publication of reference mediums, preservation and service. Again, as usual, good progress under all these heads is reported, despite the inability of the Record office to return from Chittoor to its normal habitat in Madras. It is hoped the retransfer will be effected soon.

There are at least two pieces of information which are worthy of special notice. They are, first, the announcement that more liberal facilities for research among the records are now forth-coming, including the throwing open of the much discussed Vellore Mutiny records; and secondly, the centralization in Madras Record Office of all English records of the East India Company's period which were hitherto available in the Collectors' offices in the districts. Another important development is the decision of the Madras Government to set up regional record repositories, under the aegis of the Central Record Office of Madras, to look after the district records. The scheme has been postponed owing to financial stringency; but it is hoped that it will be given a fair trial rather than be shelved and forgotten like so many "plans" that one sees all around.

In the Report, the Curator has touched upon some matters which are not, in fact, strictly the functions of the Madras Record Office, viz., the Madras Government's reactions to certain suggestions made by the Indian Historical Records Commission. One of them refers to the problem of "weeding" current records and the Curator's opinion seems to be that the archivist should have no concern in the records until *after* they are transferred to the archives. This would perhaps be a satisfactory arrangement provided the creation and maintenance of records were done ideally at all levels of government. But the question is how far in practice has any government, including that of Madras, succeeded in even approaching the ideal. Secondly, the Curator expresses himself against the idea of preparing a National Register of Archives on the grounds that such a Register can only be of local interest in the main and that the Madras Regional Records Survey Committee is already engaged in "unearthing private collections and making them available for research". This attitude overlooks the facts that local history alone can be the backbone of national history and that while unearthing stray collections can at best be a sort of pecking at the problem, the prerequisite for any solid survey of records

is the preparation of a register which will give the location and some general information about unknown collections in a particular area.

PURNENDU BASU

*Central African Archives—A Report by the Chief Archivist for the period 1 September, 1947 to 31 December, 1948* (Salisbury, Central African Archives, 1949, pp. vii, 102).

THE Chief Archivist of the Central African Archives is to be congratulated on the publication of his second report which is as handsomely produced as the first one. The Report contains a full account of the functioning of the Central African Archives during the period of sixteen months under review. It is divided into various sections, each bearing on a particular aspect of the activity of the Central African Archives, e.g., Public Records, Library, Historical Manuscripts, Maps and Pictures, Museum, Technical Services, Publications and External Activities. The publication is very different from an average administrative report as it gives full explanations about the problems which the Chief Archivist has to face. One would whole-heartedly agree with Mr. Hiller when he asserts that "facts without explanations are comparatively useless." He intends to continue in writing the subsequent reports, which would cover each calendar year, "the policy of stating not merely what has been done or left undone, but also reasons and purposes which lie behind the activities of the Archives".

A study of this Report reveals the marked growth of the archivists' interest in the management of current records in Central Africa. Their interest in records rightly begins from their creation so that they get them in proper condition for preservation and for making their contents available for use. Therefore, the Chief Archivist and the Archives Commission have taken keen interest from the very beginning in the problems concerning the making of records. In Southern Rhodesia the Chief Archivist possesses authority under the Archives Act to examine any of the public records which are in the custody of any department and can advise any such department as to the care, custody and control thereof. Thus he is able to influence, at least indirectly, record keeping in the territory. In Northern Rhodesia and Nyasaland the Deputy Archivists have been invited by their respective governments to help in the reorganization of filing systems.

The accessions of public records to the repositories at Salisbury (S. Rhodesia), Livingstone (N. Rhodesia) and Zomba (Nyasaland) are recorded in detail in the Report. Some valuable and interesting historical manuscripts relating to the Occupation and to the periods just before and after the Occupation have also been acquired. The Rhodes Trust has presented photostats and typewritten copies of letters to and from Rhodes between 1882 and his death in 1902.

Among the External Activities described in the Report, of particular interest is the Chief Archivist's concern about the preservation of local government records which are as valuable for history as the archives of central governments. A co-operative scheme has been prepared and accepted by the Municipal Association of Southern Rhodesia according to which the local records would be deposited for custody and care with the Central African Archives, local ownership being safeguarded. The additional expenditure incurred for this purpose would be borne in varying proportions by various local authorities.

The Report also records the changes in the Royal Commission for Central African Archives during this period. The Appendix comprises the ordinances and regulations promulgated during the period in connection with archival organization in the territories of Central Africa. The inclusion of several illustrations and flawless printing make the publication a very attractive one.

V. C. JOSHI

*Fourteenth Annual Report of the Archivist of the United States—For the Year ending June 30, 1948* (United States Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C., 1949, pp. v, 65.)

THE *Report* opens with a cheerful note about the reference services performed by the National Archives, whose number during 1947-48 exceeded that in any previous year in the history of the agency. The total number of such services during the year under review went well over 346,000, out of which about 60% were for various Government Departments and the rest were rendered to research scholars and other institutions.

But this extra pressure of reference work seriously impeded the progress in the preparation of suitable reference media for records in the National Archives, and the loss of trained personnel due to the war added further to this impediment. Although impeded, the finding-aid programme was, however, not abandoned. Just before the beginning of the fiscal year 1948, a comprehensive 700-page *Guide to the Records in the National Archives* was sent to the press, and during the year under review an extensive index to the *Guide* was prepared. Appendixes briefly listing records received during the period January 1, 1946—June 30, 1947 were also compiled that year and the quarterly publication of the *National Archives Accessions* was reorganized. Some progress was also made on a *Handbook of Federal World War II Agencies and Their Records*. The fiscal year 1948 also saw the resumption, after a lapse of more than two years, of the publication of reference information circulars. Two such circulars were published during the year under review, and a third one by Purnendu Basu, Assistant Director, National Archives of India, who was an intern in the National Archives, was completed but could not be published by June 30, 1948.

The record-retirement programme, especially of the records belonging to the emergency war agencies, proceeded smoothly and before the end of the year under review almost all the files of enduring value belonging to the war agencies which were wound up, were acquired by the National Archives. But the retirement of records could take place so easily and smoothly only because the National Archives maintained a well planned programme of records administration. Every effort was made to persuade the Federal as well as emergency war agencies to have their own records administration programmes, and in 1947 the President of the U.S.A. ordered all Federal agencies to conduct records retirement programmes.

The process of disposal of records had been greatly simplified and made much easier by the Federal Records Disposal Act of 1943 and its amendment of 1945, which authorised the National Archives to prepare schedules of records for disposal by the creating agency. No less than 2,000,000 cubic feet of records were destroyed by various Government agencies during the year under review. But for the scheduling device, the entire burden of weeding out such a huge bulk of records would have fallen upon the National Archives.

With the closure and winding up of the emergency war agencies, the rate of accessioning of records sunk almost to the pre-war level. During the year only 58,507 cubic feet of records were received by the National Archives, as compared to 82,967 cubic feet received during the preceding year. Pages 14-16 of the report give a statistical summary of accessions during the fiscal year 1948.

In addition to the above records, about 25,000 maps and charts, 379,200 running feet of motion-picture film, 246,000 discs of sound recordings, 154,921 items of still pictures and a considerable quantity of microfilm rolls of records were received by the National Archives during the fiscal year 1948. Of special interest among these are the sound recordings, which include the recorded speeches by such Axis leaders as Hitler, Goebbels, Mussolini as well by other dignitaries like Stalin, King George VI and Presidents Roosevelt and Truman.

In the field of preservation and repair of records the National Archives has surpassed all other archival institutions of the world, and many countries look up to it for advice and guidance on technical and intricate problems of rehabilitation and repair of their old and brittle records. But the Archivist's report records with regret the extremely slow and insufficient work done in this direction during the fiscal year 1948 due to lack of personnel. However, the most important and urgent items of work, for example the fumigation of newly accessioned records and the packing and shelving of photographic records and sound recordings which needed special methods of storage, had to be attended to. But towards actual rehabilitation of old records very little could be done for want of adequate staff.

It is with legitimate pride that the report records the active participation of the National Archives in several activities which do not fall within the scope of its regular official duties. During 1948 it

was for the ninth consecutive year that the National Archives co-operated with the American University in Washington in a programme for training archivists. It also participated that year in the work of several other committees and organisations like the American Documentation Institute, the National Council for Historic Sites and Buildings, the Paper and Paper Products Committee of the Federal Specification Board etc.; and it was also mainly through the efforts of the National Archives that in 1948 the International Council on Archives was constituted under the auspices of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation. During the year under review the National Archives also lent about one-third of the total number of documents exhibited on the Freedom Train run by the American Heritage Foundation during its year-long and country-wide tour.

After the big reorganisation scheme of the National Archives which came into effect from January 1, 1947, the report has few organisational changes to mention during the fiscal year 1948. During the greater part of the year Dr. Solon J. Buck who was in office since 1941, continued as Archivist of the United States, and it was only during the last month that Wayne C. Grover, Assistant Archivist, took over as Archivist when the former resigned to take up the position of Chief of the Division of Manuscripts in the Library of Congress. But the year 1948 saw the most extensive reduction in the strength of the National Archives personnel, since no funds were granted for the World War II Records Project.

A review of the report would remain incomplete without reference to the publication in the *Federal Register* on January 24, 1948 of the regulations for the use of records in the custody of the Archivist of the United States. It was a great event in the history of the National Archives since it gave the regulations a legal recognition and placed them on the same footing as the statutory law of the country. Let us hope that the lead taken by the U. S. A. in this direction will inspire other countries also to follow suit and to give equal importance and recognition to their archives and archival rules.

The value of this very informative and complete report of the Archivist of the United States is much enhanced by carefully chosen appendices, mostly relating to legislation concerning the National Archives, and an exhaustive index at the end.

DAYAL DASS

*Guide to the Records in the National Archives* (The National Archives Publication No. 49-13. U. S. Government Printing Office, Washington, 1948, pp. i-xvi, 684; \$ 2.50).

THE first *Guide to the Material in the National Archives* came out in 1940, only six years after the Archives was established and just about four years after the first Federal records were transferred to the



National Archives building. The need for compiling a fresh *Guide* within a decade of the issue of the first one was manifold. In the first place, the bulk of the records in the custody of the Archivist of the United States, following World War II, leapt from about 200,000 cubic feet in 1940 to over 800,000 cubic feet on June 30, 1947. Secondly, the adoption of the "Record Group" as the unit of description and control was adopted since the publication of the 1940 *Guide*. Thirdly, it may be said, that with the experience gained through the years was better realized what type of information would be of real value to the prospective users of the *Guide*. One need hardly dilate upon the need for such a *Guide*, for while ordinarily the record transferring agencies can, with the help of their own control machinery, call for a specific file from the Archives, the outside searcher who is not familiar with the frequent organizational changes in the Governmental machinery nor with the precise functions of individual agencies feels completely lost when confronted with the mass of material before him. For the scholar (as well as for the Archives staff who have to answer an infinite variety of queries involving records of more than one agency) a comprehensive *Guide* is an absolute necessity. However, in compiling such *Guides* one has to be extremely careful lest the work should become either too meagre or too detailed to be of practical use. The volume under review perhaps maintains the balance ideally, a fact which the present reviewer had the opportunity of testing (while the *Guide* was still in the proof stage) in compiling a *Reference Information Circular* (No. 38) for the U. S. National Archives. It is unhesitatingly asserted that his groping for information was cut down by at least one-half, thanks to this *Guide*. It gives the history of each agency whose records are described and gives clear indication of the major functions of each agency, as well as all relevant information on the existence or otherwise of registers, indexes and such other finding mediums. This with the help of the exhaustive Index at the end of the volume should enable the uninitiated to take the first step into this labyrinthine mine of information with a reasonable degree of confidence.

In the Introduction is explained the 'Record Group' system adopted at the National Archives which is the unit of description as well as of control. Provenance and convenience of administration are the two important factors, among others, which are carefully considered in establishing the record groups. Many archival institutions, particularly those in India where description of records is either almost entirely neglected or very perfunctorily done, would find much to learn in the Introduction and would do well to take the *Guide* as a model for bringing out their own.

*Catalogue of Manuscripts and Other Objects in the Museum of the Public Record Office* (London, His Majesty's Stationery Office, 1948, pp. xi, 91 ; Price 2 Sh.)

THIS new edition of the *Catalogue* is the work of Mr. J. H. Collingridge. The recent alterations in the plan of the Museum of the Public Record Office and the rearrangement of exhibits with a view to illustrating better the main archive groups necessitated the publication of a revised edition. The Preface, contributed by Mr. Hilary Jenkinson, contains a short historical account of the Museum which came into existence in 1896 as a result of the efforts of Sir Henry Maxwell Lyte, then Deputy Keeper of Public Records. In 1902 the Museum was located in the room built on the site of the Rolls Chapel and still continues to be there. The original exhibits were selected by Sir Henry and the first *Catalogue* was also compiled by him. Since 1902, however, several additions and alterations have been made in the list of documents displayed. The Introduction to the new edition gives a short history of Rolls Chapel and the Office of the Master of Rolls.

The *Catalogue* follows the new arrangement of exhibits in the Museum. Besides short description of each item on display brief historical notes have been appended to make the contents of the exhibits more intelligible. The items displayed range in date from the Domesday Book to a Patent Roll of 1936. They have been selected both for their artistic and historical value and they illustrate a large variety of subjects on which materials are available in the Public Record Office.

The Museum has become in recent years a popular educational instrument and there has been a phenomenal increase in the attendance of students and other visitors. The *Catalogue* would certainly be of great help to them in appreciating the historical value of the exhibits.

V. C. JOSHI

*Archives*, The Journal of the British Records Association, Vol. I, Nos. 1 & 2 (London, 1949, pp. 61, 57).

THE British Records Association came into existence in 1932 and for 16 years it remained without an official journal. All its issuances and reports appeared in the form of Technical Bulletins at irregular intervals. But it was felt by the Association that a more satisfactory arrangement than that was desirable and it is now proposed to bring out all transactions of the Association, either *in extenso* or in summarized form in the journal under review. Those of us who have so far profited by the excellent Technical Bulletins cannot welcome the move sufficiently. However, this does not exhaust the scope of the journal ; articles descriptive of archival collections as well as those on the use of archives are to find place in it. This promise has been

carried out in the first two issues under review which would tend to make *Archives* of more general interest which is necessary to make this comparatively little known subject better understood and appreciated. W. E. Tate's "The Use of Archives in Education", Martin Davis's "Archives and Art History" will be enjoyed by almost anyone, while those in search of knowledge about local English archives will find the two articles on Bedford and Essex archives extremely useful. The "Technical Bulletin" portion and such articles as "In Thy Most Need . . ." and "The Archives of Jamaica" provide good information about practical problems of archives administration.

Excellentlly got up and ably edited, *Archives* will be welcomed by all in the profession and others who are interested in the field.

PURNENDU BASU

*Records Management and Filing Operations* by Margaret K. Odell and Earl P. Strong (New York, 1947, pp. viii, 342 ; Price \$ 4.00).

**S**TRATEGIC planning and successful action in any organization—private or government—are wholly dependent upon efficient records management. A resort to memory for recollecting the multifarious happenings in an office is certainly not a reliable method of producing a correct picture of what actually took place in the past. Moreover, committing facts to memory, as of yore, is not feasible considering the ever-increasing volume of activity in recent times of all business and government organizations. The very existence of records, therefore, brings to the fore the vexing question of their management, administration and control.

This manual is especially designed to assist the authorities, in a practical way, in recognizing the need for a record department and to guide the staff in their work. It is, in short, a primer for the non-professional, untrained clerk who has any responsibility for the care and maintenance of records. It sets forth, in simple terms, certain general principles which can be applied with appropriate modifications in any office producing or housing records of public business. The authors, after years of intense labour and patient research, have evolved excellent workable practices which, if enforced in the true spirit, will certainly improve the efficiency of the records clerk and definitely promote the general well-being of the organization where they are applied. Pioneers in their subject, the authors have excavated and laid bare to the interested student and the cynical executive alike the benefits to be derived from a proper grasp of the business of records management and their administration.

The book is divided into three parts, the first of which delineates how records are to be generally managed and controlled. Such records may be in one or several locations, but the authors emphasise that they must be under "one centralised control", as divided responsibility very often leads to serious misplacement, storage confusion,

disorder and neglect. The records department, under an administrator, should be the focal point for the control of all records of an organization, and this control involves correct indexing, filing, finding, retention and disposal of records. The authors have been at great pains to describe minutely and illustrate fully the varied filing systems, feasible and practicable, to make available a record from any file. The filing arrangements may be alphabetic or numeric, but it is quite natural to find both the practices in vogue in the same record department with different record groups. The plenitude of information regarding archival equipment and supplies and the lay-out of a record department will come in very handy to all institutions who have plans to establish record depositories.

The second part deals with filing and finding operations. To promote easy finding of information and dissemination of such information from records the most workable tool is an index. The authors pithily remark in this connection: "Correct indexing is the key that opens the file and finds the records. Incorrect indexing is the key that locks the file and hides the records." The preparation of an index involves the selection of words, names, numbers or letters, and this necessitates a thorough understanding and knowledge of the working of the organization concerned. Hence emphasis must always be placed on having trained and experienced indexers. . Though no specific rules can be enunciated to show which records should be indexed by name and which by subject, yet this chapter is replete with very valuable suggestions well worthy of emulation. A vivid and lengthy description of some "standard rules" for the alphabetical arrangement of individual personal names, family or proper names, foreign individual names, and the names of companies, institutions and government agencies is included for general guidance.

"Orderly files promote efficiency." After sorting and indexing of records is over the final stage is reached when they should be prepared for filing. Here follow numerous suggestions of how this is to be done. The authors suggest the use of folders for the purpose of holding records in position, for finding, for filing and for transferring.

The third part is devoted to the transfer, retention and disposal of records. Because of variations in the value and use of records, these processes must be wisely planned and skilfully carried out. The intricate problem of retention and disposal of records, only "nibbled at intermittently" till recently, has to be tackled vigorously and seriously. The salient feature of the problem is the drastic elimination from the mass of papers those that have served their purpose and do not have continued or enduring value. The authors devise a method for the retention of the useful and the weeding of the useless which is extremely simple in practice. The principal hint is that operating units should mark the records released for filing with the code for retention and the period of retention. Thus only is periodical elimination of useless material possible. The completed

schedules for each operating division or unit should then be submitted for review to the Committee of records retention and disposal.

The whole manual is a comprehensive survey of all aspects of records management and control. It is a well-balanced work, though sometimes it suffers from excessiveness of detail. Every conceivable subject of archival interest, ranging from microfilms to routine forms, has been touched upon with a thoroughness which leaves nothing to the imagination. Pointed and apt photographs and illustrations, however, relieve the monotony of loquacious descriptions. There is an appendix containing definitions of terminology which helps to clarify obscure archival terms, used both in this work as well as in sister archival journals and publications, and the book concludes with a very copious index.

It may be pertinent to remark here that archives administration in India, which is in its embryonic stage, will find a wealth of detail on management of archives and their control in this book, but it would be next to impossible to avail of the new techniques and devices without the necessary equipment and material so abundantly described. It may perhaps be stated about India generally that although a consciousness, at least of sorts, of the value of records is not wholly absent here, no appreciable attempt has so far been made for their effective control. The sooner our executives acquaint themselves with the modern trends in archival administration and filing operations the better it would be for the administration. This book is beyond doubt an eye-opener to all who are concerned with records who would do well to implement many of the suggestions, and as well prescribe the book itself as a reference manual for their staff.

DIHANWANTI G. KESWANI

*The Vatican Library Rules for the Catalog of Printed Books*, translated from the Second Italian Edition by the Very Rev. Thomas J. Shanahan, Victor A. Schaefer and Constantin T. Vesselowsky; edited by Wyllis E. Wright (Chicago, American Library Association, 1918, pp. xii, 426; \$18-00).

A DESIRE to standardize cataloguing practice in the Vatican Library originated these *Rules*. In all historic libraries collections accrue at different periods of their life and catalogues get compiled according to the then prevailing norms. The Vatican Library has proved no exception to this rule. There were occasions when so many as fifteen different catalogues in book and card form had to be consulted to locate a book. To end such anomaly the compilation of a single general catalogue was embarked upon with the co-operation of American technicians. The Carnegie endowment for international peace helped to complete the design. In preparing this General Catalogue the form of the Dictionary Catalogue was adopted. At first the rules prescribed for Italian public libraries were modified in the

light of Anglo-American practice to suit the cosmopolitan reader in the Vatican Library. But the inadequacy of the rules forced their thorough revision later "using fresh examples taken for the most part from cards in the new Catalog." National predilections were humoured when it came to proper names and geographical names. It is worth quoting the concluding sentence of the preface to the first edition:

"The present rules, then, are a product of the joint efforts of Librarians of different countries, and are designed for a cosmopolitan public, and we hope they will be another step towards that closer international co-operation which is desired and promoted here in the Library of the Popes, a living embodiment of the Catholic ideal."

The publication of the first edition in 1930 was welcomed as being "the fullest and most up-to-date in the world". An English translation of the rules was completed by 1940, which had to wait the duration of the war before it could be published in 1947. It must be clearly understood that this is a literal translation of the *Rules*, which in no way seeks to supplant the revised Anglo-American Rules. There is much general agreement between the A.-A. Code and these rules, except as regards Latin names of Saints and entry of the Bible in conformity with the Vulgate, which differences are explainable as being due to the special character of the library whose books are being catalogued. There is, however, one aspect of the translation which deserves special mention.

"In the section dealing with subject headings.....the lack of any code in English covering this field has led to the inclusion of an adaptation as well as a translation. Whenever examples are given, equivalent examples in English have been supplied. If the example is in the form of a Catalog entry, the English subjects follow the Italian in brackets. As far as possible these are taken from the Library of Congress Cards for the particular titles. If the examples are arranged in tabular form, a second column contains English subjects. The English examples are, if possible, an exact translation of the Italian. If this is not possible, an English subject heading which does illustrate the rule has been supplied. When the rule itself is inapplicable, a footnote has been added stating the practice of the Library of Congress."

If the Vatican Code has not devoted much space and attention to problems confronting "Oriental" Catalogues, we should not complain. It is but natural that these rules which are all-sufficing for European libraries should prove inadequate for our needs. Greek and Latin are the matrix of European culture and Christianity is a European religion, and the evidence for both being the very stuff of the Vatican Library, the cataloguing rules seek to codify this complexity. Even so Indic names receive attention. And it is gratifying

to note that the rules follow those suggested by the doyen of Indian librarians, Dr. Ranganathan. Compare the Vatican Rule 86, § 2 with that laid down by Dr. Ranganathan in his *Classified Catalog Code*, 2nd edition: Rule 1212 (page 69). Again as to Vatican Rule 88 (b) on Modern Oriental authors compare Dr. Ranganathan's work quoted at page 73. What is more, Dr. Ranganathan's examples from Bengal and Gujerat have been used in the Vatican Code. But where the Vatican Code parts company with Dr. Ranganathan is in Rule 86 where it states:

"Indic writers with two or more names are entered under the personal name which usually comes first ; a reference is made from the surname or family name which generally comes last":

*e.g.* Mahadeva Govinda Ranade

Ref. from Ranade Mahadeva Govinda  
Govinda Ranade, Mahadeva.

This rule of the Vatican Code is supported by the Joint Code (*A. L. A. Cat. Rules*, 2nd ed., 1949): Rule 70A:

"Enter Indic writers prior to the middle of the nineteenth century under the personal name (usually the first) and refer from the family name or surname (usually the third). When there are only two names, refer from the second."

In this respect the Vatican Code and the A.L.A. Cat. Rules follow the general practice of the British Museum. The reviewer feels that as regards Oriental names Dr. Ranganathan's Rules are more thorough, elaborate, logical and specific.

One important variation from Library of Congress practice has to be noticed. The Vatican Code advises that individual monuments, are to be recorded under the name of the place in which they are located. The Library of Congress practice is that though public monuments are usually entered under the name of the place in which they are located, the best-known monuments are recorded under their own name, with or without the name of the locality, *e.g.*

WASHINGTON MONUMENT—Washington

BUNKER HILL MONUMENT—"

(*Library of Congress practice*)

ROMA. Monumento Nazionale Vittorio Emanuele

ROMA. Monumento dell' Immacolata Concezione

(*Vatican Code*)

The Vatican Code has, however, recommended the entry of a temple, located in open country under its own name with 'Temple' added in parenthesis, if necessary, *e.g.* Angkor Vat (Temple).

The five appendices, *e.g.* (i) Fifteenth and Sixteenth century books ; (ii) A list of approved abbreviations ; (iii) A glossary of bibliographical terms in Italian, English, French, German and Spanish, with an index to the glossary ; (iv) Transliteration of Arabic, Persian,

Turkish ; Armenian ; Coptic ; Ethiopic ; Gaelic ; Greek ; Hebrew ; the Slavic languages ; and Syriac ; and (v) Sample Cards, are a most welcome feature of the book. Especially appendices (iii) and (iv) are of the greatest value to cataloguers.

All practical problems in Cataloguing have been tackled in a most scientific manner. The Rules 141 (History Cards for Societies), 110 (Authority Cards for Ministries and offices), 102 (a) (change of names of cities and other localities), and 89 (Geographic names), deserve special mention. The finishing touch to the whole work is the index to the Code which, for all its brevity, is most adequate.

B. SEN GUPTA

*Humayun in Persia* by Sukumar Roy, (Royal Asiatic Society of Bengal, Monograph No. 6, Calcutta, 1948, pp. xvii, 113, 4 Illustrations).

WHEN Humayun was at last convinced that no neighbouring ruler was interested in restoring him to the throne of Delhi, he left Sind in 1543. This monograph sets out to tell the story of the interlude between Humayun's departure from Sind and his emergence as the conqueror of Qandahar. Mr. Roy has studied his authorities diligently. He painstakingly presents all that the various authorities have to say on any point. He seems to share with his readers the task of deciding which of the various versions of a story to adopt. The result is not very happy ; instead of seeing Mr. Roy at work, most readers would have preferred a straightforward narrative citing authorities in foot-notes and discussing controversial issues in appendices or longer notes. The monograph reproduces useful original material on the subject. It is a serious factual study of Humayun's arrival and stay in Persia and his departure therefrom.

Mr. Roy's excursions into explaining his authorities are not always successful. To say that Persian historians concealed Humayun's conversion (forced?) to the Shia faith because they were ashamed of the fact, does gross injustice to the historians as well as to their age. His narrative of Humayun's sojourn in Persia is marred by the fact that he follows the Mughal historians of Akbar's age in considering Humayun a ruling prince whereas he was at this time nothing more than one of the unlucky ones of this earth. Jaubar is our witness as to how his small following looked upon him. Humayun's letter to the Shah from Sind is written in a style which no ruling prince would have ever adopted towards another king. Of questions demanding an answer in his story, the author seems to be happily unaware: Did Humayun really intend to go to Mecca from Sind as he so often asserted? Why did he leave Akbar to the tender mercies of his uncle? Why did Humayun spend more than a month in sightseeing when the Shah called him to his capital? Mr. Roy so often quotes authorities alleging that Humayun went to Persia because Bairam Khan



had royal relatives there, but he is quite silent about any part that these relatives played in securing help for Humayun. Did Humayun intend to conquer Qandahar for the Shah or did he, from the very beginning, plan to make this his jumping off ground for the conquest of Kabul? Answers to such questions would have much enhanced the value of this work.

Mr. Roy's monograph would, however, prove very useful to all students of Humayun's career as it gathers together in one place all that the various writers contemporary or semi-contemporary, have said on the subject of his journey to Persia and his stay there.

SRI RAM SHARMA

# THE INDIAN ARCHIVES

Volume IV  
1950

INDEX

55239  
215

Published by the National Archives of India,  
New Delhi



# GENERAL INDEX

- Adhesive, for book labels, 73.
- Administrator, his relations with an archivist, 181-87.
- Agrippa Ledgers, for visible records, 17-19.
- Allahabad, Central Record Office at, 57-58.
- American Documentation*, publication of, 70.
- Anglo-American Conference of Historians, 60.
- Archive and Ministry, by Roger H. Ellis, 188-91.
- Archives, learned societies, libraries and research institutions, in Austria, 235-63; in Belgium, 70-71; in England, 60-66, 167-72, 192-98, 199-201; in Germany, 71, 235-63; in India, 45-59; in Italy, 71-72; in New Zealand, 72; in Switzerland, 235-63; in United States of America, 66-70, 160-63; in Wales, 173-80, 199-201.
- Archives and their make-up in Ancient India and the Countries with Indian Culture, by Jean Filliozat, 126-32.
- Archives and War, by Lester K. Born, 150-59.
- Archives, in Germany, Austria and Switzerland, 235-63; buildings, 236-47; preservation & cleaning, 242-45; varieties of, 247-52; administrative organization, 252-58; personnel, 258-62.
- Archives, protection during war, 150-59, 164-66.
- Archives, First International Congress on, 59-60, 232-34.
- Archives, local, in England and Wales, 199-201.
- Archives, private, in England, 167-72.
- Archivist and the Administrator, by B. S. Baliga, 181-87.
- Austria, report on archives of, 235-63.
- Berhampur, West Bengal Secretariat Record Room at, 58.
- Bibliography, Photomicrography as a tool for, 35-39.
- Bibliography of Joseph Cuvelier, by Jenny Clôcs Cuvelier, 99-107.
- Bihar, Regional Records Survey Committee, 52.
- Board of Historical Records and Ancient Monuments, Bombay, 54-55.
- Bodleian Library, Oxford, acquisitions, 65.
- Bombay, Board of Historical Records and Ancient Monuments, 54-55.
- Bombay Record Office, review of work, 55-56; publications, 55-56.
- Book Reviews, 77-90.
- Books, new device for disinfecting of, 72; protection against insects, 73; perfect binding of, 73-74.
- British Museum, London, acquisitions policy, 64-65.
- British Records Association, London, 17th annual meeting, 61-63.
- Bronwers, Dieudonné, Belgian archivist and historian, death, 70-71.
- California, University of, acquisition of *Mark Twain Papers*, 70.
- Canada: Report of the Public Archives for the year 1949*; reviewed by Dhanwanti G. Keswani, 89-90.
- Central Record Office, Allahabad, review of work, 57-58.
- Central Records Office, Hyderabad State, by M. Nasiruddin Khan, 20-23.
- 'Columbus' International Exhibition, Genoa, 71-72.
- Connor, R. D. W., archivist of U.S.A., death, 66.
- Correspondence, with Chief Editor, *The Indian Archives*, 43-44.
- Correspondence of David Scott, Chairman and Director of the East India Company, 1787-1805, by C. H. Philips, 202-18.
- Custody of Records in Roman Egypt, by Harold Idris Bell, 116-25.
- Cuvelier Joseph, Bibliography of, 99-107.
- Delhi, Regional Records Survey Committee, 54.
- Diplomatic of some Khalsa Darbar Parganas, by Sita Ram Kohli, 2-6.
- Dominion Archives, New Zealand, acquisitions, 72.
- Last Indianmen: The East India Company's Maritime Service* (Sir Evan Cotton); reviewed by Holden Kimber, 77.
- Editors' Note, 1.
- Egypt, Roman, custody of records in, 116-25.
- Enemies of Records, by Purnendu Basu, 7-13.
- England, private archives in, 167-72; work of the Royal Historical Manuscripts Commission in, 192-98; local archives in, 199-201.
- Essex Record Office, 1938-1949*; reviewed by V. C. Joshi, 88-89.

- Fire Resistant Document Containers, 74-75.  
 Franklin D. Roosevelt Library, Hyde Park, New York, access to, 67-68.  
 Freedom Movement in India, writing of history of, 58-59.
- Gandhi, M. K., preservation of writings of, 59.
- Germany, discovery of important documents in, 71; report on its archives, 235-63.
- Historical Association of England and Wales and the Study of Local Archives, by R. F. Treharne, 199-201.
- Historical Manuscripts Commission, review of work, 64.
- Historical Manuscripts Commission, by R. L. Atkinson, 192-98.
- Historical Records of the Survey of India, Vol. II, 1800-1815* (R. H. Phillimore): reviewed by G. F. Heaney, 82-83.
- Hyderabad State, Central Records Office, 20-23.
- Indexing Mediaeval Record Works, by Cyril T. Flower, 142-49.
- India, Ancient, archives in, 126-32.
- Indian Historical Records Commission, 26th annual meeting, 48-50.
- Indian Travels of Thevenot and Carevi* (ed. Surendranath Sen): reviewed by H. Bullock, 78-79.
- International Congress on Archives, first meeting, 59-60; presidential address at, 232-34.
- International Congress of Historical Sciences, 9th meeting, 60.
- Italy, 'Columbus' International Exhibition at Genoa, 71-72; protection of Archives during war in, 164-66.
- Joseph Cuvelier, by Surendranath Sen, 91-97.
- Joseph Cuvelier: A Tribute, by Eugenio Casanova, 98.
- Joy, Benjamin, First American Consul in India, his letters, 219-27.
- Khalsa Darbar Parwanas, a note on the Diplomatic of, 2-6.
- Kungl Krigsarkivet, Stockholm, storage and preservation of maps in, 14-19.
- Lamination, discussion on, 62.
- Letters of Benjamin Joy, First American Consul in India, by Holden Furber, 219-27.
- Library of Congress, Washington, acquisitions, 68-69; microfilming projects, 69-70.
- Lincolnshire Historian*, No. 5: reviewed by Dhanwanti G. Keswani, 86-87.
- Local History—Its Interest and Value*: reviewed by Dhanwanti G. Keswani, 85-86.
- Madhya Pradesh, Regional Records Survey Committee, 53-54.
- Madras, Regional Records Survey Committee, 51.
- Madras Record Office, review of work, 56; publications, 56.
- Maps, Storage and Preservation in Swedish Military Archives, 14-19.
- Maps, Indian, enquiry about, 43-44.
- Maps: Their Care, Repair and Preservation in Libraries* (Clara Eglis LeGear): reviewed by V. C. Joshi, 87-88.
- Mark Twain Papers*, acquisition by University of California, 70.
- Master of the Rolls' Archives Committee, 63-64.
- Max Lehmann and the Genesis of the "Principle of Provenance", by Ernst Posner, 133-41.
- Mediaeval Record Works, indexing of, 142-49.
- Melville Papers*, acquisition by the National Archives of India, 46-47.
- Microfilm Library, at the National Archives of India, 47.
- Microfilmer, Portable, 76.
- Ministry, relations with central record office, 188-91.
- Molière and Archives, by Hilary Jenkinson, 108-10.
- Mould growth, in dry book store, 74.
- Mysore, Regional Records Survey Committee, 54.
- National Archives and Records Service, Washington, review of work, 66; accessions, 66.
- National Archives of India, personnel, 45-47; acquisitions, 46-47; acquisition of microfilm copies of foreign records on Indian history, 47; microfilming equipment and library, 47; publications, 48.
- National Gallery in War-time, by F. Ian G. Rawlins, 24-34.
- National Library of Wales and the Custody of Welsh Records, by Evan D. Jones, 173-80.
- National Register of Archives, 64, 169-72, 197-98.
- Naval Brigades in the Indian Mutiny*, (ed. W. B. Rowbotham): reviewed by V. C. Joshi, 83-85.
- New Hampshire, Town Records in, 228-31.
- New Zealand, The Dominion Archives, 72.
- News Notes, 45-76.

- Northern Ireland, Public Record Office of, 65-66.
- Note on Some Minor Records as Materials for History, *by* Claude Jenkins, 111-15.
- Note on the Development of Records Centres in the United States, *by* Wayne C. Grover, 160-63.
- Orissa, Regional Records Survey Committee, 54.
- Paintings, in the National Gallery during war, 24-34.
- Perfect Binding, a new development, 73-74.
- Photomicrography as a Bibliographical Tool, *by* Evelyn Seltzer Ehrlich, 35-39.
- Presidential Address delivered at the First International Congress on Archives, *by* Charles Samaran, 232-34.
- Principle of Provenance, contribution of Max Lehmann, 133-41.
- Private Archives in England, *by* G. E. G. Malet, 167-72.
- Protection of Archives: Some Lessons from the War in Italy, *by* H. E. Bell, 164-66.
- Provenance, principle of, 133-41.
- Public Record Office, London, acquisitions, 60-61; review of work in, 60-61; publications, 61.
- Public Record Office of Northern Ireland, Belfast, acquisitions, 65-66.
- Punjab Government Record Office, Simla, review of work, 56-57.
- Rapid Selector, 40-42.
- Report on a Scientific Mission to German, Austrian and Swiss Archives, *by* Joseph Cuvelier, 235-63.
- Records, their enemies, 7-13; custody in Roman Egypt, 116-25.
- Records, mediaeval, indexing of, 142-49.
- Records, minor, as material for history, 111-15.
- Records, Town, in New Hampshire, 228-31.
- Records, Welsh, in National Library of Wales, 173-80.
- Records Centres, development in the United States, 160-63.
- Red Sea and Adjacent Countries at the close of the Seventeenth Century as described by Joseph Pitts, William Daniel and G. J. Poncet* (ed. Sir William Foster); reviewed *by* G. D. Khosla, 79-81.
- Regional Records Survey Committees, Madras, 51; West Bengal, 51-52; Bihar, 52; Uttar Pradesh, 52-53; Madhya Pradesh, 53-54; Mysore, 54; Orissa, 54; Delhi, 54.
- Research and Publication Committee, Indian Historical Records Commission, 14th meeting, 50; 15th meeting, 50-51.
- Scott David, Chairman and Director of the East India Company, his correspondence, 202-18.
- Shaw Rapid Selector, *by* R. C. Gupta, 40-42.
- Shelving of Aluminium Alloy, 75-76.
- Simla, Punjab Government Record Office at, 55-57.
- Society of American Archivists, Washington, 13th annual meeting, 67.
- Storage and Preservation of Maps in Swedish Military Archives, *by* Birger Steckzén, 14-19.
- Swedish Military Archives, Storage and Preservation of Maps in, 14-19.
- Switzerland, report on its archives, 235-63.
- Town Records in New Hampshire, *by* Richard G. Wood, 228-31.
- United States of America, development of Records Centres in, 160-63.
- Uttar Pradesh, Regional Records Survey Committee, 52-53.
- Wales, National Library of, 173-80; local archives in, 199-201.
- War, archives during, 150-59, 164-66.
- Welsh Records, in the National Library of Wales, 173-80.
- West Bengal, Regional Records Survey Committee 51-52.
- West Bengal Secretariat Record Room, Berhampur, review of work, 58.

## INDEX TO AUTHORS

- Atkinson, R. L., The Historical Manuscripts Commission, 192-98.
- Baliga, B. S., The Archivist and the Administrator, 181-87.
- Basu, Purnendu, Enemies of Records, 7-13.
- Bell, H. E., The Protection of Archives: Some Lessons from the War in Italy, 164-66.
- Bell, Harold Idris, The Custody of Records in Roman Egypt, 116-25.
- Born, Lester K., Archives and War, 150-59.
- Bullock, H., Review: *Indian Travels of Thevenot and Carevi* (ed. Surendranath Sen), 78-79.
- Casanova, Eugenio, Joseph Cuvelier: A Tribute, 98.
- Cuvelier, Jenny Clöes, A Bibliography of Joseph Cuvelier, 99-107.
- Cuvelier, Joseph, Report on a Scientific Mission to German, Austrian and Swiss Archives, 235-63.
- Ehrlich, Evelyn Seltzer, Photomicrography as a Bibliographical Tool, 35-39.
- Ellis, Roger H., Archive and Ministry, 188-91.
- Filliozat, Jean, Archives and Their Make-up in Ancient India and the Countries with Indian Culture, 126-32.
- Flower, Cyril T., On Indexing Mediaeval Record Works, 142-49.
- Furber, Holden, The Letters of Benjamin Joy, First American Consul in India, 219-27; Review: *East Indiamen: The East India Company's Maritime Service* (Sir Evan Cotton, ed. Sir Charles Fawcett), 77.
- Grover, Wayne C., A Note on the Development of Records Centres in the United States, 160-63.
- Gupta, R. C., Shaw Rapid Selector, 40-42.
- Heaney, G. F., Review: *Historical Records of the Survey of India, Vol. II, 1800-1815* (R. H. Phillimore), 82-83.
- Jenkins, Claude, Note on Some Minor Records as Materials for History, 111-15.
- Jenkinson, Hilary, Molière and Archives, 108-10.
- Jones, Evan D., The National Library of Wales and the Custody of Welsh Records, 173-80.
- Joshi, V. C., Reviews: *Naval Brigades in the Indian Mutiny* (ed. W. B. Rowbotham), 83-85; *Maps: Their Care, Repair and Preservation in Libraries* (Clara Eglis LeGear), 87-88; *The Essex Record Office 1938-1949*, 88-89.
- Keswani, Dhanwanti G., Reviews: *Local History—Its Interest and Value*, 85-86; *The Lincolnshire Historian*, No. 5, 86-87; *Canada: Report of the Public Archives for the year 1949*, 89-90.
- Khosla, G. D., Review: *The Red Sea and Adjacent Countries at the close of the Seventeenth Century as described by Joseph Pitts, William Daniel and C. J. Poncet* (ed. Sir William Foster), 79-81.
- Kohli, Sita Ram, A Note on the Diplomatic of Some Khalsa Darbar Parwanas, 2-6.
- Malet, G. E. G., Private Archives in England, 167-72.
- Nasiruddin Khan, M., Central Records Office, Hyderabad State, 20-23.
- Philips, C. H., The Correspondence of David Scott, Chairman and Director of the East India Company, 1787-1805, 202-18.
- Phillimore, R. H., Indigenous Indian Maps, 43-44.
- Posner, Ernst, Max Lehmann and the Genesis of the "Principle of Provenance", 133-41.
- Rawlins, F. I. G., The National Gallery in War-time, 24-34.
- Samaran, Charles, Presidential Address delivered at the First International Congress on Archives, 232-34.
- Sen, Surendranath, Joseph Cuvelier, 91-97.
- Steckzén, Birger, Storage and Preservation of Maps in Swedish Military Archives, 14-19.
- Treharne, R. F., The Historical Association of England and Wales and the Study of Local Archives, 199-201.
- Wood, Richard G., Town Records in New Hampshire, 228-31.

25 JUL 1951

# THE INDIAN ARCHIVES

January–June 1950

Volume IV

Number 1

55239

Published by the National Archives of India,  
New Delhi





## CONTENTS

Editors' Note	...	...	...	...	1
A Note on the Diplomatic of Some Khalsa Darbar Parwanas by <i>Sita Ram Kohli</i>	...	...	...	...	2—6
Enemies of Records by <i>Purnendu Basu</i>	...	...	...	...	7—13
Storage and Preservation of Maps in Swedish Military Archives by <i>Birger Steckzén</i>	...	...	...	...	14—19
Central Records Office, Hyderabad State by <i>M. Nasiruddin Khan</i>	...	...	...	...	20—23
The National Gallery in War-time by <i>F. Ian G. Rawlins</i>	...	...	...	...	24—34
Photomicrography as a Bibliographical Tool by <i>Evelyn Seltzer Ehrlich</i>	...	...	...	...	35—39
Shaw Rapid Selector by <i>R. C. Gupta</i>	...	...	...	...	40—42
Correspondence	...	...	...	...	43—44

### NEWS NOTES

*India*: National Archives of India—Indian Historical Records Commission, 26th Annual Meeting, Research and Publication Committee, Regional Survey Committees—Board of Historical Records and Ancient Monuments, Bombay—Bombay Record Office—Madras Record Office—The Punjab Government Record Office, Simla—Central Record Office, Allahabad—West Bengal Secretariat Record Room, Berhampur—History of Freedom Movement in India—Preservation of Mahatma Gandhi's Writings—*International*: First International Congress on Archives—International Congress of Historical Sciences—Anglo-American Conference of Historians—*United Kingdom*: Public Record Office, London—British Records Association, 17th Annual Meeting—The Master of the Rolls' Archives Committee—Historical Manuscripts Commission and National Register of Archives—British Museum, London—Bodleian Library, Oxford—Public Record Office of Northern Ireland, Belfast—*United States of America*: The National Archives and Records Service—Death of R. D. W. Connor—Society of American Archivists, 13th Annual Meeting—Franklin D. Roosevelt Library, Hyde Park—Library of Congress—The American Documentation Institute, Washington—University of California, Mark Twain Papers—*Belgium*: Death of Dr. Brouwers—*Germany*: Discovery of Important Documents—*Italy*: 'Columbus' International Exhibition—*New Zealand*: Dominion Archives—*Preservation and Photographic*: New Machine for Dis-

infecting Books—Bug proofing Books—Adhesive for Book Labels—Perfect Binding, a new Development—Mould growth in a Dry Book Store—Fire Resistant Document Containers—Shelving of an Aluminium Alloy—Portable Microfilmer ... 45—76

## BOOK REVIEWS

*East Indiamen: The East India Company's Maritime Service* by Sir Evan Cotton, edited by Sir Charles Fawcett (London, 1949) reviewed by Holden Furber

*Indian Travels of Thevenot and Careri* edited by Surendranath Sen (New Delhi, 1949) reviewed by H. Bullock

*The Red Sea and Adjacent Countries at the close of the Seventeenth Century as described by Joseph Pitts, William Daniel and C. J. Poncet*, edited by Sir William Foster (London, 1949) reviewed by G. D. Khosla

*Historical Records of the Survey of India*, Vol. II, 1800—1815 by R. H. Phillimore (Dehra Dun, 1950) reviewed by G. F. Heaney

*Naval Brigades in the Indian Mutiny*, edited by W. B. Rowbotham (London, 1947) reviewed by V. C. Joshi

*Local History—Its interest and Value* (Lincoln, 1949) reviewed by Dhanwanti G. Keswani

*The Lincolnshire Historian*, No. 3 (Spring 1950) reviewed by Dhanwanti G. Keswani

*Maps: Their Care, Repair and Preservation in Libraries* by Clara Eglis LeGear (Washington, 1948) reviewed by V. C. Joshi

*The Essex Record Office, 1938-1949* (Chelmsford, 1950) reviewed by V. C. Joshi

*Canada: Report of the Public Archives for the year 1949* by William Kaye Lamb (Ottawa, 1950) reviewed by Dhanwanti G. Keswani ... 77—90

# THE INDIAN ARCHIVES

---

Volume IV

January—June, 1950

Number 1

---

## EDITORS' NOTE

WITH this issue *The Indian Archives* enters into its fourth year of publication while it also becomes a bi-annual journal. The reasons for this change over have already been presented to our subscribers and other readers. We take this opportunity to thank the large number of archival institutions, manuscript and other libraries, government offices and individuals interested in archival administration whose good wishes and (more important) active support sustain us. Our particular thanks are due to our contributors who, busy people as they are, have found time to enrich the journal by contributing learned and useful articles to it without remuneration. Their sacrifice has not been in vain for we have reasons to believe that they have succeeded in arousing interest in this country on a subject which is obscured by ignorance and apathy.

We have the painful duty of reporting the untimely death of one of our colleagues, Dr. N. C. Chatterji. An entomologist by profession, Dr. Chatterji was interested in one of the major archival problems in the tropics, namely, the preservation of archives against insect inroads. Dr. Chatterji died of heart failure on 20 February, 1950 at the age of 60. Our sincere sympathies go to his family.

*The Indian Archives* has lost the services of its first Chief Editor, Dr. S. N. Sen, whose untiring efforts kept the journal alive through most difficult days. He relinquished the post of Director of Archives of the Government of India at the end of October 1949 to take over the Chair of History at the University of Delhi. Since then he has been appointed Vice-Chancellor of that University, a distinction he richly deserved. We congratulate Dr. Sen on his appointment.

During the current year the Editors hope to wipe off the arrears and bring *The Indian Archives* up to date. As already announced, our next issue will be dedicated to the memory of Joseph Cuvelier.

## A NOTE ON THE DIPLOMATIC OF SOME KHALSA DARBAR PARWANAS

SITA RAM KOHLI

*Ranbir College, Sangrur*

I HAVE BEEN LATELY WORKING on a collection of Parwanas issued from the Court of Maharaja Ranjit Singh to Sardar Tej Singh, Officer Commanding the Ain Troops (troops organized on European model) of the Lahore Darbar. They belong to the period 14 November 1833 to 21 December 1834. These Parwanas do not form a collection of the original orders issued from the court of the Maharaja, but are their true copies maintained in the office of Sardar Tej Singh to whom they were addressed. They are reproduced in a small leather-bound volume entitled *Kitab Naql Parwanjat Ahwal Campu-i-Mualla ibtida-i-Mah Maghar Sambat 1890*. The manuscript comprises 46 folios. A folio measures 12 inches  $\times$  9 $\frac{1}{4}$  inches and the number of lines vary between 17 and 21. Each page has one line in red on the top, one at the bottom, one on the left margin and two lines on the right-hand margin with an intervening space of half an inch.

During 1915-19 when I was engaged in examining the records of Ranjit Singh's government, I came across a number of the original Parwanas amongst the papers of the Diwan's office. It was found that an official Parwana invariably bore the impression of the *mohr* or the office seal in the margin or at the back. It also bore the words '*darj kitab shud*' or simply '*darj shud*' i.e. entered in the register, and also the words *mulahiza shud* i.e. seen and attested. Another word or a sort of sign manual which one quite frequently comes across in these Parwanas is *sahi* or *nishani* composed of three Gurmukhi letters (*sahi*) denoting *sassa*, *haha* and *bihari*.<sup>1</sup>

Before a Parwana was actually despatched from the Darbar, it was obligatory on the diarist to copy the whole of the text in the office register and make a note to this effect on the back of the document ('*darj kitab shud*'). It was also obligatory for the Hazuri Munshi to affix the office seal to the document before it left his office. The attention of the addressee was pointedly drawn to these facts and he was asked to satisfy himself about the authenticity of the document by

<sup>1</sup> *Sahi* is the Hindi form of the Arabic word *sahih* meaning correct or authentic. In popular parlance as also in the Khalsa Darbar Records, the word came to denote *nishani* or *dastkhat* (signature).

examining the seal and other particulars. The closing words of a Parwana invariably are '*sabt mohr nishani darj rapt ast, mulahiza sazand*'.

Out of the 461 documents copied in the volume there is only one which was despatched from the office without the seal being affixed to it, and, in this case, the fact is pertinently mentioned at the end of the Parwana that the *mohr* (signet) was not available at the moment.

Another noticeable feature about these Parwanas is that besides the usual mention of the place and date of a Parwana, we sometimes find that the actual hour (if it was out of the court hours) or the particular occasion or the exact spot where the Munshi had received verbal instructions from the Maharaja are also noted in the body of the document. If the instructions were actually conveyed by an officer or a personal attendant of the Maharaja, this fact was also added at the end of the text. These messages, it appears, were conveyed to the Munshi by all sorts of dignitaries from the Prime Minister down to the umbrella-bearer of the Maharaja. It may be that the Munshi deliberately noted these details either to safeguard his own position or for his personal guidance in case a reference was made to him on some later occasion.

I have compared the contents of some of the more important Parwanas with the datewise account given by Sohan Lal, the Court Historian, in his voluminous book, *Roznamcha Ranjit Singh*, and I am perfectly satisfied about the authenticity of the documents reproduced in this volume; and, I have no doubt in my mind that these are true copies of the original Parwanas issued by the Darbar to Sardar Tej Singh. The only point which was not clear to me when I did the first reading of this volume some years ago was whether it was the office copy maintained by the Receipt Clerk of the Office of Sardar Tej Singh or it was the one maintained at the office of issue. But on closer scrutiny I discovered that in very many cases the date and the name of the place (*maqam*) mentioned in the right-hand margin (in the space between the red lines) are different from the date and the name of the place (*derah*) given at the end of the text of a Parwana. The date and the place given in the body of the Parwana stand for the place and the date of issue under orders of the Maharaja, whereas those given in the margin indicate the names of the places where the camp of the Sardar happened to be when the Parwana was actually delivered to him. The date of the actual receipt of the *dak* was also noted by the Receipt Clerk, along with the *maqam* or place

where the troops were camping. The use of two Persian words with two distinct connotations also favours the same impression. The word *maqam* which ordinarily means the place of halt denotes the place where Sardar Tej Singh was stationed, whereas for the camp of the Maharaja the more dignified word of *derah* is used.

The next point which needs to be determined in this connection is whether the copy in my possession is the original copy maintained in the office of Sardar Tej Singh or is it only a copy prepared later from the Sardar's office copy. I am inclined to the view that it is the original office copy and my reasons are as follows. It is customary with the copyists of such manuscripts to introduce themselves either in the preamble or give their name and address at the end of the book together with the day of the week and the date of the month and the year when the work was completed. But we do not come across anything like this in the copy under consideration. It begins with the first day of the month of *Maghar*, *Sambat* 1890, as if the previous Receipt Register was finished and a fresh one automatically started. Similarly, the postings of the Parwanas was stopped in this register on folio 43 (total leaves being only 46) as ordinarily it would have been done unless the clerk was obsessed with considerations of economy and had utilized even the last two or three leaves. On the contrary, there is sufficient internal evidence to warrant that the copy in my possession is the original copy of Sardar Tej Singh's office. The practice with the Sardar's office was to record the full text of the Parwana in the register immediately as it was received. This little volume is thus maintained datewise, all along. There are, however, about a dozen Parwanas which have been reproduced in the margins of the pages rather than in their proper chronological sequence in the body of the book. This is because either the officer commanding forgot to pass on to the office a particular Parwana with the rest of the daily *dak* or that the Receipt Clerk, by an oversight or for rush of work, had missed to reproduce one on the due date. The chronological sequence, it seems, was observed with so much sanctity that it was not considered proper to disturb it even though a Parwana actually received about the middle of the month had to be entered in the book a fortnight later, i.e. after the closing date of the month. We come across such notes more than once in our copy. Another point which strengthens my conviction that the copy in my possession is the original copy of Sardar Tej Singh's office are a number of endorsements and compliance notes scribbled in the margin by the office superintendent.

Besides the above mentioned internal evidence there is also what

may be called corroborative evidence to show that the copy with me is the original one. On folio 45b, we come across some half a dozen chronograms celebrating the occasion of the birth of a son of Munshi Ram Ditta Mal. In one of the chronograms, L. Ram Ditta Mal is spoken of as "the most learned among the Munshis" (*ki-shud-az-jumla-munshian-fazil, etc.*). In another there is an implied reference to the fact that L. Ram Ditta Mal was employed in the army department. I have also a clear recollection that Rai Bahadur Wazir Chand who made me a gift of this copy mentioned to me that he had secured it from the private collection of L. Dass Mal of Lahore who was directly connected with the family of Munshi Ram Ditta Mal. This leaves no doubt in my mind that the copy in my possession is the original copy of Tej Singh's office.

The present volume contains office copies of the Parwanas for a period of 13 months only. There may be several other similar volumes relating to years before and after these dates which have either perished or may be still lying in oblivion in unknown private households.

As for the subject matter of these Parwanas, they cover a very wide range of subjects. Sardar Tej Singh to whom they are addressed held the administrative charge of the *campu-i-mualla* or that portion of the troops of the Maharaja which were trained in the Western methods of drill and discipline. For whatsoever purpose the services of these troops ranging from half a squad to a full company of 100 strong, were required all such fall within the purview of these documents. If a guard of men was required for the service treasury or for the Maharaja's kitchen (*iangar*) when he was on tour, a Parwana would be sent to Sardar Tej Singh. If a recalcitrant zamindar refused to pay his revenues to the collector of his Pargana or an old jagirdar or ijaradar (farmer of revenue) was unnecessarily long in making over the charge to a new grantee, Sardar Tej Singh was ordered to furnish the requisite military help to instal the new man in his office. If a report was received of a free fight between two neighbouring villages or of a more influential local zamindar having forcibly (*az sina zori*) ousted a weaker neighbour from his lands, Sardar Tej Singh's help was requisitioned. If the poles of the wooden frame-work of the Maharaja's mosquito-net needed repair or the wooden *mugdars* of certain specified weight were required for the personal use (physical exercise) of the Maharaja, order would be placed with the *Mistri Khana* of the army and the price of the articles would be settled in advance. Similarly, when fresh orders were to be placed with the private *mistries* and contractors for the supply of saddlery, ammuni-



tion and arms for the army, a requisition slip (Parwana) would be sent to Sardar Tej Singh. When the army was on the march, and the Maharaja himself was either in Lahore or was following the troops by easy marches, he kept on sending detailed instructions to Sardar Tej Singh as to where he should halt for the night, in what manner and order he should make his troops cross the rivers at the ferries and what arrangements he should make for collecting fodder and fuel for his troops.

These and a variety of other interesting administrative details are contained in these Parwanas. When an annotated edition of this little volume is placed in the hands of a reader, it will, I feel sure, enable him to visualize a true picture of the day to day administration of the Darbar of Maharaja Ranjit Singh. In my opinion the publication of this series of Parwanas will make a valuable addition to the existing historical literature of the Panjab.

# ENEMIES OF RECORDS<sup>1</sup>

PURNENDU BASU

*National Archives of India, New Delhi.*

**I**T has been seen what are government records and why at least some of them merit expenditure of time and money for their indefinite preservation. The next question to consider is, how best to preserve the records and administer them so that they fulfil the purposes for which they are preserved. Obviously, their mere preservation is not enough; they must be kept in such a way that they can be used. There are three aspects to the question: (1) the physical preservation of the valuable records; (2) their organization so that they may be easily consulted; and (3) preventing their improper use. All these three are of equal importance and all of them call for certain comparatively expensive measures. I shall make a dogmatic statement here, and it is that only by concentrating the valuable records in a properly equipped central repository can a government ensure their proper preservation, physical and moral, proper organization and maximum service out of them. My justifications for such a statement will be brought out in this and the subsequent article. In this article I shall deal with the enemies of records touching also briefly on their antidotes.

What are the principal enemies of records? They are, generally speaking, time, fire, water, light, heat, dust, humidity, atmospheric gases, fungi, vermin, "acts of God" and, last but not least, human beings. All these have deleterious effects on record materials and unless timely steps are taken to neutralize these effects, the records are destined to perish. Most of these factors present more acute problems in a tropical country like India. The principal record materials are paper, parchment, palm leaf (in India), ink, typewriter ribbon, carbon, pencil, wax (for seals), leather, cloth, photographic films and prints, and sound recordings. They all tend to deteriorate with time and with careless handling. Fire can of course reduce a whole lot of records into ashes, and an inundation can reduce them into a mass of pulp, later dried into solid blocks with the writing washed out. "Acts of God" like an earthquake or a stroke of lightning

<sup>1</sup> This is the third article in a series intended to introduce the subject of Records and their administration to laymen. The first two articles entitled "What are Records" and "Why Preserve Records" appeared in *The Indian Archives* of 1948 (Nos. 2-4) and 1949 (Nos. 1-4) respectively.

or man-made war with its bombing and incendiarism can similarly destroy records. Only certain precautions can be taken against such eventualities and after that trust has to be placed in luck. But for such of the enemies of records as heat, light, humidity, atmospheric gases, dust, fungi and vermin, modern research has succeeded in devising effective preventives and antidotes which any record repository worth the name should be equipped with. We will take up each of these in turn and then turn back to less controllable factors. Since paper constitutes the principal record material with which we are concerned today, I shall mainly deal with the effect of these elements on paper.

Without going into the details of paper manufacture it can be stated in brief that paper consists chiefly of cellulose fibres bound together by means of "sizing" consisting of rosin or rosin and alum or some such substance for greater strength frequently "coated" for greater opacity and for providing better writing or printing surface. The inherent strength of paper depends on the length of the cellulose fibres and their freedom from impurities; it does not indeed matter very much what the raw material is from which the paper pulp is made. The lasting quality of the paper is also affected by acidity which may be imparted among other things by the sizing material. The ink used in making records is also important in determining the longevity of the record. Certain kinds of ink tend to fade, the writing disappearing completely after a length of time. Other inks due to their acid qualities eat into the paper and destroy it. An ink in an alkaline medium containing a permanent pigment is what is required. Carbon and pencil copies do not fade by themselves, but with use become smudged or faint.

So much about the most common record materials. How to retard their natural decay with age or, in other words, how to preserve them from the effects of light, heat, humidity, dust, fungi and vermin? It is common experience that paper exposed to excessive light becomes discoloured. In India (perhaps also elsewhere) one of the popular modes of fighting fungi and insects in books is to expose the affected books and papers to the sun for a whole day or two. This may be effective against the vermin, but it also ruins the paper which thus exposed becomes discoloured and brittle. The remedy is as dangerous as the ailment. The ultra-violet rays in sunlight or artificial lights are highly injurious to the cellulose fibres in the paper which must be protected against exposure to such rays. So far as light is concerned, ideal conditions for paper preservation would be provided by a

completely windowless room lighted by low powered bulbs only when necessary. But there are other considerations, as we shall see, which may not make this practicable. Plain glass does not cut off the injurious rays of light, therefore care should be taken that direct sunlight even through glass panes does not fall on the records in the room where they are kept. The windows may be draped with heavy curtains which will cut off light or diffuse it. Yellow panes help in keeping out some of the injurious rays. Or, the records may be kept in closed containers.

Next to light comes heat. Excessive heat has the effect of making the paper brittle which will crumble into dust after some time. Excessive variation in temperature has an equally deleterious effect on paper. It results in the cellulose fibres expanding and contracting over and over again, thus weakening them. Equally important is the relative humidity of the air in the stack rooms. Too little humidity tends to dry the cellulose fibres and rob them of their resilience, while too much humidity encourages the growth of mould. In India we are all familiar with the fungous growth on all articles including books and paper during the rainy season. The fact is that the air around us has all the time fungus spores floating in it, and when the humidity of the air goes above a certain point, these spores settle down on objects and the mould grows. Often it will be noticed that old books or papers have an ugly brown patch which is called "foxing" and results from a localized deposit of iron rust from a particular kind of fungus.

Experiments have shown that a temperature between 65°F and 75°F is the best for the health of paper. Fortunately, this temperature is also comfortable for human beings. As to humidity, a moisture content of below 30 per cent in the air tends to cause too much dryness, while above 75 per cent, even for a short time, it encourages the growth of mould. It is obvious that relative humidity of the air in the stack room should be somewhere between 30 and 75 per cent, say 50 per cent. The conditions of temperature and humidity, viz. 65°—75°F and 50 per cent, should be maintained constantly, twenty-four hours in the day all the year round. In India there is hardly a place where such optimum conditions can be met with normally. The obvious conclusion is that resort has to be had to air conditioning by which means alone these conditions can be ensured.

Air conditioning has other advantages besides maintaining the required temperature and relative humidity in the stack area. It helps in neutralizing the effects of atmospheric gases and keeping out

dust. The most common atmospheric gas which we have to contend against is sulphur dioxide which is produced by the combustion of coal and oil and is usually abundant in the air particularly in cities and industrial areas. The concentration of sulphur dioxide in air varies from time to time and from place to place, but even in dilutions of 0.5 to 1 part per million part of air it is readily absorbed by paper fibres. The gas then combines with the oxygen and moisture of the air and forms sulphuric acid which affects the cellulose fibres and finally breaks the fibrous structure of the paper. With time the amount of sulphuric acid in the paper increases and its effect is accelerated. Therefore, freeing the air from the sulphur dioxide is an essential for the preservation of records. If the record repository is air conditioned, free supply of outer air in it can be entirely cut off and the air that is pumped in can be passed through the spray chamber of the air conditioning system where the chilled water used for controlling moisture and treated with an alkaline solution (usually soda ash, potassium dichromate and sodium silicate) can effectively oxidize the fresh air and remove the sulphur dioxide from it. This alkaline wash will also remove a large proportion of the dust in the incoming air.

The effect of dust on paper is not merely to make it dirty or be a source of discomfort to the user. The tiny but hard and sharp particles of silica contained in dust rub against the paper while handling or even when there is a draught of air and cause abrasions in the paper fibre. Unfortunately the washing of air mentioned above does not eliminate all the dust particles in the air. Consequently, careful dusting has to be made of the records from time to time. Cleaning with a duster can take inordinately long time, besides being a little risky as damage to the paper may be caused by friction. Air cleaners have been used in large record repositories with good results.

So far we have dealt with the means to be adopted in order to maintain records in good condition by the control of light, temperature and humidity, and by eliminating dust and atmospheric gases. If the records are on good material, in a good state of preservation and unaffected by fungi and insects, then given the conditions and not mishandled, they should keep for an indefinite length of time. But one often notices that in the absence of those optimum conditions the old records intended to be preserved are already affected by fungi or insects, the papers torn, the ink fading, the paper weakened and breaking at the folds or edges, the papers smudged and stained, the seals breaking, and a hundred other things which unless set right may

lead to the total destruction of the records. Since this is not a manual on the preservation of records, I shall not go into the details of all the processes that have been devised to counteract the various afflictions. It will suffice to say that effective counter measures for all of them have been found.

As to moulds and insects, the only safe and effective way is fumigation. When dealing with records (it should always be remembered that records are unique things and once a piece is lost, there is no means of replacing it) care has to be taken to employ only such means of rehabilitation as would not adversely affect the record materials. Exposure to sun or interleaving with *neem* leaves, tobacco leaves, dried red chillies or even slough of snakes are some of the popular remedies against fungi and insects. Some place their faith on some DDT preparation or other commercial insecticide. Some of these nostrums are but partially effective, some not at all. Even when effective to a certain extent, the remedy may prove more harmful than the malady inasmuch as it might weaken the paper or fade the ink beyond measure, such as exposure to sun. The use of certain tried fumigants alone should be permissible which are effective without affecting the strength of the paper or the legibility of the writing. Such fumigation is provided, among others, by thymol paradichlorobenzene, carbon tetrachloride and a mixture of carbon dioxide and ethylene oxide. Some of these fumigants are toxic to human beings and all care should be taken to employ them only in air-tight chambers. Then there is another problem—exposure to the fumigants may kill the insects which the fumes reach ; but how to ensure that the fumes penetrate into every chink and hole? Then what about the eggs which are not affected by the fumes? Experiments have proved that vacuum fumigation is the only effective means to take care of all these problems. The process is to stuff an air-tight chamber with the records to be treated and draw out the air creating a vacuum inside. The absence of pressure in the chamber makes the eggs burst. The fumigant is then introduced into the chamber which kills all living organisms in a specific time after which the gas is drawn out and fresh air reintroduced. Then the records are completely disinfected and can be transferred to the stacks which should themselves be kept free from infestation. In order to keep the stacks free from infestation certain definite measures can be taken. In the first place, the whole place should be fumigated and cleaned. After that it should be seen that no affected material comes into it. As a safety measure all new accessions should be fumigated before being

introduced into the stacks. Watch should be kept so that there is no termite invasion. Termites can arise out of cracks in the floor. Once a termite invasion is noticed—there is always the tell-tale earthen tunnel—the queen ant must be traced and killed, all tunnels broken and the insects killed. Some repellents should always be kept on the shelves, like pyrethrum, sodium fluoride, soda and starch mixture or naphthaline bricks. It should also be remembered that some repellents are also toxic to human beings and necessary precautions should be taken when employing them.

Having cleaned and disinfected the records, and after having made sure that they are provided with the most satisfactory housing conditions, the next thing to do is to go into the details of physical damage already sustained. If the paper is stained, it has to be cleaned; if torn it has to be repaired; if weakened it must be reinforced; and finally, if loose papers lend themselves to binding they should be bound up into volumes, otherwise placed into carton boxes before being finally stacked.

Again since this is not a manual on the preservation of records, I shall not go into the details of all the processes of rehabilitation of records. All I need say is that there are different processes to answer different needs. In short, flattening, washing and removal of stains, treatment of faded inks, reinforcing paper by glazing, sizing, mounting, inlaying, half margin repair, application of chiffon or Japanese tissue paper, lamination with transparent sheeting with or without adhesive and binding are all works of skill and can be performed well only after an intensive study of the processes and long practice. Not only that, a good deal of discretion has to be used in deciding which of the processes to apply in a particular case. Furthermore, special processes have been devised for repairing special materials like maps, charts, blueprints, photographic films and photoprints, sound recordings, seals, water or oil-soaked or charred records and records on parchment or palm leaf or birch bark. Some of the processes are comparatively simple and inexpensive, some involve the employment of machinery worth thousands of rupees, but all calling for specialized training and practice.

So much about non-human enemies of records. Human beings can be as much responsible for the destruction of records as the elements or insects. I am not only referring to mishandling or careless handling the effects of which are obvious. There are cases of bad appraisal. It is evident that every scrap of paper produced or received in an office cannot be kept for ever—they are not sufficiently

valuable to merit expenditure of money or energy for their preservation ; by being retained they only occupy valuable space and obscure the more valuable materials. So at some stage a selection has to be made of the records that can be destroyed without doing any harm to either administration or scholarship. Bad appraisal has often led to the valuable record being thrown away and the valueless kept. Then there are people who may use the information contained in records to the detriment of Government or of individuals. Again there are others who may wish to tamper with the records in order to destroy or distort evidence. There are some who are either collectors of autographs and seals or are mere kleptomaniacs, and it is a problem to guard the records against them. Finally, there are incendiarism or bombing, results of man-made war or revolution, which can cause total destruction of records. Providing security against so many possible enemies of records is a big problem, and the selection of the place where records are to be kept, the designing of building and its site, special construction with a view to affording maximum security are some of the considerations which go towards solving that problem.

It will be obvious from the preceding paragraphs that the problem of the preservation of records is a major and complex one, and that its solution requires expensive equipment and specially trained personnel. It is doubtful whether any government can afford to equip every individual department and office adequately for this purpose. Even were it able to do so, it would lead to much duplication of work and wastage. From the point of view of preservation and security alone it would be both economical and more efficient to concentrate all valuable records of the government, no matter to which agency they belong, in one central repository, in a specially constructed and air-conditioned building and adequately equipped with machinery and trained personnel. This still leaves out the other aspects of records administration, namely the utilization of records which alone is their *raison d'être*. This aspect of the problem will be taken up in the next article.



# STORAGE AND PRESERVATION OF MAPS IN SWEDISH MILITARY ARCHIVES

BIRGER STECKZÉN

*Kungl Krigsarkivet, Stockholm*

## 1. *Housing*

THE principal collections of the maps and plans in the Swedish Military Archives are stored in one room, as appears from the sketch (*figure no. 1*). This room is both a repository and map-reading room for the visitor. It has large windows in order to let in light. Perhaps it would be more practical to have smaller windows placed higher in the repository. In that case one would be able to arrange and rearrange the map-cases as necessity arises.

## 2. *Storage*

The main bulk of the maps are in steel cases, sort of cupboards of which the outside measurements are: 160 cm high, 164 cm. wide and 98 cm deep. Each case has 12 drawers, and the inside measurements of each drawer are 150 cm wide, 84 cm deep and, on the sides and at the back, 7 cm high. The sides of the drawers have two rails each between which run the vertical wheels of the inside of the cases. The drawers can be pulled out about 65 cm. At the edge of each drawer and on the inner and outer sides of the two doors of the case there are frames for lists of contents.

Because the Krigsarkivet has existed since 1805 and since different minds have been at work through the years on the problem of finding the ideal method of storage, the system actually in practice is not uniform. The maps in certain collections are piled up in bundles only 8 to 9 cm high between protecting boards, the bottom one being 3 mm in thickness and the top one 1 mm in thickness. This bundle is easy to manage and most suitable for storage of maps of uniform size or maps mounted on sheets of uniform size. Sometimes a pasteboard box is substituted for the two sheets. Half of the upper side of this box and the front edge can be opened. The box must be very well constructed to stand the strain. Great care has to be taken at the time of putting the maps in the box lest they should get folded. Another method is to put a smaller packet of maps into a folder of hard and stiff pasteboard or of artificial leather. About half a dozen

such covers can be made into a bundle and if the folders are made of smooth material and are not overloaded, this can be a useful method. The usual size of the bundle is about  $70 \times 80$  cm. In this case some maps must be folded.

### 3. *Outsize maps*

There are some maps which are not folded but laid inside large covers one by one. Special cases are reserved for those. One must put only a few maps in each drawer. In the catalogue they are called "outsize maps", and in the general series a pasteboard slip is placed where they would have originally been. This method is adopted for a small number of precious manuscript maps. Other outsize maps are folded. Some maps have been rolled, but this method has proved unsatisfactory as rolling makes them unsuitable for consulting.

### 4. *Classification*

The classification of maps is still an unsolved problem for us. When the Krigsarkivet was established in 1805 it was a kind of staff office of the Commander-in-Chief, and the maps and plans collected there were arranged in accordance with the practical claims of daily work. Irrespective of provenance and execution the maps and plans were disposed in agreement with the regional situation. As to classification, even now (1949) the older stock of maps reflects the political situation at the beginning of the nineteenth century. Every country formed a section and this was divided in: general maps, detail maps, road and post maps, maps of rivers and canals, charts, and plans of cities and fortresses. Not the scale but the extension of the region mapped has determined when a map should be placed among general or detail maps. Thus the terms "general" and "detail" maps must not be confused with the terms "geographical" and "topographical" maps.

It would appear from the above that the material has been grouped first according to regions and then according to cartographical character (road maps, nautical charts, town plans, etc.). Of course the reverse order may be conceived: first the maps are arranged in agreement with their special ends, after which the different groups are divided by regions. Modern maps have partly been classified in this way (see below).

It has not been possible to adopt this system of classification until our own days. Besides territorial changes, the modern series of

topographical sheets have compelled the keeper of the collections to find out a new system.

The modern series of printed maps have been placed in the "Modern Collection". The line of demarcation between the modern collection and the older one is not clear. The modern collection follows the regional situation before the Second World War, every European country and several others forming sections, which are divided into "geographical" and topographical" maps, sometimes even into plans, and special maps.

A great number of modern printed charts make a separate collection.

Maps of military operations and so-called "ordres de bataille" have formed special series beside the ones mentioned. The foreign maps are arranged strictly chronologically, while the Swedish ones have been the object of more work and brought together with regard to the strategic continuity of the events reproduced. The latter system is sometimes too complicated.

Finally there are some collections containing only maps in manuscripts and forming parts of the archives of map-producing institutions. It has been decided that these collections should be preserved each in its entirety and should not be divided and merged into the others.

Thus in the classification of maps the regional principle is the leading one. From this there are, however, several deviations, partly because of the division into modern and older maps, partly because modern charts are kept together, and partly because a few collections are kept apart on account of their origin. Every exception from an altogether regional classification, however, intensifies the need for good indexes.

#### 4b. *Cataloguing*

For cataloguing ledgers are employed for the most part. The older lists contain the following data of the map: identification symbol, title, number of copies, author, place and year of publication, and execution (whether printed or drawn). As regards drawn maps of which there are several copies, possible divergences between them are also recorded. Attempt has been made to complete the information in the lists of the Swedish maps by noting, among other things, their former symbols, scales, short descriptions of their contents, and more descriptive title indicating the extent of the territory mapped more exactly than the original title to be found on the map.

Such a detailed catalogue, however, requires much work. As there are still quite a large number of wholly unlisted maps, it has been necessary to let the matter rest. It is intended to produce summary lists of all the maps in the Krigsarkivet which can be employed as inventories and as a means of help to researchers who having obtained a survey of the material through them, may themselves try to find their way to the particular objects desired.

The catalogues of the modern printed maps, both foreign and Swedish, consisting for the most part of the official series of the respective countries, do not contain information about their authors, publishers or places of publication, but each sheet of the series receives a line where the number and name and year of publication are stated. Room is left for sheets still missing. As a rule, every new series begins on a new page. Loose leaf registers are used so that the lists may easily be completed when new series are added.

#### 4c. *Indexing*

The greater and the more varied the material becomes, the more it becomes necessary to have good indexes besides the inventories. Even when the collections are divided strictly regionally there still exists some need for indexes, since there is always map material which can be included in several different groups and therefore difficult to find without indexes with proper cross-references. The work of indexing has not advanced very far in the Krigsarkivet. For the military maps, mentioned above, which are arranged chronologically, there are, however, geographical name indexes. Besides an index has been begun embracing collections in which maps are seldom searched for in the first place. It is intended that maps found in the archives and manuscript collections which do not belong to the map section should be included in this index.

The index which is combined with an inventory is brought about by means of Agrippa visible records in book form or something similar (*figure no. 2*). This is an expensive outfit, but the bulk of the expenditure is to be incurred only once, that is at the time of buying the equipment.

For a "geographical index" the Agrippa system is used in the following way. The maps are registered on cards, one card for each map. On the top of the card the symbol of the map is noted (collection, number, and the like). Then there follow data about its title, author and whatever other information is judged to be important

enough to be included. The two sides of the cards provide ample room for this purpose. On the line—the one visible after the card has been put into the Agrippa ledger—the extent of the territory is stated according to a pre-determined system. The cards are written with two, three or more copies according to the number of the registers desired to be made. One of the copies is allotted to the geographical index. This is arranged in the Agrippa ledgers for visible records, in which the leaves are kept in a staggered fashion, covering each other so that only the lowest line of each card is visible. Cards representing the same territory are brought together and arranged most suitably in chronological order, and in such cases the year of imprint of the map is also noted on the visible line of the card.

The inventory of a particular collection is made by grouping together the card copies having the same symbol on the uppermost line. These are not placed in the Agrippa ledgers for visible records, but piled on each other in transfer binders (*figure no. 3*).

Another copy may be used as a "personal register". The names of the map-drawers are underlined and the slips are arranged alphabetically by the underlined names and piled up on each other as in the inventory.

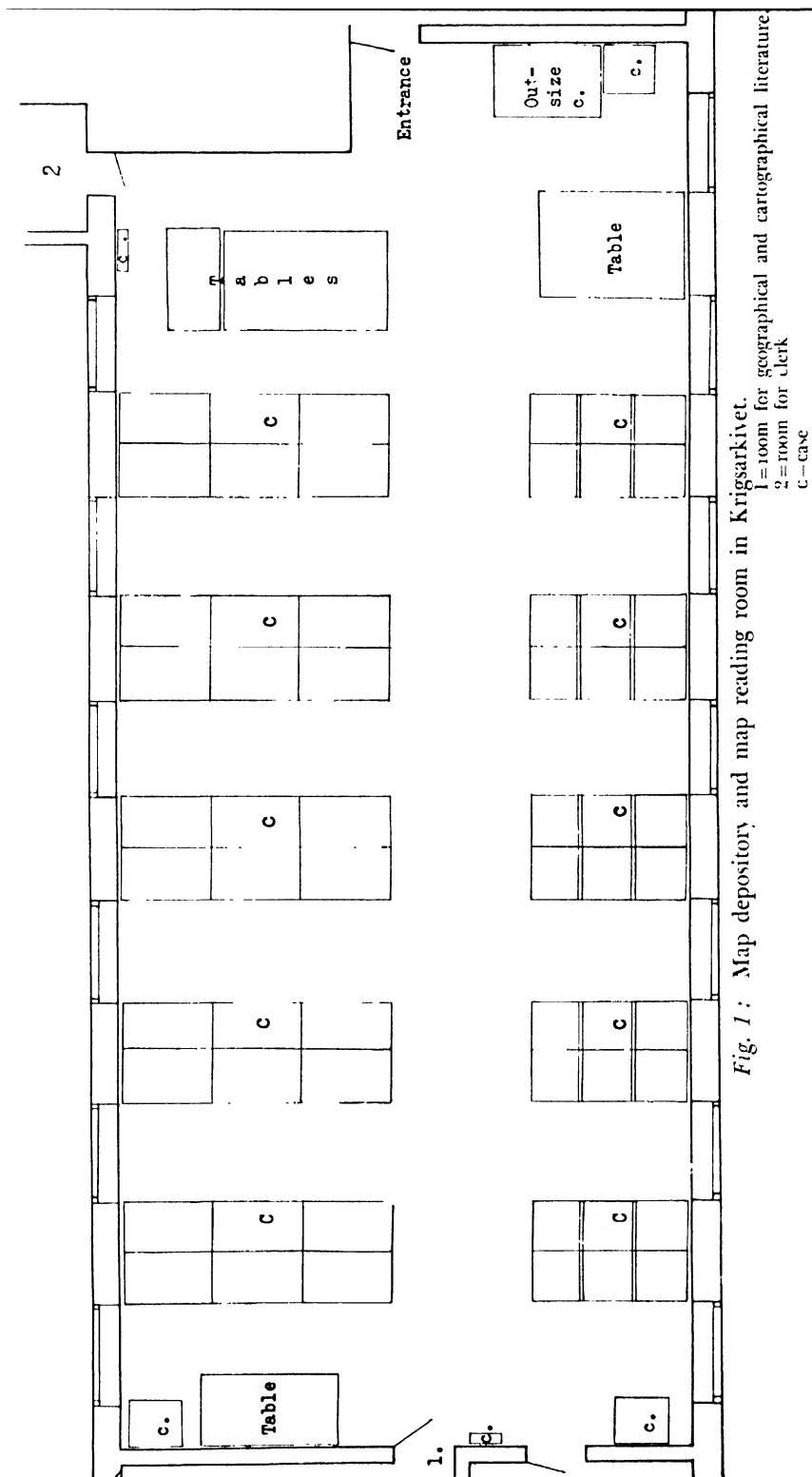
The geographically arranged register probably is the one most often employed. Therefore better paper should be used for the copy of the cards for this register than is used for the others. The lowest line of the cards is reserved for indicating the territorial extent.

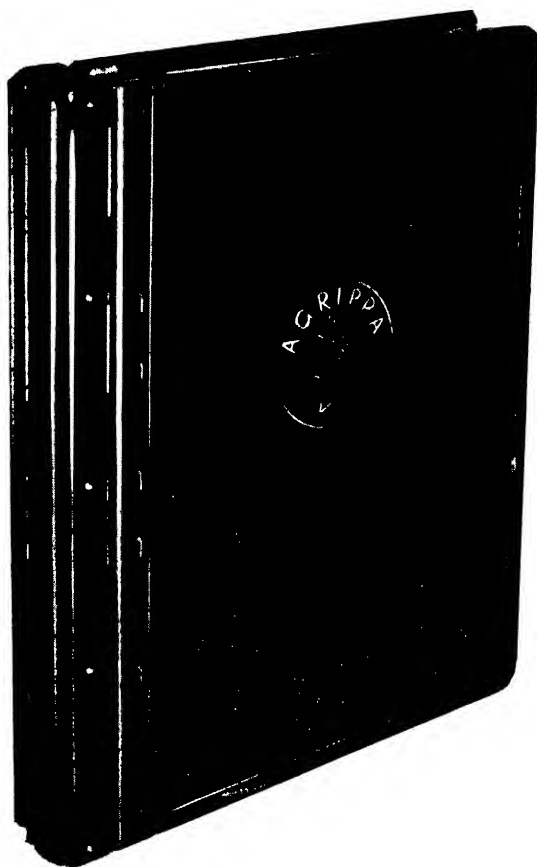
This system has the advantages of a simple card system (with cards in boxes), i.e. the possibility of completing and, if needed, re-arranging the collections. At the same time it can be read just as a book which is an advantage with frequently consulted registers like the geographical register. In an ordinary card register it is not possible to see if any card is missing, which is, on the other hand, easy to check in the Agrippa visible records in book form. The backs of the slips afford much wider room for notes than bound catalogues usually do.

### 5. *Repair and mounting*

Maps needing repair are cleaned and mended with rice-paper. Sometimes the maps are mounted on cloth. Details about repairing methods cannot be described in this short note. We refer to C. E. Le Gear: *Maps, Their Care, Repair and Preservation in Libraries* (Washington, Library of Congress, 1949).

There are two methods of mounting in use, one rather expensive but very good for precious pieces, and another cheap but sometimes





*Fig. 2 : Agrippa Ledger for Visible Records.*



*Fig. 3 : Agrippa Transfer Binder  
with Index.*

*By courtesy of the Office Equipment  
Company of India, Bombay.*

not giving the protection desired. In the former case the map is laid in a cover made of linen-rag paper and fastened along one side. All covers have the same size as described under "storage". In the latter case a square is cut out of a sheet of a thinner and cheaper stuff; the map is fastened along the four sides of the hole and is thus framed by paper. Thereby it becomes possible to study both the front and the back of the map and to put it on the light-table. The edges of the maps are protected and all maps are of the same size. Sometimes the method is used even for maps which are folded. Only one side of the folded map is then fastened to the paper frame.

#### 6. *Service*

There is no special map-reading room for visitors. As long as the catalogues and indexes are not complete or not useful for other reasons researchers must be let into the repository. The equipment is rather simple: two tables 2 m. by 2.5 m. and two smaller tables about 15 cm higher than an ordinary one. The top of each of the latter is twice as large as the ordinary map packets. These tables are provided with wheels and are easy to move to where they are most needed. For the rest the equipment consists of some handy carriages and a light-table. There is a dark room for photography, but it is not yet fully equipped.



# THE CENTRAL RECORDS OFFICE HYDERABAD STATE

M. NASIRUDDIN KHAN

*Central Records Office, Hyderabad-Deccan*

**T**HE Central Records Office of Hyderabad State is at present very appropriately housed in a portion of a building which is a replica of the London Record Office known as Somerset House. This stately building is situated on an elevation commanding extensive views all around. It stands by itself and has no other building in its vicinity.

The Records Office contains records of various departments beginning with documents in Persian numbering approximately twenty million and files transferred to the custody of the Records Office up to now numbering about three hundred thousand. It is already decided that files of all Secretariats up to 1900 will be transferred to the safekeeping of the Records Office, which will further add to the volume and the importance of the Records Office in the immediate future.

The Persian documents in the State archives date back to the 17th century and pertain to the reigns of Moghul Emperors. They deal with a variety of subjects of civil and military administration in the Deccan, including the provinces of Aurangabad, the Berars, Bijapur, Burhanpur, Hyderabad and Bidar. Among these, documents of the Asafia period are more numerous and continuous. They were formerly looked after by certain families of Hyderabad which received substantial grants of jagirs and cash for the maintenance of the records. But as it usually happens, a decentralized administration of records is not conducive to their proper safeguard or administration, and the experience of years forced the Government to assume direct charge of these records to facilitate their safekeeping and maintenance for the future, as they were not only important for the requirements of general administration but were also valuable for purposes of historical research.

The records of the Daftar-e-Diwani were taken over by the Government in 1893, the Daftar-e-Istifa in 1905 and later Moghul papers in 1916, the Daftar-e-Mal with the Daftar-e-Khitabat and the Daftar-e-Mawahir in 1925, the Daftar-e-Mulki in 1929, the Daftar-e-Darul Insha and the Daftar-e-Bakshigiri in 1938, the Daftar-e-

Munshikhana in 1939, the Daftar-e-Qanungo in 1940, the Daftar-e-Peshkari in 1942 and the *daftar* of the Rajas of Shorapur in 1948. Subsequent to these, records of the Political Secretariat, the Army Secretariat, the Ecclesiastical Department, Sadarat-ul-Alia, the Army (Irregular) Directorate, the Chief Secretariat, the Government Central Treasury, and the Revenue Secretariat have been transferred to the Central Records Office from time to time.

Among these Persian *daftars*, two were the main offices of the General Administration in the Deccan. The first is the Daftar-e-Diwani which was entrusted with Civil and Military administration of the provinces of Aurangabad, the Berars, Bijapur and Burhanpur, and contains 2,018,138 documents and papers in bundles, classified in accordance with the practice of the government of the time. The second, the Daftar-e-Mal dealt with the provinces of Hyderabad and Bidar and contains 4,982,981 documents and papers in bundles, classified under various heads according to the nomenclature of the time. These two *daftars* exercised supervision over all such matters as related to finance, revenue, settlement, police, accounts, judiciary, coinage, marketing, grants of cash and lands, army, appointments, postings, dismissals and transfers of government personnel, news-letters, court-bulletins, treaties, in short, all state business under the immediate command of the rulers. These *daftars* formed the pivot of the administration and, in consonance with the principles of administration of the time, had the supplementary aid of a number of other *daftars*, which were subsidiary to them and were established for specific purposes. For instance, the special function of the Daftar-e-Istifa was to prepare and maintain duplicates of the orders issued through the main *daftars* and make official entries of the original fair copies granted to persons concerned. The Daftar-e-Darul-Insha made fair copies of *farmans* and orders on which the royal seal and the sign manual were affixed. In different Asafia reigns, the Daftar-e-Peshkari, the Daftar-e-Mulki and the Daftar-e-Munshikhana served as a Daftar-e-Darul-Insha of the time. A *daftar* called the Daftar-e-Maassib-o-Khitabat maintained records of titles, honours, and ranks conferred on distinguished and notable personages from time to time. The Daftar-e-Qanungo served as a settlement office in the old administration and was concerned with the maintenance of records and documents relating to the boundaries of villages, of lands arable or fallow within the villages showing also woods, wells, hills, rivers, streams, etc. The Daftar-e-Mawahir controlled making of the royal seal, the seal of the realm and also seals for all government

offices, title holders, Begums of the royal house-holds, British Residents, nobles, jagirdars, mansabdars, etc.

The Daftar-e-Diwani and Mal and all its subsidiary offices continued to perform their assigned functions up to the end of the reign of the fourth Nizam when Sir Salar Jang was the Prime Minister. During this time the administrative system underwent a change owing to closer contact with the British administration in India. The executive functions of the Government gradually devolved on various secretariats and departments which Sir Salar Jang was instrumental in establishing in the state. For the proper administration and maintenance of records and the progressive development the Government assumed, in course of time, direct control over these *daftars* and placed them under the Finance portfolio.

In consequence of this development the above mentioned *daftars* ceased to exercise their executive control but retained their functions in respect of the verification of the grants of *jagir*, *inams*, *mansabs*, etc., as usual.

From the above description it is clear that these archives and records are of immense value generally to the student of history but more particularly to the student of the Deccan history as no other true and reliable source of information exists outside these *daftars*. With this fact in view, the Hyderabad Government have, for the promotion of the original research, thrown open these records up to 1900 to the public and have framed special rules regulating their access to scholars for *bona fide* historical research. At the same time, these valuable documents have been and are being properly catalogued and arranged, with a view to making them accessible for ready reference and study to scholars, and a number of selected documents are being edited and published as original source books of history for higher studies.

Most of the old Persian documents are written in *shikista* without any diacritical marks and are ordinarily very difficult to decipher. There are some interesting Marathi documents also in these *daftars* which throw light on the inter-relation of the Nizams and the Marathas and a selection is being made from among them with a view to their publication in the near future.

For the safekeeping of the records and their mending where necessary, services of a mender were borrowed from the Imperial Record Department (now known as the National Archives of India), New Delhi. This expert during his stay in Hyderabad has trained certain personnel of the State Records Office. But unfortunately owing



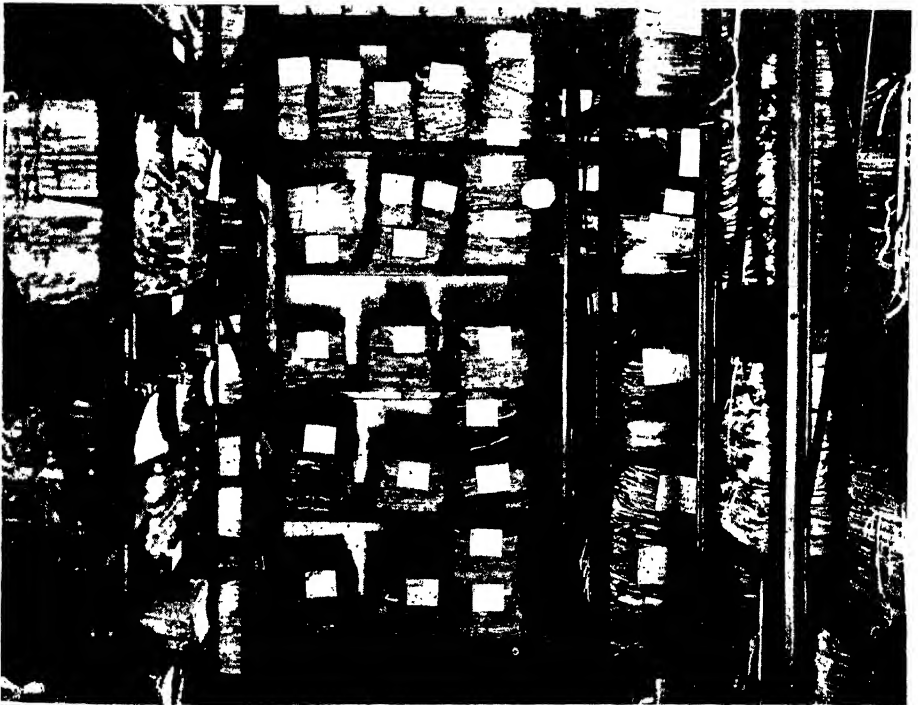
Central Records Office, Hyderabad-Deccan, North-Eastern Wing



A section of the Library and Reading Room



A view of the Muniment Room



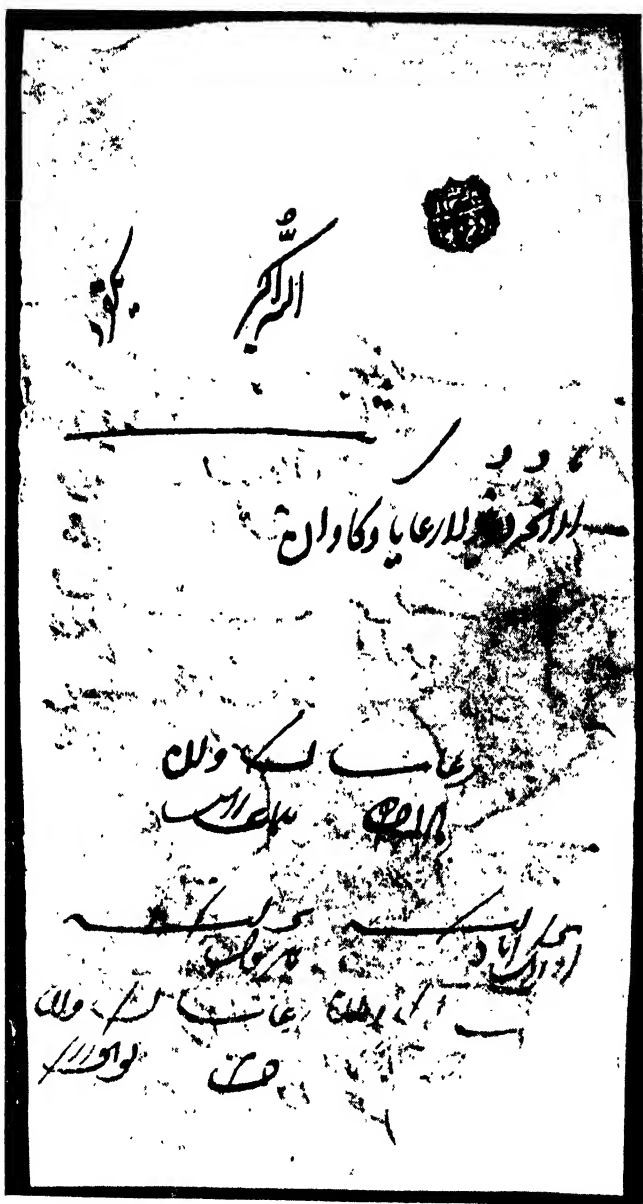
Another view of the Muniment Room



निर्देश

दस्तावेज सं. ७३०॥११





Memorandum on enumeration of people and cattle  
of the *parganas* of Aurangabad in Shah Jahan's  
reign I. R. No. 416

श्री-

आश्वीयाश्विनादिआमय  
 आश्वीयाश्विनादिआमय  
 मराठाराज्यासिवास्विकीर्ति

पोरुमनिमययजांगतहुरा  
 रागिजिउचममहाजोस्यमि  
 उमिहाउपरागिपापमि  
 पश्वीमरासमरासाधियस  
 एनलागिअममममममम  
 ममममममममममममम  
 ममममममममममममम  
 ममममममममममममम  
 ममममममममममममम

A letter dated 31 December, 1782 from Nana Farnavis inviting Dhondaji Shankar to attend the wedding of Peshwa Madhav Rao II—*I. R. No. 1788*

श्री-

आश्वीयाश्विनादिआमय  
 आश्वीयाश्विनादिआमय  
 मराठाराज्यासिवास्विकीर्ति

पोरुमनिमययजांगतहुरा  
 रागिजिउचममहाजोस्यमि  
 उमिहाउपरागिपापमि  
 पश्वीमरासमरासाधियस  
 एनलागिअममममममम  
 ममममममममममममम  
 ममममममममममममम  
 ममममममममममममम  
 ममममममममममममम

A document dated 1207 A.H. (1792 A.D.) relating to the payment made towards arrears of the French troops under Raymond, bearing his signature—*I. R. No. 1629.*

قدوسی

دہات  
خبرہ  
وزیر امانی سابق فرمودہ شدہ بود کہ موقع مالتوہ نور  
سرکہ صولت محمد انا کہ کاکر صبی الدولہ ہمارے مقبرہ  
مردم کل منظور است کہ ہمارے مذکور ممالک عودہ دہات  
مذکورہ در بخواہ محل طاعت فرمائیم بعد اسوال مرگل  
در خط سرسیدہ و اس فرستادہ شد ما کہ کہ ہمارے مذکور  
ممالک و صمدادہ سوال دہات مرقوم تمام محل کوہ ماہر

An autograph letter of Nizam Ali Khan addressed to Arastu Jah, the Prime Minister, regarding the transfer of jagir of Safi-ud-daula to a Begum of the royal household—A. R. No. 4849.

ہجری ۱۲۸۰

[illegible]

Grant by Aurangzeb of *Mansab* of 7,000 *Zul* and  
7,000 *Sowar* to Shahu, grandson of Shivaji  
- L. R. No. 21



to financial stringency this branch could not reach its full development although requirements of the department are growing with the quantity of records and they are great and urgent at present. The State Records Office is closely in touch with the National Archives of India and has the benefit of its advice and assistance. But in order to develop on satisfactory basis, more funds are required than are at the disposal of the State Records Office at present. In course of time it is hoped that the Government will extend more liberal grants to bring the State Records Office on up-to-date lines, especially for the scientific housing of the records, their preservation, repair and rehabilitation where necessary. Unless the necessary steps are taken, these old documents and records will be completely lost to posterity as they cannot be replaced in any way.

The Records Office maintains a good-sized reference library which includes some rare and unique Persian manuscripts, a number of maps, dictionaries, books on procedure of old administration, etc. The Government has recently enhanced the budget allotment for the purchase of books which will add to the usefulness of the collection.

The present organization of the Records Office is supervised over by a Director, assisted by four gazetted officers, and has an establishment of 71. With the ever increasing quantity of records after their centralization more specialized and scientific administration of the records has to be maintained by the Records Office personnel who in time gain a unique knowledge of the make-up and contents of the records in their custody.

# THE NATIONAL GALLERY IN WAR-TIME<sup>1</sup>

F. IAN G. RAWLINS

*The National Gallery, London*

IT IS ONE OF THE NECESSARY SORROWS of war that scientific workers are bound, for the most part, to apply their knowledge and skill for the time being to the work of destruction. It is also true, as is already obvious, that some good comes out of evil, but the primary aim is, and must be, to destroy. Naturally, there are heroic efforts to mend and to repair, perhaps even to restore; yet they are hard pressed to keep pace with the forces of obliteration. In this article, however, we are contemplating a happier theme, in which applied physics and kindred branches of technics have been harnessed deliberately and specifically to a project of conservation. Consideration of some such scheme is usually simplified a little by financial reasoning—the relative value of the things to be kept safe and the cost of doing so. But with the nation's heritage of pictures, in some respects the most precious and representative in the world, these terms become largely meaningless. It is the bare fact of irreplaceability which dominates thought. Loss or serious damage admits of no compensation. If science can help in this great quest for security, it will have shown that even in war its part is not wholly to undo. To save for posterity becomes an overwhelming urge.

Well before the outbreak of hostilities, the Board of Trustees of the National Gallery had approved plans for evacuation from the great building in Trafalgar Square, London. These were, in fact, implemented and the bulk of the collection was hundreds of miles away from London immediately before September 3, 1939. The programme of removal had been accomplished in ten days, in accordance with schedule.<sup>2</sup> A tolerable exile had been arranged in various houses and halls.<sup>3</sup> So far so good. Risks were reasonably spread. Administration

<sup>1</sup> Reprinted by kind permission from the *Nature* of 30 January 1943.

The information given in the footnotes is taken from "The War-time Storage in Wales of Pictures from the National Gallery, London", *Transactions of the Honourable Society of Cymmrodorion*, 1946.

<sup>2</sup> The first container left Trafalgar Square on the afternoon of 23 August 1939 and the last on 2 September, a few hours before the declaration of war.

<sup>3</sup> At the outbreak of war two centres in Wales—Aberystwyth and Bangor—were chosen. At the former place the Librarian of the National Library of Wales placed a considerable floor space at the disposal of the National Gallery and at Bangor depots were established in Prichard-Jones Hall of the University College of Wales and Penrhyn Castle. In mid-1940, with the fall of France, danger from aerial attacks increased

and invigilation functioned duly. But was all this sufficient? Indiscriminate bombing all over Great Britain set in. Nowhere above ground was safe in the special sense applicable to unique and irreplaceable objects. Even the fire-risk assumed new proportions in some respects. Thus, inevitably, the question was raised whether deep shelter could not be found, and if it could, what new hazards and imponderables it would introduce. Here indeed was a task for science, to shoulder its full measure of responsibility. In the sequel, some indication may be seen of the course of events. Meanwhile, all the refuges above ground had fulfilled their purpose, providing safe shelter unimpaired until their supersession.

### *A Deep Shelter Policy*

In a matter of days, as it turned out, the Gallery was committed in principle to seek a subterranean home. The prime need was to find it. Mines, quarries, tunnels, caves, even deep defiles capable of being artificially roofed and reinforced were visited and discussed. Seldom must such a search have been started, and more rarely still could one have been more disappointing in its opening stages. Site after site was rejected on grounds such as those of possible flooding, presence of noxious vapours, insecure roofs, difficult access, probability of becoming a target later on for indirect reasons, and so forth. Up to the time of writing (January 1943), two of these locations are definitely known to have experienced incidents which, had they happened when in use as repositories, would have constituted in one case a major disaster, and in the other a potential threat too grave to have been disregarded. These facts are mentioned to demonstrate that sanctuary was not to be had merely for the asking.

Six precious weeks went by with nothing to show for them but negation. Then, almost by chance, the outlook changed. A site offering sufficient space to house the whole collection, and possessing between 200 ft. and 300 ft. of rock cover, appeared.<sup>1</sup> The access was not easy, and it was obvious at once that fairly heavy works would be needed to make it suitable for the purpose. Nevertheless, it was possible. The natural temperature within was 47°F. and the relative

in West and North-West Wales also and with a view to distribute risks the pictures were dispersed among some other centres, namely Eagle Tower at Caeriarvon, Mr. O. C. Robert's house at Bontnewydd (3 miles south of Caernarvon) and Lord Lisburne's house at Crosswood (9 miles from Aberystwyth).

<sup>1</sup> The place chosen was a slate quarry in the Snowdon range of North Wales near Festiniog, some 1750 feet above sea level.



humidity 95-100 per cent. Tradition locally had it that the temperature was unchanged throughout the year. No data in support of this were extant, and there was no time to begin extended observations. Instruments were put in position for a week as a rough guide. The temperature remained at 47°–48°F. and the relative humidity at a point approaching saturation. There was no alternative but to accept these figures as characteristic. A good record for freedom from falls of roof was produced (for this particular type of workings), and the risk of flooding could be taken as negligible. There were no noxious vapours, and the material present in bulk was chemically inert. There were other features too, not shared by most places of the kind, of a favourable nature. Beyond these broad considerations, nothing could be said with certainty. In addition to the increasing danger to the pictures in their quarters above ground, it became necessary for special reasons to make an immediate decision to accept or reject this place. In any event, some six to twelve months would elapse before it could be ready for occupation.

Within a matter of days, the Trustees, the Treasury and the Office of Works (now the Ministry of Works and Planning) had agreed to accept and to go ahead. It amounted almost to a venture of faith. The National Gallery thus became possessed of a repository offering cover against aerial attack to a degree approaching impregnability. Nothing but an earthquake could harm the contents mechanically. At the same time, due to the high relative humidity, ruin within a month might be expected for the pictures if this was not dealt with, and restrained, during the whole period of occupation. Furthermore, access was physically impossible for a large percentage of the collection. Thus, to begin with, matters were not easy. But the decision was clear-cut. The protective cover was ample, and the capacity for storage adequate. All the other troubles must in consequence be overcome.

Reviewing the situation at the present time, with the great collection safely housed, it may be stated that no major disadvantage was overlooked in that rapid decision. It was thought to be feasible to accomplish the task, and so in the event it has proved. Naturally, this is far from implying that there is little more to do. Life there, in some respects, resembles that of the crew of a ship at sea. Constant watch and ward was never more essential. There is much machinery, and full provision for emergencies. The pictures themselves need thoroughgoing inspection at frequent intervals, if one is to be reasonably certain that all is well. Sometimes they need treatment, and this has been provided for. Temperatures, relative humidity, ventilation, electrical

gear, the stability of the fabric, the workings themselves, all require ceaseless attention if accidents are to be avoided to within the limits of human fallibility. There is plenty of the unknown in this great bid for safety. From the beginning, the main responsibility for the safe-keeping and administration of the National Collection in exile has rested upon Mr. Martin Davies, to whom also is due much of the planning of its underground home.

In the next section, the arrangement of the repository and the apparatus installed will be described in some detail. Where information is lacking, the explanation is probably that data on that particular matter exist, but must be withheld at present for security reasons. When the time is appropriate more can doubtless be said.

### *The Underground Repository*

The decision to place the great national collection below ground having been taken, the work of making the site suitable for the purpose devolved upon the (present) Ministry of Works and Planning. At this point a tribute of appreciation to the officers and staff of that department may be gratefully made, both for what has been done and for the way in which they have striven to meet the special requirements and ideas of the National Gallery. With a project so novel, it was only to be expected that some set-backs would occur; the isolated position and the season of the year in which operations began both had their share in making progress exceptionally difficult and arduous. When the full story of this aspect can be told in detail, it will probably be admitted that the period of preparation, though somewhat longer than anticipated, was not excessive. The managing director of the company working the site did all in his power to help in every way. The site was first seen on September 17, 1940. Four days later the decision to accept it was taken. Blasting operations started a few weeks later, and most of the buildings were ready for drying-out (but not for occupation) in May, 1941. By August, 1941, all essential engineering services had been completed and the buildings were ready to receive the pictures. The move in began on August 12, 1941.

The nature of the underground workings was such that the only reasonable way of securing proper temperature and humidity conditions (as well as due invigilation) was to erect separate buildings underground, and to 'condition' them individually. (By 'condition' is not meant full air-conditioning, as technically understood, but bringing physical conditions within each building to a state satisfac-

tory for the contents, by the comparatively simple means to be described later.)

These buildings were designed to have no mechanical strength ; they are simply 'envelopes' on a large scale. Of light brick construction and the inner walls and ceilings covered with wall-board, the floors are concrete, and the roofs are of fabricated material (treated with ruberoid) on top of which rests a wiremesh mattress. The function of this is to distribute the weight, should any *small* fragments of rock fall from above. No provision is made against *heavy* falls of rock. This matter is one for constant expert vigilance on its own account, and upon it complete reliance has always been placed. Steps have been taken to ensure that all aspects of this possible hazard are kept under close review.

A question to be decided at the outset, which had a direct bearing upon lay-out, was the amount of wall-space needed, regarded particularly as a function of height. The guiding principle was that, in general, stacking of pictures was to be avoided. All were to be accessible for ready inspection. In this way, the problem was one of two dimensions rather than of three. The demand for height was such that ten feet would suffice for the great bulk of the collection, with fifteen feet for a small percentage of the total. In fine, this meant six buildings, five giving a headroom of 10 ft. inside, and one with a 15 ft. clearance.

These needs made somewhat rigorous demands upon the placing of the buildings, if maximum accommodation was to be secured. Thus, they vary considerably in shape and size. All except one are on a common level ; the exception is approached by an easy flight of steps, and is reserved for pictures capable of being safely carried up by hand. Fortunately, there are many of a size suitable for this. The question was discussed at the outset whether any real advantage would be gained by having two-story chambers, where the natural height available permitted. This was answered negatively, both on the score of time and expense of making such buildings, and of the difficulty and dangers of taking pictures to and from the upper floor by stairs, lifts or cranes.

It may be mentioned here that the 15-ft. chamber already alluded to was designed to serve a double purpose. Its first duty was to act as the receiving and unpacking station. The vehicles containing the pictures, when they arrived, drove down a tunnel some 200 yds. in length, into this building, which is large enough to allow of turning and is provided with a suitable unloading dock and ramp. In fact,

this building was planned in close co-operation with the railway companies who undertook the task of transport. The second purpose of the building was to house the largest pictures, and to act in some measure as an inspection shop for all the large works. Thus, all unpacking took place in 'conditioned' surroundings. The overall size is solely governed by the amount of space available, but the inside dimensions were most carefully considered in the light of general experience in moving, storing, and inspecting pictures. A fair amount of room is needed for carrying turning and so forth: to cram this unduly would be to risk accidents. Almost every building is provided with a small work-room where such operations as laying blisters can be carried out. By these means it is rare that a picture has to leave its conditioned surroundings for treatment.

The plant-room contains the heating and ventilating machinery required for each building. One such plant-room and equipment suffices for each, except in two instances where shape and capacity necessitated the provision of two such plant-rooms.

The guiding principle in regard to the major problem of 'conditioning'—in the limited sense already explained—has been to make each building a separate self-contained unit which can be controlled individually as desired, so far as temperature and relative humidity are concerned. The advantages of this were found in the early stages of occupation, when the storages were gradually filling up with pictures (after a suitable period of thorough drying-out, expedited by the use of refrigerating plant). Due to the concentration of so much hygroscopic material (wood and canvas), it is easier to obtain stable conditions when a building is full than when it is empty. In addition, certain other categories of valuable material are present, which need a physical environment of a slightly different kind. Again, when material first arrives, it can be gradually acclimatized to its new surroundings by the appropriate regulation of temperature in a certain building.

When the site was first explored, it had three factors of value from the physical and engineering aspects. These were: (1) a constant temperature so low as 47°F. inside the workings, as already mentioned; (2) easy access to electric power; (3) water, sufficient for engine cooling. In view of (1), it was considered that a satisfactory relative humidity in the buildings could be obtained by temperature-control alone, that is, there would be no need for a permanent de-humidifying plant. This relative humidity was provisionally fixed at 55-60 per cent at 62°F. It should be maintained constant to within 3 per cent. This is a

narrow tolerance. The point is that once a relative humidity between 55 and 60 per cent—say 58 per cent—has been set up within a building fully occupied with pictures, then it is undesirable that fluctuations should lead to higher values than 61 per cent or lower values than 55 per cent. Owing to the impossibility of forecasting exactly what would happen with such an indefinite 'population' as a combination of panels and canvases, it was agreed to proceed on this basis. To anticipate for the moment: experience of a full year's working has shown that the plant gives, as an example, a relative humidity of 57 per cent at 61°F., with a variation in the former of less than 2 per cent over a period of many months. In general, the temperatures in the various buildings are some 2°-3°F. higher than anticipated, if the correct relative humidity is to be obtained. Of the two factors, relative humidity is decidedly the more important. The reason for this slight temperature excess, and an indication of the methods to be adopted to reduce it, will be considered later. The question of the influence of temperature upon mould growth has also been taken into account.

As already mentioned, each building has its own plant room or rooms containing the necessary fans for air distribution, heating batteries, dampers and automatic controls, the plant varying in output according to the requirements of each building. The essential equipment consists, in each plant, of an electrically driven fan drawing air through a suitable filter, delivering it over a heater battery into a simple plenum in the chambers.

Warm air is distributed as evenly as possible through ductwork having low-velocity outlets, and is controlled by louvre and slide-type dampers. Provision is made for partial or total re-circulation of the warmed air, and the proportion of fresh air introduced can be controlled. The unusually stable temperature conditions outside the buildings make thermostatic control as ordinarily understood unnecessary. Overriding high-temperature protection is provided and remote warning of a rise or fall in temperature exceeding 2°F. is given.

The only variable is that of electricity supply voltage at the terminal of a long and heavily loaded rural system, and this is compensated by hand adjustment of the calibrated louvre dampers, and by switching off sections of the heater batteries. This maintains conditions well within the differential limits of commercial thermostats and without the need for heavy voltage control equipment.

Normally, the system works on almost full recirculation of air, with a change of about four per hour. The operating cycle begins at the plant room, where a very small amount of fresh air at 47°F. and

95 per cent relative humidity is 'bled' into the system through intake louvres. The air passes into the filters, mixing with the recirculated air drawn from the chambers. Then it passes through the fan, across the heating battery, through the duct system and is delivered to the rooms through a series of suitably placed orifices. Then the air is drawn back to the plant room through 'recirculation openings' normally kept open. Excess fresh air drawn in the plant room displaces a part of the stale air through 'evacuation valves' provided for the purpose. When fresh air is being drawn in and filtered there is always a slight outward pressure from the rooms which assists in preventing introduction of any dust from outside.

On occasions, staff is required to work inside the rooms and then the air can be freshened by opening fully the fresh air intake louvres, and closing the 'recirculation louvres'. Air escapes through the evacuation valves. For a given heat input, the temperature then tends to fall, and if the blow through is of long duration, the heat input must be increased.

The advantages of almost complete recirculation are a reduced power consumption for heating, and less heat loss to parts of the workings outside the buildings where the natural ventilation is sluggish.

There has been experience of local temperature rise to 52°-53°F. from 47°F. with decrease in thermodynamic efficiency, and to overcome the consequent rise of relative humidity in the rooms while maintaining temperature, it has been necessary to use calcium chloride as a pre-drying agent for fresh air entering certain plant rooms, and to install powerful fans to draw on the vast volume of air at 47°F. in other parts of the workings. At the worst, in one part, a maximum temperature of 66°F. has been necessary to maintain 58 per cent relative humidity. Energetic measures are being taken to introduce cool air to this locality, and shortly it is expected that it will be reduced to uniformity with the rest of the system.

The flexibility of the whole system is important. Certain valuable material needs individual treatment, and conditions in a building or part of a building can be readily adjusted without any widespread disturbance of conditions.

Throughout, it must be remembered that fungus and moulds constitute a formidable danger to pictures. Research shows that at such a modest figure as 68 per cent relative humidity, especially at temperatures of above 70°F., trouble may occur. Free circulation of air is an effective counter weapon. This is amply provided for in each

building. A number of trial canvases and panels have been placed in various parts of the workings—outside the storage chambers—to observe what happens to them in air at around 47°F. and approximately saturated. Moulds were observed well within a month and, in one case, in eighteen days. Constant vigil is kept, not only on the pictures, but also on all incidental woodwork and fabric. Routine inspection is undertaken at short intervals.

The recording instruments in use are simple but essential. In every building there is a hygrometer of the type shown in the illustration (Fig. 5). These consist of a standard double-pen disc type mercury-in-steel temperature recorder, adapted to work with an aspirating system composed of a couple of asbestos fibre tubes through which air is drawn by a small fan and motor. In one tube is the wet bulb, and in the other the dry. From the former, a suitable wick dips into a trough of distilled water. (The air-flow is at approximately the same rate as that generated by a psychrometer or whirling hygrometer.) From standard tables, and from the reading of the wet-and-dry-bulb temperatures, the relative humidity in the chamber is known at any moment. Calibration with a psychrometer, as a check, is carried out at frequent intervals. These composite hygrometers have been found most satisfactory: a little difficulty was experienced initially in getting the exceptionally large amount of wick to saturate evenly and continuously, but this has been overcome. If the plants are stopped down for a couple of minutes, a decided knick is observed on the charts, thus giving confidence in rapid reaction.

Thermometers are placed at every recirculation louver throughout the buildings, so that engineering staff can read them from the plant rooms on their patrols. A series of 'standard temperatures' have been worked out empirically, corresponding to the desired conditions within.

Outside the chambers, at various points in the workings, temperatures are recorded daily, to make sure that the ventilation remains satisfactory.

The possibility of electric power breakdowns and failures has been most carefully considered. On this account a 140 h.p. low-speed Diesel-alternator, capable of taking the whole load of motors, fans, heaters, lights and accessories, has been installed. Due to the isolated situation and the severity of local conditions, calls upon the emergency plant are not uncommon. Before the pictures were moved in, a stringent test was made, the generating plant maintaining the whole load continuously for a week. This was thought necessary in view of



*Fig. 1:* The main underground approach level. This was originally of cross section 6 ft.  $\times$  6 ft. and was enlarged to 13 ft. 6 in. high and 10 ft. wide.



*Fig. 2:* A typical plant room and part of storage building

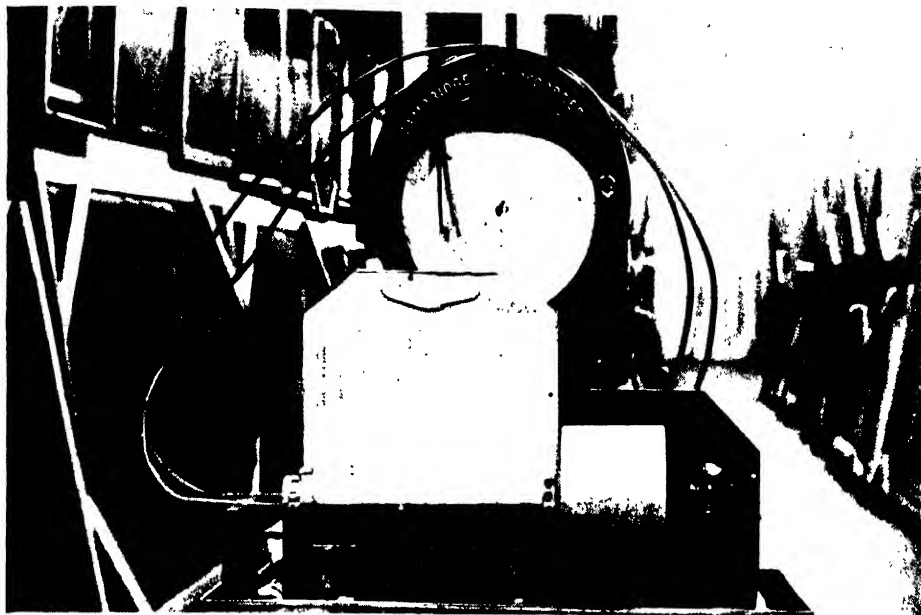




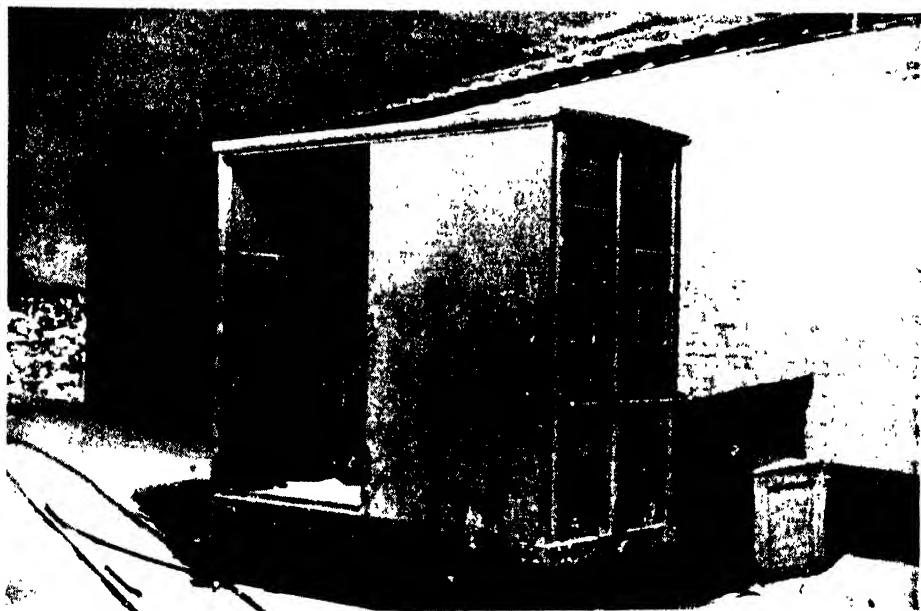
*Fig. 3:* Part of storage chamber before occupation, showing stack of screens (left) ready to be fixed between the uprights in the centre.



*Fig. 4:* Inside one of the storage buildings, showing part of an aisle, with pictures in position. The height is 10 feet from floor to ceiling.



*Fig. 5 :* Hygrometer consisting of disc-type temperature recorder and aspirating system.



*Fig. 6 :* Closed trolley (one of the four side-doors removed) for conveyance of pictures between various storage buildings.



the reliance placed upon electric power to keep the relative humidity in the buildings from rising (within a matter of a few hours) to dangerous limits. Fortunately, circumstances are such that a more rapid deterioration is not to be expected, but there is not a great deal of margin in this respect. Almost equally important is the need for prompt—almost immediate—restoration of lighting after a breakdown. Experience has shown that it is never more than 2-3 minutes before the stand-by plant is running and normal conditions return. The double calamity of a failure of both electricity supply and stand-by plant at the same time has been envisaged, and super-emergency measures designed to mitigate such a situation so far as possible. There is, of course, staff on duty day and night. As mentioned before, an adequate (but not limitless) supply of water, capable of being treated for use in engine cooling, is at hand.

Indications have already been given of the somewhat heavy engineering works involved in this whole project. To conclude this section, some details may be of interest. Initially, the site (for the purpose in view) was practically without access. A new road, entailing some considerable excavations and embankment, was therefore constructed. Within the workings themselves, enlargement of adits and levels necessitated the blasting and removal of some 3,000 tons of rock (including work now in hand for the improvement of ventilation). In addition, a further 2,000 tons were removed by hand-labour from the floors before it was feasible to begin the erection of the storage buildings. In this enterprise a special appreciation must be made of the work of the local company's manager, under whose direct supervision these operations were all carried out. He discharged this task rapidly, and thanks to his knowledge of the local strata, without accident of any kind.

For the necessary transport of pictures and stores (including engineering equipment), the National Gallery needs about a quarter of a mile of underground narrow-gauge railway. The maximum gradient encountered is 1 in 20 for a few yards. Special rolling stock was built for it by one of the mainline railway companies. An example is shown in the illustrations. These trolleys (propelled by hand) have proved invaluable. In fact, it would have been impossible to have 'moved in' without them. Day in, day out, they are in regular use.

#### *Future Problems*

Large-scale research is scarcely practicable in a repository such as has been described, especially as the prime motive is that of conserva-

tion of the nation's great collection. Nevertheless, the future is not being left wholly to itself. A sizable body of data relating to temperature, relative humidity, condition and reaction of materials is being assembled, and may well take its place in contributing towards the post-war design of museums and galleries, and to the choice of environment considered best for works of art. It is possible that full air-conditioning of such institutions in large cities and certain other places might be found to be financially desirable, when the sums spent annually in restoration and repair of paintings are critically reviewed. Careful inspection will always be needed, but the experience so far of housing a collection of pictures below ground under controlled conditions, scientifically planned, is decidedly encouraging. It would be a pity if some of this could not be translated into terms appropriate to times of peace. Many great pictures are probably now going through severe hardships and many vicissitudes. Those for which the Trustees of the National Gallery are responsible, however, are at present enjoying a climate of such salubrity that the greatest problem for the future is to foresee how they will react when they leave it.<sup>5</sup>

<sup>5</sup> The entire collection of about 1800 pictures remained in the underground shelter until 1945. Some weeks before the end of hostilities in Europe, a few pictures were selected for being sent back to Trafalgar Square and on Saturday falling V.E. day about fifty of the best masterpieces were once more on display in the Gallery. By the first week of December 1945 everything had been brought back from Wales.

# PHOTOMICROGRAPHY AS A BIBLIOGRAPHICAL TOOL

EVELYN SELTZER EHRLICH

*Fogg Art Museum, Harvard University*

THE value of the microscope in the investigation of possible imitations or forgeries in printed works and manuscripts has long been recognized. Much of this value has, however, remained potential, for want of a convenient and relatively inexpensive procedure whereby the details of difference revealed by the microscope might be recorded for study and comparison. Such a procedure has recently been developed at Harvard, through the combination of a Leitz Ultropak microscope with a Land Polaroid camera. A brief statement regarding the salient features of this apparatus will be followed by a few examples of its application to specific cases, selected to demonstrate something of the quality and scope of photomicrography as a tool in bibliographical research.

The analytic examination of printed or drawn work on paper, vellum, and similar materials requires a microscope adjusted for use at relatively low powers (10-100 diameters) and for observation in incident light. Magnifications greater than 40 or 50 diameters in incident light require an illuminating system within the tube of the microscope. In addition to possessing these basic requirements, the Leitz Ultropak microscope has the special feature of a split optical system which separates the illuminating rays from the rays of the visual image in the microscope tube. Provision for adjusting the intensity and angle of the microscope illumination makes it possible to reduce greatly the disturbing reflections of light from the glossy surfaces of paper and ink in the microscope image. There are also unusual depth of focus, lack of heat in operation, and sufficient illumination for some types of photography without supplementary light—all important advantages.

The chief deterrent to the development of photomicrography as a bibliographical tool has been the delay in obtaining prints inevitably attendant on the conventional dark-room procedures, and hence the delay in checking results. The Land Polaroid camera successfully meets this difficulty by producing a finished print about a minute after the exposure has been made. Further, use with a microscope was

considered in the design of this camera. Its centre of gravity and its lens are such that it can be used with a microscope without any accessories and without removing its lens. However, an adapter ring on the ocular of the microscope or a pillar stand to support the camera will facilitate operation. The orthochromatic film now available for this camera is fast enough for satisfactory results from the illumination provided by the Ultropak illuminating system, a bulb of 6 amperes and 8 volts. Plate Ia shows the apparatus assembled for use with the camera supported over the microscope by a pillar stand.

For photomicrography the microscope is adjusted with the focus somewhat relaxed. The camera, set for a time exposure and focused at infinity, and with the lens opened to its widest aperture (No. 1), is then placed in position over the microscope so that its optical axis is in alignment with that of the microscope. In the experimental work done, it has been found that an objective of 3.8 power, used in conjunction with a periplan ocular of 10 powers, requires an exposure of 5 seconds and developing time of 75 seconds when the gauge of the microscope illumination is set at 6. As in other photomicrography, with the conventional types of cameras, the illumination remaining constant, the exposure is increased or decreased according to the square of the change in magnification. Some experimenting in co-ordinating the focus, illumination, and exposure is probably necessary before satisfactory results can be achieved at least on the basis of one user's experience—because of the wide differences in the material to be examined. But, once controlled, this technique is capable of making a significant contribution to bibliography. It is hoped that this will be apparent from an inspection of some specific cases, with their illustrations and commentary, which follow hereafter.<sup>1</sup>

#### *Case A.*

Facsimile leaves inserted to supply missing portions of a printed text are sometimes so skillfully executed as to present serious problems of detection. The media employed include pen-and-ink drawing, lithography and typography. The example shown here was made by pen-lithography. In this technique a tracing in transfer ink is made with a pen from an original page. The tracing is then transferred directly to a lithographic stone which, after preparation for printing,

<sup>1</sup> All examples are drawn from material forming part of the collections of the Harvard College Library or on deposit there.

The author wishes to record her thanks to Ernst Hauser for his assistance in assembling the apparatus, and to William Jackson and William Cottrell for their editorial help and for their assistance with the material used for illustration.

can be used for an almost unlimited number of copies of the pen-and-ink tracing. Such lithographic facsimiles became a favorite medium as the nineteenth century advanced and book collecting grew in popularity and cost.

Plate Ib reproduces a lithographic facsimile of the printed recto of the leaf inserted by the publishers between pages 1138 and 1139 of the first edition, 1557, of *The Works of Sir Thomas More*. Plate IIa shows a photomicrograph (38x) of a detail from the original printed page: the 'w' in 'answered' of line 38 of the left-hand column; Plate IIb shows a photomicrograph (38x) of the same detail taken from the lithographic facsimile. The irregular outline and width of line in the lithograph, arising from the pen tracing, as compared with the typographic original, are well shown in the enlargements. A similar study of other pairs of details would provide additional evidence concerning the nature of the page reproduced in Plate Ib.<sup>2</sup>

#### Case B.

Facsimile reproductions of entire printed books, issued with or without intent to deceive, form another category. A genuine copy of the 1549 Giolito edition of Aretino's *Filosofo* may profitably be compared with two eighteenth-century facsimiles, one done in type (reproducing this very edition), the other in pen-and-ink (reproducing the very similar first edition, also by Giolito, of 1546). The type facsimile bears no statement regarding its true nature, but was printed in Brescia by Conte Faustino Avogadro about 1730; it is a comparatively crude effort at deception.<sup>3</sup> The pen-and-ink facsimile, on the other hand, while openly acknowledging on the last leaf that it has been transcribed 'a D. Amadeo Mazzoli Forojuliensi anno a partu Virginis MDCCLXII,' so closely approximates the type on which it is based as to beguile all but the closest and most practised scrutiny with the naked eye or the hand glass.<sup>4</sup>

In Plate IIc is shown page 2 (sig. Aii) of the Mazzoli facsimile. Plate III gives photomicrographs (38x) of a detail from this page—a portion of 'huma-' in line 7—as it appears in each of the three

<sup>2</sup> Original leaf in Utopia 10-5F\*, lithographic facsimile in TP 2150, 5-10F\*.

<sup>3</sup> Avogadro, an active collector of rarities in Italian literature, was responsible for a number of such type facsimiles (see Bartolommeo Gamba, *Serie dei testi di lingua*, 4th ed., Venice, 1839, nos. 1204, 1253, 1433). An account of the three editions of the *Filosofo*—the two by Giolito and the Avogadro counterfeit—appears in Salvatore Bongi, *Annali di Gabriel Giolito de' Ferrari* (Rome, 1890-97), I, 123-125, 245-246.

<sup>4</sup> There are a number of other pen-and-ink facsimile books in the Harvard Library, nearly all of them dating from the eighteenth century; only one or two, however, are comparable in skill to the work of Mazzoli.



exemplars: 1549 edition (IIIa), Avogadro facsimile (IIIb), Mazzoli facsimile (IIIc). In each case the detail as reproduced is composed of three separate photomicrographs fitted together to cover a larger area than a single photomicrograph could include at this magnification. The precision controls of the automatic developing and printing processes of the Land Polaroid film become important advantages when a uniform series of photomicrographs of this sort is desired.

In IIIa the firm, clean-cut outline of the sixteenth-century italic face, with great extremes in the width of the lines, is plainly shown. By contrast, the outlines in IIIb are irregular and the variations in width of line much less marked, indicating a workman who was only superficially acquainted with the style he was imitating. In addition, the battered condition of the type may be noted.

The pen-and-ink facsimile in IIIc resembles much more closely the sixteenth century original shown in IIIa. Mazzoli had clearly made a careful study of his model. There is a similar firmness and a similar variation in width of line. It should be noted that the edges of these drawn letters are more crisp and sharp than in either IIIa or IIIb. Again, the ink in this pen facsimile conceals the conformation of the paper under the lettering, while the shape of the paper fibres is clearly visible in IIIa and IIIb.<sup>5</sup>

### Case C.

Illustrations in a printed work may also appear in facsimile rather than as genuine impressions from an original plate. A striking example is to be seen in an apparently unique copy of the 1536 Giolito edition of Dante's *Divina Commedia* which contains eight of the nineteen copper-plate engravings, attributed to Botticelli, used in the 1481 Landino edition. These eight plates were accepted as genuine in the first description of the copy by Lomberto Donati, but were later rejected by him as spurious, on purely psychological grounds.<sup>6</sup> A photomicrographic comparison of these plates with those in the 1481 Landino at once substantiates this rejection.

Plate IVa shows the illustration of Dane and Virgil with the vision of Beatrice taken from an original engraving in the 1481 edition. Plate IVb shows a photomicrograph (38x) of a detail in this original

<sup>5</sup> The 1549 Giolito is Ital 7508. 55-5\*, the Avogadro facsimile Ital 7508. 55-10\*, and the Mazzoli facsimile on deposit in the Department of Printing and Graphic Arts.

<sup>6</sup> Description in 'Un esemplare della "Commedia" di Giovanni Giolito con le incisioni del Botticelli (Venezia 1536)', *Bibliofilia*, XXXI (1929) 361-364; retraction in 'Atto di contrizione', *Maso Finiguerra*, I (1936), 249-250, and in *Bibliofilia*, XXXIX (1937), 379.

after that the fir. A housewife who had a  
cushion to be printed, this is the poor  
mistake. The answer to the first par  
of the printed book, which is a name  
less, because the party named the copper  
at the table to write and caused to be  
printed in the end thereof after cer  
tain expressions of families of men  
in the plumping thereof) thus that the  
first.

2000-2001

[illegible][illegible]

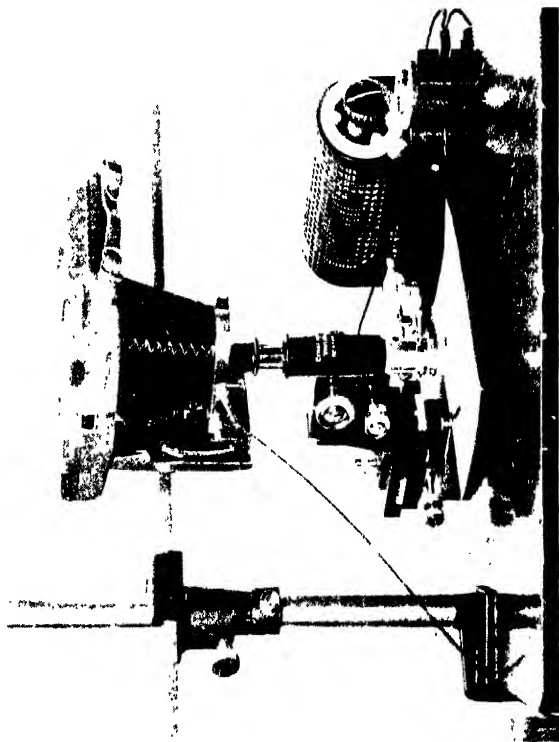
has enabled a change in one point of view. The former, until some time ago, was that the first duty of the family physician, in "house calls," was to "keep the family together," and that the second duty was to "keep the family apart." The latter, on the other hand, is that the first duty of the family physician is to "keep the family apart," and that the second duty is to "keep the family together."

3. *Woe to the best boye that he is which  
wonder to sure of long, that time he neuer  
in full time neuer in his life neither fall  
to 200 fiddle. But this he can fynde none  
to sure, that boye is not much to be mil-  
lified, to which that worldly course he is pe-  
gging forth in past, leaving for all type  
of this first generation to catch a fall, great  
death by againe lightly by himself, the ne-  
cessary of the same.*

[illegible][illegible]

were not fallen in a hundred of bits,  
 but rubbed and lapped in litter this  
 box the manager at they said, they  
 by him and they bite, and they  
 kick, and they spurne at him  
 that would help them go.  
 And it is yet a fourth  
 hymn, the fourth  
 ye poets well  
 that came

100



# Plate Ia

Plate Ib



Plate IIa



Plate IIb

AL MAGNANIMO  
DVCA D'VRBINO.



O I che la piu che  
ammiranda uene-  
ta Republica ,  
nel dare a la vo-  
stra sopr' huma-  
na eccellenza, et  
la Verga, & il Vesillo di ge-  
nerale Gouvernatore, & Duce. poi  
che nel dargnele dico; con la pom-  
pa d'uno spettacolo degno de la  
incoronatione di qualunque si sia  
Imperadore , o Re , ha fatto si,  
che se ne sono congratulate con la  
somma de le sue uirtuti illustri non  
solo tutte le genti, che ubidiscano  
al santo impero di questa eterna  
Citta' di Dio: ma insieme con ogni

A ii

Plate IIc

uma

Plate IIIa

uma

Plate IIIb

uma

Plate IIIc



Plate IVa



Plate IVb



Plate IVc



Plate IVd

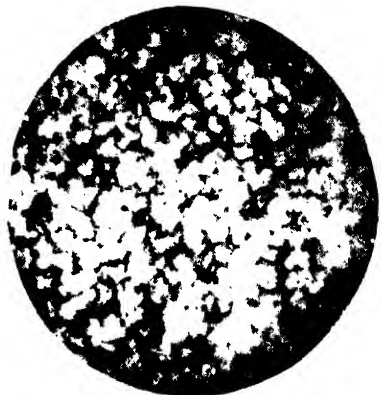


Plate IVe

(a portion of Dante's robe, in the central group), while Plate IVc shows the same detail, similarly magnified, in the '1536' impression. The diffuse pattern of the ink deposit in IVb contrasts strikingly with the cell-like pattern in IVc. This latter pattern indicates that the impression was taken from a photo-mechanical process plate. Since such photographic processes were a development of the nineteenth century, the plate used must have been made more than three hundred years after the authentic illustrations were printed.

Plate IVd and Plate IVe show a neighbouring portion of the robe under greater magnification (110x), IVd reproducing the 1481 original and IVe the '1536' facsimile. In IVd the imbedding of the ink in the fibres of the paper may be clearly seen, while in IVe the ink rests on the surface of the paper, indicating a relatively brief lapse of time since the making of the latter impression.

A similar investigation of the other seven '1536' illustrations reveals that all are photo-mechanical reproductions.<sup>7</sup>

<sup>7</sup> The original Landino illustration is Plate H, used as Plate III, of the Sussex-Hunnewell copy deposited in the College Library. The 1536 Giolito is at present likewise on deposit.

A copy of another edition of the *Commedia* (Venice, F. Marcolini, 1544) was described by Robert Brun in 1931 as containing sixteen of the nineteen Botticelli plates (*Bibliophile*, 1, 243-244). Suspicion was directed to this set of plates by Arthur M. Hind in 1938 (*Early Italian Engraving*, 1, 101). The present location of the copy is unknown, but if photomicrographic examination should some day be possible it might well show that these '1544' plates are the same as those of '1536', or at least represent a similar process of reproduction.

# SHAW RAPID SELECTOR

R. C. GUPTA

*National Archives of India, New Delhi*

THE present day output of learning and research has become so vast that scholars get lost in the very bulk and diversity of the tabs, such as abstracts and catalogues devised to aid in rapid selection of the desired material. In order to save the valuable time and energy of scientific-workers in selecting their material, Dr. Vannever Bush started work in Massachusetts Institute of Technology on devising an 'electronic brain' or 'mechanical secretary' that could sort, select and deliver just the matter needed by the scholar. Though the principles of such a machine were worked out before the last world war, the project had to be abandoned due to war time exigencies. After the cessation of hostilities the Office of the Technical Services of United States Department of Commerce appropriated more than \$ 75,000 for perfection of the machine which was developed by the Engineering Research Associates of Minneapolis under the supervision of Ralph R. Shaw, Librarian of the Department of Agriculture. The prototype machine known as the Rapid Selector is now being tested for performance.

The Rapid Selector can be divided into two main parts: (i) the camera and (ii) the selector proper.

The camera is a modified form of flat bed microfilm model fed with 35 mm. safety film. It is capable of photographing pages of books or documents in the usual way, with this difference, that the reduction and the position of the image is so arranged that it occupies only half the width of the film. On the other half alongside of the page image, is photographed a coded pattern of a checkerboard in bright and dark squares. These checkerboard patterns are easily obtained by manipulating a numbering machine key board which is electrically connected to the checkerboard.

For each subject category a number is assigned and any number will do so long as it is adhered to throughout. In the machine there is room for seven digits and consequently more than ten million combinations and (therefore) subject categories are possible. Furthermore it is capable of recording simultaneously as many as six different catalogue descriptions.

Thus photographing for rapid selection is quick and easy and no highly skilled personnel is needed. From the operator's point of view

this type of micro-filming differs from the ordinary microfilming only in that while a new item is fed, before pressing the exposure switch he has also to press a few buttons according to numbers supplied with each. Of course, the film is developed and stored in the usual manner.

The selector proper can roughly be looked upon as a modified continuous microfilm printing machine, the modification consisting in the ability of the machine to select what to print. This is achieved by punching squares in a black thick paper corresponding to the number giving the checkerboard pattern of the subject entry to be selected. This punched card is inserted in a proper slot in the selector which is fed with the coded negative film and unexposed positive film. Through photoelectric cells and complicated net of electronic tubes it is so arranged that each time the inspecting device scores a hit i.e. it finds a subject that exactly matches the coding frame put in for search, speed flash bulb takes a snap shot of the appropriate item. After each exposure fresh unexposed film moves in position for the next hit. Scanning by this machine is very fast, the frames running past the inspecting position at the rate of about 10,000 a minute. Since each item can be coded in six different ways, this practically means scrutinizing 60,000 subjects a minute. The speed flash bulb used, has an exposure time of about two millionth of a second only. This is so small that the images on positive film are very sharp and practically no loss of resolution takes place.

The above description can merely be stated to sum up the basic underlying principles from a layman's point of view. Actually the mechanism is very complicated and Engineering Research Associates and Mr. Shaw in particular must be congratulated for having worked the idea to perfection through years of hard labour. Just to give an idea about the difficult nature of their work, one problem may be mentioned. Two abstracts might come right next to each other, or at best so close that a second picture must be taken before a new unexposed film has time to move in position. Thus special anticipatory head and mirrors had to be arranged in suitable positions in the Rapid Selector to slow down the movement of the film in such cases.

After the reels to be scanned have been run through the positive copy is developed and can be delivered to the scholar.

The Rapid Selector is the first of its kind and at present it is only at experimental stage as regards the possibilities of its application to different problems. It is too early to assess its potentialities. One thing, however, is evident. The machine combines the advantages of



two highly useful modern techniques, (a) microfilming and (b) punch cards. It has the advantages of low cost, faithful reproduction and saving of storage space of the former and the ease, rapidity, and automatic selection of the requisite material of the latter. Its advantages to the scientific research worker in selecting the desired abstracts are obvious. In fact the development of the machine can partly be ascribed to the need for the same. Librarians, administrators and industrialists may soon find ingenious applications of the Rapid Selector to meet their problems.

# CORRESPONDENCE

*The Editors will be glad to receive for publication letters and communications dealing with archives, manuscript studies and related topics. They, however, do not hold themselves responsible for opinions expressed by their correspondents.*

## INDIGENOUS INDIAN MAPS

I have received enquiries from Europe for information about old Indian maps and their construction. One enquiry particularly refers to maps of Hindu or Muhammadan origin, uninfluenced by Europe.

Examples of such maps are referred to in volume I of *Historical Records of the Survey of India*; viz.

Plate 4 --An Arab map by Ibn Haukal, taken from Vol. I, of Elliot & Dowson's *History of India as Told by Its Own Historians*.

Note 4 on page 208 --A Hindu map that appears in Gladwin's *Ayeen Akberry*.

Page 220 --An Arab or Persian map of Afghanistan by Istakhari that appears in *Transactions of the Bombay Geographical Society*, Vol. II, 1814, pp. 58-72.

I would be very grateful for information regarding any old maps of this description, whether original or published, more particularly any of 17th century or earlier.

The Survey of India holds a small number of such maps that had been collected by early surveyors and political officers, from the archives of the Emperors of Delhi, or other Princes, as noted in note 5 on page 10 of *Historical Records of the Survey of India*.

Early maps and drawings make an important contribution to a knowledge of early history, as indicating learning, culture, and imagination of their periods.

R. H. PHILLIMORE

Dehra Dun,  
January 31, 1950.

In continuation of my letter dated 31st January, I have since received a more detailed description of the kind of ancient maps of Indian origin that are sought for by Professor Leo Bagrow, editor of the journal *Imago Mundi*, that is published at Stockholm, Sweden.

He points out that the latter half of the 17th century is a period when Indian cartography would be "of especial interest to the history of Oriental people's culture". He goes on to say:

"I do not mean that later native cartography is of no interest to *Imago Mundi*—everything is interesting. . . . The topographical

map is an item of such primary importance in the life of man, that one could not really do without it.

"A method of representing, in one way or another, one's immediate environments, roads—one's idea of distant countries—or of the whole world—has always been a necessity to every human being; be it maps. . . . of the Marshall Islands made of reeds and shells, or of the Greenlanders made of a piece of wood, or traced by Eskimos on the skin of a walrus, or engraved on clay bricks in Babel. All this, though, may be insufficient. . . . is nevertheless characteristic.

"It is possible that India, whose superior culture has given to the world the doctrine of Buddha, developed the teaching of Confucius and other philosophers, and presented such literary monuments as Ramayan, has not created and left to us anything in other domains as well. Base as may seem to be the picturing of everyday necessities in maps, certain representatives of one or another profession were of course bound to practice topography at times. . . .

"May be one day there will be discovered in India some traces of cartographical art somewhere in the depths of a temple or a castle."

In volume I of the *Historical Records of the Survey of India*, I have described, on page 208, an early map of Nepal presented to Warren Hastings, and on page 161 a "map of the world made by the Bramins" which was found by Reuben Burrow at Kashipur in Rohilkhand which was published by Gladwin as frontispiece to the first volume of his translation of the *Ayeen Akberry* (see pages 349-50 of second volume).

I should be delighted to pass to Professor Bagrow the description of any early map of genuinely Indian origin, that may be free of any suspicion of Western influence or guidance.

R. H. PHILLIMORE

Dehra Dun,  
March 21, 1950.

# NEWS NOTES

## INDIA

### *National Archives of India*

The National Archives of India has suffered a great loss in the retirement of Dr. Surendranath Sen on 31st October 1949. Dr. Sen came to the Imperial Record Department (now National Archives of India) a few months before the outbreak of the Second World War, in June 1939, and for a period of more than ten years he presided over this premier records repository of India.

Dr. Sen was educated at Dacca College (East Bengal) where three of his distinguished predecessors, S. C. Hill, C. R. Wilson and N. R. Hallward, served as teachers at different times. He began his teaching career in the Provincial Education Service of the Central Provinces (now Madhya Pradesh) and later joined the faculty of the Calcutta University as Lecturer in History. Before coming to New Delhi he had the distinction of holding Ashutosh Chair of Mediaeval and Modern Indian History and had also served as Honorary Adviser on Records to the Government of Bengal.

Dr. Sen has made valuable original contribution to the history of modern India. Among his several publications *Administrative System of the Marathas* and *Military System of the Marathas* are the most notable. His most recent work, the *Indian Travels of Thevenot and Careri* (1919) has been very favourably received by eminent scholars and the press of many countries.

Dr. Sen's period of stewardship of the records of the Government of India has been marked by developments of far reaching importance particularly regarding the preservation of records and facilities for historical research. In spite of several difficulties consequent upon the economic slump of the thirties and that of the war years, he persevered to raise the status of the central archival agency and to organize its machinery on the most up-to-date lines. Shortly after his assumption of office the Government of India decided, in December 1939, to throw open their records up to 1880 to *bona-fide* research students and the Research Rules were accordingly revised in 1940. Dr. Sen's solicitude to help the students working outside the record office, resulted in the revival of *The Indian Records Series* and the adoption of other schemes for publication of records in the custody of the National Archives of India.

The institution of a diploma course in archival work and the publication of *The Indian Archives* for the dissemination of knowledge about archives keeping and preservation of records and manuscripts also owe much to the interest evinced by him to save our valuable national heritage of paper records. At the time of the division of the country in 1947, Dr. Sen was much perturbed about the possibility of

division of the Central Government's records between India and Pakistan. He pressed for the maintenance of the integrity of these records and was successful in convincing the Partition Council of the dangers of partitioning them.

Dr. Purnendu Basu, Assistant Director, was appointed as Acting Director of Archives.

During the year ending 31 December 1949, the National Archives of India received for custody 3,346 bundles and 50 bound volumes of records of 18 agencies of the Government of India of which 2,296 bundles belonged to the late Foreign and Political Department. The Department also accessioned 2,736 bundles and 2,151 volumes of records belonging to some of the defunct agencies of the late Political Department. During the early months of this year large bodies of records have been transferred by the Railway Board, the Ministry of Health, the Ministry of States and the External Affairs Ministry including Railway B Proceedings 1945-46, Defence Medical Rolls of War Prisoners, Home Proceedings 1926-40, Emigration A Proceedings 1871-1921, Tosha Khana records 1925-11, and Frontier Proceedings 1884-1922. The accessioning programme has, however, been greatly impeded due to lack of shelf space and shortage of personnel to administer records. The valuable map collections of the Survey of India could not be accepted for custody because of these difficulties.

The National Archives has also acquired some interesting manuscripts in Persian and Sanskrit dealing with historical subjects. Another valuable addition to the historical materials in the custody of the Department is a gift by Col. R. H. Phillimore of 15 volumes of transcripts obtained by him from various repositories in India and Europe of documents pertaining to the history of Indian surveys. These materials were used by Col. Phillimore in the writing of his monumental work on *Historical Records of the Survey of India*, two volumes of which have already been published.

The National Archives of India has also recently purchased a volume of *Melville Papers* from Messrs Francis Edward of London containing: (1) three autograph letters of Andrew Ramsay, Acting Governor of Bombay in 1788, addressed to Lord Melville (dated January to July 1788) regarding Tipu's intrigues with the French, Scindia's movements and French and Dutch Affairs in Pondicherry and Ceylon; (2) four autograph letters of General Sir William Medows, Governor and Commander-in-Chief of Bombay 1788-90, addressed to Lord Melville regarding the state of Bombay army, trouble between the King's and Company's troops, financial matters, need of reforms in the Company's affairs and Tipu's attack on Travancore; (3) twenty seven autograph letters of General Sir Robert Abercromby, Governor and Commander-in-Chief of Bombay 1790-92, to Lord Melville enclosing many official papers and reports regarding the campaign against Tipu, the Malabar and ceded territory, financial matters and the army. The collection thus contains invaluable mate-

rials particularly for the study of Anglo-Mysore relations during the period of Cornwallis's Governor Generalship.

The project for building up a library of microfilm copies of records and historical manuscripts of Indian interest available in foreign countries has shown good progress during recent months. By the end of March 1950, microfilm copies worth about Rs. 15,000 were received from the U.K., U.S.A. and Norway. The largest number of them (60 rolls of 100 feet each) contain copies of the manuscripts in the British Museum including the private papers of several prominent British statesmen and military officers who served in India during the 18th and 19th centuries. All the Western Manuscripts at the Bodleian Library, Oxford, relating to modern Indian history have been microfilmed by the University Press. The other British depositories wherefrom copies of documents have been obtained include National Library of Scotland (Edinburgh), H. M. Register House (Edinburgh) and Guildhall Library (London). The Riksarkivet of Oslo (Norway) has supplied to the Department micro-copies of all the records of Indian interest in its possession. A large part of these relate to Peter Anker, the Danish Governor of Tranquebar during the latter part of the 18th century. In the United States the Cleveland Public Library (Cleveland, Ohio) has a large collection of materials of Indian interest and copies of these have been acquired for the National Archives of India. The microfilming of small collections of manuscripts of Indian interest in the Library of Congress (Washington, D.C.) and Harvard University Library (Cambridge, Mass.), has also been completed. Prof. Holden Furber of the University of Pennsylvania has agreed to allow the Department to have copies of the *Melville Papers* which he bought in England twenty years ago. The microfilming of the documents in the French repositories has not yet begun, but a descriptive list of manuscripts of Indian interest in the Bibliothèque Nationale, Paris, has been obtained to make selection of suitable material for photoduplication. The microfilming of the records of the Dutch East India Company at present available at the Algemeen Rijksarchief, The Hague, is expected to be taken up very soon.

The personnel position in the National Archives has somewhat improved recently as the Government of India sanctioned in September 1949, a number of new posts in view of the increasing responsibilities of the Department. Mr. S. C. Chakravorti, Archival Chemist since 1946, was promoted to the new post of Preservation Officer (Class I). He, however, left the Department in March 1950, on his selection for the Indian Police Service.

The Department has recently acquired several microfilming cameras and other photographic equipment to facilitate photographic operations. A part of the stack area has been equipped with adjustable centilever shelves at a cost of about Rs. 1,25,000, but the available shelf space is hardly adequate even for the records which have already been received in the Department.

*Fort William—India House Correspondence*, Volume V has recently been issued for sale at Rs. 25/- per copy. This volume, the first to be published in the series, has been edited by Dr. N. K. Sinha of Calcutta University and contains the correspondence between the Board of Directors and the Fort William authorities in the Public Department for the years 1767-69. These letters give a true picture of the Company's political and commercial affairs at a critical time of its history. They also contain valuable materials for the study of the general political condition of India, the efforts of Shah Alam to get back to Delhi, the affairs of Oudh, the growing strength of the Sikhs and the Rohillas, Haider Ali's relations with the Company, the ambition of the Marathas to become the masters of Northern India, the intrigues of the French and the menace of Abdali. In the Introduction the Editor has analysed the contents of the letters, and the Notes make the understanding of the Text easier. The volume is made of 670 pages and contains 14 illustrations and 2 maps. It has also an exhaustive subject Index.

*The Calendar of Persian Correspondence*, Volumes VIII and IX are shortly expected to appear.

*Indian Historical Records Commission—26th Annual Meeting,  
Cuttack*

The Indian Historical Records Commission met in Cuttack, the seat of the Government of Orissa, on 25-26 December 1949, for its 26th annual meeting. The inaugural meeting was held on 25 December, in a specially erected *pandal* on the premises of the Ravenshaw College. His Excellency Mr. Asaf Ali inaugurated the session. In the absence of the Hon'ble Maulana Abul Kalam Azad, Education Minister of the Union Government and *ex-officio* President of the Commission, the Chair was taken by the Hon'ble Mr. Hare Krishna Mahatab, Chief Minister of Orissa. The Maharaja of Parlakimedi, Chairman of the Reception Committee, welcomed the members of the Commission on behalf of the Utkal University and the Government of Orissa.

His Excellency Mr. Asaf Ali in his inaugural address spoke highly of the achievements of the Commission in the past and expressed the hope that members of the Commission would be able "to collect, weigh, sift and interpret all available data required for unravelling a complex series of events which constitute the story of man's adventures on this earth." He also referred to the existence of large number of valuable records of Indian interest in the libraries and museums of Europe and America. Concluding his address Mr. Asaf Ali pleaded for the proper preservation of historical materials available in India by the Central and Provincial Governments.

After the inaugural speech, Dr. Purnendu Basu, Secretary of the Commission, read several messages of greetings to the Commission including one from His Excellency Mr. C. Rajagopalachari, Governor General of India and a former President of the Commission. This

was followed by the reading of seven papers which related to some hitherto unknown documents on Indian history. Prof. S. H. Askari of Patna College described in his paper the contents of some significant Mughal *firmans* of the 16th and 17th centuries, brought to light by him in the course of his survey work on behalf of the Bihar Regional Records Survey Committee. Mr. T. S. Shejwalkar of the Deccan College Post Graduate and Research Institute, Poona, drew the attention of research students to the existence in the *Peshwa Daftar* (Poona) of valuable statistical materials relating to the economic and social conditions in the Maratha territories during the 18th century. Other papers were on subjects of much diverse interest such as 'Treaty of Banjer Massin, 1812' by S. N. Das Gupta, 'the Famine of 1783-84 and the Company's Relief Measures' by Hari Ranjan Ghosal and 'Ayya Shastri' by C. S. Srinivasachari.

The 26th annual Meeting of Members was held on the morning of 25 December. In the absence of the *ex-officio* President, Prof. D. V. Potdar was voted to the Chair. The Commission considered the problem of conserving records under unified central control and recommended to the Government that a "Central Archival Authority be established by law charged with laying down the archival procedure in the country, at the Centre as well as in the provinces and the States, the Central Authority being further authorized to exercise the right of inspection in order to see that the procedure laid down by it is carried out satisfactorily". The Commission urged upon the Government of India to get back all Residency Records transferred in 1947 to the custody of the High Commissioner for U.K. in India. The other important resolutions adopted by the Commission were:

"That the Secretary, Indian Historical Records Commission be nominated to represent the Commission at the ensuing meeting of the International Council on Archives to be held on August 20 to 23, 1950 in Paris and the Government of India be moved to make the necessary financial sanction for the Secretary to attend the session.

"That the Commission should be individually and permanently represented on the Indian National Commission for Co-operation with UNESCO, instead of taking its turn in rotation with several other bodies as at present.

"That the Secretary of the Commission be nominated as a member of the Indian Standards Institution Documentation Committee.

"That the curriculum for the Master's Degree in History and Commerce in Indian Universities should include the handling of archives and the study of and criticism of unpublished documents with a view to giving the students early training and practice in original research."

By another resolution the Commission urged upon the universities, colleges and learned institutions particularly those started before 1900 to organize their archives.



The Commission also recorded its appreciation of Dr. S. N. Sen's valuable services as Secretary of the Commission and requested the Government of India to appoint him as an additional expert member and as General Editor of the *Indian Records Series* and *Records in Oriental Languages Series* in his personal capacity and as an honorary adviser to the Local Records Sub-Committee.

The exhibition of historical manuscripts, records, copper plates, seals and coins organized on this occasion by the Government of Orissa was opened by Mr. Hare Krishna Mahatab on the evening of 24 December and it remained on view till 28 December. The exhibits from the National Archives of India included 55 documents illustrating different aspects of life in Orissa in the 18th and 19th centuries. Among other items of special importance for the history of Orissa were documents from the Record Room of the Collector of Cuttack relating to Mughal and Maratha periods. A number of State Governments, learned institutions and private individuals from all parts of the country had also lent important records and manuscripts for display at the exhibition.

#### *Research and Publication Committee*

The Research and Publication Committee of the Indian Historical Records Commission held two meetings during 1949. The 14th meeting of the Committee took place on 2 May 1949, in the office of the Director of Archives at New Delhi. Dr. Tara Chand, Educational Adviser to the Government of India, was in the Chair. The most important item on the agenda of the Committee was the problem of proper preservation of the records of the States which have merged with provinces or with bigger States Unions. The Committee unanimously recommended that these records should be inspected by the Director of Archives to the Government of India and a report submitted by him to the Indian Historical Records Commission. Among other questions considered by it were those relating to the importation from foreign countries of microfilm copies of records and historical manuscripts of Indian interest. The Committee recommended that such copies should be exempted from the payment of normal customs duties. By another resolution the Committee requested the Government that all historical manuscripts and documents in the possession of archaeological museums in India should be transferred to the custody of the National Archives. The Committee also reiterated its earlier recommendations in respect of the setting up of Central Record Offices by Provincial Governments.

The 15th meeting of the Committee was held at Cuttack on 25 December 1949, with Dr. R. C. Majumdar in the Chair. The Committee reviewed the progress of the publication programme of the National Archives of India. Dr. S. N. Sen, the retiring Secretary of the Commission, explained the reasons for the slow progress made in this connection. The Committee asked the Secretary of the Commis-

sion to draw up a detailed memorandum explaining the causes of delay for consideration at its next meeting to be held in July 1950. The Committee agreed with the views of the Madras Government that the Tanjore Raj records should not be housed in a private library and recommended that the Secretary of the Commission, Professor D. V. Potdar and Dr. P. M. Jeshi should inspect the records with a view to suggest a suitable place for their location, proper preservation and utilization. On a motion of Mr. E. V. Bhat the Committee requested the Central Government to urge upon the Provincial Governments and States Unions to take immediate steps for the proper housing and preservation of the records of the defunct States within their respective jurisdictions.

### *Regional Records Survey Committees*

The Regional Records Survey Committees set up on behalf of the Indian Historical Records Commission have continued to do very useful work regarding the survey of records and historical manuscripts, particularly in non-official custody. Reports of their recent activities are summarized below:—

The Madras Government set up a permanent Regional Records Survey Committee in December 1948 as suggested by the Government of India with Professor C. S. Srinivasachari as its Convener. Its membership is composed of five representatives of learned institutions; two representatives of Universities in the province; six nominees of the Provincial Government; the President of the Hindu Religious Endowments Board, Madras; the Superintendent of the Archaeological Department, Southern Circle, Madras, and the Curator of the Madras Record Office. The Committee held two meetings during 1949 and was actively engaged on survey work, particularly of records of commercial firms, religious institutions and families of old landholders. It was successful in acquiring original papers belonging to the family of Ranganayakulu Chetty relating to the transactions of his ancestors with the English Free Merchants and with the Supreme Court from 1801 to 1860. A few additional papers relating to this subject have also been acquired by the Convener from Mr. C. Ranganayakulu Chetty Garu. The Committee has adopted a plan for preparing a note on the nature, contents and volume of private records of the 18th century and early 19th century in the possession of Raja Kendragula Jagannatha Rao Bahadur of Rajahmundry.

The *West Bengal Committee* made a survey during February-March 1950 of the old collectorate records in eight districts of 24 Parganas, Nadia, Birbhum, Midnapur, Burdwan, Bankura, Malda and Hugli. Three of these district record offices were inspected by Dr. N. K. Sinha, the Secretary of the Committee, and the other five were visited by Messrs. T. K. Mukherji, A. K. Das Gupta, T. K. Ray Chaudhuri and Amallesh Tripathi. According to their reports which have been published in a booklet, the bound volumes of old English

correspondence in these eight district record offices are about 3,000. In addition to these there are also available many bundles of correspondence. Their reports reveal that these records date from the last quarter of the 18th century. Though of little use for current administration the records constitute valuable material for the study of social, economic and administrative history of Bengal in the 18th and 19th centuries. The bound volumes of the old English correspondence are reported to be in a fairly good state of preservation. The Committee has recommended the removal of these volumes to Calcutta so that a descriptive list of these records could be prepared by the members of the Regional Committee.

*Bihar Survey Committee* discovered during 1949-50, several important *firmans*, *sanads* and other Persian documents of the Mughal period which supply valuable administrative details. Among the Persian manuscripts which have come to the notice of the Committee two deserve special mention. One of these, entitled *Zu-i-Hind* is a gazetteer of the districts of present day U.P. and Delhi states. It is partly written in Persian and partly in Urdu and covers more than 800 pages. The manuscript was written in 1873 under government orders. The other Persian manuscript is *Manaqib-i-Mohammadi* by Ali Sher Shiraji. This work describes the life and travels of a saint who came in the 15th century from Baghdad to Amjhar, a village in the district of Gaya. Both the manuscripts have been purchased by the Patna University Library.

Prof. Surajdeo Narain and Dr. H. R. Ghosal have found among the Muzaffarpur Collectorate Records some important papers relating to the measures adopted by the E. I. Company's Government to check the evil effects of a famine in 1783-84 in the Northern territories.

The *U. P. Survey Committee* with its five branches at Allahabad, Agra, Aligarh, Banaras and Lucknow has continued to do valuable work. The Lucknow Branch recently purchased some Persian documents at a cost of Rs. 600/- from a family of Sandila to complete the collection of a series of Persian letters of the 17th and 18th centuries, part of which had been acquired during 1948-49. These papers are valuable for the study of administrative and judicial institutions in Oudh. The Committee was particularly fortunate in enlisting the cooperation of members of the University faculty and senior students in its survey work.

The Allahabad Branch has appointed two sub-committees to deal with (1) Hindi and Sanskrit papers and (2) Persian, Arabic and Urdu records, respectively. It has been found that several Muslim families of Machhli Shahar (Jaunpur District) possess old Arabic and Persian manuscripts. Some Persian manuscripts have also been purchased through the efforts of Professors A. S. Siddiqi and Zamin Ali.

The Banaras Branch which started functioning recently has invited the cooperation of the Maharaja of Banaras, the Commissioners of Banaras and Gorakhpur and other distinguished officials and non-officials in the execution of its work.

The Agra Branch has found in the possession of a local Muslim school, valuable Persian manuscripts relating to the *dayah* of Fatehpur Sikri. Prof. J. C. Taluqdar, the Convener of the Branch, has also prepared a list of several Persian *firman*s and manuscripts of the Mughal period in private possession.

The *Regional Committee for Madhya Pradesh* (formerly Central Provinces) has recently made special efforts to survey records in the Hindi part of the State which had not been touched so far because of its distance from the seat of the Provincial Government. The Convener, Dr. Y. K. Deshpande with the help of local workers has made a systematic survey of the district records and private collections of manuscripts at Raigarh, Bilaspur, Katni, Sagar and Jabalpur. There are many old families in these districts who are in possession of historical documents. The revenue records in the district collectorates, particularly those relating to *Inam* and *Mafi* and *Hakikat* cases are reported to be of considerable historical value.

The Provincial Government, on a request made by Committee, has allowed its members to inspect the records in the offices of the Deputy Commissioners. Among the manuscripts found in private possession at Raigarh the most notable are copies of two Hindi works, entitled *Jaya Chandrika* compiled by Prahlad Kavi in 1782 A.D. and *Ratanpuraka Itihasa* originally composed by Gopal Kavi and subsequently amplified by Revaram Thakur in about 1817 A.D. Another document found at Raigarh by Mr. L. P. Pandeya is a copper plate grant made by Devanath Singh, a Gond ruler of Raigarh in about 1840 A.D. At Bilaspur two old Maratha families, named Digaskar and Nagorao, whose ancestors had served the Bhonslas of Nagpur, are in possession of some significant documents relating to Bhonsla rule in Chhattisgarh. The survey work at Sagar carried out by two local members of the Committee, Dr. H. L. Gupta and Mr. V. V. Subehdar and the Convener have yielded fruitful results. The private collections of Mr. Subehdar, a direct descendant of Vinayakrao Subehdar who was in charge of administration when Baji Rao II ceded those territories to the East India Company in 1818, contain rich historical materials and are well preserved. The Committee also inspected the manuscripts in the possession of Mr. Ringe of Sagar among which are to be found several official communications relating to the introduction of education in that area at the beginning of British rule.

Dr. Deshpande also spent about a month and a half in examining the records in the District Record Rooms of Yeotmal and among them he found several *sanads*, *firman*s and orders of the officials of pre-British days. The revenue records of Chanda were inspected by Mr. S. K. Sadafale on behalf of the Committee. The survey work at Nagpur was carried out by the Convener and other members. Among the families whose private archives were inspected during the year, the most important are those of Sadasheorao Dandige one of whose ancestors had served in succession, Tipu, Wellesley and Elphinstone; Raja Pratap Sinha Rao, the present representative of the Junior

Bhonsla Branch, the Gond Raja and Bhayyaji Joshi a descendent of a family of priests of Gond Rajas.

The Government of Mysore has appointed a permanent Regional Committee for the State. Its membership comprises of the Vice-Chancellor of Mysore University (Chairman); the Huzur Secretary to the Maharaja of Mysore; the Professor of History, Maharaja's College, Mysore; the Director of Archaeology in Mysore; the Registrar, General and Revenue Secretariat, Bangalore; Mr. T. S. Singaravelu Mudaliar, President, Mythic Society, Bangalore; Mr. Hullur Srinivasa Jois, Chitaldrug; Mr. Sivamurthy-Sastri, Bangalore; and the Superintendent, Oriental Research Institute, Mysore (Secretary).

The *Orissa Committee* recently came across some valuable palm leaf manuscripts dealing with history, religion and literature. These have been bought and deposited at the National Archives of India at New Delhi.

The *Delhi Committee* under the guidance of its Convener, Dr. S. N. Sen made some attempts to find records and manuscripts in private possession but due to lack of funds and absence of active public cooperation much could not be achieved. The Committee acquired for the National Archives of India Persian manuscripts of *Nigar Nama* and *Nirmal-grantha* and letters in Persian of Sir Thomas Metcalfe to Emperor Bahadur Shah. The Committee has completed the transcription of *Tarakhi-i-Sorath*, *Shah Jahan Nama*, *Tarikh-i-Alamgir II* and *Tawarikh-i-Alamgir-Sani*. All these manuscripts belong to Khawaja Hasan Nizami, a well-known Muslim theologian of Delhi.

#### *Board of Historical Records and Ancient Monuments, Bombay*

The Government of Bombay, by its resolution No. 920 of 22 December 1949, has appointed a Provincial Board for Historical Records and Ancient Monuments with the object of establishing a permanent liaison between Government and archival activities, research institutions and experts interested in the subject, and linking all institutions and individuals in the Province concerned in the custody, preservation, publication and study of historical records, and with a view to providing for conservation of historical monuments and sites in the Province which are not being looked after by the Archaeological Department of the Government of India. It consists of six *ex-officio* members including the Hon'ble Minister for Education (President), the Secretary to the Education Department, Government of Bombay (Chairman), the Registrar of Bombay High Court, the Curator of Libraries of Bombay, the Superintendent of the Archaeological Department and the Director of Archives; twenty three members representing universities and learned institutions of the Province and five members nominated by the Government. The term of office of the members of the Board other than *ex-officio* members has been fixed at three years. The Director of Archives is the Secretary of the Board and the Office of Assistant Secretary of the

Board is held by the Historical Archivist of the Bombay Record Office. The functions of the Board are as follows:—

(1) to guide and co-ordinate research activities of Record Offices and research institutes in the Province, to undertake research for manuscript records including old maps and pictures, to consider the acquisition of records relating to the history of the Province and to suggest ways and means for their preservation and publication whenever necessary;

(2) to advise Government in the matter of nominating representatives from institutions in the Province to the Indian Historical Records Commission, its sub-committees and such other bodies; and

(3) to look after historical monuments and sites not looked after by the Archaeological Department of the Government of India and to suggest ways and means for their preservation.

The Government of Bombay has also decided that the Director of Archives will be the General Editor of the *Bombay Records Series*.

### *Bombay Record Office*

With the merger of the states of Kolhapur and Baroda in the province of Bombay the record offices of these states have also been placed under the charge of the Director of Archives to the Government of Bombay. The main part of their muniments consists of administrative records beginning from 1840 for Kolhapur and from 1860 for Baroda. The records will, however, continue to be kept in their old repositories. The archives of Miraj (Junior) State dating back to the days of the Peshwas too have been taken over by the Bombay Government and it is proposed to house them at some central place where they could be used for research.

The Record Office has received for custody records of the Western India States Agency, which have been given to the Bombay Government on a quasi-permanent loan by the Central Government. Among the other recent acquisitions of the Office are microfilm copies of the private papers of Robert Cowan, Governor of Bombay, 1728-33, which are at present in the possession of the Marquis of Londonderry.

The keen interest taken by the State Government in historical research is reflected in the resumption of the publication of *Poona Residency Correspondence* which had been suspended during the war period. Volume XII of this series, containing the correspondence of Mountstuart Elphinstone when he was Resident at the Peshwa's Court (1811-1815), has recently appeared and another volume relating to his Residency, to be published shortly, will bring the story of Anglo-Maratha relations down to 1818. Another recent publication of the Office is the *News Letters of the Mughal Court* edited by B. D. Verma. These letters in Persian relate to the affairs of the Mughal Court during the decade preceding the third battle of Panipat, a period during which the Marathas overran the territories of Delhi, Rohilkhand, the Doab and the Punjab. The

materials published in this volume are of great interest to students of the history of Jats, the Nawabs of Oudh and the Marathas. Dr. Jadunath Sarkar who is the General Editor of the *Poona Residency Correspondence* has also undertaken to edit a volume of a selection of Persian newsletters found among the Parasnisi manuscripts, relating to the affairs in Northern India 1770-1800. The programme of the Record Office also includes the publication of a *Descriptive Catalogue of Pre-1820 Records* and *Elphinstone's Report on Territories Conquered from the Peshwa*.

### *Madras Record Office*

The recent acquisitions of the Madras Record Office comprise the records of all the departments of the Secretariat for 1945, of the Board of Revenue for 1937-38 and of the Government Solicitor prior to 1858. The archives of the former states of Pudukkottai, Banganapalle and Sandur which have merged with Madras have been placed under the charge of the district officers of Trichinopoly, Kurnool and Bellary respectively but their records of the period before 1858 are proposed to be housed in the Madras Record Office at Egmore.

The rules governing access to Madras records for *bona fide* historical research have been recently revised. Formerly all applications for examining the records of the Revenue and Irrigation departments after 1800 and the archives of other departments after 1856 had to be sanctioned by Madras Government, but under the revised rules, the Curator has been authorized to dispose of all applications himself and to refer to the Government only such applications as he should think necessary.

The latest publication to be issued by the Madras Record Office is the *Diary and Consultation Book of the Public Department, 1757*, Volume 87. Three other volumes of this series (nos. 88-90) are in the press. Other records publications of the Office which are expected to appear shortly include *Public Despatches from England, 1757-58*, Volume 61, *Major's Court Proceedings, 1728*, and *Fort St. David Consultations, 1837*.

### *The Punjab Government Record Office, Simla*

The Record Office of the Punjab Government is rapidly developing varied aspects of its work. Apart from the accrual of some old government records it has recently acquired a large number of government publications, including reports and gazetteers from the Offices of the Commissioner of Jullundur and Administrator of Simla which are of great value for reference purposes. Similar materials lying in the district offices of Gurdaspur and Karnal are also expected to be received by the Record Office.

The repair and rehabilitation of old documents is making satisfactory progress. The unique collection of *Khalsa Darbar Records*

which consists of unwieldy bundles of loose papers is being resolved into handy volumes with strong bindings to preserve them properly and to facilitate their use for research. All the sheets of these papers are mount-guarded before they are gathered into volumes for binding. In view of the bulk of these records the entire series will run into several thousand volumes.

The records accessioned recently have been examined by the staff of the Office with the purpose of weeding of useless papers. A descriptive catalogue of the historical and literary manuscripts is under preparation and the press-listing of English files is continuing. During 1949-50, manuscript press-lists of the English files of Ambala Division relating to Judicial (1857-64), Military (1857-73), Public Works (1864-80) and Political (1857-80) Departments were prepared. The printing of the press-lists has, however, been deferred because of financial stringency.

To make the records available for research the office rules regulating access to them have been formulated. The publication of historical monographs which formed an important aspect of the activity of the old Punjab Record Office at Lahore has been resumed by the Simla Office under the General Editorship of the Keeper of Records. The first monograph in the series which is expected to appear very shortly is entitled: *The Lahore Darbar—in the Light of the Correspondence of Sir C. M. Wade, 1823-40* and edited by Dr. R. R. Sethi of the Punjab University. Wade was East India Company's Political Agent at Ludhiana from 1823 to 1840 and was the normal channel of communication between the Lahore Darbar and the Fort William Government. He played a significant role in the field of diplomatic relations and was very largely responsible for maintaining friendship for a long time between the two governments. This publication will be of great interest to the students of Anglo-Sikh relations during the period of Ranjit Singh's regime.

The Punjab Government Record Office has also been active in the field of survey of records and historical manuscripts and has brought to light a number of unknown manuscripts. Early in 1950, Dr. G. L. Chopra visited Janmu for survey of historical materials in the custody of the State Government and private owners. In March the records of the former Pataudi State which is now merged in Gurgaon District of the Punjab were inspected by another member of the staff of the Record Office.

#### *Central Record Office, Allahabad*

The Central Record Office of U. P. is now temporarily located in a government building at 53 Gandhi Marga, Allahabad. The accommodation available there is extremely inadequate. The State Government is, however, considering the question of providing a more spacious building and installing suitable steel shelves for the muniment rooms.



The staff of the Office has been strengthened by the appointment in December 1949 of Mr. K. P. Srivastava as Assistant Keeper of the Records.

The Keeper of Records has been conducting an enquiry into the nature and volume of the old records of the State with a view to centralizing them at Allahabad. The Departmental records up to 1900 and all other pre-Mutiny records will be transferred to the Central Record Office when proper arrangements for their housing are made. The State Government in consultation with the High Court of Judicature at Allahabad has also decided to transfer to the central repository the non-current judicial records. The old records of the States of Tehri-Garhwal and Rampur which have merged in the province have been transferred to Allahabad to ensure their proper preservation.

The Government of U. P. has also decided to arrange for the preparation of detailed inventories and handlists of all official records, dated prior to 1935, to facilitate the work of the research students who would use these archives. A start has already been made in this connection with the pre-Mutiny records.

#### *West Bengal Secretariat Record Room, Berhampur*

The report of the West Bengal Record Room for the period from 15th August 1947 to 31st December 1948, which has just been received, reveals that the partition of Bengal seriously affected the Record Room. In compliance with the decision of the Separation Council, a share of the Current Records was given to the new province of East Bengal. The Government of East Bengal also claimed a share in the old-records but no arrangement acceptable to both the Governments could be made. Another serious repercussion of the partition was that the office lost the services of 31 trained members of the staff because they opted for the new province of East Bengal.

The pre-Mutiny records in the custody of the State Government are still housed at Berhampur for want of suitable accommodation in Calcutta. The post-Mutiny archives are kept at the Writer's Building in Calcutta but the room available there also is inadequate and unsuitable for their proper preservation. The Government is, of course, considering the question of providing an adequate building for the housing of the Archives of the State in Calcutta.

During 1947-48 the Departments of the Government transferred to the Record Room over forty thousand papers of 1943. The passport records, endorsements and visas for 1941, numbering 2,179 and those of 1942 numbering 2,513 have also been received in the Record Office. Another item of great interest accessioned recently is the electoral rolls of the Indian Legislative Assembly for 1945.

#### *History of Freedom Movement in India*

The Government of India has recently appointed a committee for preparing a plan for writing the history of freedom movement

in India. The members of the committee include Dr. Tara Chand, Education Secretary to the Government of India (Chairman), Dr. R. C. Majumdar, Professor C. S. Srinivasachari, Dr. Bisheswar Prasad and Dr. S. N. Sen (Convener and Secretary). The appointment of the Committee is mainly due to the personal interest evinced by Dr. Rajendra Prasad, Pandit Jawahar Lal Nehru and Maulana Abul Kalam Azad in the proposal for the compilation of an authentic account of the freedom struggle culminating in the attainment of Indian independence. The Committee held its first meeting on 5 January 1950 to settle the preliminaries for the execution of the plan. It was decided that the proposed history should be confined to the period from 1870 to 15 August 1917 and that the movements before 1870 be treated in an introductory chapter. The history is to be based on the study of original materials available both in India and abroad and official as well as non-official sources. The Committee has recommended to the Government the establishment of a central organization at New Delhi with regional offices for the collection of source materials for the proposed work. In pursuance of the recommendations of the Committee the Ministry of Education has invited the cooperation of all State Governments, Indian Universities and the public in general for the successful execution of the scheme. The Government has also made a similar appeal in foreign countries through the Indian missions abroad. It is hoped that during 1951-52, provision will be made for adequate funds required for the establishment of the central as well as regional offices.

#### *Preservation of Mahatma Gandhi's writings*

The Gandhi National Memorial Trust has decided to establish a Gandhi Central Museum where it is proposed to preserve all the original writings of Mahatma Gandhi, his voice recordings, records relating to him and the institutions founded by him. It is proposed to make this collection as exhaustive as possible. The Trust has also decided to secure the assistance of the Director of Archives to the Government of India in setting up the museum.

### INTERNATIONAL

#### *First International Congress on Archives*

The first International Congress on Archives organized by the recently established International Council on Archives, the National Archives of France and the Association of Professional Archivists of France, will be held in Paris from 23 to 26 August 1950. These dates have been chosen so that members of the Congress may take part in the meeting of the 9th International Congress of the Historical Sciences which opens on 28 August 1950. The programme of the

Congress on Archives will comprise discussions on the following subjects:

1. Control of the Archives in the making
2. Archives and Microphotography
3. Archives of private enterprises (Economic Archives)
4. International bibliography of archival guides.

Four recorders (or reporters) have been charged with the responsibility of presenting for each of the problem a survey containing the maximum information gathered from various member countries. Registration may be either individual or in the name of an institution; in the latter case the Institution may be represented by one member at the Congress.

In addition to working meetings various receptions and excursions will be arranged. The Constituent Assembly of the International Council on Archives will meet on 21-22 August at the UNESCO House.

Dr. Purnendu Basu, Director of Archives, Government of India and Secretary of the Indian Historical Records Commission has been nominated as a member of the Admissions Committee in place of Dr. S. N. Sen, former Director of Archives.

#### *International Congress of Historical Sciences*

The 9th International Congress of Historical Sciences will be held in Paris from 27 August to 2 September 1950. Its sections will be: (a) Anthropology and Demography, (b) History of Ideas, (c) Economic History, (d) Social History, (e) History of Civilizations, (f) Political History and (g) History of Institutions; each section will be divided into: (i) Pre-history and Antiquity, (ii) Mediaeval History (iii) Modern History up to 1914 and (iv) Contemporary History, 1914-39.

#### *Anglo-American Conference of Historians*

An Anglo-American Conference of Historians will be held in London on 14-15 July 1950, under the auspices of the Institute of Historical Research. The Conference will include two General Meetings and a number of Section meetings at which papers will be read on Mediaeval European, Mediaeval English, Modern European, Modern English and American Histories.

### UNITED KINGDOM

#### *Public Record Office, London*

The Public Record Office, London received during 1949 large bodies of records from the Supreme Court of Judicature and from Departments. The *Companies (Winding-up) Proceedings* (1923-32) form the main part of the records transferred by the Supreme Court.

Among the archives recently transferred by the Foreign Office the most important are those of the British diplomatic missions in Washington (1914-28), Chile (1911-28), Japan (1921-29), Tabriz (1837-1905) and Russia (1881-98). The other important accruals are the records of the Colonial Office (1930-31), Dominion Office (1930-31) and of the Civil Service Commission (1855-1935). The Office also received an unique gift of one of the original copies of the *Articles Agreed by the Anglo-Scottish Commissioners* in 1604 for Union between England and Scotland. This copy was found in 1949 in private custody and a generous grant from the Pilgrim Trust made it possible for the Public Record Office to procure this significant document.

The intermediate depositories established with the purpose of taking proper care of the records in the phase between current use and final transfer to the Public Record Office are growing rapidly. The records housed in them at the close of 1949 covered 217,000 linear feet of shelving.

From 1 January 1950, the Master of Rolls has promulgated new *Rules and Regulations respecting the Public Use of Records* with a view to facilitate access to the public. According to these rules provision has been made for keeping the Round Room of the Office open up to 5-30 p.m. from Mondays to Fridays and closing the Long Room at 1 p.m. on Saturdays. This change will be of considerable benefit to the regular students as well as part-time researchers as the extension of opening hours in a week will be equivalent to about one working day.

The Public Record Office has recently published *Calendar of Close Rolls*, Edward IV, Volume I and printing of *Curia Regis Rolls*, Volume X and *Calendar of Treasury Books*, Volumes XX, XXI, XXIII and XXIV has also been completed. Several other volumes are in press at present and considerable progress has been made with the preparation of a *Catalogue of Seals on the Ancient Deeds Preserved in the Public Office*. Mons. Pierre Chaplais has been appointed to edit the *Treaty Rolls*, the chief of the series of Chancery Enrolments now remaining unpublished. This series is the principal Chancery Record of diplomatic relations with European countries and of the administration of Norman possessions of the English Crown from the thirteenth to the seventeenth centuries. The Public Record Office has also undertaken, in collaboration with the French Comité des Travaux Historiques, the publication of *Gascon Rolls* from Edward II to Henry VI.

#### *British Records Association—17th Annual Meeting*

The membership of the British Records Association now exceeds one thousand, a fact which reflects the awakening interest in records in the United Kingdom. The seventeenth Annual Meeting and Conference of the Association was held in London on 6-7 December

1949. As usual, several papers on archival subjects were read at the sectional meetings of the Conference.

The *Technical Section* met on the morning of the first day and discussed the various aspects of the process of lamination of paper documents with cellulose acetate foil which has become the standard practice in the United States for the repair of records. Mr. H. M. Nixon, the principal speaker at the meeting, pointed out two main advantages of the lamination process—its speed of operation and elimination of highly skilled techniques. According to him the heat to which foil and document were subjected in the process was 300°F, insufficient even to discolour unprotected paper, while the pressure of 1,000 lbs per square inch was much less than that to which modern paper was subjected in the course of manufacture. Another advantage of the application of lamination was that it could be undone as the cellulose acetate foil could be melted out of the document by putting it in acetone solution. Mr. Nixon, however, regarded twelve years period during which it had been employed in U.S.A. as insufficient for testing the efficacy of the process particularly for preserving unique paper records and was of opinion that for the time being its use should be confined to printed books.

During the animated discussion which followed Mr. Nixon's address Mr. D. L. Evans of the Public Record Office vehemently opposed the application of lamination as a substitute for repairs of paper documents. He thought that lamination could be used as a protective measure but there was no particular usefulness in the United Kingdom because of the favourable climate of the country for preservation of paper. He admitted, however, that the Eastern and tropical countries might use lamination with advantage for the protection given to paper by the plastic foil covering. Miss Elsas, County Archivist of Glamorganshire, did not believe that lamination as a repair process would prove speedier than old methods because to prepare a document for repair would have still to be done by highly skilled workers. Mr. C. D. P. Nicholson suggested the possibility of soaking the document to be repaired in a solution of plastic material to obtain the results which were intended to be obtained by lamination. Sir Hilary Jenkinson who presided over the meeting strongly deprecated any method of repair which would subject every document to the same treatment without regard to the particular needs of each. He believed that good paper treated with size was as strong as the one treated with lamination. Sir Hilary further did not regard the period during which the lamination process has been in use in the United States as sufficient to warrant its use in archives.

Col. W. LeHardy, Clerk of the Records of Middlesex and Hertfordshire, read a paper on "Records of Local Clubs and Societies" at the meeting of the *Records Preservation Section*. Speaking about their historical importance, he observed that there was no class of Records which threw a more intimate, or a more accurate light on the thoughts, habits and ambitions of people of all classes than the

Records of local clubs and societies. The discussion of the subject showed very clearly that keen interest was already being taken in the preservation of such records in the United Kingdom.

The meeting of the *Publication Section* was held on the morning of 7 December with Prof. T. F. T. Plucknett in the chair. Miss Joyce Godber of Bedford Record Office read a paper on the "Publication of Latin Records". She referred to the varying practices followed by local records societies interested in the publication of Latin texts and pointed out the difficulty of adopting a uniform policy in this respect. However, she advocated their publication in such a form that should be good enough for the scholars and should also meet the requirements of the local members.

The subject for the *Discussion Meeting* of the Association was "Facilities for Access" and the two principal speakers were Prof. Jack Simmons of the University College, Leicester and Mr. Felix Hull, County Archivist of Berkshire. The latter pointed out the difficulties that local records offices with limited accommodation and small staff face in providing facilities for students. Dr. E. F. Carpenter, Vicar of Stanmore, spoke on ecclesiastical records and their accessibility for research. He explained that it was difficult to consult diocesan records and pleaded that older records of Diocesan Offices should be deposited with Public Libraries or County Record Offices. Mr. R. L. Atkinson, Secretary of the Historical Manuscripts Commission, took the opportunity of explaining to the members of the Association how the Commission acted as intermediary between the owners of private archives and students by arranging for deposits of documents in approved libraries and record offices to make them readily available to students. Mr. Robert Somerville pleaded for the extension of hours of opening of records repositories so that the part-time student could be helped in doing research among records.

The Annual General Meeting of the Association was held in the Stock Room of the Stationers' Hall with the new President Sir Raymond Evershed in the chair. Lord Greene, lately President of the Association, was elected Honorary Vice-President of the Association.

#### *The Master of the Rolls' Archives Committee (1949)*

Sir Raymond Evershed, Master of the Rolls, has appointed a small committee, called "The Master of the Rolls' Archives Committee (1949)" to prepare legislative proposals on the lines suggested by the Archives Committee set up in 1943 for the establishment of a National Archives Council. The membership of the Committee comprises of Professor T. F. T. Plucknett (Chairman), Sir Hilary Jenkinson, Professor J. G. Edwards, Mr. C. J. Newman (representing the Association of Municipal Corporations) and Mr. L. Edgar Stephens (representing the County Councils Association). Mr. E. W. Denham, an Assistant Keeper of the Public Record Office, has been appointed as Secretary of the Committee. A number of bodies have been invited

to appoint representatives whom the Committee can consult as occasions arise and among those who have already agreed to co-operate are the Church of England, the Historical Manuscripts Commission, the British Museum, the Country Landowners' Association and the Library Association. The Committee held two meetings before the end of 1949 and has made considerable progress in its work.

### *The Historical Manuscripts Commission*

Sir Raymond Evershed, Master of Rolls, was appointed Chairman of the Historical Manuscripts Commission in June 1949, Lord Greene having resigned the post on his retirement from the Mastership of the Rolls. Lord Greene has been appointed a member of the Commission.

The main part of the Commission's work is now carried through the National Register of Archives, and its Registrar Lt.-Col. G. E. G. Malet has been busy organizing voluntary help throughout the country. By the end of 1949, local committees had been formed in 34 counties. On 5 December 1949, a well attended conference of Voluntary Helpers from all parts of England was held in London as in the previous two years. The main subject of their discussion was the treatment of the large archive accumulations particularly regarding methods of their reporting. Recently the number of reports coming from the local committees has considerably increased and up to 28 February 1950, the total received since the inception of the Commission amounted to 1857.

### *British Museum, London*

Mr. T. D. Kendrick, Keeper of the Department of British Antiquities has been appointed Director and Principal Librarian of the British Museum in succession to Sir John Forsdyke who is retiring after holding the Directorship for fourteen years. The Museum has suffered a serious loss in the death of Dr. Edward Lynam on 29 January 1950, at the age of sixtyfour. He had been Superintendent of the Map Room since 1931 and had been the Secretary of the Hakluyt Society from 1931 to 1945 and its President from 1945 to 1949. The study of early cartography owes much to the work done by Dr. Lynam.

It is gratifying to learn that the Trustees of the British Museum, in view of the changing conditions, have decided to depart from their old practice of refusing to accept any records or manuscripts on loan. The Museum will now co-operate with local Record Offices in the allocation of documents and papers, by accepting on permanent or indefinite loan, material which it recognizes to be of national (or international) significance. While thus prepared to accept deposits, the Museum will, however, prefer to have gifts which would become outright the property of the nation because only such manuscripts

will appear in the printed catalogues of the Manuscripts Department. The decision of the Museum is, however, a notable advance and it should go a long way in the preservation of important documents and their use for research.

*Bodleian Library, Oxford*

Although the Bodleian Library draws scholars from all over the world to study materials not elsewhere available, it has been conducting in recent months an exhibition directed to a purely local audience. In Oxfordshire, interest in local history is growing and the library is trying to help this trend and to lessen the destruction of records through apathy of their owners by arranging a display of the main sources of local history. The exhibition is devoted to Oxfordshire only; but the types of material shown are applicable to any English county. The display is intended to help people interested in studying the locality where they live and to illustrate national history by local example. Among the exhibits are a series of county maps, the earliest one being the Saxton map of 1574, typical records publications of local societies, older county histories and documents from the county muniments and parish records useful for the study of all aspects of Oxfordshire history.

An important collection of family papers has been deposited by Lord Clarendon in the Bodleian Library which already possesses the papers of his ancestor, Lord Chancellor under Charles II and Chancellor of the University of Oxford. The major part of the new deposit, consisting of the papers of the great Whig Clarendon who was thrice Foreign Secretary in the reign of Queen Victoria, will be of great use to the students of the British Foreign policy of the mid-nineteenth century. The Library is also the recipient of a notable collection of the diocesan papers at Cuddesdon Palace, which complement the records transferred from the Diocesan Registry in 1915 and 1917. Apart from deeds and legal papers concerning the temporalities of the see, the whole deposit belongs to the period after the rebuilding of Cuddesdon at the Restoration.

*Public Record Office of Northern Ireland, Belfast*

Dr. D. A. Chart, the first Deputy Keeper of the Public Record Office of Northern Ireland retired in April 1918 after 46 years' service. He has been succeeded as Deputy Keeper by Mr. Edward Heatly and Mr. K. Darwin has been appointed as Assistant Deputy Keeper.

During 1918 the Record Office received for deposit official records of Crown and Peace Office, County and City of Londonderry of 1927 and District Probate Registry, Londonderry 1922-23. A number of important documents were also acquired by gifts and purchases including the diary of a prominent Irish Nationalist, John Martin of



Loughorne, Co. Down, Drennan-Bruce Letters, 1782-1792, and a collection of legal documents from a firm of solicitors. The Office also obtained during the year transcripts of *State Papers Relating to Ireland* for 1742-44, from the Public Record Office, London.

## UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

### *The National Archives and Records Service*

The National Archives of the United States of America which became last year a part of the newly established General Services Administration, has undergone another important organizational change. It was converted on 1 December 1949, into National Archives and Records Service of the General Services Administration. In addition to the office of the Archivist the NARS includes the National Archives, the Division of the Federal Register, the Franklin D. Roosevelt Library at Hyde Park, N.Y. and a new Records Management Division. In this new organization, Theodore R. Schellenberg has been appointed as Director of Archival Management with the responsibility for the internal working of the National Archives, and Herbert E. Angels has become Director of the new Records Management Division.

The NARS has also been assigned some of the functions of the Department of State which were not connected with foreign affairs. The National Archives will now publish the *Territorial Papers of the United States* and Division of Federal Register will be responsible for the publication of the *Statutes at Large*. The State Department will, however, continue to publish treaties and other international agreements.

The record holdings of the National Archives at the end of 1949 amounted to about 9,00,000 cubic feet. The recent accessions include the original statutes, 1941-47, papers relating to the 20th and 21st Amendment to the Constitution, correspondence between Wright brothers and the Weather Bureau regarding the choice of Kitty Hawk as the place for their experimental flights and patent files for 1918-45.

### *Death of R. D. W. Connor*

U.S.A. has lost an eminent archivist and historian in the death of Dr. R. D. W. Connor on 25 February 1950. As the first Archivist of the United States (1934-41) and as one of the founders of the Society of American Archivists, Dr. Connor made significant contribution to the development of archives administration and the archival profession. He was also a leading historian of the United States and was the author of many historical monographs of great merit. After his retirement from the National Archives, Dr. Connor served the University of North Carolina as Professor of Jurisprudence and History (1941-50).

*Society of American Archivists—13th Annual Meeting*

The Society of American Archivists held its 13th annual meeting at Quebec on 19-20 September 1949. Incidentally it was the first meeting of the Society to be held outside the United States and it was also for the first time since the establishment of the American Association of State and Local History that the two organizations met at separate places for their annual meetings.

The first session of the meeting of the Society held on 19 September was devoted to the discussion of "Records Administration". The Chairman, Dr. Emmet J. Leahy, pointed out in his introductory remarks that there was no cleavage between "records administration" and "archives administration". This view was also supported by Dr. Solon J. Buck who took part in the discussion. Mr. W. D. Halliday of the Privy Council Office, Ottawa read an interesting paper on "The Public Records of Canada: Recent Development in Central Management", and the other contributors to the discussion were Robert Shiff of the National Records Management Council and Terry Beach of the Atomic Energy Commission. At the Luncheon Meeting, Dr. William K. Lamb spoke on "Written Archives in Canada". His address contained an excellent summary of the growth of archives and archival activities in Canada and the plans for organization of the records service of the Dominion on modern lines in the near future.

Dr. Philip C. Brooks, Records Officer of the National Security Resources Board, was elected President of the Society which will meet for its next annual meeting at Madison (Wisconsin) in October 1950.

*Franklin D. Roosevelt Library, Hyde Park, N.Y.*

About 85 per cent of the Roosevelt Papers in the Franklin D. Roosevelt Library are now available for research. The formal opening was done at a brief ceremony held under the Presidentship of Dr. Wayne C. Grover, Archivist of U.S.A., on 17 March 1950. President Truman in his message on this occasion said that the Roosevelt Papers would furnish much source material for the study of one of the most momentous periods in American history. He also expressed the hope that other officials would also deposit their papers in the Library so that a fuller understanding of these years could be had.

The use of the following categories of Roosevelt Papers will be restricted for the time being:

- (i) Investigative reports on individuals;
- (ii) Applications and recommendations for positions;
- (iii) Documents containing derogatory remarks concerning the character, loyalty, integrity, or ability of individuals;
- (iv) Documents containing information concerning personal or family affairs of individuals;

- (v) Documents containing information of a type that could be used in the harassment of living persons or the relatives of recently deceased persons ;
- (vi) Documents containing information the release of which would be prejudicial to national security ;
- (vii) Documents containing information the release of which would be prejudicial to the maintenance of friendly relations with foreign nations ;
- (viii) Communications addressed to the President in confidence, the publication of which at this time so soon after the President's death and termination of office, might result in discouraging confidential communications to Presidents in the future.

### *Library of Congress*

The Library of Congress has acquired some 200 papers of James Monroe, fifth President of the United States. These manuscripts, which were among those retained by the family when the main body of Monroe Papers was purchased by the U.S. Government in 1849, contain a few drafts of letters and documents in Monroe's own hand, but they consist for the most part of letters addressed to him from 1783 to 1831, the year of his death. Fifteen letters from his uncle, Joseph Jones, member of the Virginian Legislature and for long time judge of the Virginia General Court, contain valuable information about Virginia politics and proceedings in the legislature from 1783 to 1794. A later series written by Monroe's son-in-law, Samuel L. Gouverneur, from 1822 to 1829, tell of family matters and also deal with the political situation in New York. Other papers of special interest include letters from the Marquis de Lafayette during his visit to America in 1824-25, and letters from Thomas Jefferson, John Marshall, John C. Calhoun, and Henry Clay.

The main body of Carl Schurz Papers in the Library of Congress has been supplemented and considerably enlarged by a group of several thousand Schurz papers and related items presented by Mr. George McAneny, President of the Carl Schurz Memorial Foundation. The group includes drafts and copies of a number of speeches delivered by Schurz, notes on civil service reform and financial subjects, and more than 500 letters, in German, received from the members of his family and from friends during the last half of the nineteenth century.

The papers of the late Roland S. Morris, prominent lawyer and Ambassador to Japan during Woodrow Wilson's second administration, have been presented to the Library of Congress by his son, Edward Shippen Morris, and his daughter, Mrs. William F. Machold. Most of the papers, which number about 5,000, were created during the years of Mr. Morris's service in Japan, 1917-21, and in the course of his special missions to Siberia in 1918 and 1919. Files of correspondence for this period are supplemented by memoranda, reports, cablegrams

exchanged with the Department of State and notes for speeches Mr. Morris delivered in Japan and after his return to the United States. A smaller group of papers pertains to his work as Professor of International Law at the University of Pennsylvania from 1924 to 1943.

The Library received on 1 March 1950, the gift of the non-current files of the National Office of the League of Women Voters dating back to 1920. These records contain much valuable information regarding the political and social history of the United States during the last three decades.

The Naval Historical Foundation has also decided to deposit in the Manuscript Division of the Library its important collections of naval historical papers including the private archives of several distinguished naval officers. These manuscripts are of great value as source materials for supplementing the information available in official documents and reports.

Dr. Lester K. Born has been appointed recently as Special Assistant on Microfilm Programme in the Office of the Assistant Director for Acquisitions, Processing Department. Dr. Born came to the Library of Congress after doing valuable work for the protection of archives in Germany where he was attached to the U.S. Military Mission. The duties of his new situation will be to carry out the Library's project of microfilming rare and valuable materials mostly available in foreign archives and libraries for making them available to scholars in U.S.A.

The Library sent in December 1949 an expedition to St. Catherine Monastery on Mount Sinai, for the purpose of microfilming more than 50,000 pages of ancient manuscripts in this world's oldest Christian monastery. The manuscripts are in Greek, Latin, Arabic, Syriac and a number of other languages. Though their existence was known to western scholars, they have mostly remained unexplored so far.

Another important project of microfilming biblical manuscripts has been undertaken through the generosity of Patriarch Timotheos of the Greek Orthodox Church in Jerusalem and in collaboration with American Schools of Oriental Research. The object of the scheme is to photograph a large number of ancient and mediaeval manuscripts in the Patriarchate Library which dates back to the 6th century. The work of microfilming began in November 1949, and as soon as the photographic negatives are received in the Library, copies of the manuscripts will be made available to all scholars and libraries wishing to obtain them.

The Library of Congress has also made a start with its long planned microfilming project in Italy which is being supervised by Dr. Emilio Re of the Italian Archives. Arrangements have been made for exchange of copies of governmental records with the Archives of the French Ministry of Foreign Affairs which will be advantageous to both the parties. The Library has also been engaged in co-operation with the Department of State since the end of 1948, in microfilming of selected series of records in the Archives of the Japanese Foreign

Office. Among the materials which have been copied or are being copied are the records for the Meiji, Taisho and Showa periods.

*The American Documentation Institute, Washington*

The American Documentation Institute has undertaken the publication of a new quarterly entitled the *American Documentation* under the editorship of Vernon D. Tate. In its first issue (January 1950) the editor has explained that the journal would be devoted to the review of ideas, techniques, problems and achievements in the field of documentation. The *American Documentation* will contain articles and other contributions on the creation, transmission, collection, classification and use of "documents" which are broadly defined as recorded knowledge in any form.

*University of California: Mark Twain Papers*

According to a report, published in the *Library Journal* of 1 January 1950, Mark Twain Papers, one of the most valuable collections left by any major writer in America, would be bequeathed to the University of California by Clara Clemens Samossoud, the only surviving daughter. The collection, now housed on the Berkley Campus, contains 45 note books and diaries, over 400 literary manuscripts, business records, letters etc.

## BELGIUM

*Death of Dieudonné Brouwers*

Following closely the death of Mons. Edouard Poncelet and Prof. Joseph Cuvelier, Belgium has lost another eminent historian and archivist, Dr. Dieudonné Brouwers, who died on 8 November 1948. Dr. Brouwers served the Belgian archives for a period of more than forty years. Before his retirement he rose to the position of the Archivist General of the Kingdom which he held from 1936 to 1939.

Dr. Brouwers was born on 21 September 1874. He took Ph.D. in History in 1896 from the University of Liège and a year later he passed the examination for Archivist-Candidate. He was appointed to a vacancy in the State Archives of Liège in 1898. In May 1906, Dr. Brouwers was transferred as Keeper of the State Archives at Namur. After he had spent about 30 years there he was selected to fill the post of the Archivist General of the Kingdom on the retirement of Joseph Cuvelier in December 1935.

Dr. Brouwers' short period of stewardship in Brussels was marked by two important innovations. The establishment of the Archival Museum was mainly due to his efforts and he was responsible for making of photographic copies of all records prior to 1600 in date.

These copies were made available at provincial archival repositories and at the universities to help the research students.

Dr. Brouwers was one of the foremost historians of Belgium and published several research papers and monographs. He had special predilection for the study of social and economic aspects of Belgian history.

## GERMANY

### *Discovery of important Documents*

"Unesco World Review" says in its issue of 27 August 1949, that valuable documents and letters written by famous men such as Calvin, Luther, Melancthon, Copernicus and Lucas Cranach have recently been discovered in the ancient imperial city of Goslar in Northern Germany. Two hundred tons of historical documents covering six centuries of history and comprising 1,500 parchment manuscripts have been collected under the supervision of the British occupation forces. They include the archives of the Order of Teutonic Knights (1190-1526) and those of the ancient Dukedom of Prussia as well as correspondence between the Kings of Spain, France, England, Denmark and Sweden, archives from the Vatican and the various church synods.

The collections of the Preussische Staatsbibliothek at Berlin which were recovered from the American zone after the war have been deposited at the Westdeutsche Bibliothek at Marburg. These comprise about half of the original Berlin collections. Most of these were found in a potash mine near Hersfeld (Hessen).

## ITALY

### *The 'Columbus' International Exhibition*

In celebration of the V centenary of the birth of Columbus an exhibition sponsored by the Tourist Bureau of Genoa with the collaboration of the 'Centre for studies on Columbus' of the same city will be held in Genoa from June to October 1951. The 'Columbus Exhibition' will be international in character and its aim is to make known Spain's share in the first discovery and colonization of American land and the part played by other European nations; and the contribution of navigators, explorers and scholars of various countries in making the new world known.

The Exhibition will comprise of:

1. Documents from archives (originals or photostats);
2. Various manuscripts and rare prints (originals or copies);
3. Nautical instruments of the XV century and the beginning of the XVI (originals or models);
4. Reproductions, in models or photographs, of ships and barges;
5. Portraits, paintings on various subjects, statues, monuments, numerous carvings etc., relating to Christopher Columbus and

- members of his family, Paolo Dal Pozzo Toscanelli, Amerigo Vespucci, Giovanni and Sebastiano Caboto, Giovanni da Verrazzano and other navigators, and land explorers and scholars on various subjects (geographers, naturalists, historians, etc.) besides cartographers, designers, historians of the last decade of the XV century and first seven decades of the XVI ;
6. Cartographical demonstrations in black and colour, sketches of Christopher and Bartholomew Columbus, marine charts, planispheres and globes, etc. ;
  7. Books published after 1891 relating to Christopher Columbus and the first discovery of America ;
  8. Various publications, mostly of the XV and XVI centuries including books on voyages.

The exhibition will be organized by Professors Paolo Revelli of the Genoa University (President of the Genoese Centre for Studies on Columbus) and Orlando Crosso, Director of the Bianco and Rosso Palaces Galleries and its venue will be San Giorgio Palace. Recent publications mentioned at (7) will be catalogued in one volume to be called "Columbus Bibliography, 1892-1950". This work has been undertaken by the Genoa Centre for Studies on Columbus and the Centre will also publish with foreign collaboration "Studi Columbiani" (Studies on Columbus).

## NEW ZEALAND

### *The Dominion Archives*

Among the recent acquisitions of the Dominion Archives of New Zealand are about 200 volumes of papers transferred from the Government House. These documents containing the original correspondence between the Secretary of State for Colonies and early Governors and other officials for 1840-1900, are of great value for study of the early history of New Zealand. Other records which have recently been placed in the custody of the Dominion Archivist include army archives relating to Maori Wars. The Archivist has also been authorized to take over the records of the Colonial Secretary's Office which was the predecessor of the Internal Affairs Department.

## PRESERVATION AND PHOTOGRAPHIC

### *New Machine for Disinfecting Books*

According to a report appearing in the *Library Journal* of 15 October 1949, a French firm (Book Disinfecting, 28 rue Moyenne, Bourges Cher, France) has offered a new device for disinfecting books. It is claimed that the machine permits making the disinfecting of books effective and inexpensive. Bactericidal gas is used in the process and there is automatic provision for turning the pages.

*Bug-proofing Books*

PATRA, a British research organization has published the findings of its entomologist, Dorothy M. Evans, regarding the protection of books against insects especially in tropical climates. As many common binding materials offer food to insects, Evans recommends the use of nylon threads, synthetic adhesives, and book cloths made of synthetic materials or plastic treated fabrics. As repellents, she suggests a mixture of methylated spirit, mercuric chloride and beechwood creosote brushed on the book and its case and copper sulphate added to the water used in conjunction with paste and glue. (*Book Binding and Book Production*, June 1950).

*Adhesive for book labels*

The United States Government Printing Office has announced the development of an effective adhesive (du Pont's Heat Seal Lacquer 6340) for book labels which should be of great use both in record offices and libraries. The adhesive is applied to the back of sheets of labels by means of a Potdevin bench gluing machine, on which the sheets are placed on a moving conveyor belt where the adhesive is rapidly dried. The labels are then cut on a die punching machine. These labels may be applied to such materials as paper, leather, starch-filled book cloth and buckram by the application of heat (approximately 200°F) and pressure with a hot flat iron or patch welder.

*Perfect Binding—A New Development*

The technique of book production may undergo a great change with the development of a new adhesive for use in perfect binding. This technique of book binding known for many years as *perfect flush* or *flexible* binding consists of reducing the text of the book to single leaves and fastening of these leaves together with an adhesive. This method has not been much used so far in book production because of the defective adhesives which were available in the market. The new adhesive which has been found very suitable for perfect binding consists of synthetic rubber and poly-vinyl acetate. It is easily available and is cheap. The loading, flexing and accelerated ageing tests carried out by two scientists of the American Bureau of Standards (reported in the *Library Journal*, 15 June 1948) show that the binding done with the adhesive is unaffected by bacteria, fungus, changes of temperature within a reasonable range, does not age and is highly flexible. Similar tests have also been carried out in England (*Library Association Record*, October 1949) and perfect binding with the new adhesive has proved to be stronger than the traditionally hand-sewn books. There is also a great deal of saving in time and binding material in application of the perfect technique and it is regarded as quite suitable for library use.



The adhesive can be used on all kinds of paper except art and India paper but it is most effective with medium weight lightly calendared paper of the type used for printing of most of the books of these days.

### *Mould growth in a Dry Book Store*

It is known that leather will not normally grow mould if it is stored in a dry atmosphere, i.e., one of which the relative humidity is under 68 per cent. An example was, however, observed recently by Messrs. R. F. Innes and A. J. Musgrave in which mould was seen to be growing on some of the books stored in the basement store of a London Library, the atmosphere of which was dry.

Inspection of the store showed it to be unventilated and fitted with a steel door. The temperature was 62°F, maintained during the day by hot water pipes, which were turned off at night and at week-ends. The relative humidity (R.H.) was found to be 56 per cent at the end of the day, rising to 64 per cent the next morning. Both these humidities are below the critical figure for mould growth, that is, such an atmosphere can be regarded as dry and normally likely to prevent mould growth. A recording hygrograph showed dry conditions over a period of some weeks.

A significant observation suggested a possible cause of the mould growth: the shelves were of enamelled steel, the ends consisting of rather massive cast iron decorative pieces. A book which was placed near an end, but not in contact with it, showed mould growth, the pattern of which was identical with the decorative pattern of the cast-iron end. This observation suggested that, in the absence of any ventilating air current, the iron work caused local lowering of temperature producing pockets of air with R.H. above the critical figure of 68 per cent, thus producing conditions favourable to the growth of the mould. The mould growing on the book was inoculated on to wort agar and identified as a species of penicillium (biverticillate). The cement floor and brick walls were found to be dry, and the remedies recommended were the maintenance of gentle warmth at night, together with a slow circulation of air by means of appropriately placed fans.

(Note by R. F. Innes and A. J. Musgrave contributed to the Council of British Leather Manufacturers' Research Association. Reproduced from the *Library Association Record*, July 1949).

### *Fire Resistant Document Containers*

The National Archives of United States of America has recently developed a record container which combines in itself the qualities of an ideal box namely low cost, light weight, durability, imperviousness to dust and dirt and reasonable degree of protection against fire, heat and water. The cardboard containers which are in use in many

record offices have most of the desirable characteristics of an ideal container but they are deficient in fire resistance and water resistance. After a long period of research at the National Archives it has been found that a cardboard document container, the inner and outer surfaces of which are clad with aluminium foil, is as effective a fire resistant as steel boxes and also gives adequate protection against water. The National Archives is now using several thousand of these boxes and is collecting data as to their durability and performance in every day use.

The new container will, however, afford a limited amount of protection and it will not eliminate the need for other fire protecting measures. It will be useful to the extent of preventing serious damage to records if a fire is quickly detected and extinguished.

### *Shelving of an Aluminium Alloy.*

An interesting report by W. Ogwen Williams (*Archives*, No. 2) explains how a new shelving industry has developed as a result of the establishment of a County Record Office in Caernarvonshire. In 1917 after Mr. Williams took over charge of the records of the County, he found the shelves in the Record Office—an old prison—to be totally unsuitable. Since the old shelves were made of poor quality wood which was also highly combustible and were generally insecure, it was thought desirable to replace them immediately. At this time a local aircraft factory had closed down and was selling the material it had used for building aircraft which, it was thought, might prove suitable for making shelves. This material is an alloy of aluminium, containing one per cent silicon and  $\frac{3}{4}$  of one per cent magnesium. It looks like steel and “its resistance to atmospheric corrosion is described authoritatively as good, its ultimate tensile stress in tons per square inch is given as 20, and its melting-point is stated to be 1200°F”. Its other advantages as material for archive shelving are high resistance to corrosion, lightness in weight, cleanness in appearance and its being fire-proof. After some experimental shelves were produced and found admirably suitable for archive purposes, the County Record Office of Caernarvonshire placed orders for shelving for four of the record rooms with “The Firs Engineering Company”, the business house which was floated for this purpose only. The new shelving was installed by Easter 1948 and “the general effect of cleanliness and airiness in such stark contrast to the former wooden structures was startling.” Shortly after the University College of North Wales at Bangor also purchased a large number of shelves for their Library from the same firm. The new industry has come to stay because the shelving made of this alloy has been found admirably suitable for muniment rooms and libraries.

The manufacturing process of this shelving is quite simple and since it is light work it has been found practicable to employ a number of ex-T. B. patients of whom there are a large number in Caernarvon and the neighbouring districts. The shelving is of open type and the

standard model is 7 ft. 1 inch in height, 3 or 4 ft. in width and 10 inches in depth. Variations in these specifications can, of course, be made according to individual requirements of each repository. The construction is quite strong, a 3 to 4 ft. span can easily hold a row of files fully loaded 10 inches deep. A unit of standard shelving described above costs about £17 and the manufacturers are said to be in a position to supply within eight weeks from the receipt of orders.

#### *Portable Microfilmer*

A portable microfilmer weighing only 18 pounds has been announced by the Migel Distributing Company Inc. 118E-25th Street, New York 10, N.Y. It can be packed in a case 18" long, 15½" wide and 6½" deep and this includes everything an operator needs for copying materials on standard 35mm. film. The unit includes a reader head which takes the place of camera. The microfilmer is especially adopted for copying blue prints. There are also adaptations for copying outside materials. Price: \$ 179.50.

## BOOK REVIEWS

*East Indiamen: The East India Company's Maritime Service*, by Sir Evan Cotton, C.I.E., edited by Sir Charles Fawcett. (London, The Batchworth Press, 1949, pp. 218).

THIS book represents an unusually felicitous blending of the work of author and editor. Thanks to the skill of Sir Charles Fawcett, the late Sir Evan Cotton's essay on the Honourable Company's maritime service in the late eighteenth century has been turned into a careful survey of this whole subject during the age of sail. The most valuable chapters are those on the men and their ships, life on board, and the common sailors' conditions of service. The treatment of voyages and captains' careers ashore suffers somewhat from a confusing array of statistical and genealogical details not uniformly arranged in chronological order. Although a study of the notes shows him to be fully aware that the ownership of each Indiaman was divided among several persons, Sir Charles Fawcett has not clearly brought out this point in the text. He also leaves the impression that East India captains and officers used all their 'privilege' of private trade themselves, homeward as well as outward. The fact is that much of this 'privilege', especially that of the lower ranks, was sold to others. By the end of the eighteenth century, very little of the homeward 'privilege' actually belonged to the officers of the ships which carried it.

In a brief chapter on the Company's flag, Sir Charles Fawcett has wisely refrained from postulating a connection between the Company's striped flag and the American flag. Without further evidence, judgement must remain suspended on this fascinating subject. Certain American writers have no doubt been wrong in saying that the Company's flag was seen in American harbours. This flag of thirteen alternate red and white stripes with the crosses of St. George and St. Andrew in the canton could not legally be worn above the latitude of St. Helena. It does not follow, however, that its design was unknown in the American colonies. There must have been many colonial seamen who had seen the flag. Moreover there were certainly a few persons resident in the colonies in the 1770's who had lived in India at one time or another in their careers. Nevertheless, no evidence has yet appeared definitely to establish any connection between the two flags. This book with a colour plate of the Company's flags in the frontispiece will serve a useful purpose in making their design and the remarkable resemblance to the stars and stripes more widely known. Sir Evan Cotton's interest in his hobby in the midst of a busy life as barrister, editor, and legislator in Bengal and London coupled with Sir Charles Fawcett's researches at the former India Office have given us a definitive essay on the Company's maritime service enlivened by many delightful anecdotes of life at sea in the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries.

HOLDEN FURBER

*Indian Travels of Thevenot and Careri*, edited by Surendranath Sen, Indian Record Series (New Delhi, National Archives of India, 1949, pp. LXIV + 432, 20 illustrations and 3 maps; Price, Rs. 20/-).

**P**HOENIX-LIKE the new Indian Records Series arises from the ashes of its precursor, which came to an end nearly forty years ago. Comparison of this first volume's physical attributes with those of the old series issued in 1905-1913 is highly creditable to the newcomer. Despite current difficulties of production, which in India are certainly not less formidable than elsewhere, we have an honest, solid book of some 500 pages, well bound, clearly printed on durable paper, with illustrations printed from adequate half-tone blocks. It is only when we come to the maps of itineraries that the standard is inferior, and it is to be hoped that it may be possible to draw upon the abundant resources of the Survey of India as they may be required for future volumes in this series. Much care has evidently been devoted to layout and presswork: the printers, the Sri Gouranga Press of Calcutta, deserve honourable mention.

Dr. Surendranath Sen, general editor of the resuscitated series, has fittingly been chosen as editor also of its first representative. The texts are those of the third parts of:

- (i) the travels of Jean de Thevenot (1633-1667),  
first published in English in 1687, and
- (ii) the travels of Giovanni Careri (1651-1725),  
first published in English in 1704.

Both translations have been checked and where necessary corrected (in the notes) by Professor J. D. Ward of Lahore. De Thevenot was a French explorer of independent means, who travelled from choice. Careri, a Neapolitan lawyer, went abroad to seek the peace which he could not find in his family circle: perhaps the ultimate origin of his book lay in a nagging wife. Both travelled far and wide, but the present volume is concerned only with what they put on record about the East Indies.

In the sub-continent, de Thevenot landed at Surat early in 1666, made a trip to Ahmedabad and Cambay, and then another across the Deccan peninsula to Masulipatam by way of Burhanpur, Aurangabad, Golkonda and Ellora (where he spent only a couple of hours but was the first European to describe the caves). He stayed just over a year in India, Ahmedabad being his furthest point north and Masulipatam his furthest south. Careri after coast-wise journeys touching at Daman, Bassein and elsewhere disembarked at Goa in February 1695 and went north-east to Galgali on the Kistna, returning via Belgaum to his port of entry in the following May. The high-light of this not very lengthy journey was his visit to the court and camp of Aurangzeb; and his account of this is perhaps the most important part of the whole book. He had private audience of the emperor, whom he describes as "of a low Stature, with a large Nose, Slender, and stooping with Age. The

whiteness of his round Beard was more visible on his Olive colour'd Skin".

Like other travellers past and present, these two padded out their narratives quite extensively. De Thevenot treats of Agra, Delhi, Lahore, Sind and many other places, not so much from hearsay as by copying from Tavernier and Bernier. Careri confined his plagiarism to accounts of historical and administrative matters, and in general refrained from writing about places and things that he had not seen. Neither, it must be confessed, had the *blague* of a Coryat, the charm of a della Valle, or the vividness of a Manucci; and so neither can claim a place in the first rank of European travellers in the East Indies. But, we think, they have a respectable position in the second rank, a position that will be rendered more secure by the work now under review.

It remains to comment on the presentation of the text by the Editor. It is unnecessary here to state his pre-eminent qualifications for the editorship of this volume. A full and valuable *apparatus criticus* is provided: many hundreds of apt and illuminating terminal notes, with a bibliography and itineraries. (Dr. Sen is also a distinguished amateur of natural history and in particular of ornithology, as for example the learned note, on page 360, on the black-boned pullet testifies). In an admirable Introduction which takes the form of a critical essay on the early European travellers in India, he provides the full background against which de Thevenot and Careri must be viewed. With respect, we must, however, take exception to the manner in which the terminal notes are numbered, each chapter's notes being in a separate numerical series. Thus (as both texts are divided first into Parts, then into Books, and finally into Chapters numbered afresh in each Book), a note has to be cited cumbrously as "Thevenot, Pt. III, Bk. II, Ch. I, Note 28". How much simpler would it have been if the notes had been numbered pagewise, and cited simply as "p. 283, n. 4"!

The advance-guard of the new Series must be adjudged to have set a shining example. May we express the hope that the new Vice-Chancellor's onerous duties will not prevent him from continuing as general editor, or at least from exercising a degree of sponsorship for the volumes to come?

H. BULLOCK

*The Red Sea and Adjacent Countries at the close of the Seventeenth Century as described by Joseph Pitts, William Daniel and C. J. Poncet*, edited by Sir William Foster, (London, The Hakluyt Society, 1949; pp. XL+192; Price, One Guinea).

THE Century Volume of the Second Series of Hakluyt Society publications is a reprint of three different accounts of the countries

adjacent to the Red Sea as recorded by three different travellers who visited these parts at approximately the same time. That none of the three journeys were undertaken for pleasure or with the object of exploring unknown lands does not detract from the interest or accuracy of the narratives. Two of the three authors, Joseph Pitts and William Daniel, were Englishmen and the third, Charles Jacques Poncet, was a French physician. Joseph Pitts was captured by an Algerian corsair at the age of fifteen and sold as a slave. He accompanied his Muslim master on a voyage of pilgrimage from Algeria to Mecca and back in 1685 and some years later (after his escape from captivity) returned to England and published the story of his travels. William Daniel was commissioned by the 'London' East India Company to carry its despatches to India by the overland route by way of Syria and the Persian Gulf. He undertook to perform this task in a period of four months, but owing to a series of mishaps the project had to be abandoned. Daniel left London on May 4, 1700, but by the time he arrived at Mocha, a port near Aden, it was already September 13. The Indian ships he expected to find there had already departed and as there was no prospect of another boat for several months he entrusted the despatches to a trader and returned home. A short and somewhat sketchy narrative of his journey and the hardships he encountered on the way was published in 1702. Monsieur Poncet, M.D., was a French physician and apothecary practising at Cairo towards the close of the XVIIth century. In 1698 an agent of the Emperor of Abyssinia arrived in Cairo to procure the services of a competent physician for the monarch who was suffering from a troublesome disease. The agent who was the victim of the same malady became Poncet's patient and was speedily cured. Thereupon Poncet was prevailed upon to make the journey to Abyssinia and treat the Emperor. The party travelled by boat up the Nile as far as Asyut. Then through the desert to Moscho on the Nile, through Dongola, Sennar and finally reached Gondar, the capital of Abyssinia. Here the doctor stayed for some months and succeeded in completely curing the Negus. He left Gondar in April 1700 and returned to Cairo *via* Massawa and the Red Sea—a safer and a pleasanter route than the one by which he had come. An English translation of the account written by Poncet was published in 1709 and this has now been reprinted.

Although the three narratives have an individuality and interest of their own it is instructive to read them together and compare them. All three travellers speak of the conditions prevailing in the countries around the Red Sea at about the same moment of history. Two of them viz., Daniel and Poncet actually met at Jidda and spent a fortnight together. All three made lengthy voyages in native crafts and suffered the resulting inconveniences and hardships. The three accounts taken together provide a striking picture of this geographical area.

Pitts passed through Alexandria and Cairo. He has given a vivid account of these cities and of the Nile. He mentions a somewhat

unusual method of hunting wild ducks: "Someone that can swim and dive very well takes the head of a dead duck and swims with it in his hand; and when he comes pretty near the ducks he dives, holding the duck's head just above the surface of the water, till he comes to the ducks, and then takes hold of them by the legs, and so catches them."

At Cairo the chickens were hatched in the following manner: "They have a place underground, not unlike an oven, the bottom of which is spread all over with straw, on which they lay some thousands of eggs, close one by the other; which, without the warmth of the hens or any other prolific heat but that of the sun, dung and such ignite particles as the earth may afford, are brought to life."

Pitts' narrative contains a long and detailed account of Mecca and the pilgrims assembled there. His plan of the "Temple of Mecca" has been included in the book.

The importance of Daniel's narrative lies in the hardships and dangers which a traveller had to undergo in making a journey along the coast of Arabia or in sailing down the Red Sea. Bandits, the greed of local officials, the difficulties of negotiating a native craft in the treacherous coastal waters occasioned painful and annoying delays. All these were later experienced and vividly described by Sir Richard Burton.

Poncet's account of Abyssinia and the Court of the Negus is vivid and rich in details of local colour. "The Emperor calls himself Jesus. Altho' he be not above one and forty years old, yet he has already a numerous issue. He has eight princes and three princesses. The Emperor has great qualities—a quick and piercing wit (i.e., intelligence), a sweet and affable humour, and the stature of a hero. He is the handsomest man I have seen in Æthiopia. He is a lover of curious arts and sciences; but his chief passion is for war. He is brave and undaunted in battles, and always at the head of his troops. He has an extraordinary love for justice, which he administers to his subjects with great exactness; but whereas he is averse to blood, 'tis not without reluctance that he condemns a criminal (to death). Such eminent qualities make him equally fear'd and belov'd by his subjects, who respect him even to adoration."

Poncet noticed that there was very little crime in Æthiopia, bars of salt were used for small money, white men particularly the Portuguese were greatly disliked and the Muslims in the country were looked down upon. The inhabitants were mostly Christians; raw meat served with pepper and spices was considered a very choice dish. These and other details enliven the remarkable account of the French physician.

The historical material provided by these narratives is admirably edited by the scholarly hand of Sir William Foster who has also written an excellent introduction to the volume.



*Historical Records of the Survey of India*, Vol. II, 1800-1815 by R. H. Phillimore, C.I.E., D.S.O. (Dehra Dun, Survey of India, 1950, pp. XXVIII + 478, maps and illustrations, Price, Rs. 20/- or £1. 11s.).

**T**HIS is the second volume of a series that will give a full account of the survey and mapping of India up to the middle of the nineteenth century.

Colonel Phillimore has gathered most of his material from the original records of the Department, and from government record offices in London and all parts of India. He quotes freely from correspondence and journals that have never before been published.

His first volume which took the story to 1800 tells of the work of the first surveyors, traversing along roads and rivers with simple instruments and occasional astronomical observations. Work had in general to be confined to the limits of the Company's territories, and such methods could give no accurate results. The maps were admittedly better than nothing, but there were vast blank areas which could not be visited.

During the period 1799 to 1806, wars with Tipu of Mysore and with the Marathas opened up large areas to the Company's surveyors, and brought special opportunity to two great men.

William Lambton, of His Majesty's 33rd Foot, had only just come to India after many years quiet study of scientific surveying, mathematics, and geodesy, and lost no time in persuading the Government to let him start a trigonometrical survey of South India of the highest possible accuracy, with the best instruments he could procure. In addition to providing a sure basis for all other surveys, his great work contributed important data for determining the figure of the earth, and it was his foresight, imagination, and determination, that brought the surveyors of India for many years to the forefront of scientific thought on this subject throughout the world.

Colin Mackenzie was a master of topographical survey, with a genius for organizing, and produced surveys and maps in South India the like of which had never been made before. His first surveys were made without the advantage of Lambton's triangles, but though working independently, they kept in close touch, and together laid the foundations of the modern geodetic and topographical surveys of India.

In 1815, Mackenzie was appointed Surveyor General of India, as the Court of Directors now realized that survey and map-making over this vast continent should be dealt with as a whole, instead of being left to a separate Surveyor General at each of the three presidencies of Bengal, Madras and Bombay.

Colonel Phillimore describes the many scattered surveys of this period in their historical setting, whether political or military. They include the very important beginnings of professional revenue surveys in Bombay, and some interesting forest surveys made in the interests of ship building. The latter began in a small way only on the west coast

in 1805 ; and the survey of forests was later to become one of the more important activities of the Department.

Of particular interest to the geographer were the explorations beyond the frontiers and into the Himalaya mountains: to Gangotri, the source of the Ganges at the mythical Cow's Mouth, and the sacred lake of Manasarowar beyond the great snow range. Adventurous surveyors explored routes through Sind, Baluchistan and Persia, to discover the nature of the countries that shielded India from the armies of Napoleon Bonaparte.

For the professional surveyor the book should do much to help him to maintain a balanced standard of values. Now-a-days when organisational and administrative problems tend to keep the experienced survey officer more and more tied to his desk, it is salutary to be reminded that William Lambton started the great work of his life at an age when many men would now consider themselves too old for the rigorous life of a geodetic observer. It should also remind the modern surveyor that the hardships he may be called upon to undergo in his field work are very small indeed compared to those accepted as the inevitable lot of a surveyor in India a hundred and fifty years ago.

The book is fully documented and indexed. Material for the illustrations has been taken from the vast collection of early maps and surveys still preserved by the Survey of India. There were many artists and good draughtsmen amongst these early surveyors, and much of their work was the more effective for the freedom they were allowed in style and symbol. To illustrate the very interesting biographical notes there are several portraits, some of which are published for the first time.

The book has been made from start to finish by the Offices of the Survey of India at Dehra Dun. Several of the maps have been beautifully printed by the latest colour processes ; and great credit is due to the staff of the printing and map reproduction offices concerned.

We look forward to the appearance of Vol. III which is now in the press.

G. F. HEANEY

*The Naval Brigades in the Indian Mutiny, 1857-58*, edited by Commander W. B. Rowbotham, R. N., Navy Records Society Publication No. 87 (London, 1947, pp. XV + 332).

THE Navy Records Society was founded in 1893 with the object of printing rare or unpublished works of naval interest. The volume under review is the first publication of the Society devoted entirely to an Indian theme. It deals with the naval operations in the East Indies Division of the East Indies Station in 1857, the main features being the Royal Navy's important role in the suppression of the Indian Mutiny. The ships whose crew were employed in this work were the *Shannon*, *Pearl* and *Pelorus*. The documents forming the text of the volume

have been selected from among the Admiralty Records at the Public Record Office, London, and the Military Despatches relating to the Mutiny at the Commonwealth Relations Office, formerly India Office.

The employment of seamen in times of crisis on land for military operations is of old origin and several instances can be given even in recent history when crews of naval vessels have been used for duties which usually are performed by the army. When the rebellion spread rapidly in 1857, the British authorities in India were much handicapped for want of sufficient number of European troops. There was also great deficiency in heavy mobile artillery and trained artillerymen. Fortunately for the Indian Government, Lord Elgin who was on a diplomatic mission to China decided to offer to the Governor General on his own responsibility the services of seamen and heavy armament of the *Shannon* (51 guns) and *Pearl* (21 guns) for suppression of the revolt. This step was fully approved later by the Home Government.

The *Shannon's* Naval Brigade was employed for active fighting immediately after the crew landed at Calcutta. Its first detachment under the command of Captain William Peel, who had already won a Victoria Cross for gallantry in the Crimean War, reached Allahabad on 3 October and its second party arrived there a few weeks later. Delhi had already been recaptured by the British troops but this success had produced no tranquillising result even in the surrounding districts. The new Commander-in-Chief, Sir Colin Campbell, was faced at the moment with two baffling problems, the defence of Cawnpore and relief of the Lucknow Residency. The *Shannon's* brigade was primarily heavy artillery and it formed part of the Artillery Division in the forces of Sir Colin Campbell. The members of the Brigade saw a good deal of heavy fighting at close quarters and distinguished themselves in the operations connected with the relief of Lucknow Residency, defence of Cawnpore and the capture of Lucknow. On November 16, 1857, they showed extraordinary gallantry under the command of Captain Peel in the action for the capture of Shah Najif, a large mosque standing near the Residency of Lucknow. The Brigade won four Victoria Crosses on this occasion and the services of Captain Peel were recognized by the award of K.C.B. This gallant officer was seriously wounded later during the operations undertaken for the restoration of peace in Lucknow and his career came to a tragic end at the age of 33½ due to a fatal attack of smallpox in April 1858. The part played by the artillery of the Brigade was one of the major factors which brought success to the British arms in Oudh. Though it formed only a small fraction of the army of over 19,000 men fighting directly under the command of Sir Colin Campbell, its achievements were of unusual importance for the restoration of the British rule in northern India.

The *Pearl's* Brigade did not share in spectacular victories like those of Lucknow and Cawnpore, but it also rendered much good service under very difficult conditions. It formed a part of the Saran Field Force and the area of its operations was to the eastward of the Gogra in

Gorakhpur district. For the first six months these seamen were the only European troops in that area and had to keep a check on the enemy which was greatly superior in numbers. The Brigade suffered a great many hardships because much of its work was undertaken in water-logged country and during the excessive heat of summer.

The Brigade of the *Pelorus* did not actually participate in the fighting in India, but its employment in Burma during the period of the Mutiny prevented disturbances from breaking out in the newly annexed territory where the English forces were far below the required strength.

Commander Rowbotham has contributed an excellent Introduction to the volume which makes the understanding of the documents easy. It contains a lucid account of various engagements in which the Naval Brigades took part and the Editor has rightly avoided to make it into a general history of the Mutiny. He has made use of a variety of sources including private papers in supplementing the information available in official records.

Among several appendices the one containing transcripts of a collection of letters of Lt. Nowell Salmon of the *Shannon* to his family is of special interest. Lt. Salmon won a Victoria Cross in the action of Shah Najif and later rose to the position of Admiral of the Fleet. The letters reprinted here give an account of his personal experiences in the Naval Brigade from the time the *Shannon* left England until the capture of Lucknow, and are particularly remarkable for their accuracy.

The publication is a valuable addition to the literature on the Indian Mutiny, an event of unique importance in the annals of British India.

V. C. JOSHI

*Local History—Its Interest and Value:* (Lincoln, Lincolnshire Local History Society, 2nd Edition, 1949, pp. 1-52; Price, 1s. 6d.).

**L**OCAL history ought to be a source of perennial interest not only to the local inhabitants but also to the nation at large, because, though a minor cog, it is a highly important one in the intricate machinery of modern national history. The Lincolnshire Local History Society, originally designated the Lindsey Local History Society because of its limited scope of work, has indeed been doing useful work by endeavouring to foster among the gentry of the shire a constructive interest in local history. The extended activities of the Society have necessitated a corresponding change in its name.

This attractive little hand-book is the second edition of one published seventeen years ago; but, as the publishers truthfully maintain, "the views expressed therein are as sound to-day as they were when first written". Mr. Lee in his breezy article, which incidentally furnishes the name for the publication, holds and rightly so, that every parish, every village, every landscape, and every mound has a vivid story to

relate, which when discovered and recorded, will fill a hiatus in national history with far-reaching results.

The second article details valuable suggestions, alike to school-children and experienced scholars, for conducting research in local history, which will tend to bring history out of the text books and the class-room into the world of reality. Modern educational theory and practice are at one in favour of the child doing things for himself, and the late Canon C. W. Foster by his suggestions, teachings and advice has provided a timely impetus to that urge so innate in every human soul. The author enumerates valuable hints on how to proceed with the writing of an accurate parochial history. Apart from consulting parish records, one is advised to read all available printed books in order to obtain the correct perspective of the subject. This having been completed the Canon suggests the study of manuscript source materials in the local repositories such as the Diocesan Registry, and also envisages a visit to the British Museum and the Public Record Office, London.

The activities of the Society since its inception are also briefly dwelt upon. Good results have been achieved in the fields of writing local history, supplementing the work of the Diocesan Record Office and the local Archives Committee, and anticipating the preparation of the Lincoln portion of the National Register of Archives of the U.K. The final part of the pamphlet consists of notes on the principal printed sources for the history of churches and incumbents in Lincolnshire and lastly is added a select bibliography, again solely for the student of Lincolnshire history.

This hand-book is a living negation of that hackneyed phrase 'narrow parochial outlook' inasmuch as we are glad to recommend it to our readers as an example to be followed for writing local histories and thus providing the basis for a true national history.

DHANWANTI G. KESWANI

*The Lincolnshire Historian*, No. 5 (Lincoln, Lincolnshire Local History Society, Spring, 1950).

AS the title suggests *The Lincolnshire Historian*, the new official organ of the Lincolnshire Local History Society, till lately known as *The Lincolnshire Magazine*, has been the medium of publication of findings of Local Historians intended for the perusal of the general public at home and abroad. This little pamphlet is the fifth number of the magazine and includes three very thought-provoking articles on Lincolnshire History.

The first writing in this issue is the concluding portion of Mr. C. W. Phillip's "Field Archaeology in Lincolnshire", an erudite exposition of how to reconstruct history scientifically from archaeological remains. The writer has selected Lincolnshire for his field of work. The memorials, the monuments, the cemeteries, ancient pottery

and ancient weapons are living evidence of an old civilization, and it is remains like these that help to bridge historical gaps. A chance excavation may revolutionize our historical knowledge of a place and help to unravel the mysteries which baffled our brains hitherto. The author has tackled the archaeological remains admirably and helped to a great extent to chronicle the cloudy history of England, six hundred years from the first English Settlement in Britain to the coming of William the Conqueror, with special reference to Lincolnshire History.

Mr. F. W. Brooks suggests a very practical solution, may-be hobby, for those local history enthusiasts who have amassed a fund of historical knowledge but lack the interpretation of it. He advises them to indulge in the compilation of mediaeval atlases and maps. This suggestion is well worth a trial considering how ill-supplied we are in this respect at the moment.

In his scholarly paper "The Early Monastic Contribution to Medieval Farming" Mr. L. J. C. Day has successfully illustrated that monastic farming of the 11th, 12th and 13th centuries was a powerful influence in shaping the mediaeval farming system.

The pamphlet includes, as is usual with publications of this type, a few reviews of publications on different aspects of Lincolnshire History.

For the student interested in Lincolnshire History, the issues of this magazine will provide a fund of novel and fascinating information hitherto unknown. It will certainly be worth his while to watch out for future issues of this journal whose sole aim is to enlarge the field of knowledge of Local History.

DIHANWANTI G. KESWANI

*Maps: Their Care, Repair and Preservation in Libraries* by Clara Egli LeGear (Washington, Library of Congress, 1918, pp. X + 46 litho-printed).

**T**HIS manual, issued as a preliminary draft for eliciting suggestions and criticism, embodies the experiences, for more than half a century, of the Maps Division of the Library of Congress regarding the care and preservation of their rich collection of maps, atlases and other cartographic materials. The author who holds the Chair of Geography at the Library has also included in her work the discussion of some practices prevalent in other institutions interested in preserving map collections, such as the National Archives of the United States and the American Geographical Society. The Library of Congress has a separate Map Room since 1 November 1897 when its new building was opened and during these years it has developed new techniques for processing, filing and preserving their map collection which now contains more than two million items. The manual thus contains much useful information for both archivists and librarians who happen to have in their custody similar materials.

The administration of a map collection presents problems quite different from those of a book collection and Mrs. LeGear has successfully dealt with them in her work. The list of contents include: (1) preliminary processing, (2) secondary processing, (3) atlases, (4) mounting and reconditioning of maps, (5) map filing equipment and (6) the map room. Each of these subjects has been treated according to its importance in the field and the result is a well-balanced work. The author has devoted considerable space (12 pages) to the chapter on "mounting and reconditioning of maps". This contains the relevant discussion of all the methods so far employed for the preservation of maps and the materials and equipment used for this purpose. The application of lamination process recently developed by the National Archives of U.S.A. for this purpose has also been adequately noticed and its limitations in this field have been specifically pointed out. The section on "filing equipment" contains description of various types of equipment in use in American libraries to emphasize the need for special storage equipment to make maps useful.

The manual also contains a comprehensive and classified bibliography (covering 12 pages) on the subject and this in itself testifies to the great labour the author must have spent on the preparation of this work.

The publication is a significant contribution to the subject of map preservation and custodians of map collections in all countries will profit by its study.

V. C. JOSHI

*The Essex Record Office, 1938-1949: A Report Prepared by the County Archivist for the Records Committee of the Essex County Council, Essex Record Office Publication No. 10 (Chelmsford, Essex County Council, 1950, pp. 28).*

**M**R. F. G. EMMISON, County Archivist of Essex, can feel justly proud of the phenomenal growth of the Essex Record Office within a short period of eleven years. Today this Record Office has come to be regarded as a model institution of its kind and this achievement is entirely due to the enthusiasm and expert knowledge of the County Archivist. This pamphlet gives in outline an account of the general organisation and development of the Office from its establishment in 1939 to the end of 1949.

The Essex Record Office was not intended, even at the outset, to be a repository for official records of the County Council only. It was also expected to collect and preserve all available accumulations ecclesiastical, parochial, estate, family and historical documents pertaining to Essex with a view to making them available for research purposes. This comprehensive object has been realized to a great extent through the efforts of the staff of the Office and the willing co-operation of the owners of documents. During the last war which

broke out within a few months of the opening of the Office large accruals of family collections and private archives were received for safe custody by the County Archivist. These valuable papers might have perished but for the care bestowed upon them by him.

The Office came out of the war without any damage to its collections. In the post-war years it has further developed its progressive activities in various directions. The records and manuscripts relating to Essex have been systematically explored and whenever possible have been acquired by it. To facilitate research among its holdings detailed as well as summary catalogues have been prepared and there is no group of records in the Office which does not have at least a summary catalogue. The marked improvement in facilities for research and reference can best be seen in the great increase in the number of students using these archives. During the last quarter of 1949, 739 students consulted the records in the Office whereas the attendance during the first three months of its establishment was 29 only. An outstanding contribution has also been made by the Record Office in the field of education by means of exhibitions, lectures and press articles. The County Records Committee are keen to put to the best possible use its large collections of original materials consistent with their primary duty of preservation.

A perusal of the report will convince the reader that the Essex Record Office has played a significant role in the development of local records administration in the United Kingdom. Its further progress will be watched with interest by archivists in all countries.

V. C. JOSHI

*Canada: Report of the Public Archives for the year 1949* by William Kaye Lamb (Ottawa, 1950, pp. XXXIV + 462 ; Price, \$ 1.00).

THIS very voluminous publication actually furnishes a very brief account of the work done in the Public Archives during the year 1949. The major part of the volume, covering about 449 pages, consists of an instalment of exhaustive calendar of Nova Scotia State Papers, which incidentally remain in the custody of the Public Archives. The calendar forms the principal appendix to the Report.

The most important problem which the Public Archives has to face is the question of concentration of all Public Records in one central repository. The present accommodation available for the Dominion Archives being too limited has necessitated their dispersal all over Canada, a situation unfavourable to the administrators as well as research students. An interesting though not entirely original solution for solving the vexing question of the inadequacy of space is the suggestion for establishing "large halfway houses for departmental files, controlled and staffed by the Public Archives but not necessarily situated in downtown Ottawa". Such intermediate record



centres have proved very advantageous in England and America and similar experiments in Canada will be watched with keen interest by all the countries beset with similar problems.

The advent of micro-photography in the field of Archives has revolutionized our age-old concepts regarding record preservation and control. It is with legitimate pride that the Public Archives announces the installation of microfilm equipment to meet its varied requirements.

Records retirement is one of the most important functions of any archival repository worth its name. In this field of work, exceptionally good progress is reported. The list of accessions of the Manuscript Division during the year illustrates the varied and important subjects on which the materials are received in the nation's archives. It is evident from the perusal of the accruals that the Public Archives is planning to establish a comprehensive collection of public and private, official and unofficial papers which will supplement each other and help one to take an objective view of historical events. The Maps Division has been enriched during 1949 by accession of approximately 2,000 maps, charts and plans. To make them fully available for use, the Public Archives is shortly bringing out a new catalogue of map collections in its custody.

The significant increase in the number of researches during the year indicates the awakening interest of the Canadians in their heritage of records.

Canada has indeed taken rapid strides in Archives Administration and further reports of its premier record office will be awaited with interest.

DILANWANTI G. KESWANI

# THE INDIAN ARCHIVES

Cuvelier Number

July–December 1950

Volume IV

Number 2

Published by the National Archives of India,  
New Delhi



## CONTENTS

	<i>Pages</i>
Joseph Cuvelier by <i>Surendranath Sen, Vice-Chancellor, University of Delhi</i> ... ..	91—97
Joseph Cuvelier: A Tribute by <i>Eugenio Casanova, Late Superintendent of National Archives of Italy, Rome</i> ... ..	98
A Bibliography of Joseph Cuvelier by <i>Madame Jenny Clôes Cuvelier</i> ... ..	99—107
Molière and Archives by <i>Sir Hilary Jenkinson, Deputy Keeper of the Public Records, Public Record Office, London</i>	108—110
Note on Some Minor Records as Materials for History by <i>Rev. Claude Jenkins, Regius Professor of Ecclesiastical History, Oxford University</i> ...	111—115
The Custody of Records in Roman Egypt by <i>Sir Harold Idris Bell, Late Keeper of Manuscripts, British Museum, London</i> ... ..	116—125
Archives and Their Make-up in Ancient India and the Countries with Indian Culture by <i>Jean Filliozat, Directeur des études, Ecole des Hautes Études, Paris</i> ... ..	126—132
Max Lehmann and the Genesis of the "Principle of Provenance" by <i>Ernst Posner, Director, School of Social Sciences and Public Affairs, The American University, Washington D.C.</i> ... ..	133—141
On Indexing Mediæval Record Works by <i>Sir Cyril T. Flower, Late Deputy Keeper of the Public Records of England</i> ... ..	142—149
Archives and War by <i>Lester K. Born, Special Assistant on Microfilm Programme, Library of Congress, Washington D.C.</i> ... ..	150—159
A Note on the Development of Records Centres in the United States by <i>Wayne C. Grover, Archivist of the United States of America</i> ... ..	160—163
The Protection of Archives: Some Lessons from the War in Italy by <i>H. E. Bell, Fellow, New College, Oxford</i> ...	164—166

Private Archives in England	
by G. E. G. Malet, Registrar, National Register of Archives, London ... ..	167—172
The National Library of Wales and the Custody of Welsh Records	
by Evan D. Jones, Keeper of Manuscripts and Records, National Library of Wales, Aberystwyth ...	173—180
The Archivist and the Administrator	
by B. S. Baliga, Curator, Madras Record Office ...	181—187
Archive and Ministry	
by Roger H. Ellis, Assistant Keeper, Public Record Office, London ... ..	188—191
The Historical Manuscripts Commission	
by R. L. Atkinson, Secretary, Historical Manuscripts Commission, London ... ..	192—198
The Historical Association of England and Wales and the Study of Local Archives	
by R. F. Treharne, Professor of History, University College of Wales, Aberystwyth ... ..	199—201
The Correspondence of David Scott, Chairman and Director of the East India Company, 1787-1805	
by C. H. Philips, Professor of Oriental History, School of Oriental and African Studies, University of London ... ..	202—218
The Letters of Benjamin Joy, First American Consul in India	
by Holden Furber, Professor, South Asia Regional Studies, University of Pennsylvania ...	219—227
Town Records in New Hampshire	
by Richard G. Wood, National Archives, Washington D.C. ... ..	228—231
Presidential Address delivered at the First International Congress on Archives	
by Charles Samaran, late Director of Archives of France ... ..	232—234
Report on a Scientific Mission to German, Austrian and Swiss Archives	
by Joseph Cuvelier ... ..	235—263





Joseph Cavelier, 1869 --1947

# THE INDIAN ARCHIVES

---

Volume IV

July—December, 1950

Number 2

---

## JOSEPH CUVELIER

THE INDIAN Historical Records Commission rightly decided that a special number of *The Indian Archives* should be dedicated to the memory of Joseph Cuvelier. During the five decades he was associated with the archives offices of his country nobody made more solid contribution to the archives science than Cuvelier. He attacked almost all the problems that confront the modern archivists and invariably found a happy and logical solution.

It was Cuvelier who first reminded the official archivist of his responsibility towards the small archives in private custody. It was he again who pleaded for their concentration. Cuvelier emphasised the need of compiling exhaustive inventories on strictly scientific lines, nor was he indifferent to the need of close coöperation between the archivist and the librarian on the one hand and the archivist and the historian on the other. He rightly recognised that the proper role of the archivist is to open wide the doors of the store house of knowledge of which he was the guardian to all seekers of truth. The archivist he contended was not a mere custodian of musty old records. It was his bounden duty to share his knowledge with others and to make his knowledge readily available to the specialist as well as to the general student. He was not prepared to convert the archives office into a museum open to the idle curiosity of all the passers-by but he strongly advocated the cause of the *bona fide* students whose right of access to the raw materials of history he unreservedly admitted. That led inevitably to another question, a question of highly controversial character. Should or should not an archivist publish the documents in his custody? He started cautiously and began by publishing documentary material alone and he left it to the professional historian to draw from these records such information as they might yield or in



other words he thought that the archivist should remain content with the editing and publication of the source materials but to produce the finished article, to piece together stray information into a connected whole and to reconstruct the story of the past was the duty and privilege of the historian. The orthodox school still holds that preservation and not publication is the real concern of the archivist. Cuvelier soon found that once he launched himself upon the adventurous journey there was no halfway halting house. The archivist more familiar with the documents was probably better qualified to give a scientific account of the evolution of administrative and political institutions with which the documents in his custody were so intimately related. Next he emphasised the need of supplementing the country's archives with those to be found abroad. This again led to the necessity of international coöperation which he ardently championed. But Cuvelier was not satisfied with laying down principles for others, what he preached he practised himself and when he translated his principles into action he did so with unique thoroughness and eminent success.

Joseph Cuvelier was born on May 6, 1869 at Bilsen in the Province of Limburgh. His childhood was marked by an all-embracing curiosity which was at the same time extremely rational and critical. This curiosity took him all over his native place. There was no field, no backyard, no orchard, in and around Bilsen with which Cuvelier was unfamiliar and he was anxious to know something about their past. But even as a child nothing less than documentary evidence would satisfy him and his mother introduced him to the first archives that he was destined to handle, his own family papers enclosed in a box wrapped in paper and carefully tied with a string.

Cuvelier was lucky in his teachers at the University of Liège. He had the privilege of working under the celebrated Godefroid Kurth and no less famous Henri Pirenne. Kurth was highly interested in the new science of toponymy, the study of place names. Cuvelier's early interest in the history of his native place and its immediate neighbourhood converted him into an ardent devotee of the new science and even before he obtained his doctorate he prepared under the inspiration of Kurth an interesting monograph entitled "Historical Study of the town of Bilsen."

It was not until 1894 that Cuvelier got an employment at the state archives of Liège but he had already examined under the direction of Kurth the archives of Convent of Val-Benoit and had commenced a fruitful study of place names in collaboration with his friend Camiel Huysmans. The year of his employment in the Liège archives office

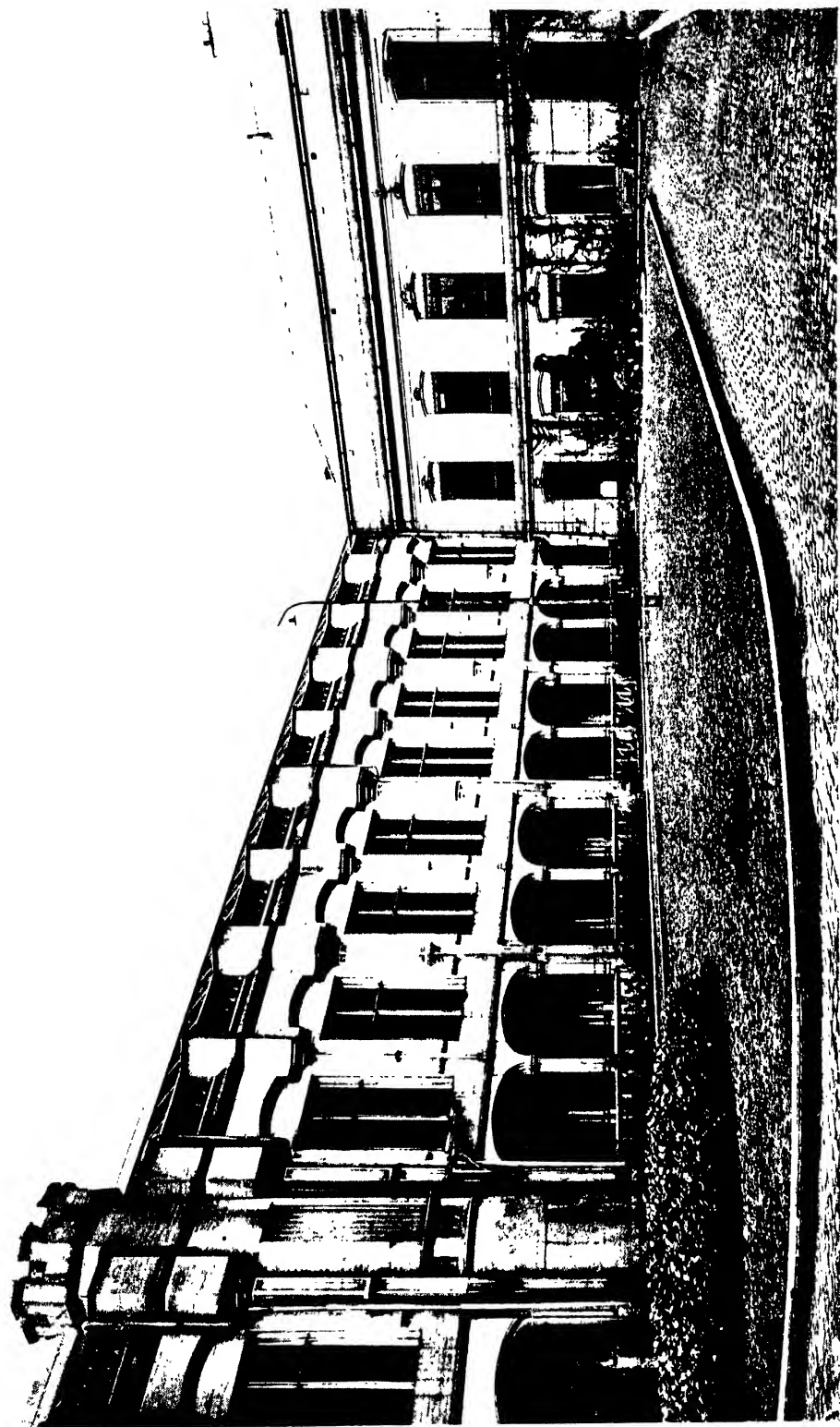
also witnessed their joint publication "A Toponymical Study of Old and New Place Names in the Borough of Bilsen."

Cuvelier was not destined to remain long at Liège. Within two years he went to Bruges as the Joint-Keeper of the Government Archives. In the meantime the Belgian Government had realised that an archives officer must be well-versed in the technique of his science and instituted a preliminary test for all new entrants to the archives office of the State and although Cuvelier, an old employee, was not expected to submit to this test he voluntarily sat for the examination. At a later date he provided for the scientific training of the archives personnel, organised an archives laboratory and recruited chemists for the better organisation of the preservation work. It was at this period that he started the compilation of inventories which earned him a well deserved reputation. He was already familiar with the archives of the Convent of Val-Benoit the major part of which he had himself transcribed and archives of the Chapel of the Holy Blood in Bruges. He naturally devoted himself to the compilation of inventories of these documents. Thus did he direct the attention of his contemporaries to the necessity of bringing the small archives to the notice of the more serious explorers.

In 1900 Cuvelier found himself on the staff of the General Archives of the State at Brussels. Arthur Gaillard, the Archivist-General, was anxious to re-organise the archives in his custody on scientific lines and he had been on the look out for a competent colleague. Highly impressed by one of Cuvelier's articles "Archives and Archivists" published in the *Revue de l'Instruction Publique*, Arthur Gaillard unhesitatingly made his choice and Cuvelier entered into his new duties. The next few years were spent in feverish activities not only in accomplishing the duties for which he had been especially recruited but also in disseminating the new ideas which Cuvelier felt should be clearly enunciated for the benefit of the professional archivists and the professional historians. It was with this end in view that a new journal *Archives et Bibliothèques* was started in collaboration with MM. Stainier and Grojean of the Bibliothèque Royal. It is now generally admitted that in their professional duties the archivist and the librarian have much in common. Both of them cater to a special clientele, both of them strive to make the consultations of printed and manuscript materials in their custody as easy as possible. This explains the need of careful classification and analytical and rational inventories. Throughout his life Cuvelier stood for a close coöperation between the archivists and the librarians on the one hand and the

archivists and the historians on the other. He held at this time that the task of an archivist must exclusively be the preparation of a scientific analysis of records which he was to place at the disposal of historians. It was not for him to reconstruct the past or to write history. Thus did he clearly demarcate and define the respective spheres of the archivist and the historian. But he held that their researches were by no means exclusive of each other but complementary. If, however, the archivist was to do his duty efficiently he could not limit his attention to the achievement of his own country alone. He must keep himself informed about the recent advancements in this science made in other countries with a view to improving the standard of archives administration by exchange of experience with colleagues abroad and critical comparison of methods adopted in other lands. He enunciated these principles with exceptional clarity and force in an article which admittedly forms a landmark in the history of the development of the archives science. The ideas then adumbrated by Cuvelier were a novelty but they form to-day the common creed of archivists all over the world.

Having established the necessity of scientific catalogues of archives material Cuvelier embarked on a more ambitious scheme. If it was the duty of the archivist to make his special knowledge readily accessible to the *bona fide* student of history, it followed that an exhaustive work of ready reference embracing all the private and public archives in the country should be compiled for his benefit. Cuvelier therefore prepared 'an Inventory of Inventories'—a *Catalogus Catalogorum* of the entire second section of the General Archives of the State. It was a stupendous task involving an analysis of 500 inventories, many of them unpublished and most of them dating back to the pre-Revolutionary era. It was a work of undoubted value, for it brought for the first time to the notice of the professional historians many important facts and information hitherto unknown. In 1906 he published his "Cartularies of the Abbey of Val-Benoit" based entirely on his personal studies of the records of that small Abbey. The next year he wrote an article in collaboration with his own teacher Professor Henri Pirenne which clearly defined the lines on which smaller records offices should work. The obvious aim of the article was to ensure that all archival assets in the country whether they relate to villages or small hamlets, hospitals or other charitable institutions, churches, clerical establishments or other records-creating agencies should be readily available to the students of history. These ambitions have not yet been achieved in most of the civilized countries and the archival wealth of a State



Archives General of the Kingdom of Belgium—with the office of the Archivist General in the background



Reading room of the Archives General of the Kingdom— former  
Chapel of St. Georges



Country house of Joseph Cuvelier



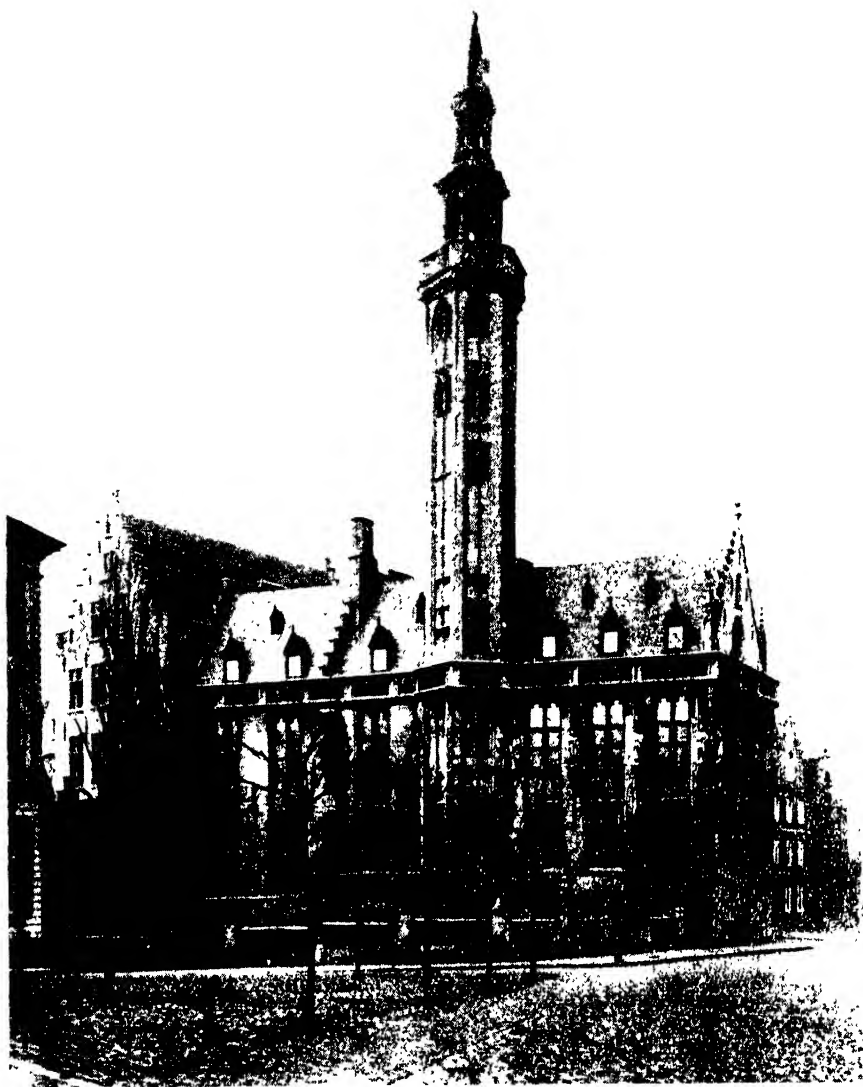
Joseph Cuvelier in his office at Brussels



Provincial Archives of Anvers



Town Hall of Louvain (the building with spines) where Cuvelier worked



Local Archives of Bruges



Bulletin de  
l'É.R.P.

Année VIII 1902

# Contribution

à l'histoire financière et démographique de Louvain  
au moyen âge

par

Joseph Cuvelier

Le registre qui sert de base à cette publication  
avait été catalogué comme suit par l'auteur:  
Mise à jour de l'annuaire de Louvain (depuis 1788)  
N° 1786. Manuel concernant les mesures adoptées  
pour la liquidation de la dette communale 1340  
Il contient le tableau des dépenses d'années  
contributions mises à charge de habitants.

Etant donné de la date, antérieure de cinq  
années, quelques années à l'origine, on  
pourrait s'attendre que ce document n'ait pas  
été plus l'attention de historiens louvainistes.  
L'année 1340 est, en effet, restée méconnue  
dans les annales de la ville. Elle rappelle la grande  
révolte des bourgeois au moment où la police  
assistait en vain, à Louvain. C'était l'époque  
où l'industrie drapière avait atteint son apogée,  
celle où la administration communale se  
préparait à la constitution d'une nouvelle  
municipalité qui quintuplait sa superficie  
et que l'on espérait pour le moins d'étendre  
à son territoire. Le territoire, on le sait,  
fut sérieusement réprimé et aboutit au la-  
issement d'un certain nombre d'habitants.

À ces divers titres, le volume qui porte le  
titre de contribution au développement et d'un certain  
titre au titre de 1340 méritait un  
attachement un certain attachement.

À vrai dire cet ouvrage avait abouti à un  
projet de loi de la constitution qui la date  
indiquée était fautive.

Les paroles de l'auteur qui n'ont pas été  
à l'origine par le R. V. de Louvain - il prouve,  
en effet, qu'il s'agit d'une copie - la lecture du  
document avait prouvé que la date de la  
révolution devait être remplacée d'un certain  
nombre de siècles. Il y est fait allusion, à  
divers reprises, à la date de l'origine en l'absence

(1) Inventaire des archives de la ville de  
Louvain p. 36 / Louvain 1885, tiré d'un  
rapport communal / 78 porte dans le manuscrit  
inventaire de N° 2482

(2) M. Van der Linden, Recherches sur l'histoire de Louvain p. 72

may be

A. Guillaume Julien, marchand à Middelbourg en Hollande le 1<sup>er</sup> 738. le 10 d'oct.  
dudit prié à 40 gros qui deus lui estit pour 120 aunes de drap de laine bleu à 7 d. 6 d.  
l'aune et 120 aunes de blancet à 4 1/2 d. L'aune que monseigneur a fait prandre  
et achete de lui et vendre domes et fait delivrer pour couvrir les pouffes de deux  
galeaches de Rouen que monseigneur a pris en son service pour a servir a ladite cour  
par un par certification dudit monseigneur Jacques de Montmartin, contenant qu'elle a esté  
donnée le 738 104

A Jehan Ysraëlszoon peintre de homme & 9 heures 15 sds 9 deniers de ch. l'ore  
qui de son l'ore estoit pour le commandement a l'ore pour l'ore a l'ore de ch. l'ore  
contient 10 grains d'ore a 2 gros de l'ore de ch. l'ore de ch. l'ore de ch. l'ore  
5 p. de ch. l'ore de ch. l'ore de ch. l'ore de ch. l'ore de ch. l'ore de ch. l'ore  
de ch. l'ore de ch. l'ore de ch. l'ore de ch. l'ore de ch. l'ore de ch. l'ore  
de ch. l'ore de ch. l'ore de ch. l'ore de ch. l'ore de ch. l'ore de ch. l'ore  
de ch. l'ore de ch. l'ore de ch. l'ore de ch. l'ore de ch. l'ore de ch. l'ore

Tout 140 autres personnes jurent aux couleurs de Mgr avec la croix Saint Charles Etienne  
la femme de 105 ans, un tel p. a été au rôle faig et Salazar, du commandement de Mgr  
en divers autres, toutes paires en son temps ou il paye de Tallande pour terre en son d. t.  
armée pour 1000 livres, on dit même Jacques de Montmarçon, la femme de 105.

Donc enterrées parles de draps de laves par Mège a rogaines fait prours et achotter a Middel.  
Droing un Tellante la trouva de 9 l. 17 d. 3 d. d'ent pres avec qui il s'inscul, assom 143  
Autres de drap de lanne blanc dont il a fait les tendes aux droys hautes de droys, naves par  
Mège a prours en son moure, en Tellante pour lui en serous en 15 d'ab armes, et 70 autres de drap de  
lanne blanc dont il a fait les croues d'ent Andes d'ent Andes, assom 26 d'ab de drap blanc  
a 8 l 1 s'achin fait 70 l 12 d, 65 autres de drap bleu a 8 d 9 d. l'achin 28 l. 80 d; Kers 15 l'achin  
de drap bleu a 4 l l'achin fait 8 l. 15 d. 6 d; Item 32 autres de drap blanc a 8 d 6 d. l'achin 13 l. 12 d.



is in most cases still an unknown quantity. But the clear lead that Cuvelier gave has undoubtedly given a new impetus to the preparation of handlists, catalogues and inventories.

In 1907 mainly through Cuvelier's initiative the Belgian Association of Archivists and Librarians was founded. This was followed in 1910 by the "First International Congress of Archivists and Librarians" at Brussels which was to inaugurate the international coöperation for which Cuvelier had so long pleaded. The same year he translated into French in collaboration with Henri Stein the classical manual on archives compiled by Müller, Feith and Fruin. Cuvelier was already a man of international reputation, a recognised authority on archives science and archives administration, an able exponent of the new ideas of international coöperation in matters archival when he was called upon to succeed his old boss Arthur Gaillard as Archivist-General of the State.

Though his experience was long and wide Cuvelier felt that he should have more intimate knowledge of archive management in other countries before he tried to introduce any new reform. The Belgian Government provided him with the necessary facilities and he visited no less than 22 archives depositories in Germany, Austria and Switzerland. The report that he submitted after the completion of his pilgrimage is a classic in itself and has been translated into a number of languages.<sup>1</sup> It defined finally and authoritatively the role of archives and archivists. But that was not all. It stressed the need of reorganising the Belgian Archives in the light of his new experience. It left no branch of archives administration untouched and had something to say about shelving, arrangement, classification, cleaning and restoration of archives and, last but not the least, archival photography. It was at this time that he arranged for the technical training of his staff and the appointment of a chemist to conduct researches into the methods of archives preservation. The establishment of a laboratory was the natural corollary of the chemist's appointment and in 1914 appeared the first number of the *Annuaire des Archives*, a Yearbook which contained a general survey of the archives in Belgium. The yearbook also published the lists of new acquisitions and Cuvelier did his best to bring under state control and protection the small archives of his country. Thus he undertook the salvage of hitherto neglected local records, for the protection of which he had so ardently pleaded in his early youth.

<sup>1</sup> The Report is reproduced in full in this issue *infra* pp. 235-63.

The war of 1914-1918 naturally enforced a lull in Cuvelier's activities but no sooner peace was restored than he resumed his work with renewed vigour. The period between 1919 and 1926 was marked by incessant literary activities. It was during this period that the first volume of his monumental work, *Correspondence of the Court of Spain on the affairs of the Low Countries in the Seventeenth Century* was published. His other notable publications of this period are: *State Archives in Belgium during the War*, *Report on the Belgian archives preserved in Germany and Austro-Hungary which ought to be brought back*, *Ancient arsenals of Belgium*, *A capitalist of the 14th century*, *Origins of the fortune of House of Orange-Nassau*, *Navigability of the river Scheldt towards the end of the 16th century*, *Two autographs of Albert and Isabella*, *Preliminaries of the Treaty of London*, *A bibliographical note on Charles Hirschauer: the States of Ortois from their origin to the French occupation*, *The Chapel of St. George in Brussels*, *Inventory of documents exhibited at the General Archives of the State*, *Report on the conservation of contemporary archives and those of the Ministerial Departments* and *Secret correspondence of Infanta Isabella*, to name only a few. Vast as the volume of his published work was his archival activities during this period were no less remarkable. Not only did he succeed in making new acquisitions to the public depositories but he saved for the posterity many of the war documents of which the archives of Sequestration and those of the Comité National de Secours et d'Alimentation deserve special mention. It was during this period also that Cuvelier realised that an archivist could not remain content with the publication of documents alone which form only a skeleton of history. He realised that the archivist had so many initial advantages over the historian due to his intimate knowledge of the entire body of institutional records that it was his duty to go further and he soon proceeded to give practical demonstration of the validity of his belief. In 1932 he had already completed an inventory of 12,000 documents of the archives of City of Louvain. On this solid foundation was based his masterly studies of the history of that city—*Foundation of Louvain* and *Institutions of Louvain during the Middle Ages*. These two volumes at once earned him a place in the front rank of his country's historians. Subsequently followed further works on the same subject. Nor was this all. First as the Secretary and then President of the Belgian Historical Institute of Rome, Cuvelier expanded the scope of the *Analecta Vaticana-Belgica*

and he included in its survey archival material from all centres in Italy without confining himself to the Vatican records alone bearing on Belgium. His duties frequently took him to Italy and each journey brought him into intimate relation with the archivists and historians of small towns. He formally retired from office in December 1935, but in recognition of his valuable work he was immediately appointed Emeritus Archivist General of the State.

When Cuvelier died on the 29th December, 1947 he had practically completed his task. He had brought about the much needed coöperation between the archivist and the historian, between the archivist and the librarian. He had improved archives organisation of his country and established a convenient basis of coöperation among archivists of all lands. Above all he had established as none before him that archives administration was a science and it had a technique of its own. He worked mainly for the improvement of archives administration in his own country but the principles he laid down, the methods he advocated, the theories he enunciated, admit of no national limit or geographical bounds. They are of universal application. Joseph Cuvelier was certainly one of the greatest men the 20th century has produced.

SURENDRANATH SEN

## JOSEPH CUVELIER : A TRIBUTE

I CAN flatter myself for having enjoyed the friendship of M. Joseph Cuvelier to whom my attachment was due to the same scientific principles, the same professional activity, and the same ideas that both of us pursued. He was a true master who knew how to inspire his pupils as well as his staff by his own example, instruction and advice. I know what great things he accomplished after his country had been invaded and the country's archives had been thrown into confusion by ignorant and brutal soldiers with or without rank. I know with what energy he succeeded in repairing the damages done and making the archives more known and more accessible to the public. There is, one may say, not even a single item among the main series of records at the General Archives, Belgium, which lacks today its printed inventory. The enormous number of publications brought out by himself or by his colleagues as well as the rapidly increasing number of applicants for the Course of Archive-Economy started by him place Belgium today among the countries most renowned in archival matters.

EUGENIO CASANOVA

# A BIBLIOGRAPHY OF JOSEPH CUVELIER\*

## Abbreviations

- R. I. P.: Revue de l'Instruction Publique (Review of Public Instruction).  
 R. B. A. B.: Revue des Bibliothèques et Archives de Belgique (Review of Belgian Libraries and Archives).  
 Bul. C. R. H.: Bulletin de la Commission Royale d'Histoire de Belgique—(Bulletin of the Royal Commission of History of Belgium).  
 N. A.: Nederlandsche Archivenblad: (Dutch Bulletin of Archives).  
 B. A. A. B. B.: Bulletin de l'Association des Archivistes et Bibliothécaires belges (Bulletin of the Association of Belgian Archivists and Librarians).  
 A. R. B.: Académie Royale de Belgique (Royal Academy of Belgium).  
 K. Vl. Ac.: Académie Royale Flamande. (Royal Academy of Flanders).  
 I. H. B. R.: Institut Historique Belge de Rome (Belgian Historical Institute of Rome).

1891. Geschiedkundige schetsen over de stad Bilsen (Aperçu historique sur la ville de Bilsen). Bilsen, L. Simoens-Thomas.
- 1892-93. Wat er ontbreekt aan onze Limburgsche geschiedenis<sup>1</sup>—(Ce qui manque à notre histoire du Limbourg—I) *Limburgsch Jaarboek*, le boek, pp. 50-55, Bilsen, Bollen et Simoens.
- 1893-94. Wat er ontbreekt aan onze Limburgsche geschiedenis II. Plaatsnaamkunde (Ce qui manque à notre histoire du Limbourg—II. Science des noms de lieu). *Limburgsch Jaarboek*, 2e boek, pp. 5-12, Bilsen, Bollen et Simoens.
- 1894-95. Een kijkje in de goederenverdeeling op het einde der 18e eeuw in een onzer Limburgsche gemeenten (Bilsen). (Aperçu sur la distribution des lieux à la fin du 18<sup>ème</sup> siècle dans l'une de nos communes du Limbourg, Bilsen). *Limburgsch Jaarboek*, 3e boek, pp. 5-30, Bilsen, Bollen et Simoens.
- 1895-96. De Melophielen van Hasselt<sup>2</sup> (Les Melophiles d' Hasselt) *Limburgsch Jaarboek*, 3e boek, pp. 5-30, Bilsen, Bollen et Simoens.
1897. Toponymische Studie over de oude en de nieu were plaatsnamen der Gemeente Bilsen (Etude toponymique sur les anciens et nouveaux noms de lieu de la commune de Bilsen), in collaboration with Camille Huysmans, Gand A. Siffer.

\* The titles in Flemish have been provided with a French rendering.

<sup>1</sup> Etude économique et bibliographique.

<sup>2</sup> Contient la bibliographie des volumes I à 30 du *Bulletin de la société littéraire des Melophiles de Hasselt*.



1898. La garde-robe, les bijoux et le mobilier d'une patricienne flamande sous le règne de Charles-Quint. *Bul. R.H.*, t. VIII, no 2, 5e série, pp. 173-192.  
Nécrologe des PP. Jésuites dans les Pays-Bas du XVIe au commencement du XVIIIe siècle. *Analectes pour servir à l'histoire ecclésiastique de la Belgique*, t. 27, pp. 5-84, Louvain.
1899. Archives et Archivistes. *R. I. P.*, t. XLII, 13 pp. Bruxelles, H. Lamertin.
1900. Inventaire Analytique des Archives de la Chapelle du St-Sang à Bruges précédé d'une notice historique sur la Chapelle. *Annales de société d'Emulation pour l'étude de l'histoire et des antiquités de la Flandre*. Bruges, L. de Plancke.
1901. De reis van Josef II in de Nederlanden (Le voyage de Josef II aux Pays Bas) [*Tijdschrift van het Willemsfonds*, pp. 150-172, Gand Vuylsteke].
1902. "Ale Chayne", Contribution à l'histoire des origines des institutions judiciaires. *Bul. C. R. H.*, t. LXXI, no 2, pp. 173-195, Bruxelles, Weissenbruch.  
Notes pour servir à la biographie et à l'étude critique de l'œuvre de Jacques de Hemricourt 1333-1403. *Bul. C.R.H.*, t. LXXI, no 3, pp. 260-274, Bruxelles, Weissenbruch.  
Inventaire des Archives de l'Abbaye du Val-Benoit lez Liège de l'Ordre de Cîteaux. *Bulletin de l'institut archéologique liégeois*, t. XXX, pp. 1-706, Liège L. de Thier.  
L'histoire d'une ville dans ses sceaux *Bulletin de la société scientifique et littéraire des Melophiles*, t. 37, p. 11-55, Hasselt, W. Klock.
1903. Les Archives de la Grande Commanderie de l'ordre teuto-nique des Vieux-Jons conservées à Düsseldorf. *Bul. C.R.H.*, t. LXXI, no 4, pp. 275-282, Bruxelles, Weissenbruch.  
Les Archives, *R.B.A.B.*, t. I, fasc. 1, pp. 6-22, Renaix, Leherte-Courtin.  
Le nouveau règlement des Archives Communales de Bruges. *R.B.A.B.*, t. I, fasc. 5, pp. 221-226, fasc. 5, pp. 353-360, Renaix, Leherte-Courtin.  
Répertoire méthodique des publications d'archives et de manuscrits en 1902. *R.B.A.B.*, t. I, fasc. 3, pp. 221-226, fasc. 5 pp. 353-360, Renaix, Leherte-Courtin.

1903. Plante (François). *Biographie Nationale*, t. XVII, col. 737-740.
1904. La réorganisation des Archives en France. *R.B.A.B.*, t. II, fasc. 3, pp. 176-190. Renaix, Leherste-Courtin. *La correspondance historique et archéologique*, t. 11, Septembre 1904, pp. 257-271 (Réimpression). Paris, Fontemoing, et partiellement dans *Bibliothèque de l'école des Chartes*, sous le titre: Opinion d'un savant belge sur l'école des Chartes, t. LXV (1904), pp. 675-680, Paris, A. Picard.
- Inventaire des Inventaires de la 2<sup>e</sup> section des Archives Générales du Royaume. Bruxelles, Weissenbruch.
- Une archiviste du XVI<sup>e</sup> Siècle, *Mélangés Paul Frédéricq*, pp. 295-305. Bruxelles, Lamertin.
- Répertoire méthodique des publications d'archives et de manuscrits en 1903. *R.B.A.B.*, t. II, fasc. 5, pp. 404-417.
1905. Porrey (Arnold). *Biographie Nationale* t. 18 col. 66-67
- |                                |   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Prats (Martin) évêque d'Ypres. | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{id. t. 18 col. 199-202} \\ \text{id. t. 18 col. 246-248} \\ \text{id. t. 18 col. 711-728} \end{array} \right\}$ |
| Priem (J.P.J.) arch. à Bruges. |   |
| Rapedius de Berg, polygraphe.  |   |
- Exposition universelle et internationale de Liège section belge Archives de l'Etat. Les Archives, Bruxelles, Hayez.
- Wereldtentoonstelling te Luik. Belgische afdeeling-Staatsarchief. (Exposition Internationale de Liège-Section belge —Archive de l'Etat-Les Archives) De Archieven. Bruxelles, Hayez.
- Premier avant-projet de reconstitution d'un tournoi de Chevalerie présenté à la section militaire de la commission nationale des fêtes, avec l'approbation du lieutenant colonel de Witte. Bruxelles, Hayez.
- Scénario du Tournoi de Chevalerie représenté dans le grand hall du Cinquantenaire. Bruxelles, juillet, août 1905. Jette-Bruxelles, Van Damme et Cie.
- Les Petites Archives (in collaboration with Henri Pirenne). *R.B.A.B.*, t. III, fasc. 3, pp. 196-216. Bruxelles, Misch et Thron.
- Repertoire méthodique des publications d'archives et de manuscrits en 1904. *R.B.A.B.*, t. III, fasc. 5, pp. 424-431, fasc. 6, pp. 519-525. Bruxelles, Misch et Thron.
1906. Cartulaire de l'Abbaye du Val-Benoit. Bruxelles, Hayez.

1906. Les Archives autrichiennes. *R.B.A.B.*, t. IV, fasc. 3, pp. 178-200. Bruxelles, Misch et Thron.
- L'éducation des Archivistes. *R.B.A.B.*, t. IV, fasc. 1, pp. 42-47. Bruxelles, Misch et Thron.
- La matrice du sceau de Baudouin IV, comte de Flandre (988-1035). *R.B.A.B.*, t. IV, fasc. 5-6, pp. 372-383.
- Le Tournoi de Chevalerie. *Le Jubilé national* par A. Rouvez, p. 123-164.
- Rapport sur les documents relatifs aux anciens Etats généraux des Pays-Bas conservés aux Archives générales du Royaume à Bruxelles. *Bul. C.R.H.*, t. LXXV, pp. XXXVIII-LXVIII. Bruxelles, Weissenbruch.
- Renaud de Fauquemont.
- Biographie Nationale* t. 19 col. 78-87.
- Renesse (Cte de) sénateur id. t. 19 col. 104-105.
- Résimont (Jean de) id. t. 19 col. 162-163.
1907. La matrice du sceau de Baudouin IX, comte de Flandre 988-1035. Note complémentaire. *R.B.A.B.*, t. V, fasc. 1, pp. 25-26. Bruxelles, Misch et Thron.
- L'obituaire de Doorezeele. *R.B.A.B.*, t. V, fasc. 1, pp. 22-24. Bruxelles, Misch et Thron.
- Les petites archives. Rapport présenté au Congrès historique et archéologique de Gand, août 1907. Gand, Siffer.
- Avant Jenner. (*R.I.P.*, t. L. pp. 361-371).
- Le programme des archivistes. *R.B.A.B.*, t. V. pp. 86-91.
- Rodolphe de Beeringhen. *Bibliographie Nationale*, t. 19.
- Le fouage brabançon de 1374. *Bul. C.R.H.*, t. 76, pp. 537-547.
1908. Pierre Roose, chef au Conseil privé. *Bibliographie Nationale*, t. 20, col. 49-78.
- Rapport sur les documents relatifs aux anciens Etats Généraux des Pays Bas, conservés dans les Archives de la Hollande. *Bul. C.R.H.*, t. 77. LXII—LXXII.
- La population de Louvain aux XVI<sup>ème</sup> et XVII<sup>ème</sup> Siècles. *B.A. A.B.B.*, t. 22, pp. 337-376.
- Les archives au point de vue de la documentation et les inventaires d'archives. *Conférence internationale de documentation et de bibliographie*, 1908.
- Gachard et la compagnie belge de colonisation du Guatemala en 1841. *Mélanges Godefroid Kurth*, t. 1, pp. 425-431.

1908. De opleiding van archivariissen (La formation des Archivistes). *Comptes rendus du 29<sup>ème</sup> Congrès Néerlandais*. t. I, p. 53 et t. II, pp. 187-189 et 202 à 207.
1909. Het nieuwe Staatsarchief te Antwerpen (Le nouveau dépôt d'archives de l'Etat à Anvers). *N.A.* t. 17, pp. 101-106.  
 Deux chartes de l'Abbaye d'Oudenbourg de 1130-1161. Etude Diplomatique. *Album belge de Diplomatie*. No. XI et XX.  
 La construction des dépôts d'archives. *Le bibliographie moderne*, t. 13, pp. 241-261.  
 Rapport sur les documents relatifs aux anciens Etats Généraux des Pays Bas conservés dans les Archives du Nord de la France (in collaboration with Henri Pirenne). *Bul. C.R.H.*, t. 79, pp. IX-XIII.
1910. La préparation des archivistes. *Actes du Congrès International des Archivistes et Bibliothécaires*, pp. 301-306.  
 De la conservation des archives modernes. *B.A.A.B.B.*, 1910, pp. 2-7.  
 De la nécessité des versements des archives courantes dans les archives anciennes. *Congrès International des Sciences Administratives*, pp. 1-6.  
 Le 9<sup>ème</sup> Archivtag allemand à Worms 8-9-1909. *B.A.A.B.B.*, 1910, pp. 13-17.  
 Manuel pour le classement et la description des archives (in collaboration with Stein) La Haye.  
 Examen des vœux émis par les 1<sup>ère</sup> et 3<sup>ème</sup> section du Congrès International des Archivistes et Bibliothécaires. *B.A.A.B.B.*, 1910, pp. 32-41.  
 Rapport sur la situation de l'Association des Archivistes et Bibliothécaires Belges en 1910. *B.A.A.B.B.*, 1911, pp. 37-43 et 1912, pp. 31-38.
1911. Le rôle des archives.  
 Chronologische gi.suig. *N.A.*, t. 19, p. 163.
1912. Chez nos voisins du Nord. *B.A.A.B.B.*, 1912, pp. 5-9.  
 De Bietsbauw *Rapports de l'Académie Royale Flumande*, 1912, pp. 159-162.  
 Le commerce et l'industrie des Pays Bas autrichiens au commencement du XVIII<sup>e</sup> Siècle. Enquête du Comte Wynants. *Bul. C.R.H.*, t. 81, pp. 27-52.

1912. Rapport des secrétaires généraux sur les travaux préparatoires au Congrès International des Archivistes et Bibliothécaires. (*Actes du Congrès*, t. 1, pp. 606-610).  
 Les dénombrements de foyers dans le duché de Brabant du XIV<sup>ème</sup> au XVI<sup>ème</sup> Siècle. (*Bul. C.R.H.*).  
 De tapijtwerkers van Brussel in het begin der XV de eeuw (Les fabricants de tapisseries à Bruxelles au début du 15<sup>ème</sup> Siècle) *Communications de l'Académie Royale Flamande*, pp. 373-414.
1913. La ville au XVII<sup>ème</sup> Siècle. (Trésor de l'art belge). *Mémorial de l'Exposition d'Art Ancien à Bruxelles en 1910*, t. II, pp. 155-170.  
 Les fouages au XV<sup>ème</sup> Siècle dans le quartier de Bois-le-duc. *Bul. C.R.H.*, t. LXXXII, pp. 97-110.  
 Les dénombrements de foyers en Brabant au XV<sup>ème</sup> et XVI<sup>ème</sup> Siècles. Table onomastique. *Bul. C.R.H.*, t. LXXXII.
1914. Les archives de l'état en Belgique.  
 Les archives allemandes, autrichiennes et suisses (dans *les Archives de l'état en Belgique*, pp. 437-470).
1917. Le livre de raison d'Adam Pierre de la Grené (Maître à danser). Compte rendu de conférence, *Annales de l'Association des Bibliophiles et Teonophiles de Belgique*, pp. 113-116.
1919. Rapport sur les archives belges conservés au Allemagne et en Autriche Hongrie et qu'il y aurait lieu de revendiquer. *Bul. C.R.H.*, t. 84, pp. 28-35.  
 Idem. *Bul. de l'Académie Royale de Belgique, Classes des lettres*, 1919, no. 4, pp. 255-269.  
 A propos de l'ancien arsenal de Bruxelles. *Mélanges Camille de Borman*, pp. 379-382.  
 Discours prononcé à la C.R.H., sur M. de Borman. *Bul. C.R.H.*, t. 84, pp. 21-31.  
 Les archives de l'état en Belgique pendant la guerre 1914-1918.
1920. British and allied archives during the war. *Transactions of the Royal Historical Society* 4<sup>ème</sup> Série, t. III, p. 4, Q. 15.  
 Discours prononcé au nom de la C.R.H. aux funérailles de Paul Frédéricq. *Bul. C.R.H.*, t. 94, pp. XLII-XLIII.
1921. Notice sur Piot. *Annuaire A.R.B.*, t. 87, pp. 159-216.

1921. L'invasion allemande en Belgique, t. II de l'ouvrage: *La Belgique et la guerre*.  
Sire Jacob. *Biographie Nationale*, t. XXII, pp. 640-643.  
Un capitaliste du XIV<sup>ème</sup> Siècle. *Bul. A.R.B., Classe des Lettres*, no. 2, p. 46.  
Les origines de la fortune de la maison d'Orange-Nassau. *Mémoires de l' A.R.B., Classe des Lettres 2<sup>ème</sup> Série*, t. XVI.
1922. Deux autographes d'Albert et Isabelle, *Revue Latine*, t. V, p. 30-33.  
Les premières académies belges (in collaboration with le Comte d'Arschot). *Revue Latine*, t. V, p. 70-78.
1923. Correspondance de la Cour d'Espagne sur les affaires des Pays Bas au XVII<sup>ème</sup> Siècle (in collaboration with H. Louchay). 6 volumes.  
Les préliminaires du traité de Londres. *Revue belge de philologie et d'histoire*, 1923, pp. 279-304, avril et 485-508, juillet.  
Rapport d'un recueil de traites de la Belgique. *Bulletin de la Commission des anciennes lois et ordonnance de Belgique*, Vol. XI, fasc. 6.  
Note bibliographique sur Charles Hirschauer: les États d'Ortois de leurs origines à l'occupation française. *Bul. A.R.B., Classe des Lettres*, pp. 201-209.  
Un voyage princier en Belgique au XVII<sup>ème</sup> Siècle. *Bulletin Touring Club*, 1923.
1924. Notice sur Stanislas Borman. *Bul. A.R.B.*, 1924.  
Inventaire des documents exposés aux Archives Générales du Royaume Llanos y Torriglia; noticia de "Deux Journées Espagnoles" Celebrados in Brusselos, *Bul. de la Real Académie*, Madrid.  
De bevaarbaarheid der Schelde op het einde der XVI<sup>e</sup> eeuw (La navigabilité de l'Escaut à la fin du XVI<sup>ème</sup> Siècle). *Rapports de l'Académie Royale Flamande*, pp. 427-445.  
La Chapelle S. Georges à Bruxelles. *Illustration de la Belgique du Grand-Duché de Luxembourg et de la Colonie*.  
Rapport sur la question "On demande une étude sur les Ministérielles en Flandre et en Lotharingie". *Bul. A.R.B., 5<sup>ème</sup> Série*, t.X, pp. 100-104.

1924. La clientèle d'un maître à danser à Bruxelles au XVII<sup>ème</sup> Siècle (in collaboration with le Comte d'Arschot). *Revue Belge*, t. IV, pp. 520-532.
1925. Un mipot au temps du duc d'Albe. *id.*, t. XI, pp. 57-75.  
 Note bibliographique sur F. Maguette. *id.* pp. 11-12.  
 Rapport sur la conservation des archives contemporaines et de celles des départements ministériels. *Bul. C.R.H.*, t. 89, pp. II-IX.
1926. La correspondance secrète de l'infante Isabelle. *Bul. Institut Historique Belge de Rome*, Fasc. IV, pp. 103-120.  
 Verslag over eene studie van D. U. FRIS (Rapport au sujet d'une étude de D. U. Fris). *Rapports de l'Académie Royale Flamande*, pp. 440-447.  
 Les négociations diplomatiques de Roosendaël 1627-1630. *Mélanges Henri Pirenne*, t. I, pp. 73-83.  
 Un récit de voyage inédit au XVII<sup>ème</sup> Siècle. *Bul. Institut Historique Belge de Rome*.
1927. Voyage du Cardinal Rosetti en Belgique en 1611. *Bul. A.R.B.*, pp. 13-38.  
 Le drapeau de la Belgique Lecture faite à l' A.R.B., 4 mai 1927. *Bul.* pp. 234-260, *id. Revue Psyché*.  
 Bulletin de la Commission de Toponymie et de dialectologie.  
 Note bibliographique, *Bul. A.R.B.*, pp. 435-436.
1928. Les archives en Belgique pendant la guerre. *Revue belge de philosophie et d'histoire*. t. VII, pp. 1013-1026.  
 Bijdrage tot de kennis van den toestand van het hooger onderwijs in België in het midden van de 16<sup>de</sup> E. (Contribution à la connaissance de la situation de l'enseignement supérieur en Belgique au milieu de 16<sup>ème</sup> Siècle). *Bulletin de l'Académie Royale Flamande* Mai 1928, pp. 465-481.  
 Eene Oubekende rijvkvrijk van het begin der XIVE (Une chronique rimée inconnue du début du XIV<sup>ème</sup> Siècle). *id.* Novembre 1928, pp. 1039-1053.
1929. Un nouveau manuel d'archivistique: Eugenio Casanova archivistica. *B.A.A.B.B.*, April 1929, pp. 9-57.  
 Un dernier mot sur les archives pendant la guerre. *id.* 1929 juillet.  
 Matériaux toponymiques aux Archives de l'Etat. *Bul. Commission de Toponymie*, t. III, pp. 29-53.

1930. Rond van B. Van Helmout's burgerlijke Stand (Du sujet de l'état civil de B. Van Helmout). *Bul. Académie Royale Flamande*. Mars, pp. 423-476.  
Honderd jaar historiographie (Cent ans d'historiographie). *id.* septembre.
1932. Inventaire des archives de Louvain, 1 volumes.
1933. La formation de Louvain ; des origines à la fin au XII<sup>ème</sup> Siècle.  
Les institutions de Louvain au Moyen Age.
1934. Gachard en de Koninklijke commissie voor geschiedenis (Gachard et la Commission Royale d'Histoire). *Bul. C.B.H.*
1935. De corsprong der Leuvensche geslachten (L'origine des noms de lieu à Louvain). *Bul. de l'Académie Royale Flamande*. Mars. pp. 127-169.  
Guide international des Archives - Notes bibliographiques. *Bul. A.R.B.*, 5<sup>ème</sup> Série. t. XXI, no 1-2.  
Les ancêtres du Livre. Mémoire de l'Exposition du Livre. *Exp. Internationale des Beaux Arts de Bruxelles*, pp. 27-29.  
Travaux du cours pratique d'archivéconomie données pendant les années 1920 à 1935.
1936. Le Graveur Corneille Van den Bossche au XVI<sup>ème</sup> Siècle. Henri Pirenne. *Bul. I.H.B.R.*, t. XVII, pp. 319.
1937. Een viertal oubekende werken van de Brusselsche 15<sup>e</sup> Rederykers Colyn en Smeken en van de Bruggeling Wilhelmus de Rosen. (Quatre ouvrages inconnus des rhétoriciens Brussellois du 15<sup>ème</sup> Siècle. Colyn et Smeken et du Brugeois Guillaume de Rosen). *Bul. de l'Académie Royale Flamande*.
1942. Documents inédits des Institutions de Louvain au Moyen Age.  
Le redressement des finances de la Belgique au XVIII<sup>ème</sup> Siècle.
1943. Contribution à l'histoire financière et démographique de Louvain au Moyen Age. *Bul. C.R.H.*, t. CVIII.
1946. La confrérie des instrumentistes de Bruxelles sous l'ancien régime.
1948. Actes des Etats Généraux aux anciens Pays-Bas t. I, de 1429 à 1474. (with the collaboration of Dhont and Dochaert).



## MOLIERE AND ARCHIVES

ARCHIVISTS (a diminishing company, I am afraid) who like myself can recollect visits to the Archives du Royaume at Brussels which included a call upon Joseph Cuvelier in his Office by the Rue Montagne de la Cour must be glad of an opportunity to recall the friendly welcome that always awaited one, the deaf head bent so carefully to catch what the visitor might have to say, the friendly gossip (in days when international connexions were not what they are now) about recent happenings in our common *métier*, the news of what the Director himself had been doing with some seminar of Students working upon Belgian Archives, and his keen interest in the proceedings of Colleagues in other Countries. Apart from these memories my own thought, when his name is mentioned, goes always to a Lecture he delivered in Brussels (about 1911, I think) which I discovered almost by chance and in which he made what seemed to me a singularly illuminating quotation from the scene in Molière's Play when Monsieur Jourdain, having had the meaning of the word 'Prose' explained to him, discovers to his delight that he has been composing prose all his life without being aware of the fact.<sup>1</sup> It is a slight theme on which to base a note dedicated to the memory of an old friend and colleague and the note will be correspondingly brief: but that need be no disadvantage; and the application given by Cuvelier to his citation seemed to me at the time (and indeed seems now) of basic importance.

That application was, of course, that in an age when writing had become general in use, most of the audience who were listening to the Lecturer's exposition of the nature of Archives were probably themselves compilers of Archives though they might not be aware of it. The fact, with something of what it entails, is much more a matter of general knowledge in 1951 than it was in 1911; and I dare say many Archivists since Cuvelier have used his apt citation: I must confess to having done so myself on a number of occasions. But I think its usefulness is not yet exhausted: and indeed one finds still many compilers of Archives—even Archives of an important character—who are surprised to learn that their documentary accumulations are considered to be of the same nature as those of a Public Department and may have a like, if more restricted, value for future Students.

<sup>1</sup> "Par ma foi, il y a quarante ans que je dis de la prose, sans que j'en sçusse rien": *'Le Bourgeois Gentilhomme'*, Act II, Scene vi.

Larger still is the number of persons who fail to realise the inferences which may be drawn from this essential unity of character in Archives of every denomination and date: from the fact that a single simple definition covers alike the papers accumulated by a land-owner in the management of his Estate, or a business or professional man pursuing his avocation, or the most every-day individual arranging in an orderly way the *Correspondence*, *Accounts* and *Memoranda* in his desk, and those which result from the activities of a Ministry, a County Council or the Directorate of some great Institution or Undertaking. Yet this fact governs or should govern the whole of our approach to Archives from whatever angle we come at them—conservation (or elimination), repair, cataloguing or research and (most important of all) custody, that *differentia* between the Archive and the mere Document. It also governs or should govern the training of the professional Archivist. The vocational part of his study may vary (if he is sure that he will continue throughout his career to be occupied with the same type of Archives) upon considerations of the age, language, writing, materials, location and so forth of the Documents with which he will deal: but the manner of his proceeding, the principles upon which his treatment is based, his point of view—these do not vary: so far as they are concerned the Archivist who has had his training and gained his experience in the medieval Archives of a Central Government will be equally at home in dealing with the Documents accumulated in the Office of an Industrial Organisation or the Strong Room of a Solicitor or the Registry of an Academic Body. That is a fact which even Archivists do not as yet appreciate in all cases.

One thing more and I have done with divagations from my simple initial theme. Monsieur Jourdain had not only been making prose for forty years—he had been one of a large number who made it without knowing that they were doing so. Now anyone who has had much to do with the researches pursued in a considerable Record Office knows that in a great majority of cases the Record is used not only for a purpose which is not that for which it was compiled, but in an interest of which the compiler had no idea—very often the mere possibility of which would have surprised him exceedingly if he could have been told of it. Any one of the Documents used in Shakespearean research will supply an illustration: most certainly their compilers would have been astounded if they could have foreseen the use to which these would be put and the value which would be attached to them, 300 years later. That unself-consciousness of

the Archive is of course one of its most valuable characteristics, for it guarantees us against any attempt on the part of the compiler to deceive us: and it is a question often asked by Students whether this quality does in fact exist in modern Archives to the same extent as in those of the past.

From this point of view Archives may be roughly divided into two groups. On the one side are those of the Accounting or Minute type which carry with them, owing to the method in which they are generally known to have been compiled—the *Accounts* periodically audited, the *Minutes* regularly checked and signed—a certain presumption that they are complete so far as they go and have not been garbled. They may have fallen below older standards (many Accounting Records certainly have<sup>2</sup>) in respect of clarity, outward form and the fulness of information given “but in other ways we perceive no change”. On the other side—that of *Correspondence*—the tale is very different: indeed deterioration is almost inevitable in an age when the writers of important communications realise that their correspondence may be exposed not only to unfriendly eyes in the near future but to the critical interpretations of more distant Historians. There is no doubt that the persistent diversion of *State Papers* (in all Countries and all periods) into the Private Muniments of the men who made them, or alternatively the use of the private letter to qualify the official despatch, are largely due to this cause: and though Correspondence at a lower level may be held to be free from the temptations which assail the higher, they are not immune from the effects of other modern improvements—easy transport and the telephone, which facilitate the substitution of un-recorded conversation for written words; and easy multiplication of writing by mechanical means which makes the words in other cases so numerous that they begin to lose their meaning.

On the whole the Archivist must regretfully conclude that while the volume of ‘Prose’ has monstrously increased in modern times its value as a permanent contribution to knowledge in the form of Archives (unless quantity makes up for quality) is on the decline. We are falling below the standard of Monsieur Jourdain.

HILARY JENKINSON

<sup>2</sup> From the point of view of research many of the Series which now usurp the honourable title of *Ledgers* are deplorable affairs.

## NOTE ON SOME MINOR RECORDS AS MATERIALS FOR HISTORY

A DISTINGUISHED and even illustrious English scholar, the late Dr. Joseph Armitage Robinson, Dean in turn of Westminster Abbey and of Wells Cathedral, devoted the leisure of his later years to the accumulation of data for the elucidation of problems in the ecclesiastical history especially of Somersetshire, one of the most interesting as it is also one of the most beautiful of English counties. 'I am not,' he used modestly to explain, 'an historian, but only a patient collector of materials from which some one will perhaps be able sooner or later to write History.' Such work is invaluable and merits greater recognition than it commonly obtains; for a trained observer of high technical skill who gives himself to such pursuits is to be regarded as far more than a 'snapper up of unconsidered trifles,' and it was a short sighted as well as somewhat ungenerous critic who used to complain to the long-suffering Editor of a learned quarterly review about the readiness with which he allowed the Dean to "empty into articles for the review the contents of his notebooks." The mere fact of bringing such materials together in a connected form may easily give the necessary articulation to what could otherwise be regarded as 'disjecta membra', and as the process is continued in relation to different areas comparisons begin to suggest themselves and light is thrown upon the origin of customs and even upon the development of institutions. This last feature is a matter of some importance as well as interest, since in England as elsewhere the inter-relation of religious and secular factors even from pre-Christian times is closer than is often suspected, and the life of a little community may be found to have a continuous existence surviving many purely secular changes.

Of course conclusions of this kind, if they are to rest upon anything like a secure foundation, pre-suppose much more than a faculty for making brilliant guesses. We are all of us familiar with the jest: 'I don't know anything about the subject. I have not even lectured upon it,' just as some of us recall the dictum of Archbishop Whately that a fallacy which stated in four lines would not deceive a child may delude a multitude when dilated in a quarto volume. And it is not always remembered that the triumphant exclamation 'What does that prove?' can have little justification until and unless it has been accurately ascertained what exactly *that* is, and what is its relation to a series of other 'facts' with which it needs to be

co-ordinated. This is likely to be a warning especially necessary to be borne in mind in regard to fields of history where religious and/or political prejudices have either been determining influences or may be likely to suggest themselves as guides to interpretation. To ascertain *what* happened in a particular case may be difficult enough, as anyone may judge who sits himself to examine with scrupulous care all the evidence available; but to ascertain *why* it happened may prove a baffling task even to the most completely detached observer whether contemporary or belonging to a later age. And if he concludes at times that his evidence proves too little, at others he may be led to think that it seems to prove too much. In that case he will do well to consider whether the fault be in his observation or in his reasoning or in both. Rarely, however, will he find ground for complaint that the materials at his disposal are too large in bulk or too multifarious in content especially if his interest be in a period remote from his own day.

The late Lord Morley is reported once to have reflected caustically at a meeting of the Trustees of the British Museum upon the supposed 'imperative necessity for preserving that which it was never worthwhile to produce.' But any custodian of 'records of the past' may be excused if he hesitates to advocate or to sanction the destruction of anything for the continued existence of which at any rate some plausible arguments can be advanced, especially in cases where the distribution of records of local interest for custody in local repositories may both relieve pressure and congestion at the centre and serve to stimulate interest over a wider area. In any case the mere fact that a document has been, or is supposed to have been, entered in a register somewhere should not in itself be regarded as rendering its preservation superfluous. In England at any rate there are very few mediaeval or even modern registers whether provincial, diocesan or parochial, to any one of which a professional student could conscientiously give a certificate that to the best of his knowledge and belief it includes all that it ought to have included or is wholly free from mistakes. And the modern researcher in a provincial or diocesan registry has often unfeigned reason to rejoice at the preservation of fee books, subscription books, visitation returns and presentments which serve not merely to eke out but even in some cases to establish conclusively some inference of historical importance.

Reference was made above to the stimulation of local interest, and in this connexion a tribute is due to the enterprise of County Record Societies which have done so much especially during the last

three quarters of a century to place in printed form at the disposal of students documents of local interest which but for their exertions might easily have perished. Like the invaluable volumes of the *Victoria County History*, based on these and similar records both secular and religious, such publications throw a flood of light on the domestic history and local organization of the different parts of England from age to age. At present such publication is greatly hampered by the high cost of printing and paper and binding and it is worthy of consideration whether a small grant of one hundred or two hundred pounds from national funds to each duly qualified organization for the purpose would not be repaid many times over by the resulting gain to students who profit by their voluntary labours. It can hardly fail to strike any one who examines the list of subscribers to one of the smaller of these societies that three out of every eight of these subscribers are libraries, but it is a testimony to the high standard of the work achieved that among those libraries are included some of the most famous in all parts of the world. The reason, one may venture to think, is that for those who have eyes to see and the necessary background of knowledge to enable them to interpret what they see in its proper relations the past lives again. To take a single class of documents to which reference has already been made as an example—the Visitation Returns which survive from the sixteenth, seventeenth or eighteenth centuries. Here the student may find not only illustrations of legal procedure (which may or may not be interesting but are often important) but also vignettes of episodes grave and gay in rural and town life which at least in some cases exhibit local conditions, customs and not infrequently superstitions in vivid relief. And those to whom they may appear humdrum and trivial may be reminded, since they are scarcely likely to remind themselves, of a famous review by Sir Walter Scott of Jane Austen in which he said that ‘keeping close to common incidents and to such characters as occupy the common walks of life, she has produced sketches of such spirit and originality that we never miss the excitation which depends upon a narrative of uncommon events’. Certainly no reader of her works would guess that her life of little more than forty years was one of the most fateful periods of modern history nor, save from one or at most two references, that the still briefer span of her literary activity included the culmination of the struggle with Napoleon. Yet it may be suggested with some confidence that our understanding of the age could be noticeably the poorer without her novels. Similarly the ‘excitation which depends upon a

narrative of uncommon events' can seldom be expected from ecclesiastical records. In regard to some which belong to the highest class it would be easy to complain that the important personages whose official acts are recorded are made to exhibit singularly little individuality. No one would guess from Cardinal Morton's register as Archbishop of Canterbury how various and even exciting were the incidents of his career nor even perhaps that he had also to fill the office of Chancellor any more than Bishop Juxon's register would throw light on his other interesting and even important activities as Lord Treasurer, the last future Archbishop of Canterbury to hold that office or indeed any other great office of state. No doubt the summary of a man's official acts will always tell the later student something of the character and functions of his office during the period at which he lived, and even, if selections from his correspondence be included, give an occasional insight into his personality. But as a rule we must descend to 'lower' strata of records if we would step outside the official atmosphere. 'It is in these that will be found the corrective, if also in part the justification, of some of the brilliant generalisations of modern writers on English Social History and the corrective is perhaps the more necessary when the generalisations are associated with political and/or religious labels which the student of human nature will do well always to regard with somewhat jealous scrutiny, especially when the labels are fastened on with literary artistry of the highest order. Let us then be thankful that enough still survives to shew us something of English communal life in past ages with its care for local boundaries and its jealousy for local customs associated (sometimes at other people's expense) with their maintenance; with its observance of local festivities and the social and religious sanctions connected with them; with its moral standards exemplified and vindicated at times somewhat harshly according to modern ideas, and even though the evidences may come down to us as supplied in accordance with official requirements *ab extra* yet leaving, as the modern student examines them over a wide area, the definite impression of something spontaneous rather than artificial, the acts and monuments it may be of Little Pedlington but none the less veridical and authentic. The genius of an Addison may bring before our minds one type of rural economy, but the variety of these isolated records is itself a warning of the danger of too hasty assimilation when the evidences from a whole county or diocese fail to supply anything more than one or two examples which can be regarded as in any real sense comparable.

*Sed quorsum haec pertinent?* And what relevance can be attributed to what may not unfairly be regarded as obviously casual observations in any context in which they are likely to find themselves. The answer that may be hoped for is that since the problems with which they are concerned are not confined to a single type of documents in a single area so the tentative solutions and the possible cautions which the statement of them suggests may possibly be found capable of a wider application. 'The heart knoweth its own bitterness,' and the heart of the archivist must often be torn by the struggle to make the practically possible conform as nearly as may be to the ideally desirable. The late Mr. Ramsay MacDonald addressing when Prime Minister a large gathering of historical students once said in the present writer's hearing in regard to documents of the seventeenth century that they should all of them be published: 'It is not a case for a selection of them. We ought not to be content with that—we must have them all.' Even if, as he seemed to think, funds were forthcoming from national resources the results of so stupendous an undertaking would hardly commend themselves as justifiable even to the now happily diminishing type of student to whom a document does not become respectable until it has been printed. But no one is likely to blame the archivist who 'plays for safety' by seeking the support of colleagues in the policy which he adopts both in regard to selection for publication and above all in favour of preservation rather than destruction where the choice is really feasible and the difficulties of accumulation can be mitigated by distribution.

CLAUDE JENKINS



## THE CUSTODY OF RECORDS IN ROMAN EGYPT

IN ANY civilized community the need is sooner or later felt to arrange for the custody of its records, and the more bureaucratic the character of the administration the greater is the need for adequate arrangements. The government of Graeco-Roman Egypt was pre-eminently bureaucratic, and owing to the happy chance which has preserved so many papyri we are particularly well informed about its record offices. It may be of interest to readers of *The Indian Archives* to learn something about them, and I have pleasure in sending an article on the subject to the present number. It is not intended for specialists in papyrology. It embodies no results of recent original research and adds nothing to existing knowledge. Its sole purpose is to present a summary survey, for the non-specialist, of what is known about the record offices of Roman Egypt. That I have confined myself in the main to the period is due to the fact, firstly, that the available material is more abundant, and, secondly, that the custody of the archives was carried to a higher degree of elaboration by the Romans than by their predecessors.

Records may be broadly divided into two main classes, official documents, which arise in the course of administration, and private documents, which concern the activities and mutual relationships of the general public. Both classes include many documents of purely ephemeral interest, whose preservation, if they survive, is due to accident or the reluctance many people feel to throw away old papers. The official documents comprise, on the one hand, those concerned with the internal working of the administrative machine, like official correspondence, and registers of various kinds, and those which arise from the contacts of the machine with the private citizen, such as returns, petitions, and applications on the one side and, on the other, tax-receipts, licences, certificates and the like issued by official persons or bodies.

It is with regard to official papers that a government most naturally feels the need to secure proper custody, but private contracts may have to be produced as evidence in litigation or for other purposes, and hence arises the impulse to arrange for their preservation also. In the archive institutions of Graeco-Roman Egypt we find both classes of documents provided for. It will be convenient to begin our survey with contracts, of which there were two main classes, public and private. A public contract was one executed in a public notarial office or, by an extension in the Roman period, in a

bank (a bank-*diagraphê* as this class of deed is called). A private contract was one made unofficially between the parties. Naturally the first class had a higher legal status and greater value as evidence for the transaction concerned; indeed it is doubtful whether the evidence of a private contract, as such, would be accepted in a court of law or, if so, what value it could claim. Such contracts could, however, acquire the fuller status by the process of registration (*anagraphê*) or publication (*dêmosiôsis*).

An early form of private contract, of wide currency in Greece and introduced into Egypt by the Greek and Macedonian settlers, was the six-witness contract (*hexamartyros sygraphê*). The earliest dated Greek papyrus yet discovered, a marriage contract of 311 B.C., is of this type. This kind of deed could be drawn up by anybody possessing the necessary knowledge. It was guaranteed by six witnesses, who did not, however, subscribe, and was written in duplicate, the first text (*scriptura interior* as it is generally called) being rolled up and sealed on the outside by the witnesses. It was normal, though not obligatory, for one of these to take charge of the deed, but sometimes the custodian of the contract (*sygraphophylax*) was not himself a witness. In such cases he too appended his seal. The safeguardianship of the deed depended on the care and *bona fides* of the *sygraphophylax*, but, granted these, it was secure from loss or interference, and in case of dispute about the authenticity of the external text (*scriptura exterior*) the seals could be broken and the inner text compared with the outer. Fairly early in the Ptolemaic period the practice crept in of abbreviating the *scriptura interior*, which eventually became a mere docket, summarizing the essential points only. The six-witness deed continued in use, though with diminishing frequency, into the Roman period, but the employment of a *sygraphophylax* ceased.

Another and in later times much commoner type of private contract was the chirograph (*cheirographon*) or deed of hand. In principle and in form it was a letter addressed by one party to the other stating the terms of the contract, but it was not necessarily written by the contracting party himself, who indeed, in many cases, might be illiterate.

The official responsible for notarial business in the Egyptian "cities"<sup>1</sup> was the *agoranomos*, whose office was called *agoranomeion*.

<sup>1</sup> The capitals of the nomes or provinces into which Egypt was divided were popularly known as cities (*Arsinoitôn polis*, "the city of the Arsinoites", *Hermoupolis*, "the city of Hermes", etc.) but they were not cities in the Greek sense, since they lacked self-government and were under the authority of the *stratêgos* or governor. Not till about

taxpayers, householders, etc., were often arranged alphabetically. The alphabetic arrangement, however, usually extended no further than the initial letter; thus, we find in one, in successive lines, the names Phronimos, Phaësis, Philœnos. These records were open to inspection, as shown by the *epicrisis* application quoted above, which could not have been drawn up without reference to the rolls of earlier returns.

How far the Ptolemaic administration felt the need to centralize the custody of records is uncertain, but the Romans did realize the convenience of bringing together under one roof the papers of the numerous bureaux, some of which were in out-of-the-way villages, and in which the custody was doubtless sometimes far from satisfactory. They, therefore, established in every nome-capital a central record office (*dêmosia bibliothêkê*) in which the various officials and bureaux were required to deposit copies of their records. To this came not only the diaries of the *stratêgos* or district governor, the census and other rolls compiled by the nome and municipal authorities and in fact papers of the central bureaux generally, but also copies of the land surveys and other records proceeding from the local officials, such as the village scribes, and furthermore the *eiromena* and registers of the *grapheia* and *mnêmoneia*. Since these bureaux seem to have retained such at least of their own records as were required for current business, making copies for the central record office, there would be a double check on any class of documents. In the second half of the first century A.D. a further change was made: the record office was sub-divided into two, the *bibliothêkê dêmosiôn logôn* (public record office) and the *bibliothêkê enktêseôn* (property record office). In the former were stored all official records, in the latter records relating to real property, including slaves. Each office was administered by municipal *bibliophylakes*, who were responsible for the safe custody and, when required, the production of the records, and were obliged, on expiration of their term of office, to hand them over in proper condition to their successors.

There has been much controversy, especially among German scholars, as to the nature and purpose of the *bibliothêkê enktêseôn*, some regarding its function as being that of the German *Grundbuch*, i.e., a property register, some holding it to have been a mere repository of records, yet others taking a middle view. The greater probability lies with the last: the *bibliothêkê enktêseôn* was neither in the proper

quarter. The symbol represented above by the words "11th block" is of doubtful meaning but had probably a topographical reference.

sense a *Grundbuch* nor a record office but a mixture of the two. Its purpose is stated in an edict of the prefect Mettius Rufus, issued in A.D. 89, which it is worth while to quote in full:

"Proclamation of Marcus Mettius Rufus, prefect of Egypt. Claudius Arius, the *stratêgos* of the Oxyrhynchite nome, had informed me that neither private nor public business is receiving proper attention, because for many years the abstracts in the property record office have not been kept as they should have been, although it has often been laid down by my predecessors in office that they should be subjected to the required revision, which is not really practicable unless copies are made from the beginning. I therefore order all owners within six months to register their own property in the property record office, and so too lenders whatsoever mortgages they hold and other persons any claims that they have. In making the return they are to show in each case from what quarter the possession of the property came to them. Wives also are to append a note to the property statements of their husbands if by any native law they have a lien on the property, and likewise also children to the statements of their parents in cases where the usufruct is preserved to the parents by public deeds but the possession after death is secured to the children, in order that parties to contracts may not be defrauded through ignorance. And I also instruct the scribes and recorders of contracts not to execute any deed without the authorization of the record office, knowing that any such transaction is invalid but that they themselves will suffer the proper penalty for a breach of the regulations. If there are in the office any property returns of earlier years, they are to be preserved with all care, and so too the abstracts, in order that if hereafter any enquiry should be made about those who have made false returns they may by this means be convicted. In order, then, that the use of the abstracts may be secure and permanent, so that no further registration be required, I instruct the keepers of the record office to renew the abstracts every five years, transferring to the new lists the last statement of property under each rubric, arranged by village and by class. Year 9 of Domitian, 4th of the month of Domitianus".

It will be seen that the property record office contained not only returns of property but also abstracts (*diastromata*) of all transactions affecting ownership. The *grapheia* deposited in the office copies of their *eiromena*, and whenever the records were found to be in an unsatisfactory state, as seems to have been the case not infrequently, an edict of the prefect (like that just quoted) ordered a general return

of property from all property owners. The *diastrómata* were based on these returns, and were kept up to date by noting, when required, any changes of ownership, as well as all liens on the property. An existing fragment of a *diastróma* shows such additions both within the column and in the margin. Every five years, as seen above, a new *diastróma*, incorporating all this supplementary material, was prepared. In order that the record office might be cognizant of changes, no sale or encumbrance of property registered in its records might be made without its authorization. The intending vendor or mortgagor addressed to it his application (*prosangelia*), and if all was in order the necessary permission (*epistalma*) was issued, usually in the form of a subscription to the *prosangelia*.

Thus we see that the property record office did in large measure perform the function of a *Grundbuch*, safeguarding purchasers against fraudulent sales of encumbered or already alienated property. But the security was not absolute, since the office does not seem to have contained private contracts, like chirographs, unless they had been registered. The mischief was not perhaps so great as might be expected, since general returns of property, despite the wish expressed by Mettius Rufus, were ordered fairly often; and moreover a fraudulent vendor knew that the transaction would be invalidated if evidence of an existing lien on the property was found in the *diastrómata*, and this knowledge would probably act in some degree as a deterrent.

The actual administration of the record offices does not seem to have been as efficient or as thorough as their original planning. We have a good deal of evidence for this, not only in the edict quoted and in various other places but particularly in some documents relating to a law suit during the reign of Trajan between the *bibliophylakes démosiôn logôn* and their secretary about the transfer of the records, some of which were in very bad condition.<sup>4</sup> One of the illustrative documents quoted is a letter of the prefect Minicius Italus dated 19 May A. D. 103 and referring to the property record office, which again is worth quoting in full:

"Copy of a letter. Minicius Italus to Diogenes, Dionysios, and

<sup>4</sup> Compare the following passages, which are significant for the conditions existing: "Some are no longer preserved, having been destroyed by lapse of time, some are in part destroyed, and some are eaten away at the top, because the repositories are parched". "Because the records have often been transferred from one repository to another which is unsuitable and lie one on top of another and unarranged owing to their quantity (since the nome is a very big one), being in daily use and the material being very fragile, it has come about. . . ."

Apollônios, *stratêgoi* of the Arsinoite nome,<sup>5</sup> greeting. His excellency, Clastikos, *procurator* of our lord, has informed me that the property record office in the nome is unsuitable, and that the records stored in it are perishing; indeed the majority cannot even be found. He says that he has selected in your presence another place which is suitable and that three thousand two hundred and eighty-two drachmae three obols have been voted for the building.<sup>6</sup> In order, then, that there may be no neglect of the most essential records I wish you at once to undertake the construction and to have the records of earlier dates which he says are partially destroyed and sealed up, since no one can make them available, because the parties to them have long been dead; and you are to transfer them to the building which I now order to be constructed and to register them, in the presence of the proper persons, and to file the register. Farewell. Sixth year of Imperator Caesar Nerva Trajanus Augustus Germanicus, Pachôn 24'.

The care taken of obsolete records shows the archive character of the *bibliothêkê enklêseôn*, as a repository of records no less than an office for the registration of property. Its utility as a record office is illustrated by a document in which its records and those of a village scribe are both used to establish the ownership of certain property.

The process of centralization did not end with the nome-capitals but extended also to the capital, Alexandria, where the Romans established several record offices. To one, called *bibliothêkê en Patrikois* ("the Library in Patrika"), were sent copies of all the official diaries kept by the local governors in the various nomes of Egypt. Chance has preserved a list, dated in A. D. 136, of diaries sent to this office by the *stratêgos* of the Mendesian nome: "Register of diaries deposited in the Library in Patrika in the twentieth year of Hadrianus Caesar the Lord. They are: from 21 Hadrianus to Tybi 21, 1 roll, and from Tybi to Mecheir 5, 1 roll, and from 6 Mecheir to the 21st of the same month, 1 roll, and from 22 Mecheir to 4 Phamenôth, 1 roll; total 4 rolls." It may be presumed, but is not, I think, established by surviving evidence, that diaries were not the only official records sent by the nome authorities to this office, which enabled the central administration to acquaint itself with the conduct of business in the provincial centres.

<sup>5</sup> The Arsinoite nome, the largest nome in Egypt, was divided into three divisions (*merides*), each of which, at this date, had a separate *stratêgos*.

<sup>6</sup> The exactitude with which the estimates were prepared, down even to so trifling a figure as 3 obols, will be noted.

Two other record offices, often mentioned in the papyri, were the "Library of Hadrian" and the Nanaion. The former was presumably a foundation of the Emperor Hadrian; the latter, which must have been originally a temple of Nana, a Semitic goddess identified with the Egyptian Isis, may also have been established by Hadrian but was perhaps of earlier foundation. An edict of A. D. 127 by the prefect issues instructions for the conduct of business in these offices. The superintendents are to "file the accounts of the revenue every five days". The auditors in the filing office (*katalogeion*) "shall make abstracts of the contracts, including in them the names of the scribes and those of the parties, the number of transactions, and the kinds of contracts, and shall file them in both record offices. The so-called registrars, when they examine the roll of copies stuck together for filing, are to note in the margin if anything has been omitted or inserted improperly; and they are to make a copy on a single sheet of papyrus and file it in both record offices . . . . And they shall add also the number of the columns and the names of the contracting parties.....The superintendent of the Nanaion shall not give certified copies (*ekdosima*) nor allow inspection nor any other use to be made before receiving instructions from the superintendent of the Library of Hadrian.....The officials in the city are, then, to file contracts in both record offices from the first of Pharmouthi, those in Egypt likewise from Pachôn."

Both these record offices played an essential role in the process of execution for debt. To protect debtors against improper exploitation by their creditors the procedure of execution was always somewhat lengthy, but in the case of debts contracted through a chirograph or other private contract it was particularly complicated. I have already said that the Romans, while never making the chirograph an invalid form of contract, tried indirectly to encourage the conclusion of public as against private contracts; and one method of doing so was to deny the right of execution to a debt founded on a chirograph unless the document had been subjected to the process of *démosiósis* ("publication"), which in the Roman period replaced the Ptolemaic registration (*anagraphê*). Public contracts automatically enjoyed publicity, and so too did contracts (*diagraphai*) made through a bank. Banks were required, like *grapheia*, to register all contracts made through them, and to deposit *eitomena* in the property record office. Finally, the type of deed known as *synchôrêsis* ("agreement"), which, since it was in form (though only in form) a settlement of a dispute, might be compared with the "fine and

recovery" of English law, and was concluded before a court, also enjoyed publicity. A chirograph, however, was a purely private agreement; and if a debtor defaulted in regard to a debt so contracted the creditor must obtain *dêmosiôsis* before he could initiate proceedings. For this purpose he had to present to the *katalogeion*, the office of the high legal official called the *Archidikastês*, in Alexandria an application (*hyponnêma*) for *dêmosiôsis*. In this application was included a full copy of the contract, and the application, together with the contract, was then deposited in the Library of Hadrian and a duplicate in the Nanaion. Only when this had been done could action be taken to initiate the process of distraint.

Considerations of space have made it necessary to confine this account of the record offices of Roman Egypt to a bare outline of the essential points, neglecting many technical details, some of which are matters of controversy. I hope that I have succeeded at least in showing how remarkably developed was the technique. It had, of course, faults and imperfections. Sometimes there are curious gaps, as in the failure to include unregistered private contracts in the property record office; in some respects the procedure seems unnecessarily complicated; and in practice official slackness and incompetence, unfavourable climatic conditions, and at times perhaps actual corruption, tended to defeat the purpose of the regulations; but this is merely to say that the standards of ancient administration did not attain the level of the best modern practice.

HAROLD IDRIS BELL.



## ARCHIVES AND THEIR MAKE-UP IN ANCIENT INDIA AND THE COUNTRIES WITH INDIAN CULTURE<sup>1</sup>

ANCIENT ARCHIVAL documents were for the most part written on papyrus in Egypt. In Western Asia they were incised on metal plates, above all on bricks and ostrakons and probably, also on skin. In Europe, in later ages, they were written on parchment and paper. In China they were incised on bamboo lathes and stone and subsequently written on paper. In the area influenced by the Indian civilisation they display even a much greater variety because of the varied nature of the countries embraced by that civilisation. Here one finds metal, stone, wood, birch bark, skin or parchment, palm leaf, paper, cardboard and linen, all employed side by side.

We do not possess Indian documents of very high antiquity that might be considered as pieces of archives. The inscribed seals of the Indus civilisation do not have this character and we are still ignorant of their actual use inspite of the many readings that have been suggested which are as various as they are arbitrary. Chance has willed it that the oldest evidence about Indian written texts capable of having been archival documents should be that recorded by Nearchus towards the end of the 4th century B.C. According to him indeed Indians wrote their letters (*epistolas*) on well-beaten linen (*sindosi*, strictly speaking, calico—Strabo, Geography XV, 1.67). This information is valid for India in the strictly etymological sense of the name *i.e.*, the basin of the Sindhu (the Indus) which is precisely the tract traversed by Nearchus. It is hardly likely that everywhere in the peninsula letters used to be written on linen, palm leaves being a material much more suited to this use. The Buddhist texts contain allusions to letters usually exchanged and refer to their use in the epoch of the Buddha (558-478 B.C.). These texts in their extant form are posterior to the information furnished by Nearchus, but what we know of the Indian society of the time of the Buddha affords no room for doubt that the society did as a general rule make use of written correspondence. One might argue, however, that during this epoch India hardly knew the art of writing, which, according to some scholars, was introduced there only after the Achaemenian conquest towards the end of the sixth century B.C. by the scribes of the Aramaic language who were in the employ of the Persians in the satrapies of Gandhara and of Sindh. In fact a special script was

<sup>1</sup> Translated from the original French of the author.

developed in the Indian territories under the Achaemenian administration on the model of the Aramaic but with features conforming to the notation peculiar to India, owing its origin to a phonetic analysis of the language. This system remained the only one in standard use all over India<sup>2</sup> as well as in the Indianised countries. This form of Aramaic-Indian writing, usually known as Kharoṣṭhi, far from being the earliest Indian script, is an Aramaic transcription of the Indian script already in existence—a transcription comparable to Persian as well as European transliterations of modern times.

The existence of an elaborate script at the disposal of the Persian functionaries also presupposes the existence of archival documents in this script which was destined to become the medium of a middle-Indian language employed by these functionaries. Unfortunately none of these records have survived for us. But the tradition of making and preserving similar documents in the same script and in a middle-Indian language became firmly established after being extended to Central Asia, where Sir Aurel Stein has discovered valuable collections at Niya and Enderc in Eastern Turkistan and East of Khotan. These documents are usually on tablets of wood, but sometimes also on parchment and, judging from the date of a Chinese document found among them, belong to the third century of the Christian era. Similar vestiges were discovered by Pelliot further north in the region of Kucha, intermixed this time with Kuchian documents of the seventh century A.D.

The last are of two kinds: those on wooden boards and those on paper. They testify to the existence of archival collections maintained in scripts characteristically Indian side by side with those which continued in an Aramo-Indian script the administrative tradition of the ancient Persian Satrapies in India. They are indeed in the language of the Kingdom of Kucha but in a script derived from the Indian Gupta style of writing. In the neighbouring kingdom, called in Sanskrit "Kingdom of Agni", some of the records appeared to be even in Sanskrit. They were discovered by the German expeditions and studied by H. Lüders. The Kuchian wooden tablets were unearthed by Pelliot about four leagues north-west of Kucha on the site of an ancient watch tower which was used as a custom house. They are in fact permits for the caravans. They enabled Sylvain Lévi to demonstrate in 1913 that the language in which these were written was the same as that of the Kingdom of Kucha and to fix their date by the discovery of the name of the local king Swarnadep

<sup>2</sup> That is to say, the 'India' of the Achaemenids.

(‘Suvarnadeva’ in Sanskrit) whom he could show from the Chinese history of the T’ang dynasty as reigning at Kucha in 630 A.D. These tablets are generally rectangular with notches on the border intended for the string which tied the two pieces together, the written sides facing each other. The writing is in ink, the wood is a variety of poplar. Among the paper documents some are fragments bearing cursive writing, made of unsized material, written with the Chinese brush and are analogous to the Chinese documents proper found in the same region. The others, also in cursive writing, are rolls of paper generally sized with a white paste. The last are the documents containing the accounts of a convent found by Pelliot further west in Douldour-Aquor.

The explorations of Central Asia have elsewhere yielded numerous archival documents in the Tibetan language and in the Tibetan script which owes its origin to the Central Indian script of the 6th Century A.D. Most of these Tibetan documents came from Toun Houang on the border of China and Turkistan and were found in a cave which was walled up on the eve of the Muslim invasions.

The most ancient archival documents in an Indian script or in the Sanskrit language found in Central Asia belong to relatively late dates and it may be doubted if the practice of keeping administrative archives goes back to a very early date in the history of Indian civilisation. One may suppose that in the Indian territories not affected by the Persian invasion this was begun in imitation of the practice introduced by the Persian officials.

The prevalence of an essentially Indian script previous to its transformation into an Indo-Aramaic alphabet under Persian domination does not certainly imply that the administrative machinery of the Kingdoms in Central and Eastern India utilised this for official purpose. The use of it might have been purely sacerdotal, literary or private.

*A Priori* this supposition would seem hardly probable if one considers the importance of the kingdoms in question. It needs, however, examination particularly in view of certain pieces of evidence offered by the Greek writers belonging to the period of Alexander and that immediately following his death. Megasthenes, writing of the state of things under the founder of the great Maurya dynasty, Chandragupta, says in fact that the Indians do not know the ‘Gramma’ and that “it is by memory that everything is regulated” (Strabo XV, 1,53). Nearchus also says that in India all laws are unwritten (Strabo, XV, 1,66). The word ‘Gramma’ has often been interpreted as alphabets

and it has been believed that Indians did not know writing in the times of Megasthenes. This interpretation is unacceptable, for the elaborate system of Indian phonetic writing had already served as the basis of the formation of the Indo-Aramaic Script of the Persian period which immediately preceded Alexander's invasion. Besides, as we have already seen, Nearchus himself speaks of written letters. We should accept the word *gramma* in the sense of 'written regulations', but the fact remains that if the administration decided and regulated everything without the help of writing, it could not create any archives.

But the evidence of the two Greek authors is by no means conclusive. One must take into account the current phenomenon of many Indian scholars habitually carrying all their knowledge in their memory and making the least possible use of books or written words. It has been known for a long time that even as late as the eighteenth century a missionary who had long lived in India could write that Indians had no written law books (Letter from P. Bouchet, 1714, *Lettres Edifiantes* ed. Aime-Martin, t. II., p. 485). The fact is that he had always seen judges doing without written texts in public because they knew them by heart.

In a place where memory is so well developed that the use of books is easily dispensed with not only in the cultivation of the Vedas which could not be written, but also for the study of even literary texts, even the technicians, the administrators and the judges could well appear to a stranger as neither having any written text nor taking recourse to writing.

The question would have been settled once for all if the manual of politics and administration attributed to Kauṭilya, viz., the *Arthaśāstra*, could be ascribed with certainty to Kauṭilya, Minister of Chandragupta. In fact the *Arthaśāstra* (Prakaraṇa 25, ed. Shamasastri 1924, p. 62) mentions among others a public institution named *Akṣapaṭala* which included the office of accounts (*Gaṇanikyādhikāra*) and in which an inspector (*Adhyakṣa*) held the charge of a depository of the chief books (*Nibandha-pustaka-sthāna*). It was in these depositories that all the accounts, inventories and revenues etc., of the state were registered. But the *Arthaśāstra* contains at least some interpolations of a date later than that of its supposed author, for example, the passage mentioning China under the name *Chīna* corresponding to Chinese *Tsin* which came into use about a century after Kauṭilya.

In these circumstances we have no option but to come down to the valuable, though necessarily incidental and incomplete data of the

inscriptions of Chandragupta's grandson Aśoka, and thus to an incontestable date. These attest the existence of an administrative system which antedates Aśoka himself, for he introduced some reforms into it and did not create it. This administrative system which embraced an empire stretching from the reign of the upper Indus to Mysore and from Baluchistan to Bengal could hardly do without writing and depend entirely on the memory of its officers. It is very probable that the system did provide for a central office for the registration of accounts and records like the one described in the *Arthaśāstra*, although it finds no mention in the inscriptions. However, the examination of these makes one believe that many of the official documents could very well be circulated through the medium of memory. The inscriptions in question are mostly repeated in the different parts of the empire and often mention that they reproduce the exact words of the king. However, they do so with some variations, all of which cannot be explained away as being justified by the necessity of adapting the forms of the language to the local speech. These variations can very well be explained if one assumes that the transmission of the text was effected through messengers who learnt them by heart rather than through copies made at the Royal Court from originals preserved in the chancery. The words that the king ordered to be engraved everywhere on rocks or pillars need not have been committed to writing in the first instance. In this case the written originals would be the stone inscriptions themselves. However that may be, it is in the form of these inscriptions that we possess the most ancient state documents of India corresponding to those which are preserved elsewhere in the ordinary depositories of archives.

The continued practice of engraving documents of this kind on stone has made possible the preservation for hundreds of years a very large collection not only in India but in the Hinduised countries of the Far East, particularly in Cambodia, Champa (Central Vietnam) and Java. Others, being for the most part records of donation, have been preserved for us owing to their having been engraved on metal, mostly on copper (India and Java).

We learn from the History of Kashmir, the *Rājatarāṅginī* (V. 397-398), that during the Middle ages the official entrusted with the *Akṣapātala* for the issue of official documents (*Paṭṭopādhyāya*) was the one who delivered the charters of donations (*dānapaṭṭaka*). We read also in the same work (I, 15) that its author, the historian Kaḷaṇa, who wrote between 1148 and 1149 had at his disposal, as written sources of the history he compiled, charters of endowment

(Pratiṣṭhā-śāsana), charters relative to ground-plots and buildings (Vastuśāsana), panegyrics (Praśastipatṭa) and books (śāstra). He does not tell us on what materials these documents were written. It is certain the first three kinds were on stone or copper and in some instances perhaps on birch-bark which, in any case, was the usual writing material in ancient Kashmir.

As for more recent times archival documents in perishable materials have been preserved at least as relics from the past. Besides Persian and European documents usually written on paper and Indian documents also on paper, many of the pieces, found particularly in South India, are on leaves of palm belonging to the variety known as *Borassus flabelliformis* (Lin.). For letters and other documents of short length either one leaf or a small number of leaves were employed. A leaf of big size folded along the rib about the centre served as an envelope, the latter being slipped into the pouch thus formed. Sometimes the leaves were rolled up after being sewn through a seam at the ends. At other times, particularly when a small number of leaves were used, they were rolled and kept together by means of a tight ring made of palm-leaf fastened round them.

Another method of making up official letters obtained in Ceylon which is particularly remarkable. A very long leaf of palm (*Corypha umbraculifera*, Lin.) capable of measuring up to 1·60 meters, with the ends trimmed and embroidered with silk, constituted the letter. It was then folded several times and was covered with a broken piece from another leaf, on the edges of which an incision was made at right angles with the longer side of the leaf in such a manner that when refolded the ends became attached to each other. The whole thing was then encased in another palm leaf decorated with embroideries and gold filigree work and thereafter placed in an embroidered bag. This was the case with a letter from the Court of Ceylon sent to a Dutch Governor in 1687 (Ms. in Bibliothèque Nationale, Paris—Indian, 935). The enclosing of official messages in a small bag or in a casket has been normal in India and the countries influenced by Indian civilisation from ancient times to the present day. In the *Vinaya* of the Mūlasarvāstivādin school (Feer, *Fragments extraits du Kandjour*, p. 40) preserved as the Buddhist canon in Tibet in Tibetan translation a person sent as messenger starts on his journey provided with valuable boxes which appear to have included not only boxes containing presents but also those containing messages. The letter brought to Paris in 1684 by the ambassador from the King of Siam to Louis XIV was enclosed in a golden box.

The use of thick paper or of cardboard for accounts or other documents was well known in India, but was particularly common in Indo-China, Burma, Siam and Cambodia. This paste board was yellowish white and was written in black ink. The black ones were written with steatite pencil or yellow ink. The cardboards were often enfolded in *paravent*.

Indian archives thus present aspects of the widest possible variety even if one does not take into account the extreme diversities of languages and scripts in which they were written. They had very frequently to be maintained on stone or metal to avoid risks of deterioration caused by the climate.

JEAN FILLIOZAT

## MAX LEHMANN AND THE GENESIS OF THE "PRINCIPLE OF PROVENANCE"

THE PROBLEM of archival arrangement in its theoretical and historical aspects has been of paramount interest to archivists in various countries, and the general lines of a development that culminated in the famous "principle of provenance," have been convincingly worked out.<sup>1</sup> What has received less attention are the trends of historical thinking that helped to shape archival theory, the circumstances under which theoretical insight was first translated into action, and last but not least the men who were instrumental in liberating the archival profession from the influence of ideas alien to its tasks.

This article is concerned with shedding more light on the beginnings of the principle of provenance<sup>2</sup> in the Privy State Archives at Berlin. True, the story of how this principle grew out of the needs of a major archival agency was told in 1902 by Paul Bailleu who had actively participated in its application to the Berlin records.<sup>3</sup> His paper, however, reveals little of the opposition encountered by the advocates of the new system, and it fails to pay sufficient tribute to the man whose name is forever linked with one of the decisive steps in the history of the profession. That Max Lehmann was the author of the Regulations of July 1, 1881 which, at the Privy State Archives, prescribed "respect for every original order, for every original designation," is generally acknowledged, but may mean little to archivists who are not familiar with his life and his writings.

The genesis of the principle of provenance cannot be told from the records alone. All they disclose is that the Regulations of 1881 were drafted by Max Lehmann and adopted at a conference of the officials of the Privy State Archives presided over by its director,

<sup>1</sup> The pertinent literature is listed in an appendix to the excellent article by Andrea Varga, "Il principio di provenienza", *Archivi*, series II, 6: 184-203 (1939) which, however, does not include Georg Winter's "Das Provenienzprinzip in den Preussischen Staatsarchiven", *Revista de la biblioteca, archivo y museo del Ayuntamiento de Madrid*, 10: 180-190 (April 1933). For a good summary, see also Theodore R. Schellenberg, *European Archival Practices in Arranging Records* (National Archives, Staff Information Circulars, No. 5), Washington, 1939, 12 P.

<sup>2</sup> The term is admittedly inadequate because it fails to stress the fundamental difference between the new principle and that of *respect des fonds*. It has become generally accepted, however, and will be used throughout this article. "Principle of the sanctity of the original order" would be more to the point.

<sup>3</sup> "Das Provenienzprinzip und dessen Anwendung im Berliner Geheimen Staatsarchiv", *Korrespondenzblatt des Gesamtvereins der deutschen Geschichts- und Altertumsvereine*, 50: 193-195 (Oct. and Nov. 1902).



Heinrich von Sybel.<sup>4</sup> As so frequently happens, however, the records do not reflect the conflicts of personalities and ideas that precede and accompany the birth of an administrative document of major significance, with the result that lesser sources of information, such as memoirs, autobiographies, and oral traditions, must be resorted to to fill the void.

Varga in his article on the principle of provenance speaks of the Regulations of 1881 as the "Sybelian Regulations".<sup>5</sup> This is correct to the extent that Sybel, Director of the Prussian State Archives, gave them his official sanction and authorized their application. It is also true because the progression from the French *respect des fonds* to the Prussian principle of provenance, or rather *Registraturprinzip*, constitutes one of the major achievements of Sybel's term of office, a period of twenty years from 1875 to 1895, which raised the Prussian archives to the rank of truly scholarly institutions and gave them their rightful place among the other cultural agencies of the country.<sup>6</sup> It was Sybel, a man no less renowned for his historical writings than for his organizational and administrative talent, who started the voluminous series of the *Publikationen aus den preussischen Staatsarchiven* and the *Kaiserurkunden in Abbildungen*. This magnificent publication programme not only provided his officials with splendid opportunities for scholarly endeavour, but also could not fail to attract the best historical students into the archives career. What other archival administrations of the period could boast of the services of archivists as prominent as Max Lehmann, Paul Bailleu, Reinhold Koser, and Friedrich Meinecke, all of whom achieved national if not international fame.

It is to Meinecke that we owe some intimate information on the beginnings of the principle of provenance. For the first volume of his memoirs includes a charming chapter on the Privy State Archives in the 1870's and 80's.<sup>7</sup> Located in the heart of the old Berlin where the Margraves of Brandenburg had resided before the erection of the castle on the Spree, its vaults housed the records of the Privy Council

<sup>4</sup> See Johannes Schultze, "Gedanken zum 'Provenienzgrundsatz'", "Hans Beschorner, ed., *Archivstudien zum siebenzigsten Geburtstag von Woldemar Lippert* (Dresden, 1931), p. 225.

<sup>5</sup> I. c., p. 190. Similarly, E. Wiersum pictures the adoption of the principle of provenance as the personal decision and merit of Sybel, see his "Het herkomstbeginsel", *Congrès international des Archivistes et des Bibliothécaires*, 1910, *Actes* (Bruxelles, 1912), p. 137.

<sup>6</sup> Paul Kehr, "Ein Jahrhundert preussischer Archivverwaltung", *Preussische Jahrbücher*, 196: 159-178 (May, 1924) gives an excellent summary of Sybel's achievements as Director of the Prussian State Archives (pp. 173-175). See also Paul Bailleu, "Sybel", *Allgemeine Deutsche Biographie*, 54: 645-667 (Leipzig, 1908).

<sup>7</sup> Friedrich Meinecke, *Erlebtes, 1862-1901* (Leipzig, 1941), pp. 137-148.

of Brandenburg-Prussia to which, in 1874, those of the General-Directorium, the ministry of the interior and finance of the 18th century, and those of some of the ministries of the 19th century had been added. The building was more noteworthy for its atmosphere than for its comforts and conveniences. Records were stored on wooden shelves reaching up to the high ceilings, and on the first floor, in the midst of the paper monuments of his bureaucracy, stood the enormous equestrian statue of Frederick the Great. The organization of the Privy State Archives was as time-honoured as the building. Untouched as yet by the concepts of efficient management, the Privy State Archives was staffed with six Privy State Archivists and a few assistants with the title of *Archiv-Sekretär*.<sup>8</sup> Though the Director of the Prussian State Archives also served as Director of the Privy State Archives, actual administration was left to the small group of Privy State Archivists who, in pairs of two, alternated in taking charge of the agency's business. Subject only to review by the monthly conferences presided over by Director Sybel, the Privy State Archivists were a law unto themselves and imbued with the dignity and independence of their positions.

It was shortly after his appointment in 1875 that Sybel called Max Lehmann into a vacant position of Privy State Archivist. Born in Berlin in 1845,<sup>9</sup> Lehmann had received an excellent education at the famous *Joachimstalsches Gymnasium*. It prepared him splendidly for his university studies which he pursued at the Universities of Berlin, Königsberg, and Bonn. At the latter university, Sybel was one of his main professors and though Lehmann left Bonn after what he considered his happiest semester, to prepare for his doctorate in Berlin, Sybel employed him in 1867 to examine, for his History of the French Revolution, the material in the State Paper Office in London. This gave Lehmann a chance to acquaint himself with research in archival sources, and what may have been even more important, to observe the life of a great Western European capital. Upon his return, Berlin looked to him "like a medium size provincial city with a surprisingly great number of soldiers".<sup>10</sup>

Disappointed in his expectation of entering the academic career, Lehmann was only too glad to accept Sybel's offer of a position at the Privy State Archives. It was for him, as he later stated, "not quite

<sup>8</sup> See the respective sections of the official annual manual entitled *Handbuch für den Königlich Preussischen Staat und Hof*.

<sup>9</sup> The following is based on Lehmann's autobiographical sketch in Siegfried Steinberg, ed. *Die Geschichtswissenschaft in Selbstdarstellungen*, (1:) 207-232 (Leipzig, 1925).

<sup>10</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 213.

the academic profession, but by no means a bad preparation for it." It is easy to imagine that Lehmann's appointment was not enthusiastically received by the older Privy State Archivists. Quite apart from his lack of practical experience in archives work, the fact that Lehmann at the same time assumed the editorship of Sybel's *Historische Zeitschrift* and that he was scheduled to inaugurate the *Publikationen* with a work on Prussia's Relations with the Catholic Church, could not be to the liking of his colleagues. It meant certainly that not all of his time and work would belong to the dispatch of the day-to-day business of the Privy State Archives.

If we are right in assuming that Lehmann's appointment met with rather mixed feelings at the Privy State Archives, his personality was not likely to overcome them. For he was the "fightingest" of German archivists and historians, a man always ready to engage in literary controversy, to carry it on to the bitter end, and even to enjoy it.<sup>11</sup> Oral tradition at the Privy State Archives characterized him as domineering, highly excitable, and hard to bear for his colleagues. "There was something of a lion in Lehmann's nature," Meinecke said in his obituary in 1930,<sup>12</sup> "supreme intellectual severity combined with the greatest passion, and a burning ethical enthusiasm that could carry him to great heights but would also sometimes lead him astray."

A man of such volcanic character could not very well adapt himself to the sedate ways of a venerable agency like the Privy State Archives, that traced its beginnings back to the early 17th century, and he was bound to cause outright hostility if he decided to become the advocate of change in a vital field of archival work. And this is exactly what Lehmann did after he had gained some practical experience as an archivist. The records of the Privy State Archives had received their basic organization<sup>13</sup> into record groups called *Reposituren* prior to the reorganization of the Prussian State during the so-called period of Reform from 1807 to 1815. In spite of the fact that the pattern of the central government had been completely transformed, archivists continued to place the records of the new ministries into the compartments of the old scheme of record groups, principally on the basis of their subject matter. To give an example,

<sup>11</sup> With respect to attacks of the *Zentrum* (Catholic) Party against his first volume of *Preussen und die Katholische Kirche*, Lehmann said in his autobiographical sketch: "I replied, of course, (*Historische Zeitschrift*, 1883) and rarely did I enjoy a literary feud as much as this one" (*l.c.*, p. 218).

<sup>12</sup> *Historische Zeitschrift*, 141: 449-50 (1930).

<sup>13</sup> See Bailleu, *l.c.*, pp. 193-194.

correspondence of the Ministry of Foreign Affairs with the Mission in Brussels would be combined with old records of the Privy Council pertaining to Brabant, and the records of the Brussels Mission itself would be thrown in for good measure. The obvious result of this was that the documentation of the newer agencies of the State became completely submerged in a system designed to accommodate the material of a much earlier period.

When Paul Bailleu discussed the application of the principle of provenance to the Berlin holdings before the 1902 meeting of the German archivists, he went to great length in describing the unsatisfactory results of what he called the lack of a "thoroughgoing system of arrangement".<sup>14</sup> He dwelt particularly on the difficulties encountered in reference work. In order to find records it was necessary to first check the agency accession lists, from these determine the agency's record designation or call mark, and with the help of these call marks discover the designation given to the records at the Privy State Archives. It was the cumbersomeness of this procedure that impressed the necessity of a change upon the younger officials of the archives. Arrangement on the basis of agency provenance and registry classification they felt must replace the impossible arrangement based on subject matter. Since under the excellent system of record keeping, developed in German registry offices, records received an order clearly expressed in classification symbols, it became now solely a matter of keeping them in this order, once they reached the archival agency, or restoring this order where it had become obliterated.

Archival experience it seemed demonstrated clearly the advantages of the new system. However, it also corresponded to the "historical thinking"<sup>15</sup> of a generation that had come to the archives from the classes of Ranke, Droysen, Sybel and other heroes of a great period of German historiography. The new principle was more than a technical knack. It meant the application of respect for historical growth to the sources of historical research that had come into existence in the course of historical events.

In view of the fact that subject matter arrangement had governed supreme for a number of decades and that the application of the principle of provenance necessitated a reworking of much of the holdings of the Privy State Archives, it is not surprising that the new ideas met with opposition on the part of the traditionalists among the Privy State Archivists. Their spokesman was the "omnipotent"

<sup>14</sup> Bailleu, *l.c.*, p. 194.

<sup>15</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 194.

Paul Hassel, "who had come to power as the favourite of Max Duncker, the predecessor of Sybel."<sup>16</sup> During the Franco-Prussian War, Hassel, a Ph.D. of the University of Berlin, had served as a reporter for the *Preussischer Staatsanzeiger* with the Third Army,<sup>17</sup> and it can be assumed that Crown Prince Frederick William, who was in command of that army, recommended him to Duncker and helped him in his career at the Archives. Fortunately for the advocates of change, the older Privy State Archivists, anxious to defend the dignity of their office, resented Hassel's overbearing attitude.<sup>18</sup> They joined forces with the younger generation and convinced Sybel of the need for a new system of arrangement. Naturally we do not know any details of the conflict that preceded the adoption of the Regulations of July 1, 1881. They represented a clear-cut victory of the anti-Hassel front. Hassel resigned from the Prussian Privy State Archives and, in July 1882, was called into the vacant position of Director of the Royal Main State Archives in Dresden.<sup>19</sup> Once again, the influence of the Crown Prince, the later Emperor Frederick III, may have worked in his favour.

The way was now cleared and, as Meinecke says, "the idea of arranging the records according to their provenance, now implemented with all possible vigour, injected all of a sudden an incredible amount of vitality and individuality into the entire Archives. For the registry of every single agency . . . . now became a living organism of its own with its peculiar principle of life, and the different persons with their individual traditions and impulses now came to light."<sup>20</sup> When Meinecke entered the Privy State Archives on April 15, 1887, the great task of recasting the archives in accordance with the new ideas was by no means completed, and he could still "witness the enthusiasm that inspired its pioneers."<sup>21</sup>

As has been pointed out, Lehmann was not the only one among the younger archivists to press for a new departure in methods of archival arrangement. But exactly what was his share in working out the new principle? Bailleu, in his 1902 paper before the German archivists, referred to the younger generation of officials who entered the Privy State Archives either with Sybel or shortly thereafter and who became convinced of the necessity of ending the existing con-

<sup>16</sup> Meinecke, *l.c.*, p. 142.

<sup>17</sup> A. Reichardt, "Paul Hassel", *Biographisches Jahrbuch und deutscher Nekrolog*, 9: 223-224 Berlin, 1908).

<sup>18</sup> Meinecke, *l.c.*, p. 142.

<sup>19</sup> *Ibid.*

<sup>20</sup> *L.c.*, pp. 142-143.

<sup>21</sup> *L.c.*, p. 143.

fusion and organizing all of the holdings of the archives on the basis of one thoroughgoing principle of arrangement,<sup>22</sup> but failed to mention Lehmann's leading role. This it seems can be explained. By 1902, Lehmann's relations with the former colleagues and friends at the Berlin Archives had become badly strained. In his Scharnhorst biography, Lehmann had smashed the conservative historical interpretation of the Wars of Liberation, and his thesis that the Seven Years War had been provoked by Frederick the Great, had resulted in a complete break between him and the official Prussian historians. His name had become unpopular. Lehmann himself, in his autobiography, claimed the principle as his personal contribution without mentioning the names of his collaborators: "I found it possible to effect an improvement in the organization and arrangement of the Archives on the basis of the principle of provenance which nowadays I think has become generally accepted; that was important for the Archives, not unimportant for the State."<sup>23</sup> Just as Bailleu did not see fit to pay tribute to the former colleague who had broken away from the official creed of Prussian historians, Lehmann in turn failed to remember that, as the protagonist in the fight for the new ideas, he had the valiant support of the younger group at the Privy State Archives.

For Lehmann, while he led the fight, did not fight it single-handed. Meinecke, who entered the Archives when Lehmann was still on its staff and who must have heard a great deal about the events that shook the Privy State Archives in the early eighties, acknowledges Lehmann's leadership,<sup>24</sup> but also the supporting role of some of his colleagues. He "in the first place", Meinecke says, "but also Bailleu and Hegert" insisted "on arranging the records on the basis of their historical provenance, that is, in actual accordance with the natural order in which they originated in the registry offices of certain individual agencies".<sup>25</sup> While the inadequacy of the existing practices of arrangement and the need for a different approach to the problem of arrangement seemed obvious to the younger group, while there must have been a frequent exchange of experience and much discussion of what should constitute the true principle of archival arrangement, it was undoubtedly Lehmann's energetic and dynamic

<sup>22</sup> *L.c.*, p. 194.

<sup>23</sup> *L.c.*, p. 217.

<sup>24</sup> *L.c.*, p. 142.

<sup>25</sup> Similarly Reinhard Lüdike in his obituary of Paul Bailleu, *Archivalische Zeitschrift*, 3rd series, 2: 290-291 (1925) speaks of the "reorganization of the records on the basis of the principle of provenance, initiated under the leadership of Max Lehmann".

nature that carried the new ideas through to victory. In this, his close relationship with Sybel, and his reputation as one of the up and coming men in the archives, if not in the historical field, must have been of major importance.

It seems ironic that one of the most far-reaching changes in archival theory and practice was brought about by a man to whom the archives profession was only a second best choice. Lehmann's inaugural address before the Prussian Academy of Sciences,<sup>26</sup> to which august body he had been elected after the publication of his Scharnhorst biography, stressed the importance of archives for research. "For all research in modern history must begin in the archives and that is why the archivist who approaches his task with a high sense of responsibility, will have some advantage over other scholars who visit the archives only occasionally." But "history is not just an abstract from documents,"<sup>27</sup> and "an accumulation of building stones, no matter how beautifully shaped, is not a building."<sup>28</sup> Throughout the address the emphasis was on the creative task of the historian, as Lehmann saw it, and not a word was said about the principle of provenance and his share in it.

His election to the Academy of Sciences, the Scharnhorst biography, and his leadership in the Privy State Archives had firmly established Lehmann in the first ranks of the profession. When people talked about his career they would wink their eyes as if to say: "The future director of the archives."<sup>29</sup> But that did not influence his decision when "finally, finally" he was offered a professorship in Marburg, which, in the fall of 1888, ushered in "the heavenly days of freedom."<sup>30</sup>

From then on Lehmann was dedicated exclusively to his teaching and writing. The Scharnhorst biography was followed by his book on *Frederick the Great and the Origin of the Seven Years War* (1894) which caused violent protests on the part of the Prussian historians and unleashed a controversy such as European scholarship had hardly seen before, and by the biography of the Baron vom Stein. It, in turn, involved Lehmann in a scholarly feud of major proportions when his thesis of the influence of the French Revolution on the Prussian Reformers was attacked by Ernst von Meier. Lehmann continued to

<sup>26</sup> Preussische Akademie der Wissenschaften zu Berlin, *Sitzungsberichte*, 1887 (Berlin, 1887), pp. 633-635.

<sup>27</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 633.

<sup>28</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 634.

<sup>29</sup> Steinberg, *l.c.*, p. 221.

<sup>30</sup> *Ibid.*

fight for what he considered a good cause, against the majority of the German historians, always adhering to the conviction that "politics and history have no more dangerous enemy than chauvinism",<sup>31</sup> that, in the history of our Western civilization, there are broad tendencies and relationships which transcend national barriers, and that, in the last resort, "all history is universal history."<sup>32</sup> The man who in his youth had been considered "a conservative hotspur finally became an upholder of the Weimar Constitution, always remaining faithful to himself and true to his character."<sup>33</sup>

In a life so full of achievement and conflict, Lehmann's part in the discovery and implementation of the principle of provenance was a minor episode. But even if his dynamic personality could not find lasting satisfaction in the minutiae of archival work, we as archivists may be justly proud that a man of his calibre was one of us ; we should remember with respect and gratitude the debt our profession owes him.

ERNST POSNER

<sup>31</sup> Steinberg, *l.c.*, p. 223.

<sup>32</sup> Preussische Akademie der Wissenschaften zu Berlin, *l.c.*, p. 635.

<sup>33</sup> *Historische Zeitschrift*, 141, p. 450.



## ON INDEXING MEDIAEVAL RECORD WORKS

A POET is said to be born and not made. A priest is a better priest if he has a vocation. Much the same is true of that harmless drudge, the indexer. The majority of writers feel themselves neither born, called, nor compelled to make an index, a task which they regard as an intolerable burden or, at best, a necessary evil. Some grapple conscientiously and often successfully with the tedious job ; others delegate it. It is, for example, not uncommon for an author to express thanks at the end of his preface to his wife, "without whose help the index would not have been made". The least scrupulous content themselves with a casual selection from the proper names in the printed pages with their page references, arranged in approximately alphabetical order. Some of the indexes to the classical county histories of the eighteenth century, such as those of Blomfield and Nash, did not aspire far beyond this ; and their work has had to be done again to satisfy modern standards.

An inadequate index is not always a fatal defect. Its importance varies inversely with the ease with which the book itself can be read. Fiction requires no index ; and casual comments and general reflections, whether on gardening or world politics, can be summarily treated. A friend of mine who indexed a selection of letters and was paid by the length of the text and not of the index was almost ashamed to take his money, because the chief correspondent was Dr. Young, whose letters had as little in them for the indexer as his better known "Night Thoughts".

Biography and history are in a middle category, and must be adequately sign-posted ; but they do not call for exhaustive indexing.

The Record Works with which this article is concerned are mainly books of reference. They are not intended to be easy reading and so are at the opposite pole from the novel ; and no one to whom the task is one of boredom should attempt to index them. It is significant that many books of reference, for example *Gazetteers*, *Peerages* and *Who's Who*, are indexes in themselves.

Fortunately there is a minority that enjoys indexing ; and like the acrobat of Notre Dame, they have no other oblation to make at the altar of learning. They may be players of *Patience* or students of statistics. They are in fact quietists who like to have their relaxation or do their work without interference from or with anyone else. I was in fact advised, some forty or more years ago by Mrs. Lomas, the editor

of Foreign State Papers, to make an index because it was like playing Patience without being absolutely unremunerative.

There is now a normal method of indexing Record Works. Well within living memory it was thought sufficient to index proper names ; but it is now recognised that the most arid collection has material for a subject index, even though it may require exhumation. The usual arrangement, with many variations, is now an Index of Persons and Places followed by an Index of Subjects. Persons, places and subjects form the content of every index ; but within this framework there may be minor variations. It may be convenient to separate persons and places, especially if the latter have so many local details of a small and well defined area that the resultant list is complicated and begins to resemble a subject index. For similar reasons a separate index of persons may be preferable for a volume dealing largely with the genealogy of a very few families. Obviously a book whose interest is largely linguistic deserves a glossary separated from the rest of the subject index. The subject index itself may be incorporated in a general index if the entries in it prove to be few and comparatively unimportant. Whatever the nature and form of an index, a lexicographical order is essential ; and this is almost all that an index of Persons and Places and a Subject index have in common.

Even with regard to the materials used they differ widely. The former, it is now generally accepted, can best be made on slips, which should be absolutely uniform in size for easy sorting ; those used in the Record Office measure five inches by three, but workers with a large handwriting may find six inches by four more convenient. As these slips have to be turned over rapidly while the work is proceeding, the use of a pencil instead of ink saves time and trouble ; but in these days when printing firms lack labour and paper, there is often a time-lag between the cup and the lip, that is, between compilation and publication, and the pencil should therefore be indelible.

A subject index, being akin to a digest, will have a comparatively small number of entries, and the references against each entry may be numerous ; and it is desirable at all stages to be able to see at a glance the shape it is taking. It is therefore better to make it in a book with many tags cut on the margin of the page for ease of reference. It is possible to use a fountain pen for this part of the index ; but even so it will probably have to be entirely revised and re-written before it is sent to the printer. If slips were used, it would be very difficult to see the underlying structure ; the trees would hide the wood.

The use of fountain pen or pencil is a matter of individual preference ; the ideal is a book interleaved with blotting paper.

In considering Persons and Places, priority may be given to Persons even by those who are more interested in topography than in genealogy. When the two are divided, the index of Persons is usually printed in front of the other ; when they are combined, the usual description is an Index of Persons and Places. The genealogist will instinctively turn at once to this section with his eye mainly on persons ; and the indexer, remembering that it is his first duty to be serviceable to his readers, should try to make his work easy and clear to the genealogist. There will be one or two problems to solve.

When there are numerous references to many members of the same family, it may be advisable to arrange them in the order of a pedigree, beginning with the earliest ancestor and proceeding from generation to generation. I had many years ago to index the Middleton Papers for the Historical Manuscripts Commission. Its substructure, concealed by numerous offshoots, in prose and poetry, in Hebrew, Latin, French and Welsh, was the story of a family which had the name of Bugge in the thirteenth century, glorified into Willoughby before the next century, and which then came down generation by generation until the time of Francis Willoughby, sheriff of Warwickshire in 1649-50. Its successive members used up all the letters of the alphabet and duplicated them down to K K, filling eleven columns. In this case an alphabetical arrangement would have been unhelpful.

This is, however, exceptional ; forenames should normally appear after the surnames in alphabetical order. If relationships are shewn, it is best to centre them on the member of the family who is prominent at the time to which an entry relates. This is more likely to produce a proper balance than an attempt to show kinship to the earliest member of a family to be mentioned.

There was at one time a tendency, especially in France, to prefer Christian names to Surnames for the order of entries. Historically this can be justified ; for there is no doubt that they were the earlier. The use of the term Christian name is, of course, a convention which must sometimes be abandoned in favour of Forename. I once shewed Mr. A. E. Stamp, then Deputy Keeper of the Public Records, an experimental list of names which I had called Christian names. He merely observed that it was a pity the list began with Aâron, Abel and Abraham. There is little to be said about the forms under which these forenames should be indexed, except that English forms are preferable to Latin form. Doun, Bevis and Otes are at least kinder to the ear

than Dodo, Bogo and Odo. The Wardour Street Latinisms of the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries, Matilda, Reginald, Nigel and Alured for Maud, Reynold, Neal and Alfred, are specially repellant.

The reason why surnames should be preferred to forenames and the reason why the former came into use is the obstinacy with which the mediæval man clung to a few chosen favourites. In England this was especially marked in the ruling class. In any list of knights, Robert, William, Richard, John and Henry are sure to constitute a majority, though there may be a few exotics such as Doun Bardolf, Genteschieu le Pour and Suspir de Bayeux. In the case of their wives the preponderance of Maud, Alice and Margery is even more marked, although once fancy roamed free there was an unlimited range of girls' names. In the last volume of *Curia Regis Rolls* (Vol. VIII) Anastasia, Benigna, Dameta, Flandrina, Imagantia, Odiërda, Osanna and Sexiva shew an imaginativeness almost unknown in the Twentieth century. In the governed Saxons the changes rung among a number of radical prefixes and suffixes produced far more variety; but they did not often find their way into the chronicles of the time. Soon after the Conquest some means became necessary of identifying the many Roberts and Williams with whom the officials in the Exchequer, the Courts of Law and the Chancery had to deal.

During this process, which took place mainly in the twelfth century, four identity tests were used; and they answered questions as to paternity, place of origin, occupation and personality. William might be identified as the son of Roger, Henry came from Weston, 'from' being possibly a better translation than 'of' in Latin names. John was a Baker, Ralph was a young man and Peter was lame.

Patronymics present no difficulty. It is perhaps best to group them together under the father's forename, though they are sometimes brought together under 'Fitz' or 'Son of' and almost form a separate section of the index. It is, however, important that one method or the other should be used throughout; and it is also certain that towards the end of the period when noble families bore the names of Fitzgerald, Fitzwalter and the like, some confusion becomes inherent in the use of the second of the two plans.

Names derived from place of origin give rise to one question. Is it advisable to identify the place? The information often helps the reader; but on the other hand, it may involve prolonged search, especially in cases where it has the least value. It will undoubtedly assist a searcher to know that Richard from Sutton came from Long Sutton in Hampshire and not from Sutton Poyntz in Dorset; but this infor-

mation is generally either obvious on the face of the record or the result of recondite study. Perhaps on the whole it is wiser to leave the interested reader, who may have local knowledge, to solve the problem by himself to his own satisfaction.

It is with regard to surnames derived from nationality, status, occupation or personal peculiarity that the greatest doubt still subsists. It is true that for some centuries many of them were little more than nicknames; and even the Book of Fees, which may be regarded as a model index, has grouped them under forenames with cross-references from the surnames. It is also true that a list of some fifty Clerks or some twenty Bakers may be uninformative. On the other hand, the Index to the Book of Fees is not helpful when it assembles a column of Johns including constables, clerks, cooks, millers and porters, Jacks of all trades in fact. In the case of William the list extends almost to three columns. It is also impossible to specify the exact point at which John Cook was so called, not because he himself worked in the kitchen, but because he was the son of his father, the cook. On the whole there seems no adequate reason for departing from consistency and selecting the first rather than the second name for indexing.

Unlike names of persons of local origin, there is no doubt that place names should be identified as often as possible, even when long research is involved. A friend of mine who produced competent indexes said to me that no place name was worth more than twenty minutes search. This is a Laodicean counsel to be generally ignored but containing a vestige of worldly wisdom. In the Eastern counties, especially in Norfolk, adjacent parishes, described as East and West or Great and Little, or by the dedication of the church, have often little else to distinguish them; and if twenty minutes search gives no clear evidence, contiguous places such as South, East or West Rainham, Walpole St. Andrew or St. Peter need only be identified as Rainham or Walpole.

These are not the double names which have contributed to the beauty of English place names. There is music in such names as Sible Hedingham, Christian Malford and Minster Lovell. They relate generally to tenure rather than locality. They are to be found everywhere and have spread in profusion northward to Shropshire and eastward to Essex from the South-West counties (always excepting Cornwall which has a hard law of its own in the matter of place names). They are most numerous in Somerset, Wilts and Dorset and least numerous in Danelaw. In the immediate vicinity of my birth-place, Warminster in Wiltshire, there are Norton Bavant, Fisherton

Delamere, Upton Scudamore, Chitterne All Saints, Codford St. Peter, Sutton Veny, Maiden Bradley, and the five Deverills, Hill, Longbridge, Kingston, Monkton and Brixton. One half of each of these names can be regarded as a substantive and the other as an adjective. The first three belonged to the families of Bavant, Delamere and Scudamore; the next two were distinguished from their neighbours by the dedication of their churches. Sutton Veny was partly in the fenny ground or marshes of the Wylde. At Maiden Bradley there was a hospital for leprous ladies. The Deverills derive their name from a tributary of the Wylde which is said to dive or disappear in its passage through the Downs. Hill and Longbridge Deverill are named from visible features; and the other three from their lords. All these double names should be indexed under their substantive part, with cross-references where necessary, even though it may go against the grain to index Kingston Deverill and Monkton Deverill under Deverill, while Kingston-on-Thames and Nun Monkton are indexed under Kingston and Monkton.

The identification of place names is the most exciting part of indexing. Even the quietist forgets himself and thinks in terms of the chase and the detective novel. When Sir Henry Maxwell Lyte re-formed the Testa de Nevill into the Book of Fees he realized that this identification was the corner stone of his work and he entrusted it to the most learned and intellectually alert members of his Staff. Workers in the Record Office Library always knew when the hunt was on and seemed to hear the View Hallo. They could follow the chase. In the excitement of the moment books were not replaced (gates were left open). A small pile of books generally meant a check; a large pile was the scene of the death, or, less frequently, shewed where the fox had gone to earth. Rapid movement and manual labour were involved; and when the Master returned to his room and sank into his chair, he observed that Index making was not a sedentary occupation. As indicated above, it often happens that obvious clues prove false, and in the end there may not be much resemblance between the modern name and its mediaeval equivalent. This does not matter if the internal evidence from the history of the place is convincing. No one at first recognises the absent-minded but benevolent entomologist as the man who committed the crime.

Local knowledge has its uses and occasional dangers. A farmer or a hunting man may know field names which have preserved the names of departed hamlets. On the other hand, Oxford men who had found their way to the ancient village of Islip might easily identify

Slepe in Oxfordshire with it and pride themselves on their local knowledge. They would, however, be wrong. Islip never discarded its first syllable ; and Slepe is now Slape, a hamlet of Wootton, a few miles to the west.

There is one useful convention in the indexing of place names. Many of the early county historians, such as Hasted, Collinson, Thoroton and Hunter, made the ancient parish the unit of their work ; and in modern times their example has been followed by the editors of the Victoria County Histories and by the Place Name Society. It is a real boon for those engaged in local research, who will find all the information they want under one heading and need not search through an index for every small barton and field in their parish.

A subject index is in some ways the antithesis of an index of persons and places. The entries in the former should be relatively few but very full ; in the latter they should be numerous and concise. The indexer of subjects should first of all form a clear idea as to the various purposes for which the book will serve. The social and economic researcher, the student of legal, constitutional and ecclesiastical developments, the genealogist and topographer, have different interests ; and it should be the object of the indexer to reduce to a minimum the number of headings they will each have to consult and to gather as much information as possible under each of them. Many special headings suitable to each class of reader will emerge naturally from the contents of the book ; but more general headings, under which miscellaneous entries can be collected, are very important. They may include Historical Events, Foreign Affairs, Legal Procedure, Constitutional Development, Ecclesiastical Matters. Cross references should be lavishly supplied ; and in suitable cases long entries should be subdivided. Alphabetical lists of names of castles, ships, religious houses and the like are a useful part of such an index. It is often necessary to index one piece of information which may be useful to several types of searchers in several places. An order for trees in Windsor forest to be cut for the repair of the king's castle should be indexed under Forests, Works and Castles ; and a reference to villein tenure by boon works in the autumn and by merchet should be indexed under Villeinage, Tenures, Agriculture and Marriage.

Terseness of statement should not be achieved at the expense of lucidity, since it is a waste of time for the reader to look up a passage and then to find that it does not help him. A very long string of references should also be avoided. Such an entry as "Westminster, the king at", with forty or fifty references, may break the spirit of the

conscientious and is neglected by everyone else. In such a case the word *passim* may be used and will inform the reader of a common form, practice or occurrence. The word may also be used for sections of a book in which it is easier and quicker to glance through the pages of the text than to look up a number of references separately.

Revision of the foregoing pages has left a fear that I have laid down the law overmuch and have been assertive where a diffident suggestion would have been better.

Dogmatism is certainly out of place. I have read several authoritative sets of instructions for indexers, compiled after much experience. They were all admirable as general guides, but none of them seemed exactly to fit the requirements of any single index. Consistency is in fact the indexer's will of the wisp, ever sought but never fully achieved.

If I have written with too much assurance, I must plead as my excuse that I made my first index in 1904 and with only two intervals of not more than a few weeks I have been making them ever since. One of my motives may have been mercenary ; but I have got much quiet enjoyment out of the work and have tried to learn by experience.

CYRIL T. FLOWER



## ARCHIVES AND WAR

WAR HAS never been anything but wasteful and destructive, whether we agree with St. Augustine that some wars are just, or with Erasmus that no war is just. Recently man has overreached himself, and has achieved the ability to destroy not only himself, but with himself the complete documentation of his culture. This has been said so often of late that it already is a truism, but it must be said here once again as the point of departure. What can we do about it?

No one would be so presumptuous as to believe that he could sum up in the compass of a short paper the historical background of the problem, or that he could set forth all the facts upon which constructive thought must rest. Perhaps no one person could or should attempt to do it in any form. But the feeling of great urgency weighs so heavily upon me that I believe it would be a neglect of duty not to add my voice to the cry, "What can we do?"<sup>1</sup>

Throughout the more recent recorded history of mankind, in the periods of classical Greece and Rome, in the Alexandrian and Byzantine periods, the Middle Ages and the Renaissance, the Napoleonic period, the current times of World War I and II, libraries and archival buildings, along with their precious contents, have suffered grievously from deliberate or inadvertent destruction. But even in one or more of the earlier periods an occasional voice was raised against the wantonness of removing, damaging, or destroying cultural materials.<sup>2</sup> More recently many voices have been heard, with the result shown in the annexes to The Hague Conventions of 1899 and 1907, and the draft convention, never promulgated, prepared under the ill-fated League of Nations.<sup>3</sup> Unfortunately, conventions signed

<sup>1</sup> The views expressed in this paper are the personal views of the writer and do not necessarily coincide with the views of any agency or institution.

<sup>2</sup> See, for example, the references in the excellent essays of Charles de Visscher which are cited in note 3.

<sup>3</sup> The annexes to The Hague Convention of 1907 are too readily available in many sources to need citation here. The texts of a "Draft Declaration concerning the Protection of Historic Buildings and Works of Art in Time of War, 1939", the "Preliminary Draft International Convention for the Protection of Historic Buildings and Works of Art in Time of War" (ca. 1938), and the "Draft International Convention on the Repatriation of Objects of Artistic, Historical or Scientific Interest which have been Lost or Stolen or Unlawfully Alienated or Exported" which, with varying title went through three drafts in 1933, 1936, 1939, respectively may be found conveniently in *International Protection of Works of Art and Historic Monuments* (U.S. Dept. of State, Publication 3590, International Information and Cultural Series 8. Reprinted from Documents and State Papers, June 1949). The French texts may be found conveniently with Charles de Visscher, "Les monuments historiques et les oeuvres d'art en temps de guerre et dans les traités de paix", *Art et Archéologie, Recueil de législation comparée et de droit international*, 1940 (No. 2), pp. 9-44, which

by many nations are not enough. Until the millennium, perhaps, we must have positive action: action for prevention, action for salvage, action for coordination of exploitation and protection, action for restitution.

There is no lack of illustrative materials. But there is no need to give illustrative examples beyond those most recently occurred. While material in varying degree is available from a number of countries,<sup>4</sup> I shall use only that from Germany and the United States.<sup>5</sup>

Shall we put our faith solely in preventive measures? In a letter dated February 13, 1942—just two months after the United States was precipitated into the cataclysm of World War II by the Japanese attack on Pearl Harbour—Franklin D. Roosevelt, the President of the United States, wrote to the president of the Society of American Archivists urging strongly the efficacy of prevention: "At this time, and *because of the conditions of modern war against which none of us can guess the future*, it is my hope that the Society of American Archivists will do all that is possible to build up an American public opinion in favour of what might be called the only form of insurance that will stand the test of time. I am referring to the dupli-

was first published in *Revue de droit international et de législation comparée*, 1935, No. 2. A bibliography, as yet unpublished, of treaty obligations, agreements, and policies of the United States government respecting the international protection of works of art and cultural property has been compiled by Miss Ardelia R. Hall, Arts and Monuments Officer, Department of State.

<sup>4</sup> See, for example, such items as C. Tihon, "Les Archives de l'Etat en Belgique pendant la guerre", *Archives, Bibliothèques et Musées de Belgique* 17: 3-13 (1940-46); Emilio Re, "Italian Archives during the War", *American Archivist* 11: 99-114 (April 1948); Hilary Jenkinson and H. E. Bell, *Italian Archives during the War and at its Close* (London 1947); "Les archives en France et la guerre", *Archives, Bibliothèques et Musées de Belgique* 16: 122-23 (1939); "Les destructions des bibliothèques et d'archives pendant la guerre", *Bibliofilia* 48: 76-78 (1946); J. V. Polisensky, "Present State of Czechoslovak Archives", *American Archivist* 11: 223-26 (July 1948); W. Suchodolski, "Archiwa polskie za okupacji (1939-1945)", *Archeion* 17: 54-83 (1948). See also such background items as "De archieven en de luchtbescherming", *Nederlandsch Archievenblad* 47: 33-64 (1939); D.P.M. Graswinckel, "Bescherming van archieven tegen oorlogsgevaar", *ibid.* 46: 51-62 (1938); Burkard, "Die Frage des Luftschutzes fuer Archive und Akteien", *Archivalische Zeitschrift* 44: 172-180 (1936); Hammer, "Luftschutz in Bibliotheken", *Zentralblatt fuer Bibliothekswesen* 52: 496-505 (1935).

<sup>5</sup> The material for Germany is conveniently found, for archives, in *Der Archivar* which began publication in August 1947, and for libraries in Georg Leyh, *Die Lage der deutschen wissenschaftlichen Bibliotheken nach dem Kriege* (Tuebingen, 1947) and in a few other sources. All these I have listed in detail, analysed and discussed in my article "The Archives and Libraries of Postwar Germany", *American Historical Review* 56: 54-57 (Oct. 1950). The American material is most conveniently found in such sources as *Report of the American Commission for the Protection and Salvage of Artistic and Historic Monuments in War Areas* (Washington, U.S. Govt. Print. Office, 1946); the reports (unpublished) of the Monuments, Fine Arts and Archives Officers in the Field; the War Department Pamphlet 31-123: *Preservation and Use of Key Records in Germany* (Washington, 1944); the various handbooks on military government issued by the western Allies; War Department Pamphlet 31-103: *Field Protection of Objects of Art and Archives* (Washington, 1944); and the many other items which are listed in the bibliography of the *Report*.

cation of records by modern processes like the microfilm so that if in any part of the country original archives are destroyed, a record of them will exist in some other place".<sup>6</sup> This reasoning is unimpeachable, but can the logic, extended to practice throughout the world, be translated into action? What would it cost? How long would it take?

The example of the remarkable project conceived by the American Council of Learned Societies, and financed by the Rockefeller Foundation, to microfilm the cultural treasures of Western Europe as protection against damage or destruction in war illustrates the magnitude of the task which confronts those who attempt a realistic plan. The speed of the war of aggression in the West drove the project off the continent into the British Isles. Even in that closely circumscribed area the filming had to be selective to a high degree. Even so the time was too short.<sup>7</sup> It is not defeatism to say that it is already too late for reliance upon this method alone. Even if one could estimate accurately the hundreds of millions of dollars which would be required for the realization of a world wide effort toward protective microfilming, and even if one could guarantee the availability of the money required, and even if one could guarantee the use of all available equipment, still an unestimated, large number of years would be required for the completion of the project.

<sup>6</sup> As quoted, taken from *Journal of Documentary Reproduction* 5: 130 (September 1942). The italics are mine. Just exactly one hundred and fifty years earlier one of Mr. Roosevelt's most distinguished predecessors, Thomas Jefferson, had written in the same vein. "Time and accident are committing daily havoc on the originals deposited in our public offices. The late war has done the work of centuries in this business. The lost cannot be recovered, but let us save what remains: not by vaults and locks which fence them from the public eye and use in consigning them to the waste of time, but by such a multiplication of copies as shall place them beyond the reach of accident". As quoted, this is from the source just given. In the postwar years UNESCO has urged all countries to make photocopies of their greatest cultural treasures and to deposit them in repositories widely dispersed throughout the world. See UNESCO, *Records of the General Conference, Fourth Session, Paris, 1949, Resolutions* (Paris, 1949), item 6.143: The Director General is directed "to encourage the establishment of a certain number of repositories in which a series of reproductions of the most representative and the most vulnerable works might be assembled". See also *id.*, *ibid.*, *Fifth Session, Florence, 1950, Resolutions* (Paris, 1950), item D. 25: "Ask Member States to establish, maintain or complete a photographic documentation of their monuments, works of art and other cultural treasures, to promote the exchange of this documentation, and to encourage the setting up of a number of depositories, in which reproductions of the most representative and vulnerable works may be collected".

<sup>7</sup> I have discussed this point in connection with my remarks upon extensive projects proposed or executed by others e.g., in my paper "A National Plan for Extensive Microfilm Operations", *American Documentation* 1: 66-75 (April 1950), and "Microfilming Abroad", *College and Research Libraries* 11: 250-58 (July 1950). See also my remarks on the international aspects of extensive microfilm operations in my *Rapport Général sur les Archives et la Microphotographie* (Congrès International des Archives, Paris, Août 1950, 8 p.), and the communication of the Library of Congress, "The Foreign Microfilm Program of the Library of Congress", which was read at the First International Congress on Archives, the First International Congress on Classical Studies, and the Ninth International Congress on Historical Sciences, all in Paris, 1950.

Many persons are convinced that it is both impractical and impossible to build archival depositories which are at once suitable for daily peace time use and which will withstand direct attack by modern high explosives.<sup>8</sup> The debate on the location of archival depositories in the centre or on the outskirts of modern cities is still going on.<sup>9</sup> The proposal to provide distinctive protective markings for structures which are themselves of cultural value or which house cultural materials has never been adopted.<sup>10</sup> What fruits will be borne of the new studies on this problem which are being conducted by UNESCO cannot be predicted.<sup>11</sup> Even the best fruits may ripen too late as did those of the International Institute of Intellectual Cooperation.

One can only conclude that some organization, both civil and military, which will plan realistically for unpleasant eventualities, which will become operational in the event of war or other cataclysmic disaster, is required. Such a civilian organization must assuredly partake of many of the elements of those organizations which did such splendid work in many countries with neither precedent nor time to aid them. The organization with the field units must profit from the lessons of the Monuments, Fine Arts and Archives Organization during the last war.<sup>12</sup> But this time archivists must not be so tardy in their planning in some countries, they must not be so hard to find in the field.<sup>13</sup> Admittedly, what was done for archives in time of actual combat was done largely by art officers

<sup>8</sup> An example to the contrary is the new municipal archives of Stockholm which is built into the side of a hill.

<sup>9</sup> E.g., the paper of Wilhelm Winkler, "Soll bei Archivneubauten einem Zentralmagazin im Stadtbereich oder Teilmagazinen ausserhalb der Stadt der Vorzug gegeben werden?" at the 29th Meeting of the Society of German Archivists, Landshut, 19 September 1950.

<sup>10</sup> See the draft convention, 1939, already cited above, article 7.

<sup>11</sup> UNESCO, Item 8. 6. 1. 5 of the Provisional Agenda, General Conference, Fifth Session, 5C/PRG/6, 27 March 1950: "Measures for Ensuring the Co-operation of Interested States in the Protection, Preservation and Restoration of Antiquities, Monuments and Historic Sites; and Possibility of Establishing an International Fund to Subsidize such Preservation and Restoration", 34 p. in all, mimeo. In furtherance of this objective a meeting of experts was held at UNESCO House on October 17-21, 1949.

<sup>12</sup> See, for example, the simple and forthright proposals in the report by the director of the State Bureau for the Protection of Monuments in the Netherlands, dated February 2, 1950, "Protection of Historic Monuments and other Works of Cultural Value in Wartime in The Netherlands", which is found conveniently as Annex II (5 pp) of the item mentioned just above in note 11.

<sup>13</sup> It is significant that at the recent (first) meeting of the Constituent Assembly of the International Council on Archives held in Paris, August 21 and 22, 1950, there was introduced by Dr. Wayne C. Grover, Archivist of the United States, a resolution requiring the ICA to appoint a committee which shall review and appraise the experience in the last war in the protection of archives against the hazards of war, and which shall prepare recommendations for submission to the next session of the Constituent Assembly.

because archivists and librarians were not sent into the field. There is, however, more than enough in his own field to occupy the full time of each specialist. When priorities must be given, when something must be left undone the special field of the man at hand is not the one which is slighted.

Because I have the German material ready at hand, and because for five years at the headquarters of the Office of Military Government for Germany first as Archives Officer in the Monuments, Fine Arts and Archives Section, and later as Chief of the Archives-Libraries Section, I observed at first hand the effects of war upon cultural institutions such as museums, archives and libraries I shall confine myself to the obvious, and give by way of illustrative example the briefest condensation of German experience with planning, preparedness, ways and means of protection, evacuation, dangers, and similar matters.<sup>14</sup>

It has been pointed out that the archives in the northwest part of the U. S. Zone of Germany are mainly in the Rheinland which was a major military objective, and hence are badly damaged, whereas the archives in the southwestern part, which were not located in large industrial cities, not on the main highways, not near mines suffered only slight damage. Both state and municipal archives situated in large cities (for example, Frankfurt, Kassel, Nuremberg, Stuttgart) are usually seriously affected, whereas the archives in smaller centres such as Eschwege, Fulda, Friedberg, Gelnhausen, all in Hesse, are undamaged. The pattern for church archives is, of course, the same. The archives of the Roman Catholic Church, which habitually were established in smaller centres such as Limburg, Fulda, Eichstaett were saved. Those of the Protestant denominations, usually in larger centres such as Kassel, Darmstadt, Frankfurt, often were severely damaged.

In Wolfenbuettel, which for so many centuries has safeguarded the philosophic tractates of the medieval thinkers, one hears the voice of despair: "How can you plan, when all your plans get turned topsyturvy?"<sup>15</sup> The writer doubtless had no need to recall the words of the poet, "All human plans and projects come to naught."<sup>16</sup> One

<sup>14</sup> What is not based upon personal observation is based generally upon the articles in *Der Archivar* already mentioned, and specifically upon those by Karl Wilkes, "Die Sicherung der nichtstaatlichen Archive der Rheinprovinz gegen Kriegseinwirkungen", *Der Archivar* 1: 177-82 (August 1948), and Georg Sante, "Lageberichte der Staats-, Stadt- und Kirchenarchive der Amerikanischen Zone", *ibid.* 1: 51-68 (January 1948).

<sup>15</sup> "Wir haben die Erfahrung gemacht, dass jede noch so sorgfaeltige Planung durch unvorhergesehene Ereignisse durchkreuzt werden kann". *Der Archivar* 1: 112 (May 1948).

<sup>16</sup> Robert Browning, *The Ring and the Book*, VII, Pompilia.

of his professional colleagues tells how many boxes of archives packed for evacuation were totally lost because 50 Kg of gasoline needed for transport was not available. Bureaucratic disinterest was no help.<sup>17</sup> Nevertheless, in the north-western industrial area what has survived has done so largely as the result of planning. One must first know what exists, then plan what to do with it. In this the Archivberatungsstelle worked in closest cooperation with the Kunstschutz to its own advantage in the classification of materials, the protection of evacuated items, proper packing, transport, location of suitable evacuation locales, and the overseeing of these temporary repositories. As early as 1939 the Archivberatungsstelle gave its help to the cause of art in general no less than to municipal, ecclesiastical, and private archives. In September 1939 plans were completed for the evacuation of archives of the first importance along with works of art of the same category. In 1940 the push westward caused the evacuation of the archives of the second and third priorities.

Implicit in what has just been said is the reliance placed upon evacuation as the only protective measure of value. Many reports state the same explicitly. So important was this matter that evacuation sites were prescribed by the Reichskommissar fuer den Archivschutz in Berlin. On the other hand, good friendly relations with the local nobility always guaranteed available space in isolated castles. Ideally the evacuation sites shall be tested for temperature and humidity before materials arrive, and each four weeks thereafter. The packings must be opened and spot checks made. On the types of sites most suitable for prolonged storage of cultural materials opinion differs widely.<sup>18</sup> Completely isolated, rural surface structures or sub-surface repositories are favourites. Opinion is divided upon the method of packing and evacuation.<sup>19</sup> Those whose treasures

<sup>17</sup> "Dabei allerdings auch nicht verschwiegen werden, dass bei gewissen Verwaltungsstellen eine erschreckende Interesslosigkeit fuer diese Bemuehungen um die Erhaltung der rheinischen Kulturgueten festzustellen war. . . . Soweit moeglich, leistete die Provinzialverwaltung auch Hilfe . . . waehrend die Hilfe der Regierungs- und Parteistellen weit hinter den Versprechungen zurueckblieb. Von einigen Dienststellen wurde uns sogar das Draengen auf rechtzeitigen Abtransport der Kunst- und Archivgueten als Defaitismus ausgelegt. . . . Wenn die Archive der Staedte Emmerich, Rees, und Wesel sehr hart mitgenommen worden sind, so liegt die Schuld dafuer ausschliesslich bei den damals verantwortlichen Amts- und Parteidienststellen, die noch Ende 1944 unser dauerndes Draengen auf Verlagerung der Archivbestaende nur mit besserwissenvollenden Hohnlaecheln beantworteten". *Der Archivuar* 1: 179-181 (May 1948).

<sup>18</sup> For example, one reporter prefers coal mines to potash mines because the latter are less fire conscious and less modernly equipped; another reports damage as the result of coal dust and moisture in coal mines.

<sup>19</sup> For example, one reporter argues the obvious, that the bundles of records placed in packing cases remain together and are quasi-arranged; another, arguing from fresh

were removed from the west to what is now the Russian Zone are emphatic in decrying evacuation locales distant from the original site. Others argue the same point for another reason; namely, that local supervision is not enough and not always dependable, so that repositories must be within easy travelling distance for professional staff overseers.

The major sources of damage or destruction, in addition to that resulting directly from combat, are moisture, mould, insects, rodents, salt, fire, water, accidents during transport, plundering, wilful destruction by troops. Against such destructive forces microfilming is a widely advocated safeguard. Opinion differs sharply upon the efficacy of fire resistant paint, impregnation of wood, sand buckets, stirrup pumps, fire extinguishers. There is, however, a general expression of the need for and the effectiveness of some types of planning; namely, establishing evacuation priorities, stock piling of boxes, packaging of rare items, evacuation of upper floors, selection of evacuation sites, early implementation of plans and co-ordination.

In the articles to which I have referred in the notes the Germans have not said much about structural materials, but they do not need to. Anyone who has seen with his own eyes what happens to a modern steel and concrete archival or library building after a direct hit or a near miss by a high explosive bomb does not need to be told how utterly ineffective are such structures. No one who has seen all floors, together with the residue of their former contents, piled in a tangled heap of rubble in the excavation of the basement needs to be told what happens as the result of the intense heat generated by thermite bombs which softens steel, causes girders to buckle, one floor to fall successively upon another. The structural fallacy of open stairways, open elevator shafts, open deck stacks is too obvious to need comment, and too common not to induce the gravest concern for the future. There appears to be much to be said in favour of the old stone arch which does not easily allow collapse of floorings and which may, but not necessarily will, be thick enough to be a non-effective conductor of heat and so help to confine the fire to the floor of origin. Anyone who has seen the many Gothic structures such as the Muenster in Freiburg i.B., or the Muenster in Ulm, or the Cathedral in Cologne, or the Muenster in Aachen which stand without structural damage from bomb blast even though they now rise from a desert of demolished buildings cannot fail to be im-

experience, advises against packing cases since they invite destruction from DP's and others who break them open in search of plunder.

pressed with the apparent efficacy of the buttress, the vault, the free air space of windows. If future repositories for books and archives are to remain above ground, a restudy of their structure seems clearly to be indicated.<sup>20</sup>

Engraved upon the stone of the National Archives of the United States of America are the words, "What is Past is Prologue". I accept that view. Let us therefore examine the immediate past and plan for the immediate future. Whether we study the written record in the manner of historians, or whether we garner our knowledge from the analysis of ruins in the manner of archaeologists, or whether we reflect upon verbal accounts of witnesses in the manner of the contemporary publicists, certain facts clearly emerge, certain responsibilities clearly are indicated. In time of stress conventions may or may not be reliable media of protection for cultural materials. Archives, along with other historical and cultural documentation, whatever its form, are susceptible to severe damage. Modern buildings cannot withstand the super-technique of modern war. Reluctant, tardy, vacillating, or conflicting authority produces its historically predictable result. "Too little and too late" is the norm. At the risk of bordering upon blasphemy, one may apply to the Monuments, Fine Arts and Archives Officers of the last war the noble words which Mr. Churchill applied to the gallant pilots of the RAF: "Never have so many owed so much to so few".

Let us not depend again upon so few. The immediate preparation of national and international plans for the protection of our common cultural heritage is, in my opinion, no more evidence of defeatism, no more a tacit admission of impending disaster than is the planning, the staffing of the national and international Red Cross evidence that we all await with patient resignation the imminent destruction of life and property through fire, flood, earthquake, volcanic action, tidal wave, or hurricane. Yet modern "total" war is capable of wreaking havoc in as many minutes, over as wide an area, in the same degree as the forces of nature. If one accepts this view, then planning and staffing are a permanent peacetime function. Whether or not one argues for the creation of a civilian staff, to be paralleled and complemented by a military staff, as the Dutch are doing, is not the point here. It is perhaps a point to be settled by

<sup>20</sup> In 1946 I recommended a detailed analysis of war damage to German archival and library buildings by an expert commission composed of an archivist, a librarian, and a supervising architect. Although this suggestion was supported by one highly placed professional official in Washington, no action was taken. Now much of the visible evidence already has been lost.



circumstances peculiar to each country. But a military staff is a *sine qua non* for planning, and for operations in the active theatre of war.

I suggest that the cause of archives demands the acceptance of certain axioms, and the realistic application of those axioms to the problem. We may start first with the statement that rank is presumed to convey knowledge. Therefore the staff specialist, who is a civilian specialist that has changed into uniform, must be given rank adequate to his position and his responsibilities. I believe one could support the categorical statement that ranks in the last war were several grades too low. In the American army, at least, the Historical Division has recognized this significant fact and has increased its staff grades for field units. The importance of this concrete example cannot be overemphasised.

The second axiom is that rank and knowledge unsupported by authority are ineffectual. Anyone who has found himself in the position of an "advisor" can appreciate the point. The expert must be enabled to exercise his will. As the third point we may state that only as a permanent member of the official family of a field commander is the specialist in a position to exercise his will in the name of the commander. Jealousy of command authority must never be overlooked. Commanders are always suspicious of, and unlikely to seek assistance from those who come to them on a temporary basis from a higher echelon, and whose loyalty they know to be to that echelon.

As the fourth point we may adopt the tactical principle that desired objectives normally are obtained only as the result of adequate numbers, adequate equipment, adequate mobility. For the purpose here intended this means that the number of staff positions allocated, and filled, must be proportionate to the size of the field unit, the conditions in the area of operations, and kindred criteria. It means that assistance in the way of enlisted personnel, emergency materials, evacuation equipment must be provided for, guaranteed, and supplied upon demand. It means also that those responsible must have the freedom of movement which is attainable only through possession of organic transportation.

The often incompatible aims of those staff officers engaged in exploitation (e.g., intelligence work) and those engaged in protection is a problem only poorly solved in the past. No one will dispute the demands of "military necessity", the phrase which denotes the attainment of objectives with minimum danger to or loss of life, equipment, and freedom on the part of our own forces. Therefore one must concede to the exploiting staffs a high degree of priority.

Perhaps the intents of the two services, exploitation and protection, which are apparently diametrically opposed, are not in reality so opposed. Much better intelligence results could be obtained from material not ransacked chaotically. Much material damaged, discarded, lost, or destroyed in the hasty searches during combat has a value, a greater value in the post-combat phase of operations. The protection of this material as well as that clearly of historical or cultural value is the responsibility of the archivist in the field. It is therefore apparent that at some point in the field service the command responsibility for solving the conflicting aims should be united in one person, and that that person obviously should not represent the exploiting element. That a commander would accept this argument is, I am afraid, too much to hope for. Nevertheless I believe that it should, in fact, that it must be proposed.

Herodotus, the Father of History, tells us that he believes a plan is a first essential.<sup>21</sup> Then let us have a plan. Let us plan to have a general officer to represent the cause of archives, the repository of history, in the councils of the great who will make history. Let us hope to see the cause of archives adequately represented, as it should be, in the staff of such a field force as the embryonic Western European Army. Let us, in fact, do something.

LESTER K. BORN

<sup>21</sup> Herodotus, *Histories*, VII, Chap. 10.

## A NOTE ON THE DEVELOPMENT OF RECORDS CENTRES IN THE UNITED STATES

IN 1923, the Belgian Archivist, C. J. Cuvelier, taking note of the increasing burden placed upon the central archival repository by the overflow into its custody of relatively recent, active records, proposed that the ministries organize establishments for the custody of noncurrent records. These repositories, he said, should be directed by trained archivists who could register and arrange their holdings and give competent advice on further disposition of the records.<sup>1</sup> During the past decade, the concept of a governmental archival structure organized to permit a phase of responsible intermediate custody of records has taken firm root in the United States.<sup>2</sup> It is my purpose in this brief note merely to outline some of the reasons for this development and to mention one or two current happenings that bear on the matter.

In the United States, the organization known as the National Archives is itself a relatively new governmental enterprise, established in 1935. There was barely time for the first Archivist to assemble and train a staff before the pressure for space in the numerous agencies of the Federal Government began to upset the forecasts of those responsible for planning the construction of the National Archives Building. The great expansion of governmental activities during the economic depression of the 1930's and the later war years had the effect of crowding the accumulated archives of the Government out of the agencies and into the new central repository at a rate far in excess of what might normally have been anticipated. At the same time, the expanding Government was creating new records in such quantities and kinds as to appear to archivists to be literally overwhelming.

I think it is not too well appreciated by our colleagues in other parts of the world that the American penchant for the mechanization of work has extended as deeply into the office as it has into the factory. We have had—and indeed are still in the midst of—a technological revolution in office methods and machinery. Two principal factors press the revolution onward; first, the impulse to decrease costs and

<sup>1</sup> Ernst Posner, "Zentralarchiv und Ministerialarchive," *Drei Vorträge zum Archivwesen der Gegenwart*. (Stockholm: 1940), pp. 68-69.

<sup>2</sup> Sir Hilary Jenkinson's excellent introductory notes to the *Guide to the Public Records* contains a brief mention on pp. 31-32 of comparable developments in England. Public Record Office, *Guide to the Public Records* (London: 1949).

increase efficiency by substituting machine methods for the slower, more expensive hand methods; second, the managerial necessity to improve the means of communication and control coincident with the growth of large-scale organization.

This movement toward mechanization of office work in the 20th Century has vastly increased the volume and variety of records produced. (I regret to say that the mechanization of clerical tasks, coupled with the telephone and other electronic methods of communication, has at the same time tended to decrease the quality of documentation in certain areas and at certain levels of administration.) At the National Archives, we have estimated on the basis of surveys made at various times that the Federal Government produced about twenty times the volume of records during the period 1917-1950 as during all its previous existence. It is now producing, each year, one or two times the total quantity that could be accommodated in the National Archives Building.

The problems both of quantity and quality of modern records have therefore been much on the minds of American archivists. We have had to do something about it, willy-nilly. Our efforts in this direction started about 1940 when a number of staff members of the National Archives, encouraged by my predecessor in office, Dr. Solon J. Buck, began infiltrating the major departments of Government and expressing their ideas on the subject of current records management. This, of course, was a departure from the traditional role of the archivist. I am sure it was no more startling to administrative officials than to the archivists themselves when the latter found themselves displaying a considerable disinterest in keeping for posterity the great bulk of paper being disgorged by the machines.

The archivists discovered an immense amount of disorder and waste and want of orderly methods in coping with the machine technology. They proceeded therefore to work with the appropriate administrative officials. They found these officials not only were badly in need of advice but, more encouraging, badly wanted it. The archivists were brazen enough—and perhaps I should say sufficiently desperate in the face of the morass of records that confronted them—not to be content with advice alone. They took a hand in carrying this advice into operation. One plan they began to effectuate rather soon in the largest governmental departments followed along the lines of M. Cuvelier's suggestion.

The first establishment of this character was organized by the Navy Department in Washington in 1942 and given the name

"records centre," a name that has since clung to such intermediate repositories. The Navy Department records centre was organized and directed by former staff members of the National Archives, as were similar establishments which soon followed in the War Department. The centres were to provide responsible intermediate custody for all types of noncurrent records, prior either to destruction of the records or their transfer to the National Archives. Some of the advantages argued for the centres were that they would conserve office space and equipment ; concentrate the administration and processing of noncurrent records among a relatively few agencies in which the efficiency and competency of the staff would be increased by full-time specialization ; avoid expensive and time-consuming effort by more or less irresponsible personnel in searching inaccessible "stored" files ; provide for the orderly disposal of records that, for administrative or legal reasons, must be retained for a fairly long period of time but need not be retained immediately at hand by the office of origin ; and assure the proper identification and preservation of valuable materials and their ultimate transfer to the National Archives.

From the point of view of the central archival repository the principal advantages of the system of records centres were that it assured responsible custody of noncurrent records in trained hands, avoided the loss of valuable materials through dispersion and carelessness, and relieved the central establishment from pressure to accession records too recent, too active, or of dubious value for permanent preservation.

The records centres of the War and Navy Departments proved their value, both in terms of economy and efficiency and of responsible archival custody, during the administratively hectic period of rapid demobilization at the end of World War II. Records of military and naval organizations that most certainly would have been lost had not an orderly system for their disposition existed, were not lost. In the handling of military personnel records alone, the system I am sure saved many a general and admiral from the bitter tongue-lashings that are the delight of our Congressional Committees. The service records of soldiers and sailors, discharged into the status of veterans and immediately eligible for all the benefits our country allows for honourable service, were ready and waiting to prove or disprove, as the case may be. War-time offices that evaporated overnight could still, as in World War I, leave their records to the ministrations of the charwomen, but mostly they did not. And when they did, some one usually got the message through to the records centre.

Among administrators, the popularity of the centres was indeed almost too great. By 1947, a "task force" on records management of the Commission on Organization of the Executive Branch of the Government (Hoover Commission) reported the existence of ".....more than 100 duplicating and overlapping records centres established....by less than a score of the departments and agencies." The report recommended that a central agency be established "to operate fewer records centres to serve all departments and agencies...."<sup>3</sup> As a result of this and other recommendations of the Commission, a new and, I think, unique governmental organization was formed—the General Services Administration. The National Archives Establishment, with expanded responsibilities for the supervision of records management practices throughout the Federal Government, became a part of the new General Services Administration on July 1, 1949. Re-named the National Archives and Records Service, this organization has since been charged with responsibility for establishing and supervising a number of Federal Records Centres in order to carry out the Commission's recommendations. Four such Centres (one each in Washington, D.C., New York City, N.Y., Chicago, Ill., and San Francisco, Calif.) are in process of being organized (July 1950) and others will be established as funds and facilities become available.

The principal departure from Cuvelier's suggestion is that the new records centres will be under the same administrative directions as the central archival repository, thus avoiding any possibility of the growth of independent ministerial archives establishments. This is consistent with the National Archives Act of 1934, which presumed that all archives of the United States Government would ultimately come under the control of the Archivist of the United States.<sup>4</sup>

WAYNE C. GROVER

<sup>3</sup> Commission on Organization of the Executive Branch of the Government, *Task Force Report on Records Management*, (Washington: 1948). pp. 14-15.

<sup>4</sup> Sec. 3, 48 Stat. L. 1122-1124.

## THE PROTECTION OF ARCHIVES: SOME LESSONS FROM THE WAR IN ITALY

IT IS now more than four years since the last Archives Officer of the Allied Powers left Italy and the wartime work of protection of Italian archives, planned and initiated by Sir Hilary Jenkinson and Mr. Fred W. Shipman, was brought to a conclusion. In the intervening period details of that work, and an estimate of the losses suffered by Italian archives during the war, have appeared.<sup>1</sup> The purpose of the present note is not to repeat, or summarise, such material, but to indicate certain impressions left in the minds of those archivists who took part in a task that, though often tragic, was also instructive. Some of the lessons of the war period are perhaps relevant to archive administration in times of peace.

First and foremost amongst them is the great desirability of having available for each country a single general list of archive accumulations, arranged topographically. Under wartime conditions in Italy, such a list was the *sine qua non* of protection, for it was essential that the general orders issued to military formations to respect archive repositories should be made specific in their application. The list of Italian repositories compiled by Dr. Ernst Posner,<sup>2</sup> and Sir Hilary Jenkinson's more detailed List of Italian Archives,<sup>3</sup> thus formed the basis on which the work of preservation was organised. Later developments in this connection were also important. With Allied encouragement, the Italian civil authorities and the Vatican set to work to compile comprehensive surveys of lay and ecclesiastical archives, similar in method and scope to the post-war English *National Register of Archives*. The significance of these general lists is very great indeed. Their primary function, in peace no less than in war, is to ensure the protection and preservation of archives, to avoid disappearance or dispersion, especially of smaller accumulations, through ignorance or neglect. But in addition they form a great outline guide to archive sources which, if kept up to date, will prove of untold value to the scholar; they may also incorporate references to such specific lists of separate archives as are available.

<sup>1</sup> Hilary Jenkinson and H. E. Bell, *Italian Archives during the War and at its Close*, London, H.M.S.O., 1947.

<sup>2</sup> Dr. Posner's list was compiled for the Committee of the American Council of Learned Societies on Protection of Cultural Treasures in War Areas.

<sup>3</sup> Jenkinson and Bell, *op. cit.*, 43.

Again, wartime Italy provided useful experience in the peculiar problems that attach to the preservation of modern governmental archives. In general, the powers of survival of ancient records were found to be surprisingly great, but with recent archives the case was different. In part this distinction had a physical basis, parchment documents showing quite extraordinary resistance to the effects of exposure to damp and dirt. But aside from the question of the material on which records are written, there were other reasons why there was less loss of ancient, than of modern, archives. The bulk of the former, though often great, was manageable; well arranged and disposed, often by professional custodians, their appearance commanded respect, and they were that much less liable to casual dispersion. Modern archives, on the other hand, usually formed infinitely larger and less well organised accumulations that to the layman, soldier or civilian, were simply a mass of old papers, the preservation of which was of no matter.

The moral of this kind of experience is that there are psychological, as well as physical, factors to be taken into account in the preservation of archives. If the recent records of a government department are to command respect, they must be suitably arranged, packed and housed; perhaps—though of course under stringent safeguards—arrangements for the regular elimination of ephemeral matter also strengthens the chances of survival of such archives. All this is work that demands a high degree of technical experience and proficiency; it is a task for the archivist and not the filing clerk. The conclusion that most of us who dealt with the preservation of modern records in Italy felt to be inescapable was that the archivist should be concerned with such accumulations, in an advisory and inspecting capacity, even before they pass from the departments that have produced them into his official custody.

Lastly—and perhaps this impression remains the strongest of all—the abnormal situation of Italian archives during the war served to bring out the supreme importance of there being in existence a highly trained *cadre* of professional archivists. At the twenty-three *Archivi di Stato*, at the Sezioni, and at many of the smaller communal archives, and within the Church organisation too there were able archivists, whose efforts—sometimes on their own initiative, sometimes in co-operation with the Archives Officers of the Allied Powers—went far towards minimising the damage of war and towards preserving the great riches of the archives of Italy. This point is



worth stressing, for it emphasises the fact that ultimately the fate of a country's archives depends on the men who act as their custodians. Attention to the training of those entering the archivist's profession will always reap, as it did in Italy, a rich reward.

H. E. BELL

## PRIVATE ARCHIVES IN ENGLAND

IN A SHORT article it is impossible to do more than give a bare outline of this great category of English Records. Private Archives may best be defined as those documents which accumulate through the activities of individuals, firms and institutions, as opposed to those which normally gather in Government, Municipal, or Ecclesiastical Offices. This division is, however, by no means clear-cut as Manorial Documents come within the category, though certain powers of the Lords of the Manor represented a delegated Royal Authority and throughout the centuries officials, whether great officers of State or engaged in Local Government, often work at home and their documents are often found as official 'strays' among their family papers. It is still the custom for important public affairs to be discussed at the highest level in semi-private letters, another cause of the blurring of neat lines of demarcation of subject matter, though such correspondence must obviously be classed as private. Hence it follows that the courses of national events are sometimes more fully revealed in the papers of a great family than in the more formal documents of the Government Office. Historians also are realizing more fully the constant interplay of local and national activities, while for social and economic History, Private Archives are an essential basis.

Fortunately England possesses a vast quantity of such accumulations, possibly more than any other European country. The Saxon love of case law, as opposed to the codified Continental systems, demanded that Records should be kept for constant reference; Norman efficiency saw to it that this was done well. Hence there accumulated during the Middle Ages, quantities of Manorial, Legal and Financial Documents in every Borough and Manor House in the Country. When writing became common in the landowning class in the fifteenth century, letters began to find the same resting place, while in the 16th century the burden of administrative duties placed by the Tudors on the shoulders of the Ecclesiastical Parish gradually produced that mixture of ecclesiastical and civil documents which form the contents of the 'Parish Chest'. As a result every village has a number of such small 'repositories' of natural growth. The Local Government Act of 1888 added a number of new Archive making Authorities, the County, District and (Civil) Parish Councils.

No law governed the care of these accumulations, except for the fact that in each County a *Custos Rotulorum*, usually identical

with the Lord Lieutenant, was legally responsible for the care of the Records of Quarter Sessions, as was the Parish Priest for keeping Registers of Births, Marriages and Deaths, each owner, whether private individual, local official or ecclesiastic, did as seemed best in his own eyes, preserving or destroying as he willed. The *Custos Rotulorum* himself had neither rules nor oversight to guide him and in the middle of the nineteenth century the zeal of one actually led him to preside at an *auto da fe* of certain Quarter Sessions Records, then regarded as useless for practical purposes. In 1924, however, a new principle was introduced and one class of private archives, Manorial Documents, were placed by Act of Parliament, under the ultimate care of the Master of the Rolls. In spite, however, of this typically English freedom, destruction was a rare event. With the exception of the localized and quickly suppressed Peasants' Revolt of the fourteenth century, the Civil Wars did little harm to documents. The contesting parties were too hopeful of succeeding to their opponents' sequestrated estates to be anything but careful of such supports for 'title'. Occasionally the reforming iconoclast or the utterly careless cleared away older documents, sometimes fire or damp destroyed them, and, after the middle of the sixteenth century, scholarly 'collectors' removed the choicer specimens surreptitiously from their proper ownership. The lawyers saw to it that Title Deeds and Court Rolls were bundled in reasonable order and looked after, but otherwise the documents were normally stacked carelessly and seldom listed. The rare search for an older paper required for practical purposes often made the confusion worse, but sheer inertia was their strongest safeguard. It was less trouble to leave the mass untouched than to sort the legal wheat from the chaff, unless for practical purposes. Thus the amount of care allotted them slowly degenerated from the high standard of the mediaeval period, exemplified by the magnificent arrangement of the Deeds at Durham Cathedral. Historians took little interest in Archives till the end of the sixteenth century and though a great debt of gratitude is due to the researches of later Antiquaries, their handling of the actual documents left much to be desired.

In recent years, however, rapid changes have taken place. The introduction of the fifty-years title in 1874, since reduced to thirty years, had caused many lawyers and estate agents to lose all interest in the older title deeds, which often now do not pass to the new owner on the sale of an estate. The effect of rapidly changing social conditions is even more disastrous. Shortage of fuel in two wars has

resulted in the larger houses becoming damp; it is now rare to find a private accumulation unaffected by mildew. The reduced staffs of the larger estates have no time to take a practical interest in the older Records, while economic pressure is forcing the landowners to move into smaller houses, with inadequate space for the housing of their family papers. Fortunately steps have been taken to meet these dangers, though as yet on an inadequate scale. County Record Offices have been set up in all but seven out of forty Shires and some of the great Public Libraries are fulfilling the same function. These organizations accept whole accumulations of Private Archives, usually on long loan, and in return for their being made available to scholars, undertake to repair, arrange and list the contents. The response of the landowners to this scheme has been extremely generous and many great accumulations have been saved from destruction or disposal by sale. Though in many cases severely handicapped by shortage of staff and space, these Local Record Offices are doing magnificent work.

Working in close cooperation, though having no official connection with these Local Record Offices, is the National Register of Archives, whose foundation in 1945 as a branch of the Historical Manuscripts Commission is described in another article. Its primary aim is to register all the Archives in England except those of the Central Government, which are dealt with by the Public Record Office. It thus covers a number of other categories besides Private Archives. Such a central register should prove of great value to future historians seeking the sources of their studies. The central office is staffed by the Registrar, Assistant Registrar, two Research Assistants, a Chief Clerk, two assistant clerks and a part time typist, scarcely adequate in numbers for so vast a task. Reports on individual accumulations are received at the rate of about a thousand a year. In certain important cases these reports are the result of inspections by members of the staff but the great majority are sent in by voluntary helpers, who are grouped under a County or Area Committee. The general standard of these reports is remarkably high.

In the central office they are filed under the owner's name, all place-names are checked and the various classes of documents in each report are entered on index cards which are arranged geographically under the name of the Ecclesiastical Parish in which the Accumulation is physically located. Cross-references are entered under the names of other places covered by the documents in the report. In addition a

small and selective card index of prominent personalities and important subjects is being compiled. The amount of information available for the future scholar will thus be considerable. The reports themselves are designed in two stages, a simple form being designed for each. The first gives the name and address of the owner and a general outline of the contents of an accumulation by its main classes and covering dates. The second form, styled "Third Stage" as a previous second stage has been abandoned, is normally a simple list of documents in chronological order by classes: it may, however, according to the interests of the helper concerned, sometimes be expanded into a calendar. The reports are type-written or duplicated, copies being distributed to the owners, the Local Record Offices and the Area Committees concerned, thus keeping local interest and support alive. Experience soon proved that it was impossible to limit the work to the original aim of registration alone. The organization of County and Area Meetings led to a demand for a periodical, the 'Bulletin of the National Register of Archives' which is issued each year and to the holding of an annual conference, attended by over three hundred helpers. It was obviously little use listing documents in imminent danger of destruction from damp or dispersal. The Central Office has had to arrange for a considerable number of accumulations to be deposited at Local and other Record Offices, often a delicate and lengthy task. Important examples are the Wentworth Woodhouse Papers, deposited on loan by Earl Fitzwilliam and his Trustees at the Sheffield Central Library, containing, *inter alia*, a crate full of the great Earl of Strafford's Papers, four boxes of Edmund Burke's Letters and the Papers of the Marquess of Rockingham, Prime Minister from 1765 to 1766; the Earl of Radnor's loan to the Kent County Record Office of his Estate Papers and Manorial Records, commencing in the thirteenth century; a similar outright gift to the Wiltshire Record Office by the Marquess of Ailesbury, the earliest documents being the twelfth century charters of a Trinitarian Monastic House; and the gift to the British Museum by Mr. Dudley Perceval of the Papers of his ancestor, the Prime Minister who was shot in the House of Commons in 1812. These varied tasks keep the small staff inordinately busy and it is not surprising that the Register is not yet in a position to act as a general guide to scholars, though every effort is made to deal with the, fortunately few, queries received.

Much hard work and much education of the public must be undertaken before the Private Accumulations of England can be regarded as adequately cared for and the present rate of destruction makes the

problem urgent. Meanwhile what can the student hope to find to his purpose among such Archives? This will naturally depend upon the functions of those who made the accumulation, whether, say, in the main, a politically-minded family, landowners, large or small, a 'Service' or professional family, a group of savants or business men, with any conceivable combination of them all. It is, however, possible to make certain rough generalizations. The earliest type of documents are usually Deeds. The few Saxon Charters are usually of Ecclesiastical origin; private Deeds of the eleventh and early twelfth century are very rare but are more frequently found from the reign of Henry II onwards. A large mediaeval accumulation can be expected to contain a considerable number from the thirteenth century onwards, but many medium sized estates have no surviving records earlier than the sixteenth. Manorial Documents of the thirteenth century again are rare, but Court Rolls and Accounts become increasingly common from the reign of Edward II. Official Papers, 'strays' in private hands, are rare in the Middle Ages, but are well represented between the 16th and 18th centuries. In the 19th their place is often taken by semi-official correspondence. Correspondence of any sort is rare till the Tudor Period and from then onwards becomes increasingly voluminous; Diaries are few till the 18th century and so are early Business Records, which usually have survived only in private houses, a notable exception being the Day-Book of John Smyth, a leading Bristol Merchant; this covers the years 1537-1550. A few Business Firms have Archives dating back to the days of the later Stuarts. Parish Archives, such as Church-wardens' and other Accounts of the 18th and early 19th centuries, and occasionally even Registers of Births, Marriages and Deaths, are found in private hands.

Of particular interest to Indians should be the sources of Anglo-Indian History in private hands. These have as yet scarcely been explored but must be very considerable. Many English families whose members have served in India still retain their records. The great-great-grandson of an eighteenth century Civil Servant who rose to be acting Governor of Bombay possesses over forty volumes of his ancestor's letter-books and diaries, and another member of the same family has his own grand-fathers diaries and correspondence with Sir Charles Napier. A series of diaries of a family which for a hundred years were Calcutta Merchants are housed in a house on Salisbury Plain and the semi-official correspondence of a 19th century Secretary of State for India has recently been made available to scholars through

the offices of the Register. A recent bare report of the discovery of papers of the period of Lord Clive is being investigated.

The question of access to such papers is not an easy one. They are private property and, though the owners are usually most responsive, they have to contend with great difficulties. Archivists rightly advise them to take great care of their documents, few of which are listed, even if these are not in chaos. There is seldom anyone to invigilate, except the owner, usually a very busy man. It is, therefore, only courteous that students should state clearly the importance of their research and offer adequate credentials before making what usually amounts to a request for free entry into a private house, a request which many generous owners dislike refusing. Where an owner has deposited his documents in a Local Record Office, this problem is, of course, solved.

To sum up, the future of these Records presents a great problem to the Archivist if they are to be preserved for generations to come. The cooperation of the owners is surprisingly generous, but modern conditions enforce a degree of urgency which is not generally realized. The Local Record Offices and the Register have made an excellent start, but greater resources are needed if their aim is to be achieved.

G. E. G. MALET

## THE NATIONAL LIBRARY OF WALES AND THE CUSTODY OF WELSH RECORDS

IN ORDER to understand and appreciate the position of the National Library of Wales as a library and a record repository it is necessary to consider the background of its history. Acquaintance with even the broad outlines of Wales history cannot be taken for granted within the British Isles; therefore, readers of *The Indian Archives* can hardly be expected to know much about Wales and its past. It may be known vaguely as a geographical expression, standing for a mountainous peninsula on the western side of England, but only those who have visited the country are fully aware that a nation distinct from the English dwells here cherishing its own separate language derived from a branch of the Celtic group of languages which the Romans found in Britain, when Caesar first crossed from Gaul, and maintaining in full vigour a literature which has an unbroken tradition of fourteen centuries.

The Welsh people possess all the main attributes of nationality save that of political independence. The nation has never experienced the discipline of a unified state co-extensive with the distribution of Welsh speech. The political development of tribal Wales in the direction of a centralized state was frustrated by the ambitions of the English Plantagenet kings in the thirteenth century, and the nucleus of a state established by the Welsh princes became annexed to the English Crown in 1284. For the succeeding two hundred and fifty years the remainder of the territory of modern Wales and the English border continued to be divided into a complexity of lordships, of varying size and importance, which the Normans had left as the legacy of their policy of conquest in the West. There was no national centre into which Welsh manuscripts and records could be drawn. There was one brief period in the first decade of fifteenth century when a Welsh sovereign state west of the rivers Mersey and Severn seemed to be within the grasp of the national hero, Owen Glendower. He concluded treaties with the Kings of Scotland and France and he discussed with the latter the metropolitan status of St. Davids and its independence of Canterbury and the establishment of two universities one in North and the other in South Wales. Owen's reign, however, proved to be lamentably short and his dreams were shattered long before his mysterious disappearance from the stage of history about 1416. The archives of his government like those of the earlier princes did not survive. The following seventy years witnessed



unification of a different kind in the lapse of an increasing number of Welsh lordships into the hands of the English crown. In 1485, this crown was vested in a Welshman, Henry VII, who won it on Bosworth field, mainly through the active support of Welshmen and the passive acquiescence of a large body of Englishmen. The Tudor dynasty laid the foundations of modern Britain as one unified state. In 1536, the English parliament—there was no Welsh representation—passed an act to incorporate the country or dominion of Wales in the realm of England, and to give Welshmen the same legal status as Englishmen, except that no person using the Welsh language could hold any office or fee unless he exercised the English speech. And there, to the mind of the English civil servant, the book of Welsh history should have finally closed. The purpose of the act was to delete all the distinguishing marks of Welshmen. The English shire system which had already been introduced into the ancient principality in 1284 was extended to the remainder of Wales, and the marches were parcelled into new Welsh counties or added to existing Welsh and English counties. The result was the thirteen shires of modern Wales. For administrative convenience, twelve of these counties were grouped into four circuits under a separate judicature which became known as the King's Great Sessions in Wales. Monmouthshire, apparently because of its greater accessibility to London, was linked with the English assize system centred on Westminster. The separation of Wales in judicial matters in time gave rise to the expression 'Wales and Monmouthshire,' as if Monmouthshire was not part of Wales. The Welsh judicature functioned until 1830, when the twelve counties joined Monmouthshire within the orbit of the English assize. The Courts of Great Sessions were virtually a national institution, and the records of their activities for three hundred years, which were removed from Wales to London in 1854 and subsequent years, constitute the most important body of Welsh national records.

Tudor legislation failed in its purpose of annihilating Welsh nationality. The chief factor in Welsh resistance and survival was the virility of the Welsh language. The Tudor policy towards the language was effective only in the upper and official classes. The common people clung tenaciously to their ancient speech and literature. In the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries religious and cultural awakenings infused fresh life into the Welsh language and its literature, which enabled the language to survive the anglicisation of large areas of the principality through the industrial revolution, and consequent English infiltration, helped by an alien system of education which

at first ignored the national language entirely, and which, even today, fails to give it the patronage normally given to the mother tongue by politically independent nations. The contribution of the Welsh language to the survival of Welsh nationhood explains the predominantly cultural characteristic of Welsh nationalism in the late nineteenth and the early twentieth century. The University of Wales, the National Museum, and the National Library are the principal monuments of this cultural nationalism.

The primary purpose of the National Library, as set out in its Royal Charter of foundation in 1907, is the collecting, preserving, and maintaining of manuscripts, printed books, and works of all kinds, especially those composed in Welsh or any other Celtic language or relating to the antiquities, language, literature, philosophy, religion, arts, crafts and industries of the Welsh and other Celtic peoples. It is also empowered to collect and maintain all literary works, whether connected or not with Welsh subjects, composed, written, or printed in whatsoever language on whatsoever subject and wheresoever published, which may help to attain the purposes for which the University of Wales and its constituent colleges and other educational institutions existing in Wales were created and founded, especially the furtherance of higher education within the meaning of the Education Acts from 1870, and of literary and scientific research. Within a few years of its establishment at Aberystwyth in 1909 the National Library had pre-eminently fulfilled the primary object outlined in its charter. This success must be attributed both to the foresight, generosity, and industry of its founders, particularly its first president, Sir John Williams, and to the goodwill which Welshmen everywhere showed towards this young national institution. Some collections of Welsh manuscripts had already found permanent homes in old established institutions, such as the British Museum and the Bodleian Library. Cardiff City Library had been building up its Welsh collections of manuscripts and printed books for some years before the establishment of the National Library and naturally continued to do so. To a lesser extent the Library of the University College of North Wales at Bangor was also a competitor in the same field. The success of the National Library of Wales is particularly remarkable when it is considered that it had to establish itself without the aid of the integrating influences of political independence and the environment of a capital city. From its very inception, the National Library stepped easily into the first place among libraries interested in the collection of the manuscript and printed sources of Welsh

literature and history. In 1911, the success of the secondary object envisaged in the charter was assured when the Library was added to the list of libraries in the British Isles which are entitled to demand the deposit of books under Copyright law.

The founders of the National Library were also interested in the creation of a Welsh Record Office for the collection and preservation of Welsh local records. The terms of the Charter did not exclude these records from the National Library. Indeed, when subsidiary papers of the Courts of Great Sessions of date later than 1660, which were condemned as being of insufficient value to be preserved in the Public Record Office, were offered to the Library as an alternative to their destruction, in 1909, they were readily accepted and became the first fruits of the National Library's collection of public records. The tendency, however, was to regard the proposed Public Record Office for Wales as a distinct and separate institution. In October 1910 a royal commission was appointed to enquire into, and report upon, the state of the public records and the local records of a public nature of England and Wales. Between 1912 and 1919 it published three reports which have considerable bearing upon the custody of Welsh records. The first report advocated the establishment of a general repository for Welsh records in Wales, and recommended the return to this proposed repository of all Welsh records transferred to London since the establishment of the Public Record Office in 1838. Nothing came of this recommendation, though the commissioners repeated it with greater emphasis in their third report in 1919. They urged that the Public Record Office for Wales should be established without further loss of time, and that certain classes of local records, such as those of town trusts and other statutory authorities, the early records preserved in the district probate registries, early title-deeds and other estate records relating to the Welsh dioceses should be transferred to the Public Record Office for Wales. A member of the commission, Mr. Llewelyn Williams, M.P., had unsuccessfully introduced a bill into Parliament to create such a Record Office. The time was not propitious for the establishment of a new Welsh national institution, but then and in the succeeding years the need for a repository for Welsh records became increasingly urgent. Fortunately, the National Library was able to afford all the facilities which a Public Record Office could offer.

Most of the records which the commissioners had in mind in 1919 are now deposited in the National Library of Wales. The Welsh Church Act of 1914, by which the Anglican Church in Wales was

disestablished, had provided for the lodging in the National Library of the residue of records relating to the property vested in the Commissioners of the Temporalities of the Church in Wales when no longer required by them in the execution of their duties under the Act. Now that the Commission has been dissolved since 1947, all these records and those created by the Commission itself during its thirty-three years' duration have been placed in the National Library. The Presbyterian Church of Wales deposited its archives in the National Library in 1934. In 1944, the Church in Wales placed on deposit all the older episcopal, diocesan, and chapter records hitherto preserved in the cathedrals and diocesan registries of the four ancient Welsh dioceses of St. Davids, Llandaff, St. Asaph and Bangor. This decision on the part of the Representative Body of the Church in Wales is a landmark in the history of British Archives. The vast collection of historical records accumulated at the ancient centres of the oldest institution in the principality now became available for the first time at an established and central place of research. These records date from the year 1397, and are computed to consist of some two million items. The conditions of the deposit envisage the collection of church records which have strayed out of official custody, and a development in the centralization of ecclesiastical records of a local character including the older parochial registers and vestry books, a large percentage of which are in need of repair and rehabilitation.

The deposit of the Church in Wales records was logically followed by a direction issued in 1945 by the President of the Probate, Divorce, and Admiralty Division of the High Court of Justice, with the consent of the Lord Chancellor, for the lodging in the National Library of all the Welsh ecclesiastical probate records prior to the year 1858 which were in muniment rooms of district probate registries of the High Court at Bangor, Chester, Carmarthen and Llandaff. Until 11 January 1858 jurisdiction over wills or administrations of the estates of deceased persons in Wales had been vested in the episcopal courts of the four ancient Welsh dioceses, and the records were preserved at the diocesan registries. The officials in charge of the district probate registries welcomed the removal of the older records to the National Library. They were more conscious than any research worker that the facilities offered by the National Library would make the records much more open to research than their own limited space and resources could allow. A third class of records at one time preserved in the diocesan registries has been received into the National Library. It consists of instruments of tithe apportion-

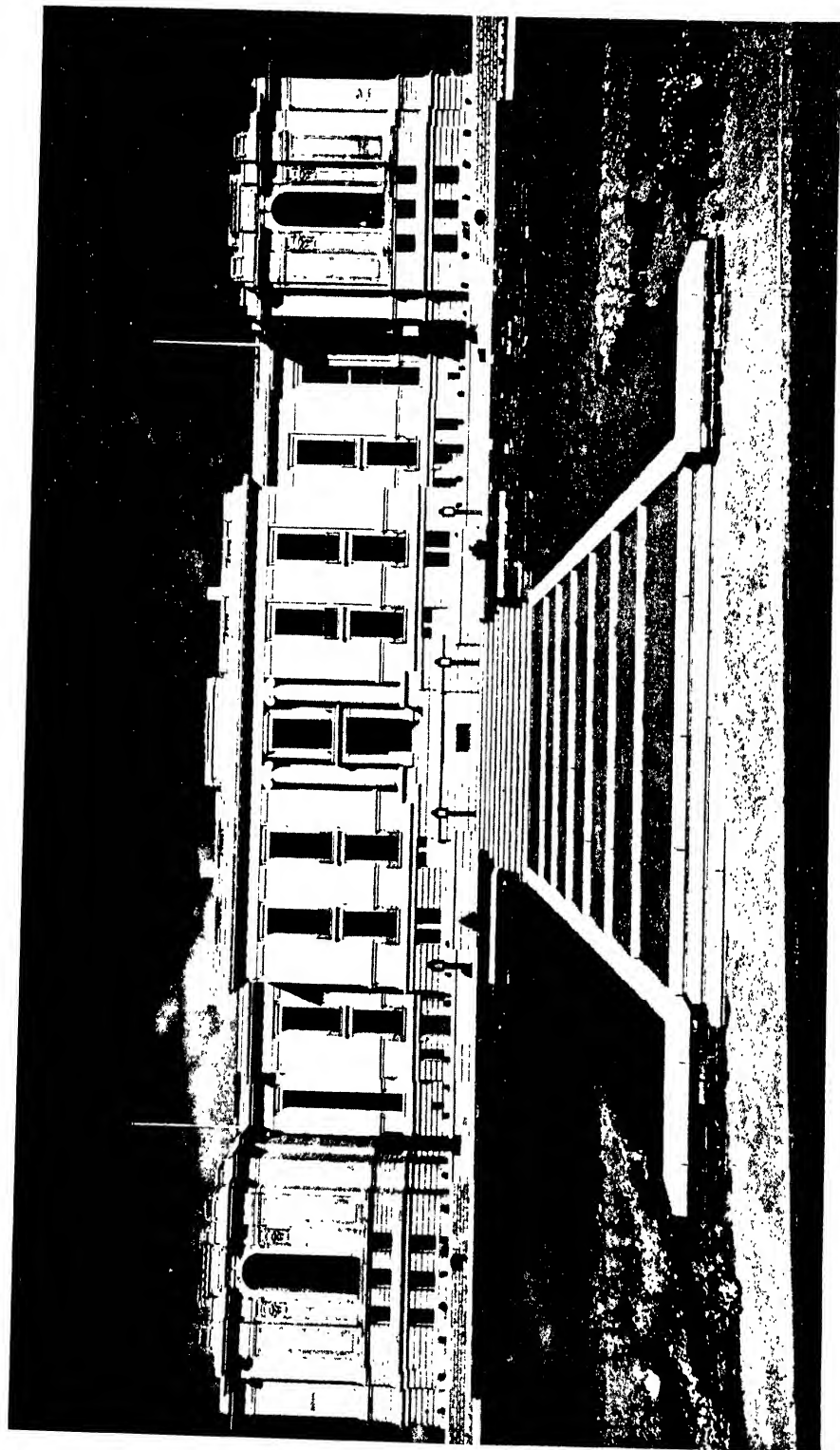
ment for Welsh parishes with maps made about 1840. These records are invaluable for students of place-names, development of communities, and the utilization of land. The tithe records were received under a series of directions made by the Master of the Rolls in 1945. The National Library had been placed on the Master of the Rolls' list of approved depositories for manorial records in 1926.

These deposits of local records, and it is clear from the history of the principality that the records collected into the National Library are essentially local in character, have made the Library virtually the national records repository for Wales. His Majesty's Treasury has acknowledged the services rendered by the National Library as a records repository by the allocation of a proportion of the annual grant-in-aid for this purpose.

The official deposits are the culmination of a process which has been going on for over thirty years. The first large deposit of deeds and documents, over thirty thousand items, was made by a firm of solicitors from Haverfordwest in 1915. Since then, nearly three hundred collections of family and institutional records have been received. The deposits have been made by members of the higher ranks of the British peerage as well as by owners of more modest estates, firms of solicitors and estate agents, trustees of estates, educational, cultural, social, and industrial institutions, associations and concerns, ecclesiastical bodies, nonconformist unions and individual churches, and county, urban, rural district, parish, and town councils.

Under the deposit system the owner of a collection of documents retains the full right of ownership. He and his legal successors have the right to recall individual items or the entire collection should the need arise. The pressure of taxation, resulting in the shutting down or the conversion to other purposes of the old country houses, makes it necessary for many old-established families to look for suitable accommodation for their family papers, and in Wales there is no building comparable with the National Library as a home for evicted records. Each collection is kept separately and its integrity is maintained. Typewritten schedules are prepared giving the gist of the purport of each item in the collection. These schedules serve as receipts for the owners and as guides to the contents of the collections, thereby making them available for purposes of historical research.

These typewritten schedules are the primary keys to the deposited collections. Hitherto, and this situation is likely to continue for many years, it has not been possible to print the



The National Library of Wales--The Façade

his way from one country house to another in the often forlorn hope of obtaining access to material for original research. Today, the greater collections of Welsh manuscripts and records are conveniently placed at his service under ideal conditions in a modern state-maintained building specially designed for ensuring the well-being of the records and the proper accommodation of the research worker. The Library has encouraged and stimulated the foundation of county historical societies and the proper care of county muniments. In England, the modern tendency is to organise all local records on a county basis, but the Welsh counties which can maintain adequate record offices to house family muniments with their own official records are very few. Small county record offices are maintained by the County Councils of Glamorgan, Monmouth and Caernarvon. Of the thirteen Welsh counties only two have a rateable value exceeding £1,000,000, and five have a rateable value of less than £200,000. Many single English counties have a considerably higher rateable value than the combined total of the thirteen counties of Wales. The smaller Welsh counties are, therefore, glad to take advantage of the hospitality of the National Library for their historical records, and the proper policy for Wales to pursue in the preservation of its local records is to build upon the great achievement of the National Library, taking full advantage of the unique facilities which it offers.

There is ample room for development in the centralization of Welsh historical research around the Library and its accumulation of national treasures, and also in the utilization of the processes of microphotography to bring these treasures within easier reach of the students who cannot spend much time away from home. With the loyal co-operation of all sections of the Welsh people, and a pride in the common national achievement, the harvest gathered into the National Library of Wales can be converted into vital energy for the reviviscence of the nation.

EVAN D. JONES

## THE ARCHIVIST AND THE ADMINISTRATOR

**I**S THE ARCHIVIST expected to assist the administrators whose records are in his custody and, if so, what is the nature and extent of the assistance he should render to them? These are questions with which every archivist is faced and an attempt is made to answer them here in the light of the experience gained in the Madras Record Office.

Now, it is possible to hold that it is by no means one of the duties of the archivist to render any active assistance to the administrators in carrying on efficiently the day to day administration of the country. It is possible to argue that the utmost that he can be expected to do to assist the administrators is to furnish them with whatever records they call for and to undertake occasionally some searches upon any intricate or difficult points that have a history behind them. But this narrow conception of his duty appears to be conducive neither to the better administration of the country nor to the better administration of the archives themselves. Of course, where the archive repository is situated in close proximity to the offices of the administrators, where the administrators look upon it only as a wing of their office and send their own men to consult the records, the archivist can do little more than pick up and furnish the records called for. In cases like this he is not expected to make an elaborate search in order to make sure that all information on a given subject is collected, or, after collecting such information, to submit a comprehensive note on the points under consideration. In fact, he may not be told at all, in such cases, what exactly are the points under consideration. But where the archive repository is located at a distance from the offices of the administrators and where it has been organised as a separate office, the administrators cannot send their own men to consult the records. And, even if they send them, they cannot get the information they require readily. In such cases the administrators have necessarily to depend upon the archivist and sometimes tell him what exactly is the matter under consideration. It is obvious that in such cases the archivist has to play an important part. It then becomes his duty to make a thorough search and to collect all the information wanted and, if he is competent, to study it carefully and, in the light of this study, to submit a more or less detailed note on the subject. If he fails to do this, he fails to make use of the most advantageous position which he occupies in the scheme of administration. He is the only man who knows all



about the different series of records in his custody. He is also the only man who has all the critical apparatus, the guides, the catalogues, the indexes, etc., by which complete information on any given subject, its origin, its development, its various aspects, can be traced. The administrators cannot be expected to know anything about these. It is only right and proper, therefore, that the archivist should do what has been suggested above for effectively assisting the administrators. Denial of such effective assistance may result in the administrators unknowingly passing erroneous orders based on incomplete or ill digested information supplied to them.

And here it is necessary to disabuse some of the assumptions which stand in the way not only of the archivist's assistance to the administrators, but also of the administrator's reliance on the archivist. It is sometimes assumed that non-current records, that is to say, records which are more than a certain number of years old<sup>1</sup> are of no use to the administrators, that they are useful only to the historian and the antiquary. It is likewise assumed that, as the bulk of the records in the archivist's custody are generally old records and not current records, he is competent to assist only the students engaged in historical research and not the administrators concerned with current administration. These assumptions are by no means true. There doubtless arise a good number of cases in current administration in which the information contained in the non-current or past records is often found to be of utmost value. Experience has shown, at any rate, in the Madras Record Office, that there is hardly an important policy or aspect of current administration the origin or the various phases of which are not to be traced in the non-current records. Moreover, it is not realised that very often a policy which appears new might have been really old, might have been tried in the past and actually given up for some reason or other. Again records mirror the experience and opinions of not one or two, but of a series of administrators of the past which cannot but be of some value to the administrators of the present. Indeed, in our enthusiasm, if we ignore the lessons of the past we may have to pay penalties in the future. Above all, it should not be forgotten that the records were and are retained and preserved by the administrators not so much for the use of historians as for their own use, for carrying

<sup>1</sup> Specific time limits perhaps cannot be fixed in practice to make records "non-current" although this is often done in theory. A better definition of "non-current" record would be "record no longer required in connection with the transaction for which it was originally created."—*Chief Editor*.

on an enlightened administration in the light of all that has gone before.

If the present administrators do not realise this, it is the duty of the archivist to make them realise it by showing at every opportunity what a mine of useful information of current value is contained in the past records. If he can, in this manner, in a number of cases, illumine the present with the aid of the past and thus assist the administrators to arrive at proper solutions for the numerous problems that confront them to-day, he would doubtless be rendering not a little service to the administration of his country. He would, at the same time, be rendering not a little service to the archives themselves by making use of them to the fullest extent, by impressing their importance on the administrators and thereby creating the favourable circumstances under which they can be administered well on the most up to date lines. The administrators are chary of spending money over archives merely because they are not aware of the great value of archives in administration. Once they come to know this value they are not likely to neglect the archives; they are not likely to object to the centralisation, preservation, publication, etc., of archives, if all this can be continually, demonstrably, shown to them to contribute much to assist general administration.

Considerations like these gradually induced the Madras Record Office to think of the various ways by which it could render active assistance to the administrators. Formerly the Madras Record Office was rarely expected to undertake searches or to submit detailed notes illuminating points or policies under discussion. Whenever information on any particular subject was required the Secretariat used to send requisitions, usually in the shape of telephonic messages, calling for the records, the numbers, dates, etc., of which were referred to in the correspondence before it. Sometimes the Secretariat used to trace the papers from the indexes of the last few years which were generally in its possession. After obtaining these papers from the Record Office, the Secretariat Office was expected to study them and to put up notes on points requiring orders. This procedure was all right where minor or routine matters were concerned or where the information required was on specific matters of recent occurrence. But in important matters it was never satisfactory.

For one thing the most important matters affecting public rights or policies were generally found to have their roots in the past, in the formative epoch of British administration. That being so, no policy could be revised, no public right defended, without a careful

study of the past records. For example, the various aspects of subjects like the permanent land revenue settlement, the *ryotwari* settlement, the separation of the judiciary from the executive, etc., could be studied and understood properly only with the aid of the past records. And it required no argument to show that subjects like these could not be so studied and understood with the help of a few papers traced from the indexes of the most recent years.

Secondly, information on such subjects was not always found in one and the same series of records. During the last 150 years numerous changes had been introduced from time to time in the method of transacting government business and the details of these changes were unknown to the administrators of the present day. Unless, therefore, somebody pointed out to them all the sources of information available and collected and furnished all papers from these sources they were likely to pass, though unintentionally, erroneous orders, sometimes even on vital matters affecting public interests.

Thirdly, even if the Secretariat called for all the papers on a subject, as it sometimes did, in the absence of precise information about the points at issue, it was often found that most of the papers sent, though relating to the subject, were unhelpful in elucidating these points. It had then again to call for more papers at random on the off chance of finding in them the exact information required. All this meant not only uncertainty and waste of time and energy but also avoidable damage to the irrelevant records in transit between the Record Office and the Secretariat.

Now if the Record Office were entrusted with the work of tracing the exact information required, it could, with much less expenditure of time and labour, not only do so but could also send, when required, a more or less detailed note elucidating all the aspects of a question at issue. For it had certain unique advantages. Unlike the Secretariat it had a complete set of catalogues, indexes, press lists and other critical apparatus for all the records in its custody. It had also a large collection of special reports and books of reference which are of great use in conducting searches. What is more, it possessed an all round knowledge of the various activities of the several administrations gathered in the course of supplying records daily to the Secretariat, the Board of Revenue, the Collectors, etc. Above all, it possessed great facilities for consulting, without the least delay, all series of records, including the confidential records, from the earliest times down to the present, as they were all in its immediate

custody. With all these advantages there could be no doubt that it was in a much better position than the Secretariat to trace what was required, whether it be from the old records or from the new, and to present it when required in the shape of a clear and comprehensive note.

It could be said that most of these defects could be overcome by sending to the Record Office the correspondence under consideration and asking that office to put up all papers throwing light on the points raised in it so that the Secretariat could study them and put up notes for orders. Of course in that case the Record Office could trace all the papers. But the point was whether it would not involve unnecessary duplication of study and avoidable waste of time and energy. For, before the Record Office could furnish all the papers, it was necessary for it to study them carefully and to make certain that all the information required was sent. All this study would be wasted if it was not required to put up a note explaining the points at issue. Nor was this all. The Secretariat would have to study them afresh before it could put up a note. It had also to be admitted that upon difficult and intricate questions doubts might arise in the course of writing notes and that, while such doubts could be immediately set at rest in the Record Office by a reference to other papers, they could not be resolved in the Secretariat.

For all these reasons the Madras Record Office began, some years ago, to impress upon the Secretariat the desirability of entrusting to it, in the first instance, the work of dealing with important subjects of a general nature which might be under the consideration of the Government. Of course it was not suggested that all the files under consideration should be sent to the Record Office. For that would have required a large additional establishment. Nor was it really necessary that all of them should be sent. Only the files which required elucidation with reference to the records of a fairly large number of years were to be sent. It was, however, not easy to make the Secretariat see the need for doing this. It was necessary to enter into several personal discussions with the officials of the various departments before they could be made to realise the value of the records for administrative purposes. The Record Office had even to volunteer to write notes on some subjects which were known to be under the consideration of the Government with the help of the records in order to show their usefulness. And several such notes were actually written and supplied to the Government. One of these related to the manner in which a tobacco monopoly was worked by

the Madras Government in the first half of the nineteenth century. Another dealt with the system of collecting the land revenue in kind, a system which was in vogue in the pre-British days and in the early part of the British rule. The comparative decline of literacy in India under the British rule during the last century was the subject of a third note. A fourth note described the advantages of producing hand-made paper by convict labour inside the jails, to relieve the paper scarcity which was very acute during the last war. Four other notes dealt with the possibilities of mining copper, silver and lead, coal and lignite and uranium in the Madras Province. As was expected, these notes were found to be very useful by the Secretariat and slowly requests began to come in for more notes. Letters of appreciation were also received in several cases.

The Record Office was at first attending to this new item of work without any additional establishment. But it was soon found that without some additional establishment this extra work could not always be undertaken and performed properly. For the notes had to be prepared not only in as full a manner as possible but also as expeditiously as possible. Proposals were, therefore, put up for the employment of a special assistant. These proposals were accompanied by some of the notes mentioned above. The proposals met with the approval of the Government and in due course the supply of notes to the Secretariat was recognised as one of the activities of the Record Office and sanction was accorded for the employment of a special assistant for assisting the Curator in this work. Many more notes have since been written on various subjects such as the acquisition of permanently settled estates and their conversion into *ryotwari* tenure, riparian rights, separation of the judiciary from the executive, British relations with the Nawabs and Princes of Arcot, Agency areas and their problems, tenancy reforms, irrigation tanks and their problems, revival of art cottage industries, record of rights and many others. Some of these notes have also been printed in the shape of two volumes entitled *Studies in Madras Administration* and copies of them have been supplied to the important administrative offices in the province.

The questions that were raised at the beginning of this article may perhaps now be answered. The archivist is eminently fitted to render active assistance to the administrators, but it is left to him to render such assistance or not. If he defines his duties in a narrow sense and confines his activities to mere custody and preservation of records, he cannot do much. If, on the other hand, he adopts an

attitude of helpfulness towards the administrators and shows some willingness to assist them, even by going a little out of his way, where necessary, it will certainly contribute to better administration. His assistance will be appreciated and, what is more it will give him the satisfaction of seeing the collections under his charge serving their maximum usefulness.

B. S. BALIGA

## ARCHIVE AND MINISTRY<sup>1</sup>

THE EARLIEST surviving Public Record of England dates from the 11th century; the Public Record Office was not founded until the 19th. The present Constitution of the United States of America was ratified in 1788; the corner-stone of the National Archives in Washington was not laid until 1933. *De te fabula*; few readers of these remarks will not recognise that in their country also the Government produced Records for years, probably for centuries, before any central Record Office was instituted to take care of them. From this disparity in age, between Record Offices and the Ministries they serve, arise most of the troubles which beset their partnership.

Certainly it must be admitted that the need for a Record Office is seldom apparent at an early stage. When a Ministry is young, its files can be kept within the compass of a Registry. By degrees only do these files become inconveniently numerous, and some—not many at first—are removed to storage elsewhere; perhaps this storage is not very carefully chosen nor the move very carefully conducted, but there is sure to be some elderly clerk (his virtues recognised by praise rather than promotion) who knows where everything is should it be needed. This goes on for some years or generations until the Ministry has attached to itself a dozen or more of buildings or basements which were allocated for Record storage only because they were clearly unfit for anything else; the Registry staff is too small and too busy to look after the Records thus boarded out; and when the elderly clerk has died, there is no way of finding anything even when it is needed.

During this twilight period a good deal can happen. The usual enemies of Records (damp, fire, vermin, etc.) may work their usual harm; large quantities of Records may be destroyed wholesale by order of some autocratic chief or overzealous subordinate; and the Ministry may be much embarrassed by the disappearance of vital precedents or of the early history of some long-drawn-out business. But the Registrar, who may well be distressed by the muddle of which he is asked to take charge, cannot reach the ear of his seniors; while the seniors—educated people, perhaps even with degrees in history—

<sup>1</sup> These notes on the relation between a central Record Office and the Ministries whose Records it receives are written in general terms, to suggest that the principles and measures with which they deal may be generally applicable. They are, however, based upon four years' practical experience of the *Limbo* scheme operated by the Public Record Office of England, under which the 'dormant' Records of an increasing number of Departments (at present 17) are stored in a repository system administered by the Public Record Office, and are there 'weeded' and prepared for transfer, under Public Record Office guidance, by staffs from the Departments.

cannot see the connexion between civilized pursuits and the dirty old files in the cellar. Some intervention from outside is needed before it is too late, and fortunately forces are at work to provoke this.

In every civilized country Records are valued; they fall into neglect and confusion only when their use and nature are not understood. English history from the time of Edward II has been punctuated with royal decrees and commissions asserting the importance of the national Records, proclaiming not infrequently their sad condition, and making proposals for their better care. Sooner or later this irresistible force, compounded of scholarship, curiosity, and patriotism, will meet the otherwise immovable obstacle of departmental apathy and achieve at any rate a partial victory. A Record Office is built or provided, capable of housing the accumulated arrears, and a staff of custodians is appointed. From this action three main consequences result. One, which is an undoubted benefit, is that a large body of Records is made safe and accessible; and where (as in England when the Public Record Office was established) the Records thus rescued are centuries old and of great historical significance, this is no small matter. (It should be added that the Record Office staff may spend the next two or three generations in tidying up and making available for research the confusion of unsorted, unlisted, dilapidated, incomplete, or redundant documents with which they have been presented). The two further consequences are more questionable. First, the real problem has been left untouched; the arrears have been dealt with, but no provision has been made for keeping pace with Record production in the future. Further, since it is the older Records which have been transferred to the Record Office, the custodians there must probably cultivate a knowledge of palaeography, of diplomatic, and of the history of the times to which those Records relate—accomplishments generally so different from those required from Registrars that there is created an artificial and misleading distinction between the 'ancient' Records, believed to be a learned and mysterious affair, and last year's files, which clearly are not. Once this heresy is well established the archivist and the administrator walk in different worlds, nor can the administrator understand how the archivist's work can affect or assist his own.

If the Record Office were established at the same moment as the administration which it serves, this dichotomy of the Records could never occur. Mediaeval parchments and modern papers would be seen for what in fact they are—blood relations, ancestors and descendants of the same family, requiring for their treatment precisely the



same principles, only modified in the application. And even when the Record Office is established several centuries later, the right result may still be achieved provided that the problem be properly understood, and the Record Office regarded by the Ministry not simply as a nest of academic historians with a special interest in original sources, but rather as the Ministry's adviser on the disposal of its non-current files. A properly constituted Record Office must serve the administrator as well as the historian, by extending its interest beyond the Records in its permanent custody to those 'dormant' files which seem to the Registrar to be growing less and less important—while to the historian, the economist, and countless other students they are growing more and more so.

Once this principle is accepted—that the archivist staff of a central Record Office may legitimately concern themselves with a Ministry's 'dormant' files—the way is clear. There are five principal tasks to be achieved. First, *Co-operation*: since during their 'dormant' period Records are of concern both to their office of origin and to the Record Office, it is logical as well as important that during this period that two staffs should work together. Second, *Preservation*: the 'dormant' Records must be suitably housed, and protected from damage and decay. Third, *Elimination*: the Records of ephemeral importance must be weeded out and destroyed. Fourth, *Preparation*: the Records selected for preservation must be arranged, made up, listed, packed, labelled, and generally put into such shape that immediately upon transfer they will be ready for use. Finally, *Transfer* to the Record Office. And to enable these tasks to be undertaken, the following practical measures are suggested:

1. Every Record Office, when built, must not only be able to contain the existing volume of Records, *but also have space, and provision for additional space, for future accruals.*
2. *There must be statutory provision for the continual destruction of valueless documents,* according to decisions duly agreed between the Record Office and Ministries.
3. *There must be secondary or 'intermediate' accommodation for the storage of 'dormant' Records.* This accommodation, and its equipment, must be of a standard comparable with that of the Record Office itself.
4. *Staff must be detailed, both in the Ministries and in the Record Office for dealing with 'dormant' Records.* These staffs can be small provided that they are of suitable grade and properly instructed. In a Ministry the essentials are (i) a

## THE HISTORICAL ASSOCIATION OF ENGLAND AND WALES AND THE STUDY OF LOCAL ARCHIVES

THE HISTORICAL Association of England and Wales is a society whose objects are "to collect and distribute information on all matters relating to the study and teaching of history, to encourage local centres for the discussion of such questions, to represent to education authorities and the general public the needs and interests of historical study and teaching, and to co-operate with other societies in the furtherance of kindred objects". It has nearly 8,000 members, and has local branches throughout England and Wales, together with affiliated Historical Associations in Scotland, Canada, Ceylon and South Africa. About half the membership consists of teachers of history, from the Universities to the primary schools; but archivists, librarians, lawyers, clergymen, doctors, civil servants and hundreds of others who have no professional interest in history are also keen and active members.

While the care and preservation of archives, public or private, are in no sense among the primary objects of the Association, its members, as historians, are necessarily interested in the proper maintenance of archives of every kind, and in the conditions of access to them, and the Association obviously cannot be indifferent to any question affecting the care and accessibility of historical records of whatever category. It very properly leaves to the British Records Association the leadership in all such matters, and is generally content to support, whenever required and by whatever means it can, the proposals of this and any other bodies which speak with special competence on archive problems. But in one part of the field the Historical Association has taken an initiative of its own. The keen and active interest in local history displayed by many of its branches and its members has led the Council of the Association to set up a permanent Local History committee to prepare hand-lists, bibliographies and guides to the study of each of the separate classes of local records—county, municipal, parish and ecclesiastical archives, as well as other categories of local material. Beginning with a general *Local History Handlist* in the form of a select "popular" bibliography and list of sources for the study of local history and antiquities, it has proceeded to a series of pamphlets, each of which will explain a separate category of local records—county records, parish records, municipal records and so on—describing the various types of records and documents con-

tained in each of these categories, showing how they came into existence and what purposes they served, and finally explaining, with illustrative examples, how they may be used in the writing of local history. The pamphlet on *County Records*, by F. G. Emmison, the Essex County Archivist and Irvine Gray, the Gloucester County Records Officer, has already been published (London: George Philip and Son, for the Historical Association, 1948, 32 pp. 1s. 6d.): it sets a standard and provides a model for the further guides to the other categories of local archives.

The pamphlet opens with a summary introduction on the origins of the records of the county justices of the peace in their quarterly sessions, and of other types of county records, on the successive arrangements for their custody, and on their relationship to other local archives. It then proceeds to its main purpose, a detailed classified account of the records of the courts of quarter sessions, divided into (1) judicial records (sessions rolls or files, minute books, process records, lists of prisoners, etc.), (2) order books formally recording the proceedings of the courts, (3) accounts of receipts and expenditure from county rates, etc., (4) administrative records (maintenance of buildings, bridges, highways, licensing of innkeepers and traders, police matters and lunacy inspection), (5) enrolled, registered and deposited records of charities, deeds, enclosure awards, friendly societies, jurors, parliamentary elections, taxation and many other matters, (6) commissions of the peace and lists of justices, and (7) memoranda compiled by the clerks of the peace. The pamphlet next lists summarily the other types of records resulting from the activities of other county officers—sheriffs, coroners, lords lieutenant—and indicates which classes of records may be useful for the study of local topography and genealogy. A further section illustrates various aspects of both local and national history, by way of example, by means of a score of extracts from different classes of county records. The appendices list (1) county records printed hitherto, whether by local record societies or by the county authorities, and (2) the facilities available in each county repository for scholars wishing to consult the county archives, including such details as the provision of reading accommodation, the need (if any) for a letter of introduction, office hours, possibilities of expert help from the staff, conditions under which documents may be photographed, the existence of printed or manuscript calendars, catalogues and hand-lists, and the range of the principal classes of records available.

As the provision for the proper maintenance of county archives

and for their accessibility to scholars varies enormously from county to county, the second appendix has immense practical value to those who wish to work on public records, and it is also hoped that the setting out, in one table, of the facilities provided by each county will stimulate the less progressive counties to bring their facilities up to the standards of their more active neighbours. In this way, especially as the series of pamphlets grows and finally covers all local archives, the Historical Association hopes to provide a modest but useful series of guides for the use of students working on local records, and to play its limited part in promoting the proper custody and maintenance of the local archives themselves.

R. F. TREHARNE

# THE CORRESPONDENCE OF DAVID SCOTT, CHAIRMAN AND DIRECTOR OF THE EAST INDIA COMPANY

1787-1805<sup>1</sup>

IT FALLS to the lot of a few men to live as exciting and dramatic a life as David Scott. As a young free merchant in mid-eighteenth century Bombay under the East India Company he acquired, lost and again acquired a fortune; as one of 'the real rulers' of the settlement, he was a power in making and unmaking its Governments. In the prime of life and back in London he became the personal friend of Henry Dundas and William Pitt, advising them on East India policy, moving at the heart of great affairs and dealing with the foremost political personalities, Sir John Shore, Hobart, Cornwallis, Wellesley, Wilberforce, Addington and Castle-reagh. As a director of the Company he sponsored and supported to the end, almost in splendid isolation, the forward policy of Wellesley in India. Most remarkable of all we finally see him, a free trader and a private trader, an opponent of restrictive trade duties and all monopoly, at the head of the greatest monopoly in the world, the East India Company itself. To make the Company the arbiter of India, to render its trade profitable, to crush the selfish interests batten- ing on it, he fought valiantly, and for his pains and temerity he was accused of treason, was tried and, by his own unaided efforts, acquitted. In the struggle he lost much of his fortune and all his health.

Scott's letters reveal that as a politician he had his faults: he lacked discernment, he was too easily misled by others, he let his enthusiasm run away with him. But the impression we get of the man is attractive. He was warm-hearted, plain-spoken and unosten- tacious yet spirited and above all a fine humanitarian. He was a

<sup>1</sup> The Royal Historical Society will publish in its Camden Series my two volume edition of *'The Correspondence of David Scott, Director and Chair- man of the East India Company.'* Relating to Indian Affairs the letters cover the years 1787 to 1805, that is, a period of critical importance in the expansion of British power in India. The bulk of the letters in this edition are taken from five volumes, numbered 728-731A, in the Home Miscellaneous Series in the India Office Records. The first four of these five volumes consist of David Scott's own letter books. I have also found and included a number of Scott's letters from the Wellesley and other papers at the British Museum, from the European Manuscripts Series in the India Office Library, from the Chatham papers at the Public Record Office, from the English Manuscripts Series at the John Rylands Library, Manchester, and from the Miscellaneous Letters and Documents Series at the National Library of Scotland, Edinburgh.

The account of Scott's career which follows is based mainly on the letters. It reveals not only the significance of Scott's work but also the first-class importance of his letters as source material for the history of the period. I am indebted to the Royal Historical Society for permission to use this account here.

fighter knowing well the meaning of adversity yet not defeat. Through him we gain an inspiring vision of John Bull at war with Europe. As Napoleon masses his troops on the Channel coast, he writes, "The threatened invasion is still going on and all the power of that immense, barbarous nation seems exerted to render it effectual. A stop to the embarkation would be considered probably by the most intelligent spectators as the greatest misfortune that could happen to Europe".<sup>2</sup> Scott indeed was a grand patriot, ever working to make his country great—especially pointing and facilitating the way to the abolition of the Indian trade monopoly, the supremacy of Britain in the eastern seas and the free trade triumphs of the nineteenth century. He deserves a place beside the acknowledged makers of British India and Britain herself.

Scott's correspondence describes the Courts and committees of the India House and the personalities and pressure groups dominating their work; it draws out the dark intricacies and the tangled threads of intrigue and policy; it shows how the Directors and the Presidents of the India Board got on together, and how and for what purposes they used their valuable India patronage. It traces the rise of Wellesley's imperial policy both in London and in India, and reveals how and why the opposition grew within the Company. It provides in fact a new basis for reassessing Wellesley's achievements. Lastly, it throws light, not only on Britain's East India policies, but also on her wider maritime and commercial problems during the war against France.

David Scott was born in the early weeks of 1746 at the family home, Dunninald House, in the parish of Craig, Forfarshire. The circumstances attending his birth were dramatic. The Forty-five rebellion was afoot and a party of the rebels went out from Montrose to Dunninald House and there seized David's father, Robert Scott, "who was a faithful adherent of the House of Hanover" and threatened him "with instant death for his support of the Government". The story continues, "His wife, Ann Middleton of Seton, Aberdeenshire, usually called Lady Dunninald, entered the hall at the time they had her husband in their hands. Being a woman of fine appearance and manner and near her accouchement, her entreaties that they would spare his life prevailed; but he was carried off to the tolbooth of Montrose and there imprisoned. On the

<sup>2</sup> David Scott to Lord Mornington, 24 April 1798.

advance of the Duke of Cumberland, however, he was at once set at liberty".<sup>3</sup>

David Scott, the tenth of thirteen children, was fortunate in his parents. His mother Ann, daughter of Brigadier General John Middleton of Seton, appears to have been a woman of beauty, strength and spirit, and his father, Robert, not only played an active part in public affairs, representing his county in Parliament from 1732-34, but also, as laird of Dunninald, took very good care of his patrimony.<sup>4</sup> The family lived comfortably. David was brought up at Dunninald and later attended the school and university of St. Andrews, where he matriculated in 1759. Four years later, at the age of seventeen, he was sent off to India, not in the East India Company's service, but as a free merchant. As the fifth son of a large family, he was expected to make his own way, and this he did by acquiring a substantial fortune, though it took him, what was for those days, the rather long period of twenty-three years. His activities throughout were centred in Bombay and by the time he left for home in January 1786 he was an acknowledged leader there among the private merchants, and head of a respected agency house with an unrivalled knowledge of eastern trading conditions, especially in western India.<sup>5</sup> Of the details of his stay in India we as yet know little. His family life was certainly happy. He had married a rich widow, Mrs. Louisa Jervis, and by her had one son, also called David, and three daughters.<sup>6</sup> He appears to have played an important role in political affairs, indeed being described as one of "the real rulers" of Bombay.<sup>7</sup> From time to time we hear of his financing the Bombay Government and on one occasion, during Warren Hastings' war with the Marathas, acting as intermediary between General Goddard at the head of the Company's forces and Nana Farnavis, the leading Maratha statesman.<sup>8</sup>

<sup>3</sup> Anderson, *The Scottish Nation*, Vol. III, p. 411. David Scott was baptised on 27 February 1746. *Parochial Registers*, Craig parish, Co. Forfar. See also Warden, A. J. *Angus or Forfarshire*, Vol. III, p. 152 (1882).

<sup>4</sup> Robert Scott (1705-1780) inherited the parish from his father Patrick (d. 16 Feb. 1731) who had purchased it about 1680 for £10,000. Robert enclosed the fields with stone walls and introduced a quicker rotation of crops. He was one of the first to use lime which was freely available as manure. He built roads and afforested the waste lands. *A Statistical Account of Scotland*, 1792, Volume 2, p. 497. See also the Rev. Rogers' *A view of agriculture in the county of Angus*, p. 24. (1794).

<sup>5</sup> The name of the House was Scott, Tate and Adamson.

<sup>6</sup> Louisa Jervis (sister of Mrs., later Lady Elizabeth Sibbald) was the second daughter of William Delagard and widow of Benjamin Jervis. She died 23 March 1803. Anderson, *The Scottish Nation*, Vol. 3, p. 411.

<sup>7</sup> See Home Misc. Series, India Office, Vols. 614 and 728.

<sup>8</sup> Furber, H.: *John Company at Work*, p. 221.

In London Scott took up where he had left off in Bombay, assuming charge of the metropolitan branch of his agency house, and soon becoming an accepted authority on eastern trade, whose advice was welcomed on the one side by the India House directors and proprietors, and on the other by the leading ministers of the day. Pitt in particular respected Scott's knowledge and standing, using him for example in 1790 in confidential trade discussions with the Dutch. With Henry Dundas, the recognised head of the India Board of Control, Scott was soon on very friendly terms. In both Indian and Forfarshire politics they held views much in common, and it was as a ministerial candidate that Scott was carried first into the East India Court of Directors in December 1788<sup>9</sup> and then into Parliament as a member for Forfarshire in July 1790.<sup>10</sup>

From the time he arrived in London Scott was active and fertile in devising expedients to increase the Company's trade with India. It was on this 'platform' that he forced his way into the direction, and on this subject he was listened to with attention. The Company in fact faced a dilemma, and he knew it. The costs of its three Presidencies in India were rising far more rapidly than the market for the Company's India goods in Europe would stand. Continued applications as in the past for financial help to the State could only result in the dissolution of the Company; and it was the rising profits on the Company's China trade in tea which alone concealed the fact that the India trade monopoly was unprofitable, that it could not support the Company, and that the Company's costs of administration in India exceeded its revenues.<sup>11</sup> Through Scott's suggestions the Company's exports to India in 1790 were increased by over 2500 tons, and he it was who sponsored the proposal to allow the Company's ships commanders to fill up, freight free, the unoccupied tonnage in the Company's outward bound vessels. They were small

<sup>9</sup> Scott had very boldly tried in April 1788 to break through the Directors' House List, "a thing never before achieved". He failed by only 70 votes, the narrowness of the margin illustrating his popularity with the Proprietors. *London Chronicle*, 10 April 1788.

<sup>10</sup> Scott sat for the county throughout the Parliament of 1790-96. His agent at first was Sir David Carnegie. Sir David appears to have taken advantage of Scott and beat him at the general election of 1796, whereupon Scott, with Dundas's support, had himself returned for the Forfar burghs and continued to sit for them until his death in 1805. For details of Scott's interests in Forfarshire politics, see Home Misc. Series, India Office, Vol. 728-731; also Laing MSS. and Misc. Letters and Documents 1600-1843, in the National Library of Scotland. These include letters from Dundas and Lord Douglas and Alexander Duncan to Scott. See also the pamphlets, *A Narrative* by D. Scott, and *Illustration of the Narrative and Answer to the Narrative*, 1790, in the National Library of Scotland.

<sup>11</sup> Philips, C. H.: *The East India Company, 1784-1834*. Pp. 76, 303.



improvements in fact but the India House seemed pleased with the services of its new director.

So long as Scott contented himself with modest suggestions for profitable changes within the existing system of the Company he was sure of the approval, or at least benevolent neutrality, of the major groups among the directors and proprietors, but so valuable to the vested interests within the Company were the indirect profits arising from the monopoly of trade that any radical proposals were certain to rouse the strongest antagonism. But from the start Scott, who fully appreciated the Company's financial dilemma and who was fearlessly honest in facing facts, was set on 'root and branch' reforms; and indeed his initial, long, advisory letter to the directors on the future of the Company's trade, written when he was first standing for the direction, spoke, albeit vaguely, of the Company's "exports being given up to the nation in general".<sup>12</sup> It is probable that, as a Scotsman completing his higher education in a Scottish University in the early 1760's, he became aware of the free trade views which in 1776 found expression in Adam Smith's *Wealth of Nations* and certainly as a merchant in western India he must later have had further opportunities of discussing them, but the most powerful influence in turning him into a confirmed 'free trader' appears to have been his first-hand experience of the wastefulness and restriction inherent in the Company's monopoly.<sup>13</sup> In fact Scott loathed monopoly whether it was the salt monopoly in India or the salt monopoly in Scotland, or the monopoly of the India trade itself.<sup>14</sup> But he was politician enough to realise that any attempt in the face of the strong East India interests concerned to put such a policy into immediate effect was futile.

In this period the most powerful parties within the Courts of Directors and Proprietors were the City and Shipping interests and they usually acted in conjunction. A third group, "the Indians", representative of those who had served in India, was quite numerous—indeed on occasion filling up to half of the 24 seats in the direction—but too lacking in organisation to compete with the others. By

<sup>12</sup> Home Misc. Series, India Office, Vol. 404, 3 April 1787.

<sup>13</sup> In the spring of 1949 when visiting the National Archives of India at New Delhi I was interested to find evidence of a committee of Bengal servants of the Company quoting Adam Smith in support of their views on the use of bullion. This was in 1787. This document is referred to on p. 75, *Indian Historical Records Commission: A Retrospect*, 1948.

<sup>14</sup> Cf. Scott on the Company's salt monopoly in his letter to William Fairlie, 8 January 1796. Scott built a saltworks at Dunninald to produce 3,000 tons yearly in order to help break the salt monopoly in South Scotland. Warden, A. J. *Angus or Forfarshire*, Volume III, p. 161.

*named senior official*, who will be finally responsible within the Ministry for all matters concerning its Records ; (ii) *an Archives or Records Section* parallel with the Registry, headed by a Records Officer of similar status to the Registrar ; this Section to work in the 'intermediate' repository on the tasks of Elimination and Preparation and also to produce Records to their own Ministry when required. The Record Office in turn must provide a staff permanently quartered in the 'intermediate' repository who will (a) administer this repository and all its services ; (b) guide and assist the Records Sections from the Ministries in their work of Elimination and Preparation ; (c) arrange the final Transfer to the Record Office.

Of these measures the first two are familiar ; the second two are less familiar but hardly less important. Taken together they require the expenditure of money and the provision for erection of buildings, and so may be expected to meet at least routine opposition from Ministries of Finance and of Public Works. Even if they are rejected or postponed, however, money will still be spent (though concealed in departmental estimates and votes) upon temporary expedients ; while as the bulk and disorder of the 'dormant' Records mounts so must the eventual cost of any proper provision for them—and meanwhile they remain in neglect and danger. If, however, these measures are adopted, they will supply the means first for disposing of accumulated arrears of Records and thereafter for maintaining a fruitful partnership between the Record Office and the Ministries which it serves. The 'dormant' period will become one not of 'neglect ending in oblivion', but of active co-operation between the Record Office staff and the Record Sections of Ministries. Valueless classes and documents will be wedded out at an early date instead of being hoarded in expensive confusion. Records for permanent preservation will arrive at the Record Office boxed, bound, labelled, and so ready for immediate production ; accompanied by means of reference, and so ready for immediate search ; and at regular intervals and in manageable and predictable quantities, so allowing a planned and orderly expansion of the Record Office. But unless these measures are taken, and the Records receive proper attention during their 'dormant' period, the old conditions of arrear, disorder, and loss will unquestionably recur.

ROGER H. ELLIS

## THE HISTORICAL MANUSCRIPTS COMMISSION

**T**HE ROYAL Commission on Historical Manuscripts has now been in existence over eighty years, having been appointed by a Royal Warrant dated 2 April 1869. The normal function of a Royal Commission is to make enquiries into a particular subject (such as Coal Mining, University Education, the Poor Law, the Press, or Local Government) and, having examined numerous witnesses and collected a mass of valuable information, to make its report which is published as a Blue Book together with appendices embodying the detailed information it has collected. One or two Interim Reports may be presented before the final one but most Commissions of this kind are wound up after a few years.

The Historical Manuscripts Commission began as a temporary Commission of this kind though probably it was realised from the first that its operations would be protracted. The Chairman was the Master of the Rolls and the members were representatives of the manuscript owning classes or of historians. The Secretary, who was unpaid, was a relative of the Master of the Rolls. Later a member of the Record Office Staff was appointed as a paid Assistant Secretary and for the last sixty years there has always been a Secretary found from the Staff of the Public Record Office with an allowance additional to his Record Office Salary. The headquarters of the Commission have always been in the Record Office although its meetings take place in the House of Lords.

The Commission's terms of reference covered the papers of private families and of institutions, and in point of fact it has at different times reported on the Manuscripts of cities, boroughs, counties, parishes, colleges, endowed charities, and numerous ecclesiastical organizations, mostly (but not all) of the Established Church. The modern conception of the Archives of an institution forming an organic whole was unthought of in 1869, but in fact the Commission's terms of reference, taken in the light of what it has actually reported on, do cover all local and private archives that fall outside the scope of the Public Record Office Acts, since most of the privately owned papers with which it has been primarily concerned have some organic unity as the natural accumulation of a family continuously engaged in public or local affairs or estate management though a few are merely the artificial gatherings of autograph collectors such as Morrison or Hodgkin (both of which, incidentally, have since been dispersed in the sale room). One very important accumulation

dealt with in the Commission's First Report and in many subsequent ones might be regarded as being in the nature of Public Records, though technically outside the scope of those Acts, namely the Manuscripts of the House of Lords.

The Commissioners as a body are mainly a panel of advisers meeting normally once a year and signing the periodical Reports presented to the Crown. Their public eminence or literary reputation, as the case may be, gives some guarantee to the owner of the MSS. that his papers will only be used for genuine historical research and that the Commission's publications will maintain a reasonably high standard of historical scholarship.

It is in these detailed reports made to the Commission by its Inspectors and Editors that the Commission's main work is embodied, and for this purpose the Commission's powers are in practice delegated to an Acting Commissioner. This position has always been held by the Deputy Keeper of the Public Records under whose direction the Inspectors or Editors are chosen by the Secretary. They are not Civil Servants but historians, men of letters, or record agents, who are employed *ad hoc* on the examination of individual collections and paid according to the time actually spent on this work. Their reports to the Commission (which usually take the form of a detailed calendar) are periodically summarized in the formal Reports made by the Commission to the Crown. The Inspectors' Reports were originally printed as appendices to those of the Commission but are now published separately. This has been a gradual process and the Commission's work may be taken as falling into five main stages: 1869-1884, 1885-1899: 1900-1914: 1915-1942: and from 1943 onwards.

The first stage of the Commission's work is represented by its first nine Reports, large foolscap Blue Books in which the Inspectors' Reports to the Commission are included as Appendices to the Commissioners' Reports to the Crown. The Commission began its work by a circular to a large number of individuals and institutions known or expected to own MSS. of historical importance. It must be realised that the Commission has never possessed or asked for anything in the nature of compulsory powers, but has relied, and has usually been fully justified in relying, on the willing cooperation of owners. The response to this original appeal was so generous that the Commission has never issued another, but has until recent times been fully occupied either with the MSS. which this appeal made

available to it, or by others on which inspection was invited when the nature of the Commission's work became more generally known.

Its early Reports to the Crown of which the first was published in 1870 contain a mass of material on a large and miscellaneous number of collections.

The information is often, from the magnitude of the task and the shortness of the available time, of a scrappy and unsatisfactory nature: the shortcomings of these early volumes in the accuracy and comprehensiveness, both of their texts and indexes, are admittedly regrettable and are enhanced by their deplorable format. Their double columns of small print are tiring to the eye and it is often impossible to determine where the description of particular bundles or volumes begins and ends. Nevertheless, the amount of work accomplished by these editors in a strictly limited time and often in conditions of great inconvenience and discomfort, long before electric light or motor transport was available, must command our admiration and it is to be hoped that the "Analytical Survey and Key to the Commission's Reports", now in preparation, may make this mine of information more generally accessible.

The first stage (1870-1884) represents the original idea of a temporary Commission (much protracted) making a general survey: in the next three stages (1885-1899, 1900-1914, 1915-1942) it had become a semi-permanent publishing body dealing in more detail with a smaller number of MS. accumulations.

The Commission itself has been renewed several times, the last occasion being in 1919.

Only one of the members then appointed still survives: new members have been appointed from time to time by fresh warrants to fill vacancies. Retired Masters of the Rolls, Deputy Keepers and Secretaries are usually appointed Commissioners and the total number of Commissioners is therefore a variable quantity.

The second stage (1885-1899) is characterised by the issue of the Reports in octavo and the separate publication of the appendices. The improved standards of editing and general presentation are largely attributable to Mr., afterwards Sir, Henry Maxwell-Lyte whose work as an Inspector in the years 1880-1885 was rewarded by his appointment as Deputy Keeper of the Public Records (and therefore as Acting Commissioner) in 1886. He was ably supported as Secretary by Mr. J. J. Cartwright who died in 1902.

Sir Henry's influence continued throughout the next periods since he was Acting Commissioner till his retirement from the Deputy

Keepership in 1926 and remained an honoured member of the Commission till his death in 1940 at the age of 92.

The third and fourth stages (1900-1914 and 1915-1942) saw the final separation of the Inspectors' Reports from those of the Commissioners and progressive raising of editorial and typographical standards though as a result of the two wars and financial stringency between the wars, the number of collections dealt with in the fourth period was comparatively small.

The issue of the Inspectors' Reports in octavo had been a great improvement, and as both the Commissioners' Reports and the Appendices were issued as Parliamentary papers they were sold at the remarkably cheap rates at which those published before 1923 are still obtainable: but the method of publication was increasingly confusing both to librarians and casual readers. Where one appendix covered one collection (e.g., *Le Fleming, Kenyon or Carlisle*) it did not much matter to what Report it was technically an appendix: but *10th Report Appendix IV* was not a very informative title for a volume covering some 30 private or institutional archive accumulations, and where reports on a single collection (e.g., *Portland*) were scattered through several appendices to different Reports, the result was bewildering.

The series of Reports on the Salisbury (Cecil) MSS., the most important accumulation of private archives in the country, had already been begun in 1884 (and is still continuing, the 19th volume being now in the press) as an independent calendar not classed as an appendix to any Report, and this system was also adopted for the *Catalogue of Welsh MSS.* (1898-1910) and for all Inspectors' Reports published in or after 1900.

The numerical classification of the Reports (e.g., 29, *Portland*, 30, *Fortescue (Dropmore)* etc.) was one of the improvements introduced by Mr. R. A. Roberts who succeeded Mr. Cartwright as Secretary in 1902, and was a Commissioner from 1912 till his death in 1943. The composite volumes of several short Reports were after 1900 described as *Various Collections* (Series 55 in the numerical classification) and eight such volumes were issued in the years 1901 to 1914. During the same period eight single volume reports were issued, thirty three volumes in continuing series already begun such as 9 (*Salisbury*), 24 (*Rutland*), 29 (*Portland*) and twenty four in new series of more than one volume as well as eight reprints.

The War of 1914-18 brought a complete cessation of publication and both Mr. A. E. Stamp (who succeeded Mr. Roberts as Secretary

in 1912 and was Acting Commissioner from 1926 till his death in 1938) and his successor Mr. S. C. Ratcliff, were hampered throughout the inter-war period by shortage of funds, so that the Commission still has unpublished arrears dating from before 1914, though some new series such as 75 (*Downshire*) and 77 (*De L'isle and Dudley*) have been undertaken more recently and run to several volumes. Despite this handicap, however, both Mr. Stamp and Mr. Ratcliff maintained and enhanced the Commission's standard of editing and production and were constant in the exercise of the general advisory functions of the Commission as to the care and maintenance of documents and putting students in touch with owners. Throughout this period they were constantly pressing for more resources and their successors Mr. (now Sir) Cyril Flower (Acting Commissioner, 1938-1947) and the present writer were beginning to reap the benefit of an increased allocation when War again brought a set back.

This time, however, the suspension of publication was less absolute. The nine volumes already in the press were allowed to be completed and the issue of seven of them by 1942 marks the end of another period of the Commission's history, since publication though authorized in 1946 is still very slow and the Commission is now primarily concerned with other activities.

The way in which the Commission's work has developed in its first half century confronted the Commission with two problems. One was the question of a country-wide survey of the vast mass of MS. material of which the Commission's Reports, numerous as they were, had only covered a fraction: the other was to make more generally accessible the varied and copious information scattered through its already published volumes. The much needed *Guide to the Commission's Reports* began in 1914 with the *Topographical* volume which is in effect a General Index of Places mentioned in the Reports published between 1870 and 1911. This is a most useful volume but it suffers from the defects of the earlier Reports of which the indexes provide very inadequate identifications of the Places mentioned. The much larger *Index of Persons* goes further to meet this difficulty as more effort was made to provide fresh identifications: but the work in consequence took much longer to produce and was only just completed in 1938. This also only covers the volumes published down to 1911, but considerable progress has since been made on a similar *Index of Persons* for reports published 1911-1947. The General *Index of Places* mentioned in these later reports will probably be included in an enlarged reissue of Part I the *Topographi-*

*cal Guide*, which is now out of print. The need of a general Subject Index will to a large extent be met by the *Analytical Survey and Key to the Reports*, mentioned above, which is now in preparation.

The need for a reversion to the Commission's original function of making a comprehensive survey of all Ms. material for national or local history was fully realised in the 1915-1943 period, and tentative steps were taken towards such a survey on several occasions, but (mainly owing to lack of sufficient funds) brought little effective result. The mere task of verifying the present ownership and location of collections already reported on had become difficult enough after the Commission had been seventy years in existence, but was in the main accomplished in the years 1941-1943 as will be seen from the Commission's *Twenty Second Report*. Numerous collections, however, remain wholly untraced and many more are merely known to have been dispersed by sale.

The Commission has realised that a really comprehensive survey would require the assistance of the large body of societies and individuals interested in the publication and preservation of records such as the numerous county record societies. Such co-operation was greatly facilitated by the formation (largely through the efforts of the present Deputy Keeper of the Public Records, Sir Hilary Jenkinson) of the *British Records Association* in 1933. Nearly all these local societies together with many public libraries and County Record Offices (since of recent years an increasing number of local authorities have seen the desirability of establishing archive repositories) are Institutional Members of this body while numerous persons either engaged or interested in archive work, are Individual Members.

It was from this body that the initiative eventually came in 1943 for the undertaking by the Commission of a National Register of Archives.

Authority was given for the starting of this work in 1945, and since then it has expanded considerably. Its main object is to collect information in the briefest possible form as to the location and ownership of all types of archives in the country, public and private other than those of the Central Government, without limit of date, and to make this information available with the consent of the owners to responsible inquirers, as well as to provide the basis for proposals for the safeguarding and control of archives in the future. Its method is to set up local committees of voluntary helpers usually on a county basis to collect such information and send it in to the headquarters of the Commission. The Registrar is primarily responsible for the



starting and supervision of this organization and the tabulation of the information is the work of the Assistant Registrar and a small staff of paid helpers.

In practice, however, it has proved impossible to limit this work to the minimum of information or to separate it from the Commission's other functions of detailed inspection and reporting, and advice to owners on the care of their archives or their disposal when (as is increasingly frequent) they are themselves unable to provide adequate accommodation. Such disposal usually takes the form of deposit on permanent loan in a County repository of which an increasing number are becoming available.

The details of this organization, the extent of the information it has already collected, and its hopes for the future cannot be adequately dealt with at present and must be reserved for a later article.

R. L. ATKINSON

contrast the Shipping interest in particular was well entrenched, enjoying great influence through its size and cohesion.

By long custom it was the Company's practice not to buy its ships but to hire them, and in view of the length and danger of the voyage to the East, they had to be especially designed and built. Each ship in its lifetime normally made four voyages and it was then customary to allow the owners to replace it.<sup>15</sup> In effect therefore they owned not a ship but an "hereditary bottom". Normally some seventy ships representing a capital of over £2 millions were in service. Very few owners were so rash as individually to run the risk of owning a whole ship, and they therefore came together in groups to share the risks. But the total number of wealthier capitalists controlling most of the ships was small and their organisation strong. Moreover, in practice, along with their ships' husbands and ships' captains, they elected a representative Committee of Managing Owners through which they usually treated with the Company. "The Old Shipping interest", it was said, "held Courts and committees of their own, had a chairman, secretary, and standing counsel and employed Proprietors to write on their behalf in newspapers and pamphlets".<sup>16</sup>

In the Court of Proprietors the Shipping interest as a whole could muster in 1790, for example, 350 votes made up of the officers, shipwrights, provisioners and others connected with the Company's shipping. They were centred in and around London and therefore easily mobilised. Randle Jackson, a London barrister and a shrewd observer, said in debate in the Proprietors Court in May 1795, "There was always a body of shipowners and their dependents, completely organised, ready to come to Court, on receiving what was called not a Treasury but a Shipping letter; whose general instruction it was, not to stir from their seats until the independent proprietors were fatigued and had retired, to vote implicitly with their leaders and above all to take care that no fair and genuine question, which might lead to a reduction in their prices, should ever reach a ballot. A sumptuous repast at the London Tavern was always ready prepared to recruit their spirits when the debate was over."

There were usually four or five shipping members in the Court of Directors, for although shipowners were excluded under a Company's bye law of 1710 the ships' husbands and captains were

<sup>15</sup> The period was increased in 1790 to six voyages.

<sup>16</sup> John Cochrane's *Memorandum on India Trade and Shipping* Home Misc. Series, India Office, Vol. 406, f. 49.

not thus debarred,<sup>17</sup> neither were those persons who employed their capital in docking, fitting and equipping the Company's vessels. It was to be expected, therefore, that these groups of London financiers and their connections—that is, the City interest—who were concerned indirectly in these matters should often see eye to eye with the Shipping interest. In particular both groups were bound to defend the Company's monopoly of Trade because thereby they defended also their own London enterprises not the least of which was their lucrative control of the Company's shipping.

The Shipping interest undoubtedly gave considerable service to the Company: it provided continuity of policy and of shipbuilding technique, it invested large sums in its fleet of Indiamen which, moreover, could not profitably be used in any other trade. But monopoly inevitably led to abuse. The shipowners consistently and grossly overcharged the Company in freightage rates and the ships' captains, who were under the obligation of purchasing their commands, paid far more attention to their own private privilege trade than to the Company's, and in enhancing their own profits they too connived at unduly high freight rates.

Such profitable malpractices did not go unchallenged. Other shipowner capitalists—Anthony Brough, Chapman, James Fiott, Hurrys, Thornton to mention a few—wished to break into the lucrative circle, and some genuine reformers among the Company's proprietors, especially the barrister, Randle Jackson, and Thomas Henchman, a former Company's servant, sought to establish a shipbuilding system of fair and open competition. David Scott, too, in his new-found and sincere zeal to develop the Company's Indian trade and with the interests of his own agency house in mind, argued the merits of an open, competitive shipping system, and it was under his leadership that these somewhat diverse groups came together and in the Proprietors' Court began to fight shoulder to shoulder against the shipping monopoly. They soon gained the name of the "New" Shipping as against the entrenched "Old" Shippers. Every time proposals for the freighting of ships were brought forward sporadic warfare between them broke out, and in 1793, the year when the Company's charter was due for renewal, a general battle was joined.

The City and Shipping interests fought to retain the trade monopoly unchanged, the "New" Shippers, in alliance with private traders, demanded some relaxation, if not the abolition, of the

<sup>17</sup> In 1795 the shipping directors were Joseph Cotton, William Elphinstone, Stephen Lushington, William Money and Stephen Williams.

monopoly. The contending parties looked for a decision to Henry Dundas, who spoke and acted for the Government in Indian affairs, but in the upshot he was far more concerned with the imminence of war with France and therefore the need to avoid drastic experiment rather than with the merits of the question. On his advice Parliament finally renewed the Charter and enjoined a shipping compromise—the Company was to retain its trade monopoly provided it granted the use to private traders of 3,000 tons annually on the Company's ships outward and homeward. Scott personally accepted this with some reluctance because he had at the last, and with difficulty, produced evidence that foreign private traders were carrying on a large 'illicit' or 'clandestine' trade with Bengal, estimated at 10,000 tons a year and based largely on the remission to Europe of the fortunes of the English Company's servants.<sup>18</sup>

With the Charter safely renewed the Shipping members came into the open, first by forcing on the Court of Directors a higher rate of freight for new shipping which brought them an immediate profit of £80,000, and then by a personal onslaught on Scott, which took the form of a motion in the Proprietors' Court that "No director shall be allowed to trade to or from India directly or indirectly, either as principal or agent". Intrinsically this proposal was wise in that it sought to prevent directors from using their inside information to promote their own eastern trade, and there was no doubt that Scott (who had long played this sort of game successfully in Bombay) was already running his agency house in close step with the Company's policy.<sup>19</sup>

The Proprietors' Court carried the motion but Scott, whose fighting spirit was roused, disappointed his attackers by choosing to remain a director. He therefore publicly resigned control of his agency, and unwisely, as it later turned out, at once vested it in his very young son, also by name David Scott, and appointed a close friend, William Lennox and his own brother-in-law, James Sibbald, as managers on his son's behalf.<sup>20</sup> In this and in his subsequent dealings he kept good faith with the Company's ruling but few of his

<sup>18</sup> For a full discussion of the Charter renewal discussions see Philips *op. cit.*, pp. 72-79.

<sup>19</sup> The House of D. Scott & Co., had materially reduced the value of the private trade of the ships' captains by taking up 800 tons of the 3,000 allowed to private traders. Scott to William Fairlie, 30 March 1795.

<sup>20</sup> David Scott junior was born on 25 July 1782, and was only eleven at this time. James Sibbald had served in the Company's Bombay service, and had also acted as an agent. He married Elizabeth, sister and co-heiress with Mrs. Scott. Sibbald was created a baronet of the United Kingdom and died issueless on December 17, 1819. The title passed to David Scott (Junior). Anderson, *op. cit.*, Vol. III, p. 411.

enemies were willing to believe that an agency organised in this way and under the name of D. Scott *Junior* & Co. was not in fact managed by the father.

However, Scott's spirited conduct and the generally scandalous behaviour of the Shipping interest had brought many new friends to the side of the 'New Shippers', including Charles Grant, a recently elected and promising director. Moreover, Henry Dundas, both shocked and alarmed by the excesses of the 'Old Shipping' threw all the weight of his influence behind Scott. Dundas frankly liked him. They were on intimate terms and on Indian problems saw eye to eye. It came as no surprise when in April 1795, cushioned on Dundas's influence and despite his junior standing in the Company, Scott was carried into the deputy chair of the Court of Directors, and it was from this new position of advantage that he again proposed a revision of the shipping system to the directors and proprietors. The Shipping interest fought tooth and nail, manœuvring to postpone a decision until after the following April when six of Scott's supporters were due to retire from the direction, and only the widespread issue of 'Treasury notes' by Dundas to rally the ministerial supporters finally carried the day in Scott's favour. Under the new system the sale of commands was prohibited, all ships' captains who had bought commands were recompensed, and the system of hereditary bottoms was abolished and replaced by open competition.<sup>21</sup>

It was a remarkable victory for in effect Scott was persuading the Company to reform itself from within, but it also carried within it the seeds of future strife. In the following years many thousands of pounds were indeed saved in freightage rates;<sup>22</sup> yet in practice Scott found that under the revised system the closed circle of ship-owners was merely enlarged not destroyed, the Old Shipping interest repulsed, not broken. And Scott was too warm-hearted, too little discerning and calculating to realise that its inveterate, single-minded leaders—Joseph Cotton and William Elphinstone, inflamed as they were by defeat, would at once cast round for fresh means to overthrow the new system and perhaps crush Scott as well.

During the two years from April 1795, when Scott successively acted as deputy and then chairman of the Company, his relations with Dundas grew very close. Scott was exceptionally well-informed

<sup>21</sup> Payments to the ships' captains began in 1796 and ended in 1804. In all £355,910 was paid. *Select Committee Report*, IV (1812), p. 440.

<sup>22</sup> By 1810, taking into account the fifty per cent rise in the cost of building ships, the Company was paying on the average £18.9.8 a ton less for freight than in 1796. *Ibid.*

on Indian affairs, his agency house through his impulsion maintaining regularly an overland express to and from India, a measure only occasionally resorted to by Government.<sup>23</sup> Dundas relied on this information—usually the most up-to-date available in London—and on Scott's judgment. Many a week-end Scott was invited to Dundas's home in Wimbledon to meet Pitt and confer on India business, and as Dundas became immersed in the conduct of the war with France, so Scott found himself increasingly responsible for the conduct of East India affairs in London. There is no doubt that he gloried in his task; and, equally obvious, that he worked himself to a standstill; twelve hours a day regularly spent at the India House, followed nightly by a couple of hours in the Commons, ruined his digestion and upset his nerves. Fatigue and illness sapped his good judgment. Moreover, the 'Old Shipping' would not let him alone: they sniped at all his measures and at the close of his chairmanship, their chief spokesman in the Proprietors' Court, William Lushington, even called for a grand inquest on Scott's work. When the Proprietors approved Scott's labours, Lushington returned to the old charge that Scott had illegally retained an active interest in the House of D. Scott Junior & Co., and not until March 1798, after a most wearying contest did Scott get the Proprietors to exonerate him by 850 votes to 365.<sup>24</sup>

Both Dundas and Scott were anxious lest in these forays the 'Old Shipping' interest should overturn the revised shipping system. Dundas was of the opinion that 'the shipping question could only with certainty be settled in Parliament.....it must end there sometime', but for the moment other business absorbed him. Aware of Dundas's preoccupation, the 'Old Shippers', Cotton, Elphinstone and Williams shrewdly decided against frontal attack. There was to be no action which might attract attention. Instead they worked privately to gain the ear of the new chairman, Jacob Bosanquet—a rich London merchant "who possessed a great line of City interest and connection"—and with his help quietly moved for an extension beyond six voyages of the life of their ships and for substantial increases in their size and number. Although far from well, Scott accepted the challenge but the course of events was turning against him. Many of his former allies among the 'New' shipowners now formed part of the shipping monopoly itself, and even Charles Grant,

<sup>23</sup> Note, for example, Dundas's appeal for up-to-date information on the Danes in India on 23 January 1801 and Scott's full and prompt reply on the following day.

<sup>24</sup> General Court Minutes, Vol. 9, f. 98, 22 March 1798.

a more independent collaborator, shirked the renewal of the contest on such unequal terms, and on what, he alleged, were side issues. Scott attempted to bring fresh forces to his own side by extolling the merits of smaller, cheaper ships to be built presumably by an altogether different group of shipowners. Why not, he urged, admit small 500 ton ships and even India-built shipping freely to the Company's service? It was indeed a false step.

With this proposal a storm broke that had been brewing for some time. All the directors knew that foreign private traders were continuing to carry from India a large "illicit" trade; they knew too that the British agency houses were participating—in the year 1799, it was said, these houses had £200,000 invested in American ships sailing from India—and that much of the capital concerned belonged to the Company's own officers. The situation completely exasperated them because they could see no way short of the abolition of their monopolies to remedy it. Not unreasonably British private traders, too, were disgruntled, the more so because the 1793 grant of 3,000 tons outward and homeward on the Company's ships had been rendered unprofitable by the Company's high freight rates and the irregular, uncertain sailings of its ships. With these facts in mind Scott had persuaded the directors early in 1798 to allow a small experiment in using India-built ships from Calcutta, but the 'Old Shippers' found it much too successful for their liking. These India-built vessels sailed at a low rate of freight, out of season and they loaded and unloaded much more speedily than the Company's ships. Previously, Scott had been able to persuade a majority of the directors and proprietors to join with him in supporting obvious shipping malpractices, but he found he could not at this juncture carry them to the point of revolutionising the Company's commercial policy. Proposals to use India-built shipping and to build a new fleet of small Indiamen had roused all sorts of vague fears, even that of the European colonisation of India, and although Scott's experiment with India-built ships was conclusive and in his favour, the shipping directors had no difficulty in getting their colleagues in the direction to vote down a repetition of it.

To Scott the shipping controversy formed only part of much more important problems of policy; in particular, the merits of private trade as against monopoly, of free trade against restriction. As his letters show, the touchstone for him was Britain's prosperity and political strength. To his friend William Fairlie, he wrote, "If the plans for establishing low freights, admitting country ships to

bring home the private trade, and a reduction of duties to give Britain what her acquisition of Empire in the East appears to be now her inherent right, or in other words to bring into the Thames almost the whole of the Eastern commerce, I say, if these were effected, I would from choice take leave of the direction immediately." He told Sir John Shore, "I have laboured ever since I was in the direction to transfer what is styled the clandestine trade into the Thames". To Jonathan Duncan he said, "If the Company cannot carry on a trade without a monopoly they should leave it" and to Cornwallis, "It appears to me as evident as any proposition in Euclid, that there is nothing left for Britain which can give any reasonable prospect of her continuing her superiority to France in seamen, except the trade between Asia and Europe being carried on in her shipping".<sup>25</sup>

Thus whilst on the one level fighting the shipping monopoly in the India House, on another level in Parliament, where he was sitting for the Forfar burghs,<sup>26</sup> he developed a wider campaign. He put up to Pitt and with his sanction carried through the Commons a Warehousing Act "to encourage the importation of all articles the produce of the East Indies into this country which the high duties upon the articles exported from it had diverted into other channels". He was against monopoly, he wanted as few restrictive duties on East India trade as possible, and if this policy were to be applied by Pitt to all other branches of Britain's trade he thought it would make her "the port of the world".

Scott's open protestation of faith in the private traders and his positive free trade policy cost him the sympathy of the great majority of his colleagues. The more conservative and independent of them, among whom may be placed Charles Grant, seem sincerely to have thought that the opening of the India trade to British private traders would be not only unprofitable but also inexpedient in that it would lead directly to the large scale settlement in India of European speculators.<sup>27</sup> The Shipping interest harped on its usual theme that

<sup>25</sup> These letters respectively are: David Scott to William Fairlie, 8 March 1797; David Scott to Sir John Shore, 11 June 1797; David Scott to Jonathan Duncan, 31 July 1797; David Scott to Marquis Cornwallis, 31 October 1801.

<sup>26</sup> As his letters show Scott looked well after the Forfar burghs and the county. He got repealed an act levying duties on coals carried coastwise which had been a heavy burden on the county folk. He also financed the building of roads. *Statistical Account of Scotland*, 1792, Vol. 2, p. 504.

<sup>27</sup> Two reports of a *Select Committee of the Directors on Private Trade*. Home Misc. Series, India Office, Vol. 402. See also *Reports on India-built ships*, 1809, India Office.



the solution to the Company's commercial difficulties was to employ more ships. But Scott and two, in particular, of his supporters, Thomas Henchman and Sir George Dallas, were indefatigable pamphleteers, and they had by far the best of the paper war. That at least seemed to be the view of Pitt and Dundas, whose sympathies lay with Scott. This did not daunt Joseph Cotton and William Elphinstone, the two chief shipping directors. If they could not prevail in straight argument then they would find and use other methods. Scott, they regarded as the linchpin of the opposition. If they could knock him out, then the opposition would fall apart. Unfortunately for Scott the means lay ready to their hand in the oft repeated accusation that he was still responsible for his son's agency house.<sup>28</sup>

On February 8, 1799 London Town and Scott himself were astonished to hear that he had been accused of supplying the enemy with warlike stores, of trading illicitly under neutral Danish colours, and even of revealing the confidential war plans of the Secret Committee to the French and that his accuser was no less a person than Jacob Bosanquet, the Chairman of the Company. The evidence, which was full and well documented, consisted of papers which had been seized at St. Helena and sent home to the chairman, and the latter, spurred by Cotton and Elphinstone, declared that he would try Scott before the full Courts of Directors and Proprietors.<sup>29</sup>

Scott became incandescent with fury and energy. "The charges are indeed of a most serious nature", he said, "striking at my life, my character and in short everything that can be valuable to man." Mercilessly he sifted the evidence, finding inconsistencies, exaggerations and plain lies; he swore affidavits, he consulted nine learned counsel. One by one he took up the charges and one by one refuted them. In the final, crucial debate before the Proprietors he was unanimously acquitted and his son's agency house exonerated by a large majority,<sup>30</sup> and even Dundas went down to the India House to cast his vote in their favour. As a parting shot, to show that he was in no doubt as to the identity of the fabricators of the plot or their underlying motives, Scott got Dundas to help him push through Parliament an Act once for all to establish against attack the shipping

<sup>28</sup> Rumours had been circulated in 1797 that Scott owned ships concerned in the clandestine trade. David Scott to Henry Dundas, 10 June 1797.

<sup>29</sup> For a full discussion of this incident see Philips *op. cit.*, pp. 97-100.

<sup>30</sup> It is certain that the Agency House had dealings with foreign agency houses and was concerned with the illicit trade—as were all the East India agency houses. Scott admitted to Dundas that the House had given Duntzfeld & Co., an agency house at Copenhagen more help than was prudent, 10 June 1797.

system of fair and open competition which he had first persuaded the Company to adopt in 1796.

In all this Scott spent his money, his India patronage and his strength without stint, and he duly suffered. He had to realise his assets in India and England; he drew on his friends' reserves of patronage and mortgaged his own for years ahead. But he had no reserves of health to call on. Ever since his arduous year in the 'chair' he had been unwell, and these last efforts altogether pulled him down. With 'a tearing pain in the chest' he was forced into semi-retirement, leaving Cotton, Elphinstone and their colleagues to enjoy what they no doubt thought was the last laugh.

It is important to follow the course of Indian politics in London—meandering and muddy though it is; otherwise the activities of the Company's governments in India do not appear in a true perspective. This applies with particular force to the governor generalship between 1798 and 1805 of Marquis Wellesley (to use the name by which Mornington is best known), for these were the years in which the directors, through the City and Shipping interests, rose to the height of their power. Unless we have first studied their policies we cannot understand either the virulence of their opposition to him or the way in which they persistently checked and often blocked his plans or the reasons why they recalled him. On the other side, Wellesley himself regarded the war against the French as a world-wide struggle, waged alike in Europe and in the East. What happened in Europe, what happened in London, whether in Westminster or Leadenhall, powerfully influenced the course of his policy in India.

Between 1795 and 1797 as a young and promising Assistant Commissioner of the India Board, Wellesley had worked side by side with his President, Dundas, and with Scott, the leading member of the Directors' Secret Political Committee. On foreign policy in India they knew each others' minds. Dundas and Scott believed in a forward policy, and in full knowledge of this Wellesley went to Calcutta. The flow of secret orders from home continued to encourage him: Tipu Sultan to be attacked, the Carnatic and Mysore to be annexed, subsidiary treaties to be made with the Nizam and the Marathas; outside India, Java to be captured and Batavia to be taken; the underlying motive throughout, they said, was "so to preserve the peace and to be the arbiters of India".<sup>31</sup> All this Scott

<sup>31</sup> Philips, *op. cit.*, pp. 102-4.

and Dundas committed themselves to and Wellesley endorsed; and in one of his early replies he neatly catches their mood and illustrates their unanimity of opinion and policy,—“If you will have a little patience the death of the Nizam will probably enable me to gratify your *voracious appetite for lands and fortresses*. Seringapatam ought, I think, to stay your stomach awhile; not to mention Tanjore and the Poligar countries. Perhaps I may be able to give you a supper of Oudh and the Carnatic, if you should still be hungry”.<sup>32</sup>

As Wellesley turned from conquest to conquest, and the size of his armies grew, and with them the cost, Dundas began to think it was time to call a halt, but not so Scott. If the British were to be the arbiters of India then, Scott argued, they must be prepared to face the expense. As his letters show, in foreign policy he marched the whole way with Wellesley, even on Maratha policy:—

“From Your Lordship’s splendid success (over Tipu) we have (the Marathas) now only to look at as native powers. Of course Poona becomes a Seringapatam and Bombay the fittest of all stations, indeed the only one to keep them in continual check”. And later, in November 1800, he wrote, “If you succeed in your subsidising view with the Peshwa it will complete the security of India beyond what we have reasonably looked for”.<sup>33</sup>

The very fact that Scott was for Wellesley would have disposed the Shipping interest to oppose. But further, it was known that Wellesley held similar commercial views to Scott: he encouraged the private traders, he inveighed against ‘the narrow views of commercial habits’, he even took up India-built ships to carry home the Company’s goods. The ‘Old Shipping’ was therefore bound to be dead against Wellesley. Either he or they would go to the wall.

For the directors as a whole Wellesley’s governor generalship posed a critical question. How far could the Company in India continue to expand without going bankrupt? Already, as they knew, its cost of administration exceeded its revenues, and the India trade monopoly ran at a loss. To them it seemed that the Company’s equilibrium, financial and political, was already overset, and that the only satisfactory course was to call an end to conquest and to turn to building up the India trade. With this in view they worked out a scheme to send regular supplies of bullion to India in order to step up the Company’s purchases of Indian goods for ultimate sale at home; and Dundas for his part, fully aware that the decision was

<sup>32</sup> Add. MSS. 37,275 f. 8. 25 January 1800.

<sup>33</sup> Letters dated 15 July 1800 and 7 November 1800 respectively.

critical, specifically warned Wellesley that "it must be held as a sacred principle that none of the money or resources sent out for commerce are to be diverted from that purpose".<sup>34</sup> The directors duly fulfilled their part of the plan, each year borrowing heavily in London to send Wellesley the money, but he, perhaps too deeply committed in India to change his course, used it to further his own imperial and warlike plans. Thus the main if unintentional result of the directors' efforts was to put the Company further in debt at home whilst enabling Wellesley to carry out a foreign policy to which they were opposed. Such a path, as they saw it, must lead ultimately to the abolition of the Company and their own monopolies. That this man should also fall into line with Scott and actually propose the entry of India-built ships and of British private traders into the India trade must have seemed to the City and Shipping interests the last, calculated insult, and their bitterness towards him may well be imagined.

Meanwhile Dundas had become so immersed in the management of the war against France that he had lost touch with the India House. In an effort to restore his position, he used his remaining influence in April 1800 to push Scott once more into the deputy chair, but this step in itself was a confession of weakness and confusion. Scott, it was true, had partially recovered his health, and characteristically was always ready for the fray. He understood, too, the facts of the situation and, in view of the failure of the Company's financial policy and the exacerbated feelings of the directors, he was firm and right in advising Wellesley to retrench "for the preservation of India", and he himself was rich in expedients to this end. (Letter 398). But the move into the chair was unwise for Scott was plainly out of sympathy with his colleagues, at cross purposes with all of them either on foreign or commercial policy or both. They, in opposition to him and Wellesley, were unanimous as never before, and when Pitt's Ministry left office and Dundas quitted the India Board they took the drastic step of compelling Scott to resign on the private trade question.<sup>35</sup>

Scott was desolated. He told Pitt, "Mr. Dundas's absence, Marquis Cornwallis's, your taking no part, Mr. Addington's not looking into the subject with his own eyes and above all such a degradation (if true) of the India Commissioners really makes me

<sup>34</sup> Add. MSS. 37,274 f. 229. 23 July 1799.

<sup>35</sup> Scott resigned the direction altogether in April 1802. Add MSS. 37,278 f. 89, 11 May 1802. J. Bosanquet to Wellesley.

feel myself insulated. I fought to the last, and as I know I was right on this question, I thought I had been fighting under secure banner, but I feel sore". Yet Scott never felt himself beaten! He was at once busy gaining the ear of Dundas's successor, Dartmouth, but as soon as the directors realised what was going on and that Scott was succeeding, they harried the rather inexperienced and bewildered President out of office. Sensing complete victory they swept along in full cry. Every move by Wellesley was mercilessly criticized: they tore to shreds his plans to set up a college in which to train the Company's servants, they flatly rejected his private trade proposals, they mounted a sustained offensive against the whole range of his policy and finally so worked on Castlereagh who had followed Dartmouth at the India Board, that he abandoned Wellesley and, along with Pitt and Dundas, in December 1804, acquiesced in his recall.<sup>36</sup>

Scott alone of the major actors in the drama stood by Wellesley to the end.<sup>37</sup> But by this time he was an exhausted husk of a man; still spirited but physically worn out in the struggle. His beloved wife, "who had most endeared life and soothed its suffering", had died in March 1803, and he himself, in his son's words, "sank depressed to the same grave" on 4 October 1805.<sup>38</sup>

C. H. PHILIPS

<sup>36</sup> For a detailed treatment of these events see Philips *op. cit.* Chapter V.

Scott's letter to Pitt quoted above is dated 19 November 1801.

<sup>37</sup> See David Scott to Marquis Wellesley, 11 May 1804 and 14 May 1804.

<sup>38</sup> "His remains were interred in the family vault in Mary-la-Bonne burying ground, attended by his relations and most intimate connections and friends; and conducted with great solemnity, but in the plain, unostentatious manner so consistent with the uniform tenor of his life."

*Gentleman's Magazine* 1805, Vol. 75, p. 978. See also Rogers, C. *Scottish Monuments and Tombstones*, Vol. II, p. 208 (1872). In his will Scott typically "directed that his body should be opened after death, that the seat and cause of his complaint should be ascertained for the benefit of mankind; which was accordingly done by a very eminent surgeon and anatomist, Mr. Frye of Gloucester, when his disease was found to have been a schirrus in the pylorus—*Gentleman's Magazine*, 1805, Vol. 75, p. 978.

## THE LETTERS OF BENJAMIN JOY FIRST AMERICAN CONSUL IN INDIA

THE LETTERS printed below are all which survive in the United States Archives of those written by Benjamin Joy of Newburyport, Massachusetts, who was commissioned by President Washington as the first American Consul to serve in India. Between them and the beginning of the regular series of consular reports from India in the National Archives at Washington, there is a gap of half a century. On July 12, 1843, James B. Higginson wrote the Secretary of State from Calcutta, on receiving his commission, "There has never been an American Consul here before". Since Joy was not officially recognised by the Bengal Government, this is, in a measure, true, and it is very extraordinary that the United States lacked consular representation in India during a period when American trade with India was by no means negligible.<sup>1</sup> It will be noted that Joy, despite his brief residence in Calcutta, was able to be of considerable assistance to American sea-captains who called at that port.

Newbury Port 9th Dec<sup>r</sup> 1792<sup>a</sup>

Sir,

I this day had the honor of receiving from the Secretary of State the United States Commission as Consul at Calcutta and other ports and places on the Coasts of India in Asia.

I feel a most lively sense of gratitude for the confidence you have been pleased to repose in me, and for the honor you have done me by appointing me to that office, and beg leave to assure you that I shall at all times exert myself to do the duties of my office in such a manner as to meet Your Excellencies (*sic*) approbation.—I have the honor to be with the most profound respect.

Sir,

your most obedient and  
most humble Servant

B Joy

To The President of the United States

<sup>1</sup> See H. Furber, "The Beginnings of American Trade with India 1784-1812", *New England Quarterly*, XI, 235-265.

<sup>a</sup> This and the following letters are in Department of State, General Records, Consular Despatches, Calcutta, Volume I.

Newbury Port 9th Dec<sup>r</sup> 1792

Sir,

I this day had the honor of receiving your letter of the 21st ult<sup>o</sup> accompanying a Commission from the President of the United States appointing me Consul at Calcutta and other ports and places on the Coast of India in Asia—I pray you to accept my grateful acknowledgements for the very obliging manner in which you have been pleased to inform me of my appointment to that office, and to be assured of my utmost exertions to fulfil the duties of that station.

I am with highest esteem and respect

Sir, your much obliged

Most obedient and  
most humble Servant

B. Joy

To The Honble Thos. Jefferson, Esq<sup>r</sup>  
Secretary of State

Boston 20th Jan<sup>y</sup> 1793

Sir,

The Consular act requiring that I shall give bond with such sureties as shall be approved by you, I have the honor of proposing for your approbation John Coffin Jones, Esq<sup>r</sup>, Christopher Gore, Esq<sup>r</sup>, Joseph Russell jun<sup>r</sup>, Merchant and John Joy, jun<sup>r</sup> gentleman, all of Boston, as sureties to be joined with me in such bond as you shall see fit to direct to be executed before I enter upon my office of Consul—The act further requiring that a consul shall provide for such shipwrecked, sick, or captive seamen as may be within his Consulate, subject to your instructions, I have to request the honor of such instructions from you on this head, and on any other business as you may wish should be followed in my department.

As American ships are frequently sold in India, there will of course be many sailors left in that country, and probably a number of them will get sick from the unhealthiness of it: from a knowledge of the Country, I am warrented in saying that the extent of the daily allowance made by Congress for the relief of sick men is, not enough to give them the necessaries they will stand in need of. I beg leave to observe that there is at Calcutta a most excellent Hospital supported at a very great expense by the British East India Company to which

all white men that are sick are admitted on their paying after the rate of ten sicca rupees per month ; if I could be allowed to pay at that rate for such sick seamen as might fall under my charge, they would be admirably well provided for ; or if a law should enable a Consul in India to demand, as is the Custom in Madeira and some other places, a sum from every ship that arrives there, according to her tonnage or number of hands, for to help support such distressed seamen as might be in want in India, I am persuaded they would by means of this Hospital, be much more comfortably provided for than in any other way. Perhaps, Sir, you have thought that the wages of seamen who desert their ships should be appropriated to this benevolent use, as is the case in some ports of Europe, especially as they, for want of a home are the most likely to get sick in such hot climates as India.

I would by your instructions how to act where there may be a necessity, in order to relieve the distresses of an american (*sic*) seaman of paying a larger sum than Congress has allowed by the consular act.

With the most perfect respect

I am

Sir

your most obedient

and most Humble Servant

B. Joy

Honble Thomas Jefferson  
Secretary of State

Boston 26th March 1793

Sir,

In Jan<sup>y</sup> last, I had the Honor of transmitting to you for your approbation the names of four Gentlemen which I proposed to be my sureties in a bond for the due performance of the duties of my office. As I have not been favoured with a letter from you on the subject, I have concluded that they were acceptable to you ; on this ground, I have drawn up a bond and now forward it to you ; should you find it such as you require, I have to request that you will cause it to be filled (*sic*) in the Office of the Secretary of the Treasury.

I have the Honor to be  
with the greatest respect

Sir

your Ob<sup>d</sup> H<sup>ble</sup> Ser<sup>t</sup>

B. Joy

Thomas Jefferson, Esqr.  
Secretary of State



Calcutta 24th Nov<sup>r</sup> 1794

To Edmund Randolph, Esq<sup>r</sup>  
Secretary of State, &ca &ca

Sir,

This conveyance by the Diana Capt<sup>n</sup> Coffin being the first which has offered since I came here I readily embrace to inform you of my reception and what has occurred since.

Just after my arrival here I informed the Governor General in Council of this settlement that I was appointed by the President of the United States of America Consul for those States at Calcutta and all Ports and places in India and requested an opportunity to lay before him my Commission and to confer on the means most likely to further the amicable views of the President in the appointment. Sir John Shore did not see fit to have any official conversation on the business but desired to see me unofficially ; in a conversation I had with him, he informed me that Government here had no advice from home respecting the Appointment of a Consul from America for India and that it was his opinion that they could not receive me as such without some instructions from England, in however a useful point of view they might look upon my office, and was kind enough to say, on my informing him that I should find it necessary to make an official application, that he would shew me the answer that would be given to my application before it was recorded, and if I wished any alteration which could be admitted, that he would make it. I then officially sent in to the Governor General in Council my Commission as Consul stating what I conceived to be the views of the President in the Appointment and requested that he would afford me such countenance and assistance as would enable me to carry them into effect. In answer to which I received a letter from the Secretary, a copy of which I have the honor to inclose you for your perusal, and by which you will see he has written to the Directors for instructions how to act.

From the mixt government here it will not be easy to fix the kind of Protection and powers which a Consul should have in this place. The Company possess much power for altho' they are not Sovereigns, yet they mould the Sovereign hand of wax to any form they choose when it does not interfere with the wishes of the Governors of England and where it does not thwart the powers of the Supreme Court of Judicature established here by Parliament and which is totally

independent of the Government here. There is a constant jealousy between this court and the companys Government ; if the latter should determine to admit a Consul and grant him all the usual privileges, it is probable that the Supreme Court would object to it, as interfering with their judiciary powers, of which they are extremely tenacious, so that possibly nothing short of an agreement with the Government in England would be sufficient to fix a Consul here with the necessary powers to carry into effect the intentions of the Consular Act—I am persuaded that Sir John Shore, the present Governor General is disposed to do anything he can with propriety to serve me but that cannot be much toward governing seamen unless the judges join him ; I believe he is very sensible of the advantages which the Company derive from Foreigners frequenting the settlement and it is easy to see that the enhanced value of the produce by the admission of Foreigners enables them to realize a much greater revenue than they otherways could ; tho' the Company, as Merchants, may perhaps think that they (i.e. the foreigners) interfere with their Sales in Europe.

There is a jealousy existing among the British Merchants in this Country of the rising Commerce of the Americans in this quarter of the world, and I have reason to suppose there has been plans proposed to the body of Merchants here by individuals of it to thwart us in what they call the Country trade which is from port to port in India, whether it be on freight or when trading on our own Accounts. I have thought proper to give you the above information to enable you to take such measures as to you shall appear fit to procure such a reception and establishment for a Consul from the United States as will enable him to perform the Duties for which he is appointed.

It has appeared necessary to me that there should be an Agent or Vice-Consul fixed at Madras and Bombay, where there are many American ships go, but I have found a difficulty in getting Gen<sup>m</sup> of responsibility to act as Agents in the line at those places as no one in this Country is willing to have trouble and expense without a profit is attached to it. I have, however, engaged William Abbott, Esq<sup>r</sup> of Madras to act at that place : he is Secretary to the Nabob of Arcot and may be depended on.

It is probable that you have much better information respecting what has taking (*sic*) place at the Isle of France in regard to our vessels than I can have ; it may not however be improper for me to observe that, from what I have been able to collect on the Subject from Americans and from English Prisoners, it appears to me that a

good deal of delay and difficulty which they experienced was owing to the imprudence of some of our own people who irritated by their conduct a certain class of the Islanders who had so much power over the Assembly as to prevail on them to detain ships long after there was the least reason for so doing. There are at present in this Port two Ships belonging to Adam Babcock and other Citizens of the United States, in one of which called the Enterprize, Capt<sup>n</sup> Babcock left Boston in the year 1788—the other called the American Capt<sup>n</sup> Babcock purchased at the Isle of France in the year 1792; he loaded them both with sugar at Manilla on account of himself and his owners and in the way from thence to Ostend he was Captured in Febry last, in the Straits of Sundy by a squadron composed of four ships which were fitted out by the English East India Company to cruise and two Dutch ships, one belonging to the States General, and one belonging to the Dutch East India Company; they sent the ships into Batavia where they detained them about five months and then brought them here; they are now libeld in the Court of Calcutta and will shortly be try'd. I have little doubt of getting them released but fear very much that the damages which Capt<sup>n</sup> Babcock has sustained will not be fully made up to him. When the cause shall be adjudged, I shall take the first opportunity of informing you of the result and if necessary send you such Documents as may be wanted to prove the injury—accompanying I have the honor to send you a report of the only American ships arrived at this port since I have been here, and before the 1st July, and none have sailed from hence since my arrival, before that time.

I am frequently threatened with a disorder which I contracted when last in this country, a pretty severe attack of which I have lately experienced, this together with apprehension of a War between America and Great Britain has determined me to quit this country in the course of the ensuing Season; on my arrival in America, I shall have the honor of giving any information you may wish for, as far as lays (*sic*) in my power.

I have the honor to be with  
the Greatest Respect

Sir your most obedient  
most hble Servant

B. Joy  
American Consul for India

To

B Joy Esq<sup>r</sup>

Sir,

I am directed by the Governor-General in Council to acknowledge his receipt of your two Letters of 3rd and 13th instant and to return you the Commission which accompanied the last with the following intimation:

The Governor-General in Council, having no Instruction from England does not think himself at liberty to admit you in the public Character of a Consul entitled to privileges; but you may reside here as a Commercial Agent, subject to the Civil and Criminal Jurisdiction of this Country, and the Governor-General in Council will apply to the Hon<sup>ble</sup> Court of Directors on the Subjects of your Address.

Council Chamber  
the 21st April 1794  
Exd G. Morris.

I am, Sir, your most obedient  
humble Servant  
J. H. Harrington  
Sub. Sec'y

Calcutta 22 Jan<sup>y</sup> 1795

To Edmund Randolph, Esq<sup>r</sup>  
Secretary of State, &ca &ca

Sir,

Herewith I have the honor to send you duplicate of a letter I wrote you by the Diana Capt<sup>n</sup> Coffin, and have now to inform you that the Judgement of the Court delivered this day on the two ships belonging to Capt Babcock and others as mentioned in my last is that the ship America, on board of which were 103 small bags of Sugar belonging to a frenchman who had been formerly an officer on board that ship and who had those as part of his Privilege should be released together with all her Cargo except the 103 bags of Sugar which they condemnd, that each party should bear their own Cost of Suit and that no damages should be given; that the ship Enterprize be released with all her Cargo and that the Captors should pay the Cost and damages altho' this ship had on board 3 bags of the

same man's Sugar; this it appears they thought too trifling an object to be considered as a Cause for sending the Enterprize into Port. From the Judgment as delivered from the bench, I am led to think that the Ground on which they refused cost and damages on the America was her having the 103 bags of sugar on board which belonged to the frenchman altho' it was in proof that this was offered to be given up to the Captors after the Capture—Neither of the Parties have determined as yet how far they will accept the Judgment of the Court or whether they will appeal which makes it unnecessary for me to trouble you with a more particular detail of this business at present, especially as it is my intention for the reasons mentioned in my former letters to leave this Country soon for America where it will be in my power to lay it fully before you as well as a Report of all the American ships which have entered or cleared at this port since my arrival here.

I have the honor to be with sentiments  
of the highest respect

Sir, your very obedient and very  
humble Servant

B. Joy

Boston, 24th Jan<sup>y</sup> 1796

To the Honorable  
Timothy Pickering  
Secretary of State, &ca &ca

Sir,

In my last letters from Bengal, I had the honor of informing the Secretary of State that I had, on account of my bad health determined to quit the Country, and that it would depend on the state of my health after I got here whether I returned to it again or not. I have got much better since my arrival here but am advised by my Physician not to go back to that country as I must by so doing subject myself to a return of the liver complaint. I have therefore now determined not to go back to India, and, as I can no longer be of service as Consul there, I have to request that you will be pleased to consider this a resignation of my appointment to that office and that you will acquaint the President therewith.

I have discovered that the Private letters which I sent in december 94 and which were accompanied by one to the Secretary of State were suppressed and, as those w<sup>ch</sup> were put into the same ship in which I sent my return to Jan'y 95 have not come to hand, I apprehend the same misfortune has attended them; should the returns not have reached your office and you will favor me with notice thereof I will send forward Copies.

Feeling that a Consul may be essentially necessary in India for the good and safety of our increasing commerce in that country, I have to request your forgiveness if I am extra official in informing you that it appears to me that the person holding that office should be an American by birth; for should a subject of the King of Great Britain be appointed it would be quite in the power of the Government there to send him to Europe prisoner when ever they saw fit unless some convention is made with that country to prevent it; their India act gives full power to the Governor of any of their settlements to send any British subject from the other side of the Cape of Good Hope that is not actually in the service of the British King. I beg leave to add that I am persuaded the present Governor-General and the leading Members of the Government, from the partiality they have for the American Character and for that of our Illustrious President, would be desirous that the American Consul should be an American by birth or at least of long standing in this Country, and I fear if there should be a necessity of appointing a British subject to that office, and one who has not the Company's permission to reside there, that they would feel themselves in rather an awkward situation respecting the mode of treating him, as they are enjoined by their orders from home not to allow persons to remain there without the Company's permission. I am induced to state this to you Sir, from knowing their sentiments on the subject.

I am  
with sentiments of the greatest  
Respect  
Sir  
your most Obedient  
and Hmble Servant  
B. Joy

## TOWN RECORDS IN NEW HAMPSHIRE

**T**HE STATE of New Hampshire is one of six in the New England group located in the northeast corner of the United States. New Hampshire is a wedge shaped area placed between Maine and Vermont. According to the census of 1950, the population was listed at a little over half a million. With the exception of its cities, the State is rural in character. Because the United States is a Federal union, the State of New Hampshire may be said to govern itself. Its voters elect the governor and the members of the State Legislature, send representatives and senators to the national Congress, and choose most of the county, city and town officials. New Hampshire was founded in 1623, just a few years before the Taj Mahal was begun and has been developing its sturdy political life for over three centuries.

New Hampshire is divided into ten counties, eleven cities and 225 towns. The counties are not important in this State as is the case in the western and southern states of the American Union. In passing it may be said that the three county offices of record, the register of deeds, the register of probate and the clerk of the superior court keep their archives in well-appointed vaults in the county seats. The eleven cities, generally but not always larger than the towns, have records systems centralized around the office of the city clerk. Lowest in the scale (except the precincts which all towns do not have) are the towns whose records bear directly on the inhabitants thereof.

The political life of the town centres around the town meeting. Here the voters of the town meet to elect their officers, vote taxes and determine town policy. It is said that voters in certain Swiss cantons gather on a Sunday afternoon, dressed in their sober clothes and black hats to give their decisions in open air meetings. Although many New Hampshire voters wear checked mackinaw jackets on town meeting day because it is still cold in northern New England on that second Tuesday in March, yet they have this in common with the Swiss: both are examples of pure democracy, few of which are left in the world.

Town government in New Hampshire is not only fundamental but its antiquity in the State dates from the founding of the colony. It may be said that New Hampshire had town government before it had province or county government. Portsmouth, Dover and Exeter existed as virtually independent republics under town form of government before being temporarily absorbed by Massachusetts, the colony

to the south. Indeed, the inhabitants of Exeter in their "Exeter Combination" compacted to form a government and this document has been considered the first known agreement in New Hampshire to submit to self-imposed taxes. Town government continued under the jurisdiction of Massachusetts during the Seventeenth Century, emerged unhampered when New Hampshire became a separate colony and grew to full stature during independence and statehood. At present the town is a corporate entity with "power to sue and be sued," may own property for public use, make contracts and by-laws and appropriate money for more than a score of purposes ranging from the support of schools to the defraying of "all necessary charges arising within the town."

The chief office of record is that of the town clerk. This officer maintains the minutes of the town meetings mentioned above in what is generally known as the 'Town Record Book'. In the Town of Atkinson, for example, these minutes go back to the year 1767 and, while this is not ancient by European standards, nevertheless they represent records of an older state as compared with one of more recent date such as Oklahoma. The minutes contain also a vast miscellanea of material. In one town, an analysis showed that there were over forty discrete items or portions of other types of records contained in these minute books ranging from abatement of taxes to the sale of pews (when church and town were joined). These record books may be called 'historical' in the sense that they provide the bare bones with which further research may build the whole body of town history.

Vital statistics are also the concern of the town clerk who records births, marriages and deaths. He records also chattel mortgages and conditional sales; appointments; oaths and bonds of town officers; fires; licenses and permits (especially dog licenses and automobile permits); perambulations of town lines; and the drawing of jurors. Besides the records of his own office the town clerk is required to keep in his custody the records of defunct offices and organizations such as dissolved school districts and the superintending school committee.

The board of selectmen is composed of three members, one elected at each annual town meeting for a three year term. The selectmen are the executive officials of the town. In most towns the selectmen are also the assessors of taxes and this capacity is reflected in their assessors' blotter books and the invoice books wherein are entered the lists of taxable property and polls. They prepare the agenda for the town meeting and this is printed as the 'warrant' in the annual



report which document contains the reports of the major and minor town officers. In many towns the selectmen act in addition as a board of welfare and records pertaining to this function are to be found. They prepare lists of jurors who are drawn by the town clerk. They are empowered to fill vacancies in town offices.

Next in the roster of town officials is the tax collector. He collects the taxes assessed by the selectmen in their capacity as assessors. His duties are simple, so his records are few. He keeps the regulation State Tax Collector's Book in which the payments are listed. His collections are turned over to the town treasurer. The latter maintains his cash book, a record of notes against the town and orders on the treasurer from the selectmen calling upon him to make payments for town expenses.

The selectmen, town clerk, tax collector and treasurer constitute the major officers in the town. The minor town officers are the auditors, trustees of trust funds, cemetery trustees, moderator, supervisors of the check-list, library trustees, health officer, highway agent, constables and many others not all of whom keep separate records. In addition there are a number of defunct town offices reminiscent of forgotten duties of the Eighteenth and Nineteenth Centuries such as gager of casks, pound keeper, hog reeve, deer keeper, fence viewer and tythingman.

Somewhat apart from the regular town officials is the school board whose duty it is to provide education for the children in the town through membership in a supervisory union (a State grouping of towns under one superintendent) under the general direction of the State Board of Education. But at the local level the school board convenes in a separate meeting of the voters annually and reports its activities in a separate section of the printed annual report. Its records consist of minutes of meetings, contracts with teachers and a general accounting record. The school registers are sometimes to be found with the records of the school board, the supervisory union or the town clerk.

Although the election of town officials is a local affair, the methods employed in record keeping do not depend entirely upon local vagary. Most of the important records are prescribed by the State in terms of standard forms to be used. For instance, the assessors' books, forms for reporting vital statistics, automobile permits and many others are dictated by certain State departments.

An archivist is interested not only in the kinds of records but how well they are kept. The protection of records in New Hampshire

of land is too high to permit us to have at our disposal such a large site for such a relatively small quantity of archives.<sup>2</sup>

For this reason the stack system, modified as I have just indicated—which has been applied in its most perfected form at Basel—will come more and more into favour, even when in Belgium, as in other countries, the policy of constructing archives repositories away from the heart of the city is adopted. In fact, for the small number of archives investigators it is not at all necessary to imitate the great libraries by occupying central sites that could be better set aside for the more frequented scientific establishments. Moreover, it is practically only in sections of the city removed from the centre that complete isolation of the archives buildings can be had.<sup>3</sup>

It is also necessary to have hot-water heat in the repository; otherwise, dampness will soon begin its destruction. This system of heating is employed almost everywhere in Germany, Austria, and Switzerland. Where it has not been possible to install it, as in a few old buildings that happened to be taken over for archives use, the documents are badly affected by mould. Bamberg is about the only place I know of where, because of the profuse circulation of light and air, it has been possible thus far, to do without any type of heating in the building. Beneath the repository at Vienna is a well-ventilated cellar, the flooring of which is laid on a deep layer of concrete. The walls are asphalted on the outside and covered on the inside with Ponte cement and a coat of oil paint. The wrought iron supports that, up to the eleventh tier, form the vertical parts of the building, rest on 96 columns of fireproof stones cemented with mortar of Portland cement and set between the cast iron plates of the basement flooring. These wrought iron supports are arranged in such a way that they, and not the walls, bear the weight of the eleven tiers. The walls, like those at Düsseldorf, are built on huge blocks of concrete. Vents 1.58 metres wide are cut in the cellar. An electric fan that operates on the street side of the second floor facilitates a change of air from the cellar to the eleventh tier. This ventilating system maintains the dryness so essential for the documents.

The different floors are connected by iron stairways, usually located in the centre of the building, and by a lift installed near the

<sup>2</sup> The site on which the repository at Bamberg is built has an area of two-thirds of a hectare, and, furthermore, all dangerous construction within a radius of 25 metres is prohibited.

<sup>3</sup> At Breslau there is always to be a distance of 20 metres between the archives buildings and structures surrounding them.

entrance. The lifts at Wiesbaden, Breslau, Vienna, etc., can support a weight of 400 kilograms.

The stacks, about 2·25 metres high and 68 centimetres across, are nearly always of iron, and the system of Lipman, of Strasbourg, seems to be preferred by most of the archivists (Düsseldorf, Vienna, Breslau, etc.).

Sometimes the shelves are sliding boards that can be pulled out half way.

In the double stacks there are partitions of latticework, to prevent the volumes that extend too far back from pushing off those on the opposite side. Everywhere measures have been taken to promote the circulation of air within the stacks by piercing small holes (forming a decorative motif) in the uprights, and also in the metal shelves. The shelves to be used for cartons are divided into numerous compartments by thin iron rods placed vertically. To permit short people to reach the highest shelf without difficulty, footstools 20 to 34 centimetres high have been put in the repository. To this system I prefer the one used at the General Archives of the Kingdom of The Netherlands, at The Hague. It consists of a metal bar placed several centimetres from the floor all along the stacks and of a handle on the uprights of the stacks to enable one to balance himself. A centre passage about 1·50 metres wide generally separates the various rooms into two parts. In addition, in several repositories there are by the windows two lateral passages from 80 centimetres to 1·20 metres wide. The distance between the stacks varies from 1 metre to 1·35 metres. Everywhere, but particularly in repositories that are very wide, light materials and colours are recommended to increase the light. Indeed it often happens that on the lower floors the protective iron work on the windows shuts out the light. It is also important to see to it that this iron work can be opened from within the building to facilitate the rescue of the documents in case of emergency. The windows of the upper floors have thick wired glass embedded in the framework in such a manner as to leave play for expansion. Fire breaks this wired glass as it does the ordinary kind, but the pieces, held by the steel mesh, press together in expanding and prevent the smoke from passing.<sup>4</sup> Generally at the end of the centre passage there is a window with a balcony; this is very practical, not only in view of the additional light thus obtained, but also for use in cleaning the records. Each floor has movable desks, chairs, and even small

<sup>4</sup> This system is used in the new repository of State Archives at Antwerp.

rolling tables for work there. Finally, on each floor is a telephone, by means of which the director's office, the staff offices, and the public reading room can be reached. It is hardly necessary to say that water, fire hose, and fire extinguishing apparatus are provided on each floor. In some repositories I observed portable lanterns that could be used in case of disaster during the night.

Naturally my attention was directed primarily to the buildings of State Archives, but whenever I had an opportunity to study successful innovations in repositories of communal archives I did not miss visiting them. There is not much to be said about the buildings. The Archives of the City of Nuremberg are installed with the communal library in a former convent. Those of Prague are in the City Hall. Only the Archives of the Cities of Cologne and Mainz have special buildings, but as they also house the libraries, it was hardly possible to attain perfection in construction. At Mainz the building is not even entirely isolated. We must, however, approve the circular of the Prussian Minister of the Interior, dated March 6, 1900, which urged the communes intending to build or to repair their archives repositories to submit their plans to the State Archives administration.

I shall end this description of archives buildings by giving certain cost figures:

The repository at Düsseldorf cost 248,000 marks (32,000 was for inside equipment), not including the land, ceded gratuitously by the city. The Archives and Library of the City of Cologne cost 571,000 marks. Those of the Circuit at Speyer and Amberg cost about 300,000 marks, which was the cost of the new stacks alone at Wiesbaden. The repository of the State Archives at Bamberg, built in 1902-5, cost 640,000 marks. The new repository at Dresden, to be completed in 1915, will consist of eleven or twelve tiers of 2.50 metres each, of reinforced concrete without gratings, and will cost 2,000,000 marks; this is more than the construction cost of the Public Record Office at London, which was only 2,000,000 francs, and more also than the cost of the new repository of State Archives at Vienna, which was only 2,000,000 crowns. The repository at Breslau cost 493,303 marks, but the sale of the old site and of certain portions of land of the new one brought 375,840 marks, so that the new repository really cost the State only 117,000 marks, whereas the plans for remodelling the old one anticipated an expenditure of 184,000 marks. The State of Prussia made an excellent transaction in constructing entirely new buildings for the Archives at Breslau. The

furnishings of the Archives of the Ministry of War, located with the library in the War Museum at Munich, cost over 50,000 marks. Finally, the cost of the repository at Basel amounted to 260,000 francs without the masonry.<sup>5</sup>

### *Preservation of Archives*

Archives consist of registers ; of separate items on paper or parchment, with or without seals ; and of maps and plans.

There is little to be said about registers, except that everywhere great care is taken to preserve the bindings and to have them repaired by bookbinders who are employed at the repositories. In the smaller repositories an office boy or guard usually does the binding. In some places, as at Wiesbaden, a little hand machine is used for miscellaneous printing (labels, bulletins, letterheads, etc.).

In many repositories the registers and portfolios are filed flat instead of being placed upright. The advantages of this method are rather numerous as regards portfolios. Dust does not penetrate into them as easily when they are filed flat, and the documents are therefore less damaged. Signatures and *cachets* (seals impressed on instead of appended to the documents) are generally at the bottom of the paper, and are thus more easily damaged by rubbing on the shelves, since the workers usually take little care to put the records consulted in their former position. The use of cords and strings increases the danger, and they might well be replaced by laces. In the system of filing portfolios flat, the cases can be thinner than when they are filed upright ; and in the upright filing it would be necessary to draw the laces tighter. On the other hand, it is easier to remove the vertically filed portfolios from the shelves, and they usually take up less space than when filed flat.

In the course of my trip I did not come across a system of portfolios superior in quality or type to that used in Belgium.

The method of preserving charters in use here seems to me to bear favourable comparison with that of other countries.

For the preservation of seals, the upright position of the envelopes enclosing the charters seems to me superior to that of the flat position, insofar as it prevents the charters from being pressed together too tightly. The main thing is to see that the cartons are sufficiently high and long to avoid the necessity of folding the parchment too much and to

<sup>5</sup> In 1913 the Belgian franc was valued at 19·3 cents, the German mark at 23·8 cents, and the Austrian crown at 20·3 cents.—Ed.

supply the cartons with little holes allowing the circulation of air. This system is partially in effect at the repository at Liège, and it should be more generally used. At Vienna charters are preserved in tin containers measuring 57·3 centimetres high, 52 centimetres wide, and 45 centimetres deep. Each box has two drawers made of cherry wood; the lower drawer rests on the bottom of the box, and the upper drawer rests on two movable rods that will fit into the holes (of which about 20 are made in the uprights); the holes that are temporarily unused allow air to circulate in the boxes. Empty, a box weighs 27 kilograms, which seems to me considerable weight in case of an emergency removal. As for the luxurious containers that house the 80,000 charters at the Bamberg repository, we could not dream of installing anything similar in a Belgian repository; space is absolutely lacking in our present buildings, and it is hardly to be imagined that in those to be constructed in the future the rooms will be as large as they are at the Bamberg Archives.

Maps and plans are generally filed in drawers (Wiesbaden, Basel, etc.). Those that exceed given dimensions are rolled and placed upright in a very practical sort of revolving cabinet (Wiesbaden).

### *Cleaning Archives*

If free circulation of light and air is properly sought in all the repositories, nevertheless, it must be said that it causes a considerable quantity of dust to accumulate, and this quantity is augmented by the installation of central heating. The dust, treacherously filtering into the interstices of the documents, after a time seriously damages them.

Archivists therefore give much thought to the question of cleaning their records. Especially since the invention of new mechanical devices, the most divergent opinions are voiced about the methods to be employed. Vacuum cleaning is warmly recommended by Dr. Ilgen, Director of the Archives at Düsseldorf, where, with the aid of two convicts under supervision of a guard and an office boy, this work is done 6 or 8 weeks of each year. Vacuum cleaning is also recommended by Mr. Geiger, Director of the Circuit Archives at Nuremberg. Each year a fourth of his records are cleaned. Three years ago an electric machine was acquired at Wiesbaden. Dr. von Domarus, who demonstrated the equipment to me, is less enthusiastic about it. It is rather expensive, two people are required to operate it, and it is no quicker than cleaning the documents by shaking them on

the balcony of each tier,<sup>6</sup> as is the custom at the Communal Archives in Rotterdam. At the Archives of the Kingdom of Saxony, in Dresden, cleaning by vacuum is firmly opposed on the ground that it nearly always damages the documents. A woman is employed permanently to clean the records. When it is necessary to move heavy registers the guard assists her. In view of these contradictory opinions about methods, the only conclusion to be reached at present is that cleaning is indispensable and that one person should be charged with the task.

### *Repairing Archives*

To keep the archives well cleaned is to lessen the labour of repairing them. Nevertheless, the passing centuries have done such damage that the problem of salvaging documents injured by insects<sup>7</sup> or by mould has arisen everywhere in recent times. Nowhere, however, has there been more active search for a remedy for the evil than in Germany. For some 15 years past there has been hardly a Congress of Archivists at which the question has not been discussed, and between the meetings scholars such as Dr. Posse, Director of the General Archives of the Kingdom of Saxony, have continued their experiments and research in the silence of the laboratory. I had the good fortune to witness an experiment with zapon at Dresden. Documents that were crumbling and had to be moved with the utmost care came from the Neu-zapon bath as if revived and were as solid as ordinary papers. A flask of this liquid, which is manufactured at the Chemical Laboratory of Leonhardi at Dresden-Loschwitz, costs five marks and will last for some time. So far, the only objection that might be made concerns the durability of the remedy. Time itself will make known to us the best process; meanwhile nothing prevents us from experimenting with documents that in any case would be regarded as beyond repair.<sup>8</sup>

<sup>6</sup> On each tier there is also a wastebasket, a brush, and a cloth for cleaning documents requested for examination.

<sup>7</sup> See the communication of Dr. Prümers, Archivist of Posen, at the Congress of Archivists at Bamberg, "Die Papierfeinde aus dem Insektenreiche," *Korrespondenzblatt des Gesamtvereins der deutschen Geschichts- und Altertumsvereine* ("The Enemies of Paper in the Insect Kingdom," *Journal of the Federation of German Historical and Antiquarian Societies*), 1905. Cf. *Archivalische Zeitschrift* (*Archival Journal*), 1906.

<sup>8</sup> It is needless to say that here I can only touch lightly the question of restoring documents. Since I am not an authority in Chemistry, I shall refrain from taking sides in favour of either process used in Germany. When experiments are made in Belgium by a professional chemist, it will be necessary to give serious consideration to the method of Dr. Posse, as well as to that recommended by the Royal Materials

The same was true of the experiments I witnessed at Breslau with new processes for restoring faded writing. I saw documents on parchment that for centuries had served as register covers and on which the writing had entirely disappeared subjected to chemical processes of Dr. Lowew, an archivist of Breslau; of Dr. Rehme, a university professor of Halle-on-Salle; and of Willy Th. Sauter, a pharmacist of Schorndorf, Württemberg. These documents became perfectly legible and were not stained, as happens when tannin or gall-nut is used. According to the lecturers, they had the advantage over documents treated with a concentrated solution of ammonium sulphide of remaining legible for an indefinite period of time. Experiments of this sort have only strengthened my conviction that the salvaging of deteriorated documents is nothing more than a question of time but that the study of means should definitely be entrusted only to scholars who have a thorough knowledge of chemistry, that is, to doctors of chemical sciences.<sup>9</sup>

A scholar of the type that you have desired in the General Archives of the Kingdom of Belgium will soon be employed in the German Archives. According to a conversation I had with Dr. Koser, Director General of the Prussian Archives, when the new repository of the General Archives of Prussia is constructed, a workroom for the restoration of records will be provided and a scholar who has specialized in chemistry will have charge of this work.<sup>10</sup>

### *Photographic Workroom*

Naturally, this chemist will also be in charge of the photographic workroom, which is becoming more and more an indispensable complement of a good archives repository. Such rooms exist at Düsseldorf, Wiesbaden, Dresden, Vienna, and Karlsruhe, and indeed, at all the new repositories. At the last named place, instead of including the rooms for photographic reproduction and the restoration of documents in the main building, a happy idea brought about their installation in a separate one constructed for those purposes

Testing Office (*Kgl. Materialprüfungsamt*) at Lichtervelde, and also to the processes used in Italy, Holland, etc. Cf. *protokolle des zehnten deutschen Archivtags in Posen (Minutes of the Tenth Congress of German Archivists in Posen)*, Sept. 6, 1910.

<sup>9</sup> As early as the conference of St. Gall for the restoration of manuscripts, held in 1898, it was decided that curators of manuscripts should confer with chemists regarding this work.

<sup>10</sup> At the moment of correcting the proof-sheets of this report, the welcome news has come to me from the Minister of Sciences and Arts that Mr. Claessens, doctor of chemical sciences, has been appointed research chemist at the General Archives of the Kingdom of Belgium, at Brussels (March 1914).



and connected with the repository by a covered gallery. At more than one repository regret was expressed that there was no specialist for photographic work on the staff, so that it was left to the archivists. Since an international congress for the reproduction of manuscripts, coins, and seals was held at Liège in 1905 and its proceedings have received general approval, it will be unnecessary to set forth here the usefulness of photographic equipment in all the large archives repositories. Unquestionably, from a scientific point of view, a photograph of a document will always be more valuable to the scholar than a copy, even though certified as true and accurate; and the preservation of documents themselves will be promoted by photography, because it will no longer be necessary to send out unique records and expose them to the risks involved in circulation outside the repository. Finally, in case of loss or destruction of the original, there will be the photograph to represent as nearly as possible the document that has disappeared. We shall not speak of the service photography renders in questions of the falsification of documents, of palimpsests, etc. In Prussia an archivist, Dr. Warschauer, was detailed for several weeks to the photochemical laboratory of the Technical University of Berlin, at Charlottenburg. The remarkable results of his collaboration with Mr. Otto Mente, first assistant at the laboratory, have been recorded by them and will be a precious guide for all persons concerned with photography in archives repositories.<sup>11</sup>

### *Libraries in Archives Repositories*

Each repository has a library containing reference works and books on local history. Although this library may be intended only for the staff, in most of the repositories the books are placed at the disposal of the investigators, and general reference works are even put in the public reading room. Of course, all the libraries are not as rich as that of the Archives of the Royal House at Charlottenburg, which, since 1896, has contained over 45,000 volumes; or even as that of the city of Prague, which at present contains 25,000 volumes. But everywhere the State furnishes the repository with means of acquiring for its library the principal publications concerning archives. Each year at the General Archives of Dresden a sum of 2,500 francs is set aside for the purchase of books for the library.

<sup>11</sup> See "Die Anwendung der Photographie für die archivalische Praxis von Otto Mente und Adolf Warschauer," *Mitteilungen der K. Preussischen Archivverwaltung*, Heft 15 ("The Use of Photography for Archival Purposes by Otto Mente and Adolf Warschauer," *Communications of the Royal Prussian Archives Administration*, No. 15), Leipzig, 1909.

towns leaves much to be desired. Only in the larger towns are there evidences of a well ordered system and adequate vaults. Many of the towns have safes in the town halls but it should be remembered that many of the minor officials keep the records in their own homes. In the case of most persons holding town office, this function is not a full time job nor are salaries commensurate with full time employment in town affairs. But on the brighter side, it should be noted that vital statistics records have the additional guarantee of duplication at Concord, the State capital. Since about the time of the Civil War, copies of births, deaths and marriages have been sent to the State Registrar of Vital Statistics in addition to being recorded in the town. Towns, alert to the value of their older records, have placed them on deposit at places of greater safety such as the State Library, the New Hampshire Historical Society and the Secretary of State. In the case of town records prior to 1825 there is the added security of the copying programme carried on by the Secretary of State. Under a law of about 1913, the Secretary of State was empowered to call in and copy the early town and parish (church) records. This process proceeded slowly until 1933 when Federal funds were made available for work relief projects. Projects were accordingly set up under the various relief administrations and by 1939 the programme had been pushed through to completion. An index of about 750,000 names has been compiled to aid research in the copied records. Probably no other state has handled its town records in this manner.

At the present moment it is hard to see any solution to the archival problem presented by the town records. In the smaller towns, the hazards of fire, damp and vermin are still present. Laws inveigh against the mistreatment of records but they do not have teeth in them. There is no State Archives in New Hampshire to offer central protection and adequate supervision of record keeping and record disposition in the towns. Moreover, there is not much likelihood of the establishment of a State Archives as long as the State is in its present economy-minded mood. But, at least, the scholar can do this much: he can pursue his researches easily in the period prior to 1825 and for the last century or so he can act quickly and use the records that are still extant.

RICHARD C. WOOD

## PRESIDENTIAL ADDRESS DELIVERED AT THE FIRST INTERNATIONAL CONGRESS ON ARCHIVES<sup>1</sup>

**T**O HOLD periodically an International Congress of Archivists is first among the general objectives of the International Council of Archives according to the Instrument which created it. It, therefore, gives me very great pleasure to be able in the capacity of the President of the International Council to welcome the opening of the first Universal World Congress, which has come into being with such conspicuous success hardly two years after the creation of the Council itself and which constitutes, I believe, a memorable occasion for the archivists all over the world.

Archives! a word strange and somewhat mysterious, which, be it said in passing, has become feminised in course of time very much like the word 'horloge'. By an etymology entirely false, but none the less expressive, our ancestors have derived it from *arcus* or *arca* (vault or chest). It evokes thus in their spirit the idea of inviolable, walled up hiding places intended to protect objects particularly precious, *i.e.*, treasures, the treasures of charters among others. The expression is very ancient and it is still in vogue. How indeed to conceive of a civilised nation, an organisation or a service, large or small, a family or even a private individual who does not possess archives or who can afford to treat them with contempt? The French, born railers as they are, are fond of saying with Beaumarchais: "Everything ends with a song". Will it not be more correct to say "Everything ends with archives" and should it not also be added: "It is good, it is logical, it is necessary that it is finally to the creation of archives that all human activities lead."?

Archives are, moreover, administrative activities, whether public or private, transformed into history. One cannot deny that it is the faculty of remembering one's past and endeavouring to know the past of one's ancestors which distinguishes man from the animal much

<sup>1</sup> Translated from the original French text of the address delivered by Dr. Charles Samaran on the opening day of the first International Congress on Archives held in Paris from the 23rd to 26th August, 1950. It is very appropriate that M. Samaran has sent it to us for inclusion in the Cuvelier Number of *The Indian Archives* as a mark of respect to the memory of the great Belgian Archivist. Cuvelier, as is well-known, was a staunch advocate of the cause of international cooperation in the archival field and was one of the chief architects of the International Congress of Archivists and Librarians which held its first session in Brussels in 1910. It was his dream to see established an international body consisting exclusively of archivists and devoted entirely to the solution of archival problems. That dream has become a reality with the opening in Paris this year of the International Congress on Archives.

better than even the faculty of making love in all seasons to which the ancients attached so much importance. If, to understand the problem still better, I have to search for a metaphor, not academic perhaps, but sufficiently expressive and capable of being borne in memory, I would say that Archives are administration and history hidden in a flask and that if a Government can neglect records only at the risk of travelling in empty air, no nation worth its name can dare to take the responsibility of openly treating their archives with indifference. This is why the International Council of Archives, which is now constituted in its definitive form under the guardianship of UNESCO and to which only yesterday, M. Torres Bodet, its eminent Director-General, lent in moving terms all his support, and the International Congress which is the most splendid and perhaps the most useful product of the Council's activities, have pledged themselves to oppose with all their resources the equation, "archives = useless paper", artfully coined by unscrupulous dealers and very often accepted for their convenience by administrators, legislators, and scholars and, I would venture to say, even by ill-informed and easygoing ministers.

But then it may be asked: will you keep all the papers, whatever they be, and keep them for an indefinite time? Certainly not. We archivists are in a better position to know than anybody else that such an ideal, were it even desirable, would be no more capable of realisation than, for instance, any project to raise an imperishable monument to every man that has left the world since life first manifested itself on the earth, a task which, if implemented, would have left no space for the living.

This is why we have placed on the agenda of this Congress a number of problems which are of fundamental importance to the archivists all over the world. They are:

What should be done to enable the archivists engaged in arranging and preserving archives to know in advance the nature of the materials that the archives-creating bodies are going to deliver to them so as to prevent the historian from being confronted some day (as it has happened so many times in the past and is still happening now) by enormous gaps impossible to fill in or by heaps of official papers altogether useless?

What mechanical means should be adopted to reduce the volume of archives to be preserved and to keep in different places their duplicates or triplicates so as to increase as far as possible their chances of survival?

How to save the very important category of economic archives which has so far been regarded as being doomed to destruction and which are increasing at a pace beyond control?

How, finally, with our very limited resources, to establish a system which would enable the archivists all over the world to exchange their views, their methods and their experiences instead of being shut up in their own countries or towns as in a closed vessel?

\* \* \* \*

But I should not abuse the patience of this large and distinguished gathering. To sum up, I would say in brief that judging by the lively interest and importance of the topics to be discussed very shortly, by the number and the worth of the participants who have come from the most diverse places of the globe, by the variety, the beauty and the value of the exhibitions, visits and excursions which will complete the conference and finally, by the incomparable setting of history and art in which the Director of the Archives of France, my successor and friend, is going to welcome the Congress, we have every reason to expect that it is going to be a happy and splendid success.

CHARLES SAMARAN

## REPORT ON A SCIENTIFIC MISSION TO GERMAN, AUSTRIAN AND SWISS ARCHIVES\*

Mr. Minister:

You were good enough to authorize me to visit the principal archives of Germany, Austria-Hungary, and German Switzerland, in order to study their organization at first hand, with a view to eventual improvements to be made in the organization of our national archives.

I have the honour to submit to you a detailed report on the results of that mission.

Since I was obliged to choose among the numerous establishments available for my inspection, I went to the State Archives at Berlin, Dresden, Prague, Vienna, Munich, Zurich, Düsseldorf, and Basel; the Archives of the City of Nuremberg; the new repository of the Military Archives at Munich; and the Economic Archives at Basel and at Cologne.

It seemed to me that I should also include in this programme the Archives of the City of Mainz; the State Archives at Wiesbaden, Nuremberg, Bamberg, and Breslau (where I had the good fortune to attend the 13th Congress of German Archivists); the Territorial and the Communal Archives at Prague; and the State Archives at Innsbruck and Lucerne.

I left Brussels on July 19 and returned August 23 [1913], having inspected 22 archives repositories and attended the Congress of Archivists at Breslau. I also had the pleasure of being informed by His Excellency Dr. R. Koser, Director General of the Archives of Prussia, concerning the course on archival economy which he gives so competently at Berlin.

After expressing to you, Mr. Minister, my deepest thanks for enabling me to perform my mission in a fitting manner, I feel it a matter of gratitude to inform you, before proceeding with this account, of the warm welcome I received everywhere on my trip. The graciousness of my German-speaking colleagues in answering the numerous questions I had to ask them, as well as in showing all that might be of interest to me in their organizations, left nothing to be desired. If my mission should benefit the Belgian archives, it will

\* This report, addressed to P. Poulet, Minister of Sciences and Arts of Belgium, by the Archivist General of the Kingdom of Belgium, was published in *Les Archives de l'Etat en Belgique*, 1914, p. 437-470. The report was translated into English by Lillie A. Bontz, Division of Independent Agencies Archives, U.S. National Archives, and published as a Staff Information Circular in February 1939. Reprinted by courtesy of the National Archives, Washington, D.C.

be because of the unfailing kindness of the heads of the repositories visited.

It would be absurd to pretend that everything in the organization of the archives repositories of Germany, Austria, and Switzerland should be adopted. In some respects the Belgian archives are unquestionably superior and in certain others they would bear favourable comparison with those of foreign countries. Nevertheless, I do not believe that I visited a single repository without observing some improvement, if only slight, that might be introduced into Belgium. This shows at once the value of such missions. My report will treat primarily of the improvements noticed ; but, instead of presenting an analytical study concerning each repository visited, it probably will be more helpful to assemble under the following headings the information gathered, and to speak in turn of :

- (1) the archives buildings, with all that pertains to methods for the physical preservation of the documents ;
- (2) the varieties of archives preserved ;
- (3) the organization of archives administrations ;
- (4) the personnel of the archives.

## CHAPTER 1. ARCHIVES BUILDINGS

Most of the buildings I inspected were constructed for the sole purpose of serving as archives repositories. This is especially true in Prussia of the State Archives at Düsseldorf, Wiesbaden, and Breslau ; in Bavaria of the Archives of the Kingdom at Nuremberg and Bamberg, as well as of the Military Archives at Munich ; in Austria of the Imperial and Royal Archives of the Royal House, the Court, and the State at Vienna ; and in Switzerland of the State Archives at Basel. It will be true, likewise, of the new repositories of the General Archives of the Kingdoms of Prussia, Saxony, and Bavaria at Berlin, Dresden, and Munich, respectively, the plans of which I was privileged to see.

The first and cardinal principle, admitted today as binding, is the complete isolation of the archives buildings and the definite separation of the administrative buildings and the repository proper. In the administrative buildings are located the residence of the archivist, or of the concierge ; the public reading room ; the offices of the officials and staff ; the library ; the workshops for binding and moulding ; the room for the repair of records, seals, and electrotypes ; the room for photography, with a dark room ; the shipping and

receiving room ; and the basement with the central heating plant—heat and light are generated there.

The administrative buildings are connected with the repository proper, where the archives are preserved, by a covered stone gallery from 6 to 10 metres long, generally located on the second floor and constituting the only regular access to the repository. The importance of this arrangement is obvious. No document can leave the repository, which is provided with a heavy iron door, until it has been entered in a register by an employee on duty in the gallery, and the name of the person who receives it, whether he be an official or an outsider, is likewise recorded.

The following dimensions of administrative buildings and repositories are given as examples:

At Düsseldorf, on a site containing 2, 118 square metres, is an administrative building 30 metres wide by 10.53 metres deep, connected with the repository by a bridge 6 metres long. The repository itself, consisting of 6 rooms superposed, is 22.58 metres deep (with the room for photography and the dark room, 30 metres). 15.28 metres wide, and 16.50 metres high.

At Breslau, on 2,240 square metres of land, the administrative building is 23 metres wide by 11 metres deep, and is connected with the repository by a 6-metre bridge. The repository itself is 20.18 metres long by 17.14 metres wide.

At Amberg, Bavaria, the repository (five tiers, separated by iron grills) is 40 metres long by 14.48 metres wide, the administrative building is 25.14 metres wide by 14.41 metres deep, and the gallery connecting the two buildings is 10 metres long.

The other repositories I inspected (excepting the one at Wiesbaden, where the stacks were added in 1909 to an old building erected in 1880 and some of the records are preserved in the old part) were not built on the model described above. At the Circuit Archives in Nuremberg<sup>1</sup> the offices are entirely separate from the repository and it is necessary to cross an uncovered court, which naturally causes much inconvenience.

The new repositories at Berlin, Dresden, and Munich will be constructed like those at Düsseldorf and Breslau, in spite of the objections to the bridge voiced by Grotefend at the Congress of

<sup>1</sup> For information about the Circuit Archives, see M.D. Learned, *Guide to the Manuscript Materials Relating to American History in the German State Archives* (Washington, 1912), 12, 191.—Ed.



Archivists at Graz in 1911, when he stressed the advantages of the simple staircases used at Magdeburg and Schwerin.

In the new repositories where, as at Vienna and Basel, lack of space prevents a separation of the administrative building from the repository proper, a *Brandmauer* or fire-proof wall has been erected between them.

In all the repositories the stacks are built in a number of very low tiers (2.50 metres high) in such a way as to obviate the use of ladders. These tiers are separated from each other by solid ceilings or by simple gratings. By means of a series of gratings, repositories of six or seven tiers receive daylight through the glass roof on down to the ground floor. In others, the solid ceilings and gratings alternate and light comes in through the windows on the two sides, just as in the repositories where every tier has its solid ceiling. Each system has its advocates. Certainly, in that where the gratings are at right-angles to the windows, air, light, and heat circulate better; but the gratings generally cost more than the solid ceilings, and an archivist occupied in research on a lower tier is sometimes disagreeably surprised by dust falling from above. Furthermore, if fire should break out in one of these repositories which, in a way, consist of a single room, it would be impossible to localize it.

Under these circumstances, it seems to me that the system of solid ceilings (such as exist at Düsseldorf) with a vertical division of the repository into two or more compartments (as at Vienna) merits preference. But in that case it is essential that the repository be not too wide and that a centre passage be provided, with a large window and balcony at the end of it; otherwise the light coming through the windows will be insufficient and it will be necessary to have recourse, as at Vienna, to artificial light, which, I believe, should be absolutely disapproved, in view of the damage frequently done by electricity in our archives and libraries.

The system I have just recommended is, in a way, a combination of the stack system (*Magazinsystem*) and the room or compartment system (*Kammer—or Kabinettensystem*). The latter, which consists of installing the archives in a great number of rooms almost independent of each other—a system also used at the Public Record Office in London—has found an ardent advocate in Mr. Sebert, State Archivist at Bamberg. The fine repository at Bamberg, where air and light circulate profusely, has, in my opinion, but one drawback: it could not be reproduced in our large Belgian cities where the cost

*Exhibition of Archives*

A majority of the archives repositories have a special room where the most interesting documents in their collections are displayed to the general public.<sup>12</sup>

At Vienna the museum is on the seventh floor of the repository. The showcases in the middle of the room contain permanent exhibits of documents, the wall cases those that are changed according to circumstances and current events. A catalogue containing a detailed description of the documents displayed has been published by the Archives administration. The documents on temporary exhibition are described in loose leaves inserted in the catalogue. Mention should also be made of the fine display of the Archives of the City of Nuremberg, of the Territorial Archives at Prague, of the State Archives at Wiesbaden, etc. In some of the repositories the museum is located in the administrative building; this seems to me a mistake. If there is greater security in the repository proper, why risk placing the most precious records elsewhere?

## CHAPTER II. THE VARIETIES OF ARCHIVES

After having examined archives buildings and installations in detail, we turn our attention to the documents preserved in the repositories.

*Old Archives*

Everywhere, naturally, in State as well as in city archives, are preserved first of all documents of the old regime. But in most places, contrary to the practice at the State Archives of Belgium, the governmental agencies transfer their papers periodically to the repository for old archives.

*Modern Archives*

Several times I have had occasion to recommend such administrative transfers, and recently I gave you my opinion on a report addressed to you on this subject by the Royal Historical Commission. The model procedure at the Prussian State Archives at Berlin, which was explained to me in detail by Dr. P. Bailleu, director of the

<sup>12</sup> Where lack of space has made it impossible to have an exhibition room, the extraordinary pieces are kept in a safe, or, as at Brussels, in a cabinet in the director's office.

institution, is exactly what I recommended several years ago,<sup>13</sup> before I had become acquainted with that system. It is actually in the bureaux of the ministries that the archives are classified and catalogued (*répertoriées*) in annual lists. After a period of about 10 years they are transferred to the State Archives, where they retain the classification symbols they bore in the bureaux. When the bureaux have need of information, they send to the archives precise references, which make the search as early as possible. In short, in the preservation of these archives the role of the archivist is reduced to its simplest terms: he keeps the documents.

Article 15 of the Prussian Archives regulations dated January 21, 1904, declares that the State agencies *must* deposit in the State Archives all documents that are no longer constantly needed for their work. If the provincial archivist learns of the existence of such records in a bureau, he *must* claim them through the Governor (*K. Oberpräsident*).

Article 16 imposes upon the provincial archivist the obligation of informing the Director General of the Archives of all State archives that may be in private possession.

In again insisting upon the importance of this question of the preservation of modern administrative archives, I am not at all unaware of the dangers to which its application exposes us. Indeed, it is to be feared that the archives repositories, scientific institutions as they are and should remain, will become simply appendages of ministerial offices and other agencies. This will inevitably be true if the administrative papers come to them in lamentable condition. The archivists would have to begin by arranging them, at the risk of upsetting their original order and rendering future research difficult if not impossible. To avoid this, the appointment of an archivist in each department should be as indispensable as the periodic transfer of documents to be preserved at the archives with the symbols they bore in their respective offices. Moreover, it is to be hoped, as much for the agencies as for the archives, that calls for these documents will not be too frequent. For this reason the limit of 10 years seems to me very short, and, in my opinion, it would be wiser to double or triple the period at the end of which the administrative documents are sent from their offices to archives repositories. The Swiss archivists complain bitterly of having to

<sup>13</sup> Cf. my essay, *De la nécessité des versements des archives courantes dans les archives anciennes* (*On the Necessity of Transferring Current Archives to the Old Archives*). Report submitted to the International Congress of Administrative Sciences, Brussels, July 1910.

spend most of their time classifying these contemporary records and in purely administrative research.

Another danger is that the invasion of modern administrative papers, which, as a matter of fact, will be consulted more often than the old archives, will end, not only by taking up the archivists' most precious time, but also by pushing into the least favourable places those old archives to whose preservation the archivists have hitherto devoted themselves with such commendable ardour. That this is not an imaginary danger is proved by an example at the State Archives (*Statthaltereiarhiv*) at Innsbruck. Most of the old archives in that repository are piled up in an immense room, which had been used as a theatre in the eighteenth century. Doubtless centuries will pass before the contents of that mass of accumulated archives is known. To avoid this danger in future archives repositories, it will be wise to plan space sufficient to accommodate large accessions from contemporary administrative agencies.

### *Destruction of Archives*

It is necessary also to give much thought to the question of the destruction of archives. If it seems to be agreed now that the destruction of old archives should be undertaken only with the utmost caution, it is also agreed that all contemporary administrative papers need not be preserved indefinitely. At the Prussian Archives a list has been prepared showing the official rulings from 1844 to 1871 on various categories of administrative archives that may be destroyed without inconvenience, after a more or less extensive period of time.<sup>14</sup> In Saxony, as everywhere, the necessity of destroying a large quantity of modern archives is recognised, but it is rightly required that the decision as to which records shall be kept and which destroyed be not made by the bureaus alone, since they generally know nothing of historical matters.<sup>15</sup> At least a regulation of 1877 directs bureaus to submit to their respective ministries a list of documents to be destroyed. The ministries then usually consult the Director of the Archives. It is my opinion that to these mixed commissions of archivists and officials (whose appointment I have

<sup>14</sup> See "Bestimmungen aus dem Geschäftsbereich der K. Preussischen Archivverwaltung," *Mitteilungen*, Heft 10 ("Decisions of the Administrative Branch of the Royal Prussian Archives Administration," *Communications*, No. 10), p. 23.

<sup>15</sup> W. Lippert, "Das Verfahren bei Aktenkassationen in Sachsen," *Deutsche Geschichtsblätter* ("Procedures for the Disposal of Records in Saxony," *German Historical Journal*), 1901, p. 249-264.

already recommended) should fall the task of determining which papers should be preserved and which could be destroyed either immediately or after a certain time.

### *Communal Archives*

There are practically no special comments to be made on the communal archives I saw at Cologne, Mainz, Nuremberg, and Prague. They are much like those of our own communal archives that are well organized. The communes not able to preserve their records properly may deposit them in the State Archives, as is the practice in Belgium.<sup>14</sup>

### *Economic Archives*

Archives pertaining to economic history deserve more of our attention. The remarkable economic expansion of Germany during the course of the nineteenth century inspired several chambers of commerce of Rhenish Prussia (particularly in Düsseldorf and Cologne) with the idea of assembling in an archives repository records which would one day make it possible to trace, with full knowledge of the facts, the annals of a development that probably has no parallel in history. The archives of the chambers of commerce constituted the first *fonds* of the collection organized some 10 years ago at Cologne. Gradually archives of financial, industrial, and commercial establishments were added. The assembling of these economic archives was encouraged by the city of Cologne, which at first sheltered them in its repository of communal archives; but because of their expansion it was necessary for them to be removed this year to the Gereonshaus (a sort of lodging house, which we would scarcely consider an ideal repository for such records). Supported financially by chambers of commerce, societies, merchants, and industrialists, the Rhenish-Westphalian Economic Archives developed admirably under the direction of Dr. M. Schwann. So far the institution has to its credit, besides annual reports, three large publications devoted respectively to the origin of the Rhenish Rail-

<sup>14</sup> As long ago as February 17, 1859, the Prussian Minister of the Interior called the attention of the Governors to the fact that they were to prohibit absolutely the communes from selling their archives to foreigners. At the same time, he asked that communal authorities be encouraged to undertake the work of classifying and inventorying their records, preferably in consultation with the State Archivists in the provinces.

way Company, to the tobacco industry and trade, and to Ludolphe Camphausen, a former president of the Chamber of Commerce of Cologne who later became President of the Council of Ministers of Prussia.<sup>17</sup>

The collection of Swiss economic archives at Basel was organized in 1910. Dr. Wackernagel, Director of the State Archives at that city, took the initiative and, by installing it in the repository of the State Archives, contributed greatly in winning the confidence of private societies whose records were requested. Professor Bächtold is now in charge of this collection of economic archives, which, it seems to me, will be of great importance in the future.<sup>18</sup> This is not the place to enter into details about an organization which as yet has no parallel in our own country; but it is permissible at present to suggest to persons interested that they visit the collections at Cologne and Basel and read the reports of their directors. The proceedings of the first Conference on Economic Archives, held at Cologne on October 17 and 18 of this year, will also be a source of first importance for those who are organizing collections of economic archives.

### *Military Archives*

In most places the war archives are preserved separately; but nowhere, I believe, have they had a better fortune than in Bavaria (*at Munich*). Since 1904 they have been installed in an edifice constructed for them—the Army Museum. The archives occupy the two upper floors of the right wing of the building; the left wing and lower floors are reserved for the military museum and the military library. Under the direction of Gen. Karl Staudinger, a man as scholarly as he is obliging, they have a marvellous establishment which might serve as a model for many repositories of general archives.

Everything concerning the Bavarian Army from the sixteenth century to present times—archives, manuscripts, maps and plans, engravings, drawings, photographs, pamphlets, cartoons, newspaper clippings, etc., etc.—has been assembled in this collection and admirably classified, inventoried, and catalogued. It seems to me that the entire organization might be recommended for similar institutions.

<sup>17</sup> The papers of this distinguished man, published by Dr. Schwann, will comprise three volumes.

<sup>18</sup> The Economic Archives were separated administratively from the State Archives in 1921 and were removed to quarters of their own in 1932.—Ed.

*Collections of Seals*

At present there is scarcely an archives repository that does not have its collection of seals. Those at Munich, Dresden, and Vienna are remarkable. In the last named city not only is there equipment for reproducing the seals by electrotyping (for which the electric current of the establishment is used), but a workroom has been set aside for moulding and casting in plaster. At Munich the older methods have been entirely abandoned for electrotyping. At Dresden, under the direction of Dr. Posse, this process has attained a very high degree of perfection.

### CHAPTER III. ADMINISTRATIVE ORGANIZATION OF ARCHIVES

We are now acquainted with the establishments where the records are housed and with the records themselves. It is time to glance at the manner in which the records are used, in other words, at the organization of Archives administrations.

The archival organizations of Prussia and Bavaria most closely resemble ours. Berlin and Munich have, as we, a repository for the General Archives of the Kingdom under the direction of an Archivist General who, at the same time, is head of all the other State Archives (*Staats—or Kreisarchive*). It is through him that the directors of provincial repositories correspond with the Minister, and vice versa. It is to him that these same directors address their reports (in Prussia this is done each month) on affairs pertaining to their respective repositories and on the work of their staffs. The Archivist General (in Prussia he is called the Director General of the Archives) also inspects the provincial repositories each year and addresses a report on the subject to the minister. In brief, from the standpoint of general organization, there is hardly any difference between the Belgian and the Prussian and Bavarian archives administrations.

The situation is different in Saxony, where there is but a single repository of State Archives for the whole Kingdom—the General Archives at Dresden.<sup>19</sup>

In Austria-Hungary the archives organization differs entirely from those mentioned above. The best known repository, the

<sup>19</sup> The Director of the Archives here exercises a more active surveillance over the communal archives. A large number of them are inspected annually, and where they are improperly cared for, the Government reprimands the delinquent administrations. Many of the communes, ecclesiastical establishments, and noble families have deposited their Archives in the General Archives at Dresden.

It should be noted that the Military Archives are preserved in a separate building with a separate administration.

Imperial and Royal Archives of the Royal House, the Court, and the State at Vienna, comes under the Ministry of Foreign Affairs and has no relation to the archives of the other ministries. The ministries are not always the same for both monarchies. Mention should also be made of the important archives of the Ministry of Finance, and those more recently established for the Ministries of Commerce, Agriculture, Railways, and Public Instruction and Worship; all have repositories at Vienna.

The archives of the Ministry of the Interior of Austria are the most analogous to those of Belgium, but the Archivist of the Vienna repository has direction of his repository only, and cannot interfere in the administration of the *Statthaltereiarhive*—corresponding to our State Archives in the provinces—whose chiefs communicate directly with the minister.

These *Statthaltereiarhive* are established in most, but not in all the provinces; this is a regrettable gap in the Austrian organization. And even where they are established (for example, at Prague and Innsbruck, the two principal repositories of this sort) the installations are far from adequate. Reference has already been made to the deplorable housing of the archives of Tyrol, at Innsbruck. At Prague the records are scarcely better housed. A large quantity of them are stored in the basement of the Church of St. Nicholas, entirely without air and light. A visit to these archives is made with more precautions than are taken for a tour of the catacombs.

Besides State Archives, or *Statthaltereiarhive*, practically all the provinces have *Landesarchive*, or Territorial Archives, corresponding pretty much to our provincial archives, with this difference: in our principal archives of provincial governments there are no documents of the old régime, but the Austrian Territorial Archives possess many records as old as those in the State Archives. Since the domain of the province in relation to the State has not been clearly defined, and since the *Landesarchive* were in nearly every instance created earlier than the State Archives, controversies between the curators of the *Landesarchive* and the *Statthaltereiarhive* over records in the repositories are frequent, and the Archives Council has not yet been able to effect an accord.

The large cities—Vienna, Prague, Innsbruck, etc.—have arranged their communal archives in the usual way. Before leaving Austria I should say a word about the excellent organization of the diocesan archives, which not only include the episcopal archives proper, but also those of rectories and convents when preservation in their original



repositories is unsatisfactory. The bishop allows the establishments that look after their archives to retain them ; nevertheless, he keeps a very close watch over them. For instance, the diocese of Linz is divided into 13 districts, and at the head of each is an ecclesiastic who has demonstrated his competence in the field of archives.

In Switzerland the State Archives of the cantons are absolutely independent of each other. They are purely cantonal organisms, unconnected with a central administration. As for the Archives of the Confederation at Berne, since the Swiss State did not exist prior to 1798, one can hardly expect to find there archives of earlier date than that year.

It follows from this exposition that, without neglecting administrative measures taken in other places, in Prussia and Bavaria especially we find those that can be applied most readily in our Belgian State Archives. From a reading of the regulations of the Prussian Archives it is obvious that their records contain state secrets which could not be given out indiscriminately. Article 21 of the regulations on internal administration, dated January 21, 1904, requires the utmost discretion on the part of the officials and staff of the Archives. They cannot directly or indirectly, orally or in writing, make known or show, publish or allow to be published extracts, attestations, or copies that have come to their knowledge through their profession and may be prejudicial to the rights, claims, or interests of the State. These prohibitions do not terminate when the officials and members of the staff are no longer employed at the Archives. By article 32 of these same regulations, archivists are obliged to submit to the Director General of the Archives all their scientific works in which the archives have been used.

### *Accessibility*

One can well understand that a government so exacting toward its own officials would be even more so toward persons not part of the administration. Articles 27, 28 and 29 of the regulations cited above provide that the directors of archives *may* give citizens and foreign scholars information contained in the archives insofar as it does not concern the Royal House or the State, questions of religion, and other matters for which they deem it necessary to require an authorization procured in advance from the Governor. In the same way, they *may* give information about armorial bearings, seals, estates, the relation of certain families, and certain points of history, insofar as this information is not prejudicial to the public interest,

Under the same conditions Germans are permitted to consult personally archives dated prior to 1700. For researches of a later date the authorization of the Governor or the Director General of the Archives is required, and the purpose for which the records are desired must be stated in writing. For foreigners, the authorization of the Director General of the Archives is in all cases indispensable.

The Bavarian Archives pride themselves on having had since February 28, 1899, the most liberal regulations of all the German Archives. As a matter of fact, they permit responsible persons to consult all records prior to 1801 that are not forbidden "in the interest of the welfare of the State, religious tranquillity, or morality." The archivists are requested to facilitate the work of research and *may* make inventories available to the public. At the General Archives at Munich, however, I was told that this is done only in very rare instances. At Vienna it is done just as rarely. In Saxony the interests of the treasury prevail in regard to the consultation of the archives. The archivists are not obliged to do extensive research at the request of private individuals. The administration can demand notes that have been taken in the public reading room. On the other hand, documents of earlier date than 1813 may be made available to the public, and catalogues are at their disposal in the reading room.

### *Outside Loans*

In Bavaria as in Prussia and Saxony, the officials are absolutely opposed to lending records to private individuals (Article 9 of the Prussian Archives regulations of 1904 formally forbids it.) They are very willing to lend from one repository to another, however.

In most of the repositories requests for the loan of archives are made by means of a form filled out in the public reading room. One part of this form serves to mark the removal of the document. At Berlin the removal slips are of two colours to indicate whether the loan was within or outside of the repository.

When filling out the loan forms the borrower also signs a register which lists all the documents that have been issued to him and shows the purpose of his research. At the Dresden Archives he promises in writing to give the institution copies of publications in which he makes use of its archives.

### *Hours of Admission*

The fact that most of the investigators are obliged to do their work at the repository naturally affects its hours of admission. The

following examples are given of the hours in which the State Archives repositories visited by me are open to the public.

- Prussia:* Berlin (General Archives) 9 to 3  
(Saturday 9 to 2)  
Düsseldorf, 8 to 1 and 3 to 6  
Wiesbaden, 8 to 1  
Breslau, 8 to 1 and three times a week  
4 to 7.
- Bavaria:* Munich, 8 to 4  
Nuremberg, 8 to 4  
Bamberg, 8 to 4.
- Saxony:* Dresden, 9 to 1 and 3 to 6 (Saturday 9 to 3).
- Austria-Hungary:* Vienna (Imperial and Royal Archives of the  
Royal House, the Court, and the State),  
9:30 to 7  
Prague (State Archives), 9 to 2  
(Territorial Archives), 9 to 2  
Innsbruck (State Archives), 8 to 1 and 3 to 5.
- Switzerland:* Zurich, 8 to 12 and 2 to 6  
Lucerne, 8 to 12 and 2 to 6  
Basel, 8 to 12 and 2 to 6.

Of course the archivists are not obliged to be present during the entire day. The various members of the staff usually work in relays. The Prussian Archives regulations of 1904 prescribe 30 hours a week as the minimum for keeping the repositories open but provide that the staff members may be required to work longer.

### *Work of the Staff*

Naturally, the principal task of the scientific personnel consists of classifying and inventorying the records confided to their care. In Prussia, since July 1, 1881, the principle of provenance has been followed in the general arrangement of the archives, and this principle is also recognized if not always applied<sup>20</sup> in the archives of Bavaria, Saxony, Austria, and Switzerland.

As a general rule, both summary and detailed inventories are published at the expense of the State. But independent of these

<sup>20</sup> The archivists of the cities and circuits complain that a quantity of valuable documents which do not belong to Munich have been concentrated in the General Archives there. On the other hand, it is obvious that for collections classified several centuries ago—for instance the *excerpta* at Innsbruck, and many others—the principle of provenance could not be applied without great difficulty.

published inventories, in many repositories (Vienna, Nuremberg, Dresden, Munich, etc.) the practice is followed of making general catalogues on slips, thus enabling the searcher to obtain quickly information about a person, the name of a place, an historical event, or an agency of the government.

In general the archives administrations do not confine themselves to the publication of inventories. If the publication of series of documents seems to be left more and more to academic commissions, on the other hand in recent years there has been a strong tendency among Directors General of the Archives to publish real works on archival economy. For many years the *Archivalische Zeitschrift* (*Archival Journal*) was an official publication of Bavarian Archives administration, and, if lately it seems to have lost this character, it still remains true to its programme in the sense that studies on archival economy are always given a preferred place. But all praise is due to the *Mitteilungen der K. Preussischen Archivverwaltung* (*Communications of the Royal Prussian Archives Administration*), which in about 10 years' time has published 24 numbers, including a series of studies devoted to the history, arrangement, and construction of the principal repositories of archives of the Kingdom, to search in foreign archives, to administrative regulations, and to sciences auxiliary to archival economy.

In Austria-Hungary the *Mitteilungen der Dritten (Archiv-)sektion der K. u. K. Zentral Kommission zur Erforschung und Erhaltung der kunst—und historischen Denkmäler* (*Communications of the Third (Archives) Section of the Imperial and Royal Central Commission on the Study and Preservation of Art Relics and Historical Monuments*) contains numerous studies on the organization of the Austrian archives. This publication does not seem to us to be issued regularly enough to be able to contain all the studies produced by the Austrian archivists; they have frequent recourse, however, to unofficial historical reviews.

### *Reports to the Archivist General*

Article 36 of the Prussian Archives regulations dated January 21, 1904, provides that at the end of each month the Director General shall receive from the directors of provincial repositories a report of the work of their personnel. At the end of the year a general report is submitted to him containing, in addition, a list of the new accessions of archives, books, and maps and plans, as well as a statement of work

done by the personnel for remuneration. In April he receives the accounts.

#### CHAPTER IV. THE ARCHIVES PERSONNEL

It is hardly necessary to state that everywhere today archivists are required to have professional preparation. In the places recently visited—Prussia, Bavaria, Saxony, Austria-Hungary, and Switzerland—preference is frankly given to historical preparation, but usually great importance is attached to a knowledge of archival economy proper, as well as to a knowledge of the history of law and of administrative law.

In view of the almost identical organization of the Prussian, Bavarian, and Belgian State Archives, it is not surprising that here, too, we should give special attention to the requirements in Prussia and Bavaria. Prussia (with its General Archives at Berlin having jurisdiction over the 16 State Archives in the provinces and a professional personnel of about 75 persons), Bavaria (with its 34 professional archivists and its 8 Circuit Archives under the jurisdiction of the General Archives at Munich), and Belgium (with its General Archives and 8 provincial repositories employing 40 archivists), have many analogies, not only from an administrative point of view, but also from that of the recruiting and professional training of their archives personnel.

In Prussia candidate archivists serve 2 years' probation at the State Archives. They must have a knowledge of paleography, 'diplomats, chronology, Latin, middle high German, low German, and French. They must know German history of the Middle Ages and of the Reformation period and the ancient and modern history of Brandenburg and Prussia. They must also have a general knowledge of the historical geography of Germany, and of the history of art in the Middle Ages.

As for law, they are required to have principally a knowledge of the elements of the science of law, of private Roman law, of the history of German law and government, of German and Prussian constitutional law, of Prussian administrative law and its history, of the law of German procedure, of ecclesiastical law, of national economy, and of finance.

Finally and especially, they must show that they possess a thorough knowledge of the theory and practice of archival economy.

To acquire this information, the candidates must have attended for at least two semesters a seminar on auxiliary sciences to history ;

they must have had two semesters of history and a semester of German philology; and they must have taken part during at least one semester in the practice of archival economy. Regarding the last requirement, the Director General of the Archives gives a course and practical exercises<sup>21</sup> in connection with the courses of auxiliary sciences at the University of Berlin. This does not impose upon the candidates the obligation of attending the courses at this rather than at another university. The entire course of studies requires from 6 to 8 semesters.

Before admission as an archivist, the candidate must render a volunteer service of 2 years and pass an examination which is generally given at the end of his first year. He cannot be admitted as a volunteer until he has finished his university studies. The examination is taken before a commission composed of the Director General of the Archives as chairman, with another Archives official (usually the Second Director) as deputy, and four professors of the university chosen respectively from among those who teach history, auxiliary sciences, law, and German philology. Besides certificates of studies, of probation, of military service, of health, etc., to be furnished to the Director General, the candidate must pay an examination fee of 50 marks. The examination is oral. In cases of failure the candidate may, a half-year later, try again; but he may not be examined a third time. If he passes, he obtains a certificate which, however, gives him no *right* to an appointment.

On the whole, in its major points, the decree of May 3, 1906, concerning admission to the State Archives of Prussia is only a duplication of the decree of March 3, 1882, concerning the examination of candidate archivists in the Archives of the Kingdom of Bavaria. There, also, the university diploma of doctor of laws or of history, or of professor of philology or of history is required for admission as a probationary in the Archives. There the probation lasts 3 years, during which time all facilities are given to enable the candidate to perfect himself in all branches of archival economy. At the end of this period he must pass a practical test before a commission composed of the Director of the Archives and two archivists appointed by the Minister of the Interior. This test—part written and part oral—covers archival subjects, including, besides archival economy proper, paleography and diplomatics; historical subjects, that is, the history of Germany, of Europe, and of Bavaria, and the medieval geography

<sup>21</sup> Until last year there were courses on archival economy at the University of Marburg, but they are now given only at Berlin. This does not prevent the volunteer service from being performed at a State repository other than that of the General Archives of the Kingdom, however.

of Germany ; subjects in the field of jurisprudence, such as political history and German law, the elements of civil law, and canon law ; and philology and the French language. When necessary, candidates are required to continue working at the Archives until a place becomes vacant.

Finally, it should be noted that in Austria-Hungary, also, preparation in history seems to be preferred to legal training. There, too, a university diploma alone is not generally sufficient. For appointment to the Archives it is necessary, after completing university studies, to pass an examination at the Institute for Austrian Historical Research, where importance is attached to a knowledge of archival economy.

In Bavaria and Prussia, besides the archivists, there is, above the maintenance personnel, a category of employees who, in Belgium, are to be found only at the General Archives of the Kingdom. They are the administrative officials or *Kanzleisecretäre*. Needless to say, they never become archivists, and their entire career is in the administration proper. Their presence seems to me indispensable in a central administration such as the General Archives of the Kingdom, but I cannot bring myself to justify their existence in all the provincial repositories. Administrative duties and the copying of letters and inventories are not so burdensome in these repositories that they cannot be done by the young archivists. I might further say that the performance of this work by beginners seems necessary if they have the legitimate ambition of some day becoming chiefs of repositories. When that time comes, they will be obliged to know the administrative work, and they will be fortunate in not having to depend upon a subordinate for this part of their duties. I hasten to add that this is one of the reasons why I have long advocated a knowledge of administrative law for archivists.

Archival economy is even more important, because it concerns the very root of the knowledge necessary for archivists. Unfortunately, it is not yet taught in our country. There is no doubt that until we have instruction on this fundamental subject, it will be difficult to reach a complete accord regarding archives publications—particularly inventories. For a long time I would have preferred the introduction of such a course in each of our universities ; if required for the doctorate in history, it would have been obligatory for future archivists. But from what I saw and heard during the course of my trip, I now believe it would be better to organize a course at the Archives, similar to the one given in Berlin ; for it is there that, in addition to the indispensable theoretical part, they can best devote the

major part to practice. Simply by royal decree this course could be combined with probationary service of 1 year and be added to the required programme of a candidate archivist.

### *Salaries*

The problem of recruitment of the archives personnel is closely linked with that of salaries. It may be a matter for regret, but whether we like it or not the material advantages attached to a position count for much in the choice of a career. The better individuals unquestionably are attracted to the more lucrative professions, which, it should be said, are generally the most respected. In view of the ever increasing requirements made by public authorities of those seeking to obtain a position as archivist, it has been felt in foreign countries that the incumbents of these positions should receive proper compensation. To confine ourselves to the several countries that are the subject of this report, the following figures will give an idea of the remuneration of their archivists.

In Prussia the assistants are started at 2,125 francs; once they become archivists their salary is doubled, and they may reach 9,000 francs.<sup>22</sup> At the General Archives of Berlin, this salary reaches 9,750 francs for those below the grade of Second Director and Director General. These two high officials, whose positions correspond to the Assistant Archivist General and the Archivist General in Belgium, enjoy respectively minimum salaries of 12,250 francs and 16,625 francs. The archivists are also given living expenses, which at Berlin and Wiesbaden, for example, amount to 1,625 francs. Some of the archivists (those who distinguish themselves by their zeal and merit) receive an additional annual allowance of 1,200 francs.

In Bavaria the archivists begin at 3,750 francs and reach 7,500 francs in 19 years; the section chiefs (*Archivräte*) start at this figure and go to 10,500 francs. The Director of the General Archives of the Kingdom begins at 10,500 francs and may reach 14,250 francs. Besides that, many archivists (those of Nuremberg, for instance) are housed in the archives building.

In Saxony the section chiefs progress from 6,900 francs to 10,500 francs, and the Director advances from 12,525 francs to 15,150 francs.

In Austria-Hungary the Archivists-editors, class II, reach 4,400 francs; class I, 5,650 francs. The archivists progress from 5,100 francs

<sup>22</sup> The value of the Belgian franc in 1913 was 19.3 cents.—Ed.



to 7,150 francs ; the section chiefs, from 6,800 francs to 9,300 francs ; and the Director from 10,600 francs to 14,910 francs. They also receive the additional annual allowance always granted (*Aktivitätszulagen*), which for archivists is 1,700 francs, for section chiefs, 1,950 francs, and for the Director, 2,350 francs.

Pensions are generally based on these salaries.

### *Vacations*

It remains for me to say a word about vacations, which in other countries are much longer than in ours but usually vary according to rank. In Prussia all the officials and employees of the State Archives are allowed 6 weeks' vacation. In Saxony the Director of the Archives, on his own authority, may grant a month's vacation to all the archivists. When more leave is required it is necessary to appeal to the minister. In Bavaria the assistant and circuit archivists are entitled to a month's vacation, the section chiefs to 6 weeks. In Austria the archivists are entitled to 4 weeks, the section chiefs to 6 weeks, and the Director to 2 months ; all this is exclusive of the scientific missions that are very frequent and very well paid for in all these countries.

### CONCLUSION

To sum up in a few lines the principal conclusions of this report, from the point of view of improvements that could be made within a relatively short time in the administration of the Belgian Archives, I limit myself to restating here the following points :

In regard to new archives repositories, discontinue entirely the practice of adapting old buildings ; construct new edifices and separate the administrative buildings from the repository proper. To preserve maps and documents on parchment, provide for the manufacture of cartons pierced with holes and make small circular openings where necessary in the old model cartons. Keep an eye on the periodic cleaning of the archives, and in large repositories delegate this work to one person who will be constantly occupied with it. A doctor of chemical sciences should be appointed to the General Archives of the Kingdom of Belgium ; he would take care of all matters pertaining to the repair of documents, to processes for restoring faded writings, to photography, and to electrotyping. A museum should be organized.

The periodic transfers of administrative papers to the State Archives should be required ; and the State should give its moral support to bodies disposed to create a collection of contemporary economic archives.

Although our regulations still contain a few restrictive provisions, the Belgian Archives are in fact absolutely accessible, and in this regard we have nothing to learn from abroad.

Provision for the preparation of archivists should be completed immediately by establishing for them a course in archival economy. The provisions for salaries, pensions, and vacations should be improved.

Accept, Mr. Minister, the expression of my deepest respect,

J. CHEFFIER

The Archivist General of the Kingdom



# THE INDIAN ARCHIVES

*The Indian Archives* is a bi-annual journal published by the National Archives of India on behalf of the Indian Historical Records Commission. It was started in 1947 with the object of stimulating interest in and imparting knowledge about the science of archives keeping and preservation of manuscripts among individuals and institutions dealing with records and historical manuscripts. The journal contains contributions, of technical as well as of general interest, on methods of preservation and repair of documents ; microfilming and other forms of documentary reproduction ; records administration ; preparation of reference media ; editing of records ; records of public bodies, semi-public institutions, business firms, political parties, universities and colleges, religious and charitable institutions and ancient families ; records of Indian interest in foreign countries and migration of historical manuscripts ; library science and library practices and restoration of paintings and other works of art. One entire section of the journal is devoted to *News Notes* giving accounts of latest developments in archival work in India and abroad, new finds of records and historical manuscripts and latest happenings in the library world. The *Book Reviews* deal with publications relating to archival work, studies based on records, modern Indian history, library science and museology.

The journal is edited by an Editorial Board consisting of: the Director of Archives to the Government of India ; Dr. J. N. Muckerjee, formerly Professor of Chemistry, Calcutta University ; Dr. S. R. Ranganathan, Professor of Library Science, Delhi University ; Dr. G. L. Chopra, Keeper of Records to the Punjab Government and Dr. S. N. Sen, Vice-Chancellor, Delhi University. The subscription per annum is Rs. 4/- (6 s. foreign) and the price of a single number is Rs. 2/- (3 s. foreign).

## SOME OPINIONS

The new publication . . . . is further evidence of the awakening interest in, and sense of responsibility for, the manuscript accumulations of which India has a great store. Its object is to make the nature and whereabouts of these possessions more generally known, and to give advice on their care and preservation.

*The Times Literary Supplement,*  
19 July 1947.

*The Indian Archives* . . . . is a welcome addition to periodical literature on documentation and to the specialist journals of India . . . . The first number has a very interesting selection, it is well produced and will be well received by all concerned with archives and their keeping.

*Nature*, 30 August 1947.

*The Indian Archives* has a worthy purpose and is well launched.  
*The American Archivist,*  
October 1947.

The journal as a whole is a fine piece of work, and a well-indexed file of it will provide the Indian archivist with an adequate handbook at the same time that it creates in him a sense of his developing profession.

*The Library Quarterly,*  
October 1950.

Special mention should be made of the section of the news notes in which the work of the various record offices in India is summarized. This information is not generally known and not easily obtainable by Western archivists and historians.

*American Historical Review,*  
October 1947.

## SELECT CONTENTS

- Survey of India Records by *R. H. Phillimore* (Vol. I, No. 1).  
A Study of Palm Leaf Manuscripts by *S. Chakravorti* (Vol. I, No. 1).  
Analytical Methods in the Dating of Books and Documents by *Julius Grant* (Vol. I, No. 1).  
Raw Material of History by *Maurice Gwyer* (Vol. I, No. 2).  
Manuscripts on Birch Bark (Bhurjapatra) and Their Preservation by *Jean Filliozat* (Vol. I, No. 2).  
Laws of Archival Science by *S. R. Ranganathan* (Vol. I, Nos. 2, 3, 4).  
Bookworms by *E. A. Back* (Vol. I, No. 2).  
Effects of Changes of Sovereignty on Archives by *Ernst Posner* (Vol. I, No. 3).  
Old Records in the Calcutta High Court by *N. K. Sinha* (Vol. II, No. 1).  
Records and Archives: What are they? by *Purnendu Basu* (Vol. II, Nos. 2-4).  
Central African Archives: Some Aspects of their Development by *C. G. Allen* (Vol. II, Nos. 2-4).  
Twenty-five Years: Some Reminiscences of an English Archivist by *Hilary Jenkinson* (Vol. III, Nos. 1-4).  
Recent Developments in Record Preservation by *Arthur E. Kimberly* (Vol. III, Nos. 1-4).  
Application of Microfilming to State Archives by *Robert Marichal* (Vol. III, Nos. 1-4).  
Why Preserve Records? by *Purnendu Basu* (Vol. III, Nos. 1-4).  
Storage and Preservation of Maps in Swedish Military Archives by *Birger Steckzén* (Vol. IV, No. 1).  
The Custody of Records in Roman Egypt by *Sir Harold Idris Bell* (Vol. IV, No. 2).  
Archives and Their Make-up in Ancient India and the Countries with Indian Culture by *Jean Filliozat* (Vol. IV, No. 2).  
Archives and War by *Lester K. Born* (Vol. IV, No. 2).  
*Copies of back numbers (except Vol. I, No. 1) are still available.*

*Please write to :*

THE CHIEF EDITOR, THE INDIAN ARCHIVES,  
NATIONAL ARCHIVES OF INDIA, NEW DELHI (2).

INDIAN RECORDS SERIES

INDIAN TRAVELS OF  
THEVENOT AND CARERI

Being the Third Part of the Travels of M. De Thevenot into the Levant and the Third Part of a Voyage Round the World by Dr. John Francis Gemelli Careri.

Edited by  
SURENDRANATH SEN  
*Director of Archives, Government of India.*

Published by the National Archives of India, New Delhi, 1949.  
Pp. Lxiv, 432,      20 Illustrations and 3 Maps      Price: Rs. 20/-

The works of Thevenot and Careri were translated into English in 1687 and 1704, and they have been reprinted as they first appeared without attempting to alter the texts. These accounts had a wide circulation among European readers when first published and even now they are intensely interesting as a record of first hand impressions of Europeans about India—the country and her people. Their value as contemporary source materials for history of India in the seventeenth century can hardly be exaggerated although there are several inaccuracies of detail in their work.

The twenty illustrations in the volume have been reproduced from the early editions of these books in the original, as well as their English editions.

SOME OPINIONS

He (Dr. Sen) has rendered a valuable service to students of Indian history, as the originals are rare and have not been reprinted in modern times.

*English Historical Review,*  
*October 1950.*

He (Dr. Sen) has contributed a most interesting and valuable introduction which draws on all the foreigners who visited the country during the century, and makes useful comparisons between their records. Dr. Sen has also added a vast appendix of notes, itineraries, bibliography and index and it is probably true to say that little more could be added to what has been written.

*Nature, 3 February 1951.*

Dr. Sen's introduction is far more than a commentary on the two travel narratives. It is a valuable essay on the European travellers' accounts of India in the seventeenth century. . . . the latter (explanatory notes) are carefully done and bring to bear for the first time the criticism of an Indian scholar fully familiar with the terrain and institutions described.

*American Historical Review,*  
*July 1950.*

The book is well illustrated, annotated and indexed. The sixty-four pages introduction is an excellent product of historical research, not only into the lives and travels of Thevenot and Careri, but into the records left by virtually all 16th and 17th century European travellers in India.

*The American Archivist,*  
April 1950.

A norm which is satisfactory in every respect as to editing, annotation, introduction and general get up has been furnished in this book which is to serve as the model for the labour of Indian scholars in this and similar series to be published by the National Archives.

*Journal of Indian History,*  
April 1950.

The editor's introduction is scholarly, analytical and critical. . . . the notes are learned, exhaustive and helpful. The bibliography and index leave nothing to be desired.

*Hindu, 4 December 1949.*

The reprint of these two travels is a well-produced and useful addition to the present series.

*British Book News,*  
March 1950.

The Editor's own introduction interprets for us the writings of many western scholars, pointing out their deficiencies, praising their observations and often elaborating points that only an Indian writer could elaborate. This introduction is at the same time a revealing appreciation of these two seventeenth century travellers.

*Asian Horizon,*  
Autumn-Winter 1949-50.

The "Indian Travels of Thevenot and Careri" represents a further addition to the Indian Records Series, started some 45 years ago. . . . Inaccuracies in translation of fact are corrected in a large body of explanatory notes. The introduction is a scholarly and illuminating survey, by Dr. Sen, of 17th century European travellers in India, with biographical and other details. . . .

*The Statesman, October 1949.*

There is a long introduction to the book dealing with the general body of early travellers in India. . . . , it is good and well written. The notes deal efficiently with many problems of history and geography that the two writers present.

*Times Literary Supplement,*  
18 November 1949.

The book deserves every praise. It has been well printed, and its editing shows skill and care. Dr. Sen's introduction is admirably comprehensive, extending not only to Thevenot and Careri, but all the main European travellers whose accounts of India and its inhabitants in the seventeenth century have been published. . . . The copious notes are concise as well as informative, and cover botanical and zoological points arising from descriptions of flora and fauna in the text.

*Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society.*  
Parts 1 & 2, 1951.

*Copies available from:*

The Director of Archives, National Archives of India, New Delhi (2).

# THERE'S A **Kodak** METHOD FOR EVERY PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENT-COPYING PROBLEM . . .

**T**HE advantages of photographic methods of document-copying, with their ability to produce exact facsimile copies of all types of originals, are universally recognized; and there are few professions or commercial undertakings in which photographic document-copying does not find some applications. No single copying method has been evolved to meet all the problems likely to be encountered, but Kodak Ltd. has a method appropriate to every problem. The following are brief details of some of these methods and further particulars will gladly be furnished on request.



**PHOTOSTAT :** A method of copying directly on to a specially prepared paper, to produce high quality copies either in the same size, or in sizes differing from that of the original. A method of very widespread application.



**STATFILE :** Similar in some respects to Photostat but using a film negative instead of photographing directly on to the paper. The Statfile machine serves the dual purpose of camera and enlarger.



**MICROFILMING :** An invaluable method of copying where it is desired to economise on storage space. Large numbers of documents may be copied on to cine-film which occupies only a small fraction of the space of the originals. The films may either be viewed in special viewers or may be used to prepare enlarged copies. Of particular value to institutions such as libraries to provide ready facilities for viewing precious documents from all over the world.



**RECORDAK :** A particular form of microfilming using sub-standard film, very inexpensive to operate, and extremely rapid. Of special application in banks etc., where large numbers of cheques or other documents may require to be recorded daily. Results usually viewed on "readers" but paper copies can be prepared. Recordak machines are available on hire only.



**KODALINE Reflex Printing :** A simple, inexpensive method of copying where copies of moderate quality, equal in size to the original, are required and no large quantities are involved.

*For further details apply, giving full description of your problem, to*

**KODAK LTD.** (Incorporated in England), Kodak House, Hornby Road, Bombay 1. Also at Calcutta: Madras: Lahore: Karachi.



MY PILGRIMAGES TO  
AJANTA AND BAGH

By MUKUL DEY

*With an Introduction by LAURENCE BINYON*

'Mr Mukul Dey's book gives us a more complete view of the Ajanta paintings and sculpture in their total circumstances than we have ever had before.' *Times Literary Supplement*

*Demy 8vo. Pp. 204, 56 half-tone plates, 18 line illustrations. Rs 12-8.*

**OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS**

WANTED

Copies of the first issue  
(Vol. I, No. 1, January 1947)  
of *THE INDIAN ARCHIVES*

Please write to:

The Chief Editor, *The Indian Archives*,  
National Archives of India, New Delhi.



**STEEL**

**SHELVING OF ALL VARIETIES  
CUPBOARDS & CABINETS**

**DESK & TABLES - CANTEEN FOLDING  
TABLES CHAIRS - ALL TYPES FILING  
CABINETS SAFE & CASHBOX - HOSPITAL  
BEDSTEADS AND OTHER EQUIPMENT**

**Bungo**  
**STEEL FURNITURE LTD.**





INDIAN AGRICULTURAL RESEARCH  
INSTITUTE LIBRARY,  
NEW DELHI.

[illegible]

MGIPC-S5-38 AR/54-7.7.54-7,000.